

---

# PROJECT MANUAL

---

*for:*

**NOVANT ASC LELAND  
9151 OCEAN HIGHWAY E  
LELAND, NC 28451  
CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS  
VOLUME 1**

**1721843900**

**SEPTEMBER 15, 2023**

---



SECTION 00 01 01 – PROJECT TITLE PAGE

PROJECT MANUAL  
INCLUDING SPECIFICATIONS

NOVANT ASC LELAND  
9151 OCEAN HIGHWAY E  
LELAND, NC 28451

CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS

PREPARED BY:

LITTLE DIVERSIFIED ARCHITECTURAL CONSULTING, INC.  
615 SOUTH COLLEGE STREET, SUITE 1600  
CHARLOTTE, NORTH CAROLINA 28202  
704-525-6350

ARCHITECT'S JOB NUMBER  
1721843900

ISSUE DATE  
SEPTEMBER 15, 2023

END OF SECTION 00 01 01



## SECTION 00 01 06 – PROJECT DIRECTORY

PROJECT: Novant ASC Leland  
9151 Ocean Highway E  
Leland, NC 28451

OWNER: Novant Health  
2085 Frontis Plaza Blvd.  
Winston Salem, NC 27103  
Contact: Taylor Simms  
Phone: 336-765-5221  
Email: [taylor.simms@novanthealth.org](mailto:taylor.simms@novanthealth.org)

ARCHITECT: Little Diversified Architectural Consulting, Inc.  
615 South College Street, Suite 1600  
Charlotte, NC 28202  
Contact: William Mumford  
Phone: 704-561-7572  
Email: [William.mumford@littleonline.com](mailto:William.mumford@littleonline.com)

STRUCTURAL: Citadel Contractors, Inc.  
3405 Apex Peakway  
Apex, NC 27502  
Contact: Chris Jackson  
Phone: 919-362-5122  
Email: [cjackson@citadelcontractors.com](mailto:cjackson@citadelcontractors.com)

MECHANICAL: Specialized Engineering Solutions  
1300 Baxter Street, No. 230  
Charlotte, NC 28204  
Contact: Andrea Thompson  
Phone: 704-348-3097  
Email: [athompson@specializedeng.com](mailto:athompson@specializedeng.com)

PLUMBING: Specialized Engineering Solutions  
1300 Baxter Street, No. 230  
Charlotte, NC 28204  
Contact: Scott Cathey  
Phone: 704-348-3097  
Email: [scathey@specializedeng.com](mailto:scathey@specializedeng.com)

ELECTRICAL: Specialized Engineering Solutions  
1300 Baxter Street, No. 230  
Charlotte, NC 28204  
Contact: Steven Handley  
Phone: 704-348-3097  
Email: [shandley@specializedeng.com](mailto:shandley@specializedeng.com)

CIVIL: Norris + Tunstall  
2602 Iron Gate Drive, Ste. 102  
Wilmington, NC 28412  
Contact: John Tunstall  
Phone: 910-343-9653  
Email: [jtunstall@ntengineers.com](mailto:jtunstall@ntengineers.com)

September 15, 2023

Novant ASC Leland  
Construction Documents

1721843900

CONTRACTOR: Thomas Construction Group, LLC  
1022 Ashes Drive  
Wilmington, NC 28405  
Contact: Christopher Thorn  
Phone: 910-679-8480  
Email: [cthorn@thomasconstructiongroup.com](mailto:cthorn@thomasconstructiongroup.com)

END OF SECTION 00 01 06

SECTION 00 01 07 - SEALS PAGE

This section includes the Professional Seals by Design Professionals and others responsible for preparing the Construction Documents.

ARCHITECTURAL:

SEAL LOCATION:

NAME: William Mumford  
(print)



(signature)

8284  
(professional number)



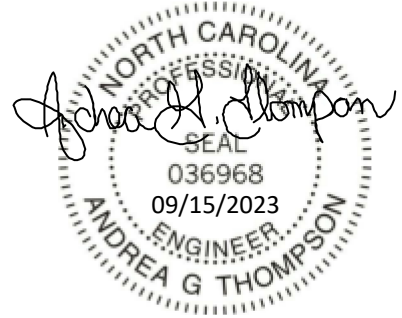
PLUMBING:

SEAL LOCATION:

NAME: Andrea Thompson  
(print)

*Andrea H. Thompson*  
(signature)

036968  
(professional number)





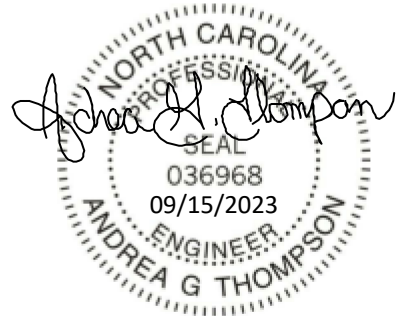
MECHANICAL:

SEAL LOCATION:

NAME: Andrea Thompson  
(print)

*Andrea H. Thompson*  
(signature)

036968  
(professional number)



ELECTRICAL:

SEAL LOCATION:

NAME: Charles Hall  
(print)

Charles G. Hall  
(signature)

029777  
(professional number)



NOVANT ASC LELAND  
9151 OCEAN HIGHWAY E  
LELAND, NC 28451

## PROJECT MANUAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION	TITLE
---------	-------

## \*\*\*\*\*VOLUME 1\*\*\*\*\*

**PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS GROUP**

## DIVISION 00 PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS

	Hard Cover Sheet
00 01 01	Project Title Page
00 01 06	Project Directory
00 01 07	Seals Page
00 01 10	Table of Contents
00 65 36	Contractors General Warranty
00 65 37	Asbestos-free Warranty
00 72 00	General Conditions of the Contract for Construction

**SPECIFICATIONS GROUP****GENERAL REQUIREMENTS SUBGROUP**

## DIVISION 01 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

01 10 00	Summary
01 25 00	Substitution Procedures
01 26 00	Contract Modification Procedures
01 29 00	Payment Procedures
01 31 00	Project Management and Coordination
01 32 00	Construction Progress Documentation
01 33 00	Submittal Procedures
01 40 00	Quality Requirements
01 42 00	References
01 50 00	Temporary Facilities and Controls
01 60 00	Product Requirements
01 73 00	Execution
01 74 19	Construction Waste Management and Disposal
01 77 00	Closeout Procedures
01 78 23	Operation and Maintenance Data
01 78 39	Project Record Documents
01 79 00	Demonstration and Training

**FACILITY CONSTRUCTION SUBGROUP**

## DIVISION 02 EXISTING CONDITIONS – NOT USED

## DIVISION 03 CONCRETE – NOT USED

## DIVISION 04 MASONRY

04 43 13.16	Adhered Stone Masonry Veneer
-------------	------------------------------

## DIVISION 05 METALS

05 40 00 Cold-Formed-Metal Framing  
05 50 00 Metal Fabrications

## DIVISION 06 WOOD, PLASTICS, AND COMPOSITES

06 10 53 Miscellaneous Rough Carpentry  
06 16 00 Sheathing  
06 41 16 Plastic-laminate-clad Architectural Cabinets

## DIVISION 07 THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION

07 11 13 Bituminous Dampproofing  
07 21 00 Thermal Insulation  
07 26 16 Under Slab Vapor Retarder  
07 27 26 Fluid-Applied Membrane Air Barriers  
07 42 13.23 Metal Composite Material Wall Panels  
07 54 23 Thermoplastic-Polyolefin (TPO) Roofing  
07 62 00 Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim  
07 71 00 Roof Specialties  
07 72 00 Roof Accessories  
07 84 13 Penetration Firestopping  
07 92 00 Joint Sealants

## DIVISION 08 OPENINGS

08 11 13 Hollow Metal Doors and Frames  
08 14 16 Flush Wood Doors  
08 31 13 Access Doors and Frames  
08 41 13 Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts  
08 42 29.23 Sliding Automatic Entrances  
08 44 13 Glazed Aluminum Curtain Walls  
08 71 00 Door Hardware  
08 80 00 Glazing  
08 91 19 Fixed Louvers

## DIVISION 09 FINISHES

09 05 61.13 Moisture Vapor Emission Control  
09 22 16 Non-Structural Metal Framing  
09 29 00 Gypsum Board  
09 30 00 Tiling  
09 51 13 Acoustical Panel Ceilings  
09 65 13 Resilient Base and Accessories  
09 65 16 Resilient Sheet Flooring  
09 65 19 Resilient Tile Flooring  
09 68 13 Tile Carpeting  
09 91 13 Exterior Painting  
09 91 23 Interior Painting  
09 96 00 High Performance Coatings  
09 97 23 Penetrating Concrete Sealer

## DIVISION 10 SPECIALTIES

10 14 23.16 Room-identification Panel Signage

10 21 13.16	Plastic-laminate-clad Toilet Compartments
10 21 23	Cubicle Curtains and Tracks
10 26 00	Wall and Door Protection
10 28 00	Toilet and Bath Accessories
10 41 16	Emergency Key Vaults
10 43 13	Defibrillator Cabinets
10 44 13	Fire Protection Cabinets
10 44 16	Fire Extinguishers
10 73 16	Metal Canopies

DIVISION 11 EQUIPMENT – NOT USED

DIVISION 12 FURNISHINGS

12 21 13	Horizontal Louver Blinds
12 36 23.13	Plastic-laminate-clad Countertops
12 36 61.16	Solid Surfacing Countertops

DIVISION 13 SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION – NOT USED

DIVISION 14 CONVEYING SYSTEMS – NOT USED

DIVISION 15 THROUGH 19 – NOT USED

**\*\*\*\*\*VOLUME 2\*\*\*\*\***

**FACILITY SERVICES SUBGROUP**

DIVISION 20 FACILITY SERVICES – NOT USED

DIVISION 21 FIRE SUPPRESSION

21 00 00	General Fire Suppression Requirements
21 05 00	Common Work Results for Fire Suppression
21 05 13	Common Motor Requirements for Fire Suppression
21 05 23	General-Duty Valves for Fire-Suppression
21 05 48	Vibration and Seismic Controls for Fire Suppression
21 05 53	Fire-Suppression Identification
21 07 00	Fire Suppression Systems Insulation
21 13 13	Wet-Pipe Sprinkler System

DIVISION 22 PLUMBING

22 00 0	General Mechanical Requirements
22 05 00	Common Work Results for Mechanical
22 05 13	Common Motor Requirements for Mechanical
22 05 17	Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping
22 05 19	Meters and Gauges for Mechanical
22 05 23	General-Duty Valves for Mechanical
22 05 29	Hangers and Supports for Mechanical
22 05 48	Vibration and Seismic Controls for Mechanical
22 05 53	Mechanical Identification
22 07 00	Mechanical Insulation
22 10 05	Plumbing Piping
22 11 16	Domestic Water Piping
22 11 19	Domestic Water Piping Specialties

22 11 23	Domestic Water Pumps
22 13 16	Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping
22 13 19	Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties
22 14 13	Storm Drainage Piping
22 14 23	Storm Drainage Piping Specialties
22 30 00	Plumbing Equipment
22 40 00	Plumbing Fixtures
22 61 13	Compressed-Air, Gas, and Vacuum Piping for Laboratory and Healthcare Facilities
22 62 13	Vacuum Piping for Laboratory and Healthcare Facilities
22 63 13	Gas Piping for Laboratory and Healthcare Facilities

DIVISION 23 HEATING, VENTILATING, AND AIR CONDITIONING (HVAC)

23 00 00	General HVAC Requirements
23 05 00	Common Work Results for Mechanical
23 05 13	Common Motor Requirements for Mechanical
23 05 16	Expansion Fittings and Loops for Mechanical Piping
23 05 23	General-Duty Valves for Mechanical
23 05 29	Hangers and Supports for Mechanical
23 05 48	Vibration and Seismic Controls for Mechanical
23 05 53	Mechanical Identification
23 05 93	Testing, Adjusting and Balancing for HVAC
23 07 00	Mechanical Insulation
23 08 00	Commissioning of HVAC
23 09 00	Direct Digital Control (DDC) for HVAC
23 21 13	Hydronic Piping
23 21 23	Hydronic Pumps
23 25 00	HVAC Water Treatment for Glycol Systems
23 29 23	Variable Frequency Controllers for HVAC
23 31 13	Metal Ducts
23 33 00	Duct Accessories
23 34 43	Fans
23 36 00	Air Terminal Units
23 37 13	Diffusers, Registers, and Grilles
23 37 23	HVAC Louvers and Gravity Ventilators
23 52 13	Electric Boilers
23 64 23	Air Cooled, Scroll Water Chillers
23 74 13	Roof Mounted Custom Air Handling Unit
23 74 16	Packaged Rooftop Air Conditioning Units
23 81 26.13	Small Capacity Split System Air Conditioners
23 84 13	Humidifiers

DIVISION 24 THROUGH 25 – NOT USED

DIVISION 26 ELECTRICAL

26 00 00	General Electrical Requirements
26 05 00	Common Work Results for Electrical
26 05 19	Conductors and Cables for Electrical
26 05 26	Grounding and Bonding for Electrical
26 05 29	Hangers and Supports for Electrical
26 05 33	Raceways and Boxes for Electrical
26 05 53	Electrical Identification
26 05 73	Power System Studies
26 08 00	Commissioning of Electrical Systems
26 09 43	Addressable Network Lighting Controls

26 22 00	Low-Voltage Transformers
26 24 13	Switchboards
26 24 16	Panelboards
26 24 21	Hospital Isolation Power Panelboards
26 27 26	Wiring Devices
26 28 16	Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers
26 32 13	Engine Generators
26 36 00	Transfer Switches
26 41 13	Lighting Protection for Structures
26 43 13	Surge Protective Devices for Low Voltage Electrical Power Circuits
26 51 19	LED Interior Lighting
26 56 19	LED Exterior Lighting

**DIVISION 27 COMMUNICATIONS**

27 00 00	General Communication Requirements
27 05 00	Common Work Results for Communications
27 05 26	Grounding and Bonding for Communications
27 05 29	Hangers and Supports for Communications
27 05 33	Raceways and Boxes for Communications
27 05 53	Communications Identifications

**DIVISION 28 ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY**

28 00 00	General Electronic Safety and Security Requirements
28 05 00	Common Work Results for Electronic Safety and Security
28 05 19	Conductors and Cables for Electronic Safety and Security
28 05 26	Grounding and Bonding for Electronic Safety and Security
28 05 29	Hangers and Supports for Electronic Safety and Security
28 05 33	Raceways and Boxes for Electronic Safety and Security
28 05 53	Electronic Safety and Security Identification
28 46 21	Digital, Addressable, Fire-Alarm System

**DIVISION 29 – NOT USED**

**SITE AND INFRASTRUCTURE SUBGROUP**

**DIVISION 30 – NOT USED**

**DIVISION 31 EARTHWORK**

31 31 16	Termite Control
----------	-----------------

**DIVISION 32 THROUGH 39 – NOT USED**

**PROCESS EQUIPMENT SUBGROUP**

**DIVISION 40 THROUGH 49 – NOT USED**

END OF SECTION 00 01 10

September 15, 2023

Novant ASC Leland  
Construction Documents

1721843900





SECTION 00 65 36 - CONTRACTOR'S GENERAL WARRANTY

NOVANT ASC LELAND  
9151 OCEAN HIGHWAY E  
LELAND, NC 28451

The undersigned Contractor hereby warrants, in accordance with the applicable provisions and terms set forth in the Contract Documents, all materials and workmanship incorporated in Novant ASC Leland, 9151 Ocean Highway E, Leland, North Carolina, 28451 against any and all defects due to faulty materials or workmanship or negligence for a period of 12 months, or such longer periods as set forth in the Contract Documents, from the effective date of Substantial Completion. This Contractor further warrants all work incorporated in this project to remain leakproof and watertight at all points for a period of 36 months from the effective date of Substantial Completion.

This Warranty shall be binding where defects occur due to normal usage conditions and does not cover willful or malicious damage, damage caused by acts of God or other casualty beyond the control of the Contractor.

This Warranty shall be in addition to other warranties and guarantees set forth in the Contract Documents, and shall not act to constitute a waiver of additional protection of the Owner afforded, where applicable, by consumer protection and product liability provisions of law, and these stipulations shall not constitute waiver of any additional rights or remedies available to the Owner under the law.

Signed: \_\_\_\_\_

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

(Corporate Seal)

Subscribed and sworn before me this  
\_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_\_\_.

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Notary Public)

END OF SECTION 00 65 36



SECTION 00 65 37 - ASBESTOS-FREE WARRANTY

NOVANT ASC LELAND  
9151 OCEAN HIGHWAY E  
LELAND, NC 28451

The undersigned Contractor hereby warrants that no asbestos-containing materials of any kind were used in the construction of Novant ASC Leland, 9151 Ocean Highway E, Leland, North Carolina, 28451.

Signed: \_\_\_\_\_

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

(Corporate Seal)

Subscribed and sworn before me this  
\_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_\_\_.

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Notary Public)

END OF SECTION 00 65 37

September 15, 2023

Novant ASC Leland  
Construction Documents

1721843900



SECTION 00 72 00 - GENERAL CONDITIONS OF THE CONTRACT FOR CONSTRUCTION

The *General Conditions of the Contract for Construction*, AIA Document A-201, 2017 Edition, shall be the form of General Conditions, and is incorporated into the Contract Documents.

END OF SECTION 00 72 00





# AIA® Document A201® – 2017

## General Conditions of the Contract for Construction

for the following PROJECT:  
*(Name and location or address)*

Novant ASC Leland  
9151 Ocean Highway East  
Leland, North Carolina 28451

**THE OWNER:**  
*(Name, legal status and address)*

Novant Health  
2085 Frontis Plaza Boulevard  
Winston Salem, North Carolina 27103

**THE ARCHITECT:**  
*(Name, legal status and address)*

Little Diversified Architectural Consulting  
615 South College Street  
Suite 1600  
Charlotte, North Carolina 28202

### TABLE OF ARTICLES

- 1 GENERAL PROVISIONS
- 2 OWNER
- 3 CONTRACTOR
- 4 ARCHITECT
- 5 SUBCONTRACTORS
- 6 CONSTRUCTION BY OWNER OR BY SEPARATE CONTRACTORS
- 7 CHANGES IN THE WORK
- 8 TIME
- 9 PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION
- 10 PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY
- 11 INSURANCE AND BONDS
- 12 UNCOVERING AND CORRECTION OF WORK
- 13 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

This document has important legal consequences. Consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its completion or modification.

For guidance in modifying this document to include supplementary conditions, see AIA Document A503™, Guide for Supplementary Conditions.

14 TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE CONTRACT

15 CLAIMS AND DISPUTES



Init.  
/



## INDEX

(Topics and numbers in bold are Section headings.)

### Acceptance of Nonconforming Work

9.6.6, 9.9.3, **12.3**

Acceptance of Work

9.6.6, 9.8.2, 9.9.3, 9.10.1, 9.10.3, 12.3

### Access to Work

**3.16**, 6.2.1, 12.1

Accident Prevention

10

Acts and Omissions

3.2, 3.3.2, 3.12.8, 3.18, 4.2.3, 8.3.1, 9.5.1, 10.2.5, 10.2.8, 13.3.2, 14.1, 15.1.2, 15.2

Addenda

1.1.1

Additional Costs, Claims for

3.7.4, 3.7.5, 10.3.2, 15.1.5

### Additional Inspections and Testing

9.4.2, 9.8.3, 12.2.1, **13.4**

### Additional Time, Claims for

3.2.4, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.10.2, 8.3.2, **15.1.6**

### Administration of the Contract

3.1.3, **4.2**, 9.4, 9.5

Advertisement or Invitation to Bid

1.1.1

Aesthetic Effect

4.2.13

### Allowances

**3.8**

### Applications for Payment

4.2.5, 7.3.9, 9.2, **9.3**, 9.4, 9.5.1, 9.5.4, 9.6.3, 9.7, 9.10

Approvals

2.1.1, 2.3.1, 2.5, 3.1.3, 3.10.2, 3.12.8, 3.12.9,

3.12.10.1, 4.2.7, 9.3.2, 13.4.1

### Arbitration

8.3.1, 15.3.2, **15.4**

## ARCHITECT

**4**

Architect, Definition of

**4.1.1**

Architect, Extent of Authority

2.5, 3.12.7, 4.1.2, 4.2, 5.2, 6.3, 7.1.2, 7.3.4, 7.4, 9.2, 9.3.1, 9.4, 9.5, 9.6.3, 9.8, 9.10.1, 9.10.3, 12.1, 12.2.1, 13.4.1, 13.4.2, 14.2.2, 14.2.4, 15.1.4, 15.2.1

Architect, Limitations of Authority and Responsibility

2.1.1, 3.12.4, 3.12.8, 3.12.10, 4.1.2, 4.2.1, 4.2.2, 4.2.3, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 4.2.10, 4.2.12, 4.2.13, 5.2.1, 7.4, 9.4.2, 9.5.4, 9.6.4, 15.1.4, 15.2

Architect's Additional Services and Expenses

2.5, 12.2.1, 13.4.2, 13.4.3, 14.2.4

Architect's Administration of the Contract

3.1.3, 3.7.4, 15.2, 9.4.1, 9.5

Architect's Approvals

2.5, 3.1.3, 3.5, 3.10.2, 4.2.7

Architect's Authority to Reject Work

3.5, 4.2.6, 12.1.2, 12.2.1

Architect's Copyright

1.1.7, 1.5

Architect's Decisions

3.7.4, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 4.2.11, 4.2.12, 4.2.13, 4.2.14, 6.3, 7.3.4, 7.3.9, 8.1.3, 8.3.1, 9.2, 9.4.1, 9.5, 9.8.4, 9.9.1, 13.4.2, 15.2

Architect's Inspections

3.7.4, 4.2.2, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.8.3, 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 13.4

Architect's Instructions

3.2.4, 3.3.1, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 13.4.2

Architect's Interpretations

4.2.11, 4.2.12

Architect's Project Representative

4.2.10

Architect's Relationship with Contractor

1.1.2, 1.5, 2.3.3, 3.1.3, 3.2.2, 3.2.3, 3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.4.2, 3.5, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.9.2, 3.9.3, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12, 3.16, 3.18, 4.1.2, 4.2, 5.2, 6.2.2, 7, 8.3.1, 9.2, 9.3, 9.4, 9.5, 9.7, 9.8, 9.9, 10.2.6, 10.3, 11.3, 12, 13.3.2, 13.4, 15.2

Architect's Relationship with Subcontractors

1.1.2, 4.2.3, 4.2.4, 4.2.6, 9.6.3, 9.6.4, 11.3

Architect's Representations

9.4.2, 9.5.1, 9.10.1

Architect's Site Visits

3.7.4, 4.2.2, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.5.1, 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 13.4

Asbestos

10.3.1

Attorneys' Fees

3.18.1, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 10.3.3

Award of Separate Contracts

6.1.1, 6.1.2

### Award of Subcontracts and Other Contracts for Portions of the Work

**5.2**

### Basic Definitions

**1.1**

Bidding Requirements

1.1.1

Binding Dispute Resolution

8.3.1, 9.7, 11.5, 13.1, 15.1.2, 15.1.3, 15.2.1, 15.2.5, 15.2.6.1, 15.3.1, 15.3.2, 15.3.3, 15.4.1

Bonds, Lien

7.3.4.4, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 9.10.3

### Bonds, Performance, and Payment

7.3.4.4, 9.6.7, 9.10.3, **11.1.2**, 11.1.3, **11.5**

### Building Information Models Use and Reliance

**1.8**

Building Permit

3.7.1

### Capitalization

**1.3**

Certificate of Substantial Completion

9.8.3, 9.8.4, 9.8.5

### Certificates for Payment

4.2.1, 4.2.5, 4.2.9, 9.3.3, **9.4**, 9.5, 9.6.1, 9.6.6, 9.7, 9.10.1, 9.10.3, 14.1.1.3, 14.2.4, 15.1.4  
Certificates of Inspection, Testing or Approval  
13.4.4  
Certificates of Insurance  
9.10.2  
**Change Orders**  
1.1.1, 3.4.2, 3.7.4, 3.8.2.3, 3.11, 3.12.8, 4.2.8, 5.2.3, 7.1.2, 7.1.3, **7.2**, 7.3.2, 7.3.7, 7.3.9, 7.3.10, 8.3.1, 9.3.1.1, 9.10.3, 10.3.2, 11.2, 11.5, 12.1.2  
**Change Orders**, Definition of  
**7.2.1**  
**CHANGES IN THE WORK**  
2.2.2, 3.11, 4.2.8, 7, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 7.4, 8.3.1, 9.3.1.1, 11.5  
**Claims**, Definition of  
**15.1.1**  
Claims, Notice of  
1.6.2, 15.1.3  
**CLAIMS AND DISPUTES**  
3.2.4, 6.1.1, 6.3, 7.3.9, 9.3.3, 9.10.4, 10.3.3, **15**, 15.4  
Claims and Timely Assertion of Claims  
15.4.1  
**Claims for Additional Cost**  
3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.7.4, 7.3.9, 9.5.2, 10.2.5, 10.3.2, **15.1.5**  
**Claims for Additional Time**  
3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.7.4, 6.1.1, 8.3.2, 9.5.2, 10.3.2, **15.1.6**  
**Concealed or Unknown Conditions, Claims for**  
**3.7.4**  
Claims for Damages  
3.2.4, 3.18, 8.3.3, 9.5.1, 9.6.7, 10.2.5, 10.3.3, 11.3, 11.3.2, 14.2.4, 15.1.7  
Claims Subject to Arbitration  
15.4.1  
**Cleaning Up**  
**3.15**, 6.3  
Commencement of the Work, Conditions Relating to  
2.2.1, 3.2.2, 3.4.1, 3.7.1, 3.10.1, 3.12.6, 5.2.1, 5.2.3, 6.2.2, 8.1.2, 8.2.2, 8.3.1, 11.1, 11.2, **15.1.5**  
**Commencement of the Work**, Definition of  
**8.1.2**  
**Communications**  
3.9.1, **4.2.4**  
Completion, Conditions Relating to  
3.4.1, 3.11, 3.15, 4.2.2, 4.2.9, 8.2, 9.4.2, 9.8, 9.9.1, 9.10, 12.2, 14.1.2, 15.1.2  
**COMPLETION, PAYMENTS AND**  
**9**  
Completion, Substantial  
3.10.1, 4.2.9, 8.1.1, 8.1.3, 8.2.3, 9.4.2, 9.8, 9.9.1, 9.10.3, 12.2, 15.1.2  
Compliance with Laws  
2.3.2, 3.2.3, 3.6, 3.7, 3.12.10, 3.13, 9.6.4, 10.2.2, 13.1, 13.3, 13.4.1, 13.4.2, 13.5, 14.1.1, 14.2.1.3, 15.2.8, 15.4.2, 15.4.3  
Concealed or Unknown Conditions  
3.7.4, 4.2.8, 8.3.1, 10.3

Conditions of the Contract  
1.1.1, 6.1.1, 6.1.4  
Consent, Written  
3.4.2, 3.14.2, 4.1.2, 9.8.5, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.3, 13.2, 15.4.4.2  
**Consolidation or Joinder**  
**15.4.4**  
**CONSTRUCTION BY OWNER OR BY SEPARATE CONTRACTORS**  
1.1.4, **6**  
**Construction Change Directive**, Definition of  
**7.3.1**  
**Construction Change Directives**  
1.1.1, 3.4.2, 3.11, 3.12.8, 4.2.8, 7.1.1, 7.1.2, 7.1.3, **7.3**, 9.3.1.1  
Construction Schedules, Contractor's  
3.10, 3.11, 3.12.1, 3.12.2, 6.1.3, 15.1.6.2  
**Contingent Assignment of Subcontracts**  
**5.4**, 14.2.2.2  
**Continuing Contract Performance**  
**15.1.4**  
**Contract**, Definition of  
**1.1.2**  
**CONTRACT, TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE**  
5.4.1.1, 5.4.2, 11.5, **14**  
Contract Administration  
3.1.3, 4, 9.4, 9.5  
Contract Award and Execution, Conditions Relating to  
3.7.1, 3.10, 5.2, 6.1  
Contract Documents, Copies Furnished and Use of  
1.5.2, 2.3.6, 5.3  
**Contract Documents**, Definition of  
**1.1.1**  
**Contract Sum**  
2.2.2, 2.2.4, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.8, 3.10.2, 5.2.3, 7.3, 7.4, **9.1**, 9.2, 9.4.2, 9.5.1.4, 9.6.7, 9.7, 10.3.2, 11.5, 12.1.2, 12.3, 14.2.4, 14.3.2, 15.1.4.2, **15.1.5**, **15.2.5**  
**Contract Sum**, Definition of  
**9.1**  
Contract Time  
1.1.4, 2.2.1, 2.2.2, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.10.2, 5.2.3, 6.1.5, 7.2.1.3, 7.3.1, 7.3.5, 7.3.6, 7, 7, 7.3.10, 7.4, 8.1.1, 8.2.1, 8.2.3, 8.3.1, 9.5.1, 9.7, 10.3.2, 12.1.1, 12.1.2, 14.3.2, 15.1.4.2, 15.1.6.1, 15.2.5  
**Contract Time**, Definition of  
8.1.1  
**CONTRACTOR**  
**3**  
**Contractor**, Definition of  
**3.1**, **6.1.2**  
**Contractor's Construction and Submittal Schedules**  
**3.10**, 3.12.1, 3.12.2, 4.2.3, 6.1.3, 15.1.6.2  
Contractor's Employees

2.2.4, 3.3.2, 3.4.3, 3.8.1, 3.9, 3.18.2, 4.2.3, 4.2.6, 10.2, 10.3, 11.3, 14.1, 14.2.1.1

## **Contractor's Liability Insurance**

### **11.1**

Contractor's Relationship with Separate Contractors and Owner's Forces

3.12.5, 3.14.2, 4.2.4, 6, 11.3, 12.2.4

Contractor's Relationship with Subcontractors

1.2.2, 2.2.4, 3.3.2, 3.18.1, 3.18.2, 4.2.4, 5, 9.6.2, 9.6.7, 9.10.2, 11.2, 11.3, 11.4

Contractor's Relationship with the Architect

1.1.2, 1.5, 2.3.3, 3.1.3, 3.2.2, 3.2.3, 3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.4.2, 3.5.1, 3.7.4, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12, 3.16, 3.18, 4.2, 5.2, 6.2.2, 7, 8.3.1, 9.2, 9.3, 9.4, 9.5, 9.7, 9.8, 9.9, 10.2.6, 10.3, 11.3, 12, 13.4, 15.1.3, 15.2.1

Contractor's Representations

3.2.1, 3.2.2, 3.5, 3.12.6, 6.2.2, 8.2.1, 9.3.3, 9.8.2

Contractor's Responsibility for Those Performing the Work

3.3.2, 3.18, 5.3, 6.1.3, 6.2, 9.5.1, 10.2.8

Contractor's Review of Contract Documents

3.2

Contractor's Right to Stop the Work

2.2.2, 9.7

Contractor's Right to Terminate the Contract

14.1

Contractor's Submittals

3.10, 3.11, 3.12, 4.2.7, 5.2.1, 5.2.3, 9.2, 9.3, 9.8.2, 9.8.3, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.3

Contractor's Superintendent

3.9, 10.2.6

Contractor's Supervision and Construction

Procedures

1.2.2, 3.3, 3.4, 3.12.10, 4.2.2, 4.2.7, 6.1.3, 6.2.4, 7.1.3, 7.3.4, 7.3.6, 8.2, 10, 12, 14, 15.1.4

Coordination and Correlation

1.2, 3.2.1, 3.3.1, 3.10, 3.12.6, 6.1.3, 6.2.1

Copies Furnished of Drawings and Specifications

1.5, 2.3.6, 3.11

Copyrights

1.5, **3.17**

Correction of Work

2.5, 3.7.3, 9.4.2, 9.8.2, 9.8.3, 9.9.1, 12.1.2, **12.2**, 12.3, 15.1.3.1, 15.1.3.2, 15.2.1

**Correlation and Intent of the Contract Documents**

### **1.2**

**Cost**, Definition of

### **7.3.4**

Costs

2.5, 3.2.4, 3.7.3, 3.8.2, 3.15.2, 5.4.2, 6.1.1, 6.2.3, 7.3.3.3, 7.3.4, 7.3.8, 7.3.9, 9.10.2, 10.3.2, 10.3.6, 11.2, 12.1.2, 12.2.1, 12.2.4, 13.4, 14

**Cutting and Patching**

### **3.14**, 6.2.5

Damage to Construction of Owner or Separate Contractors

3.14.2, 6.2.4, 10.2.1.2, 10.2.5, 10.4, 12.2.4

Damage to the Work

3.14.2, 9.9.1, 10.2.1.2, 10.2.5, 10.4, 12.2.4

Damages, Claims for

3.2.4, 3.18, 6.1.1, 8.3.3, 9.5.1, 9.6.7, 10.3.3, 11.3.2, 11.3, 14.2.4, 15.1.7

Damages for Delay

6.2.3, 8.3.3, 9.5.1.6, 9.7, 10.3.2, 14.3.2

**Date of Commencement of the Work**, Definition of

### **8.1.2**

**Date of Substantial Completion**, Definition of

### **8.1.3**

**Day**, Definition of

### **8.1.4**

Decisions of the Architect

3.7.4, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 4.2.11, 4.2.12, 4.2.13, 6.3, 7.3.4, 7.3.9, 8.1.3, 8.3.1, 9.2, 9.4, 9.5.1, 9.8.4, 9.9.1, 13.4.2, 14.2.2, 14.2.4, 15.1, 15.2

**Decisions to Withhold Certification**

9.4.1, **9.5**, 9.7, 14.1.1.3

Defective or Nonconforming Work, Acceptance, Rejection and Correction of

2.5, 3.5, 4.2.6, 6.2.3, 9.5.1, 9.5.3, 9.6.6, 9.8.2, 9.9.3, 9.10.4, 12.2.1

Definitions

1.1, 2.1.1, 3.1.1, 3.5, 3.12.1, 3.12.2, 3.12.3, 4.1.1, 5.1, 6.1.2, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 8.1, 9.1, 9.8.1, 15.1.1

**Delays and Extensions of Time**

**3.2**, **3.7.4**, 5.2.3, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, **7.4**, **8.3**, 9.5.1, **9.7**, 10.3.2, **10.4**, 14.3.2, **15.1.6**, 15.2.5

**Digital Data Use and Transmission**

### **1.7**

Disputes

6.3, 7.3.9, 15.1, 15.2

**Documents and Samples at the Site**

### **3.11**

**Drawings**, Definition of

### **1.1.5**

Drawings and Specifications, Use and Ownership of

3.11

Effective Date of Insurance

8.2.2

**Emergencies**

### **10.4**, 14.1.1.2, **15.1.5**

Employees, Contractor's

3.3.2, 3.4.3, 3.8.1, 3.9, 3.18.2, 4.2.3, 4.2.6, 10.2, 10.3.3, 11.3, 14.1, 14.2.1.1

Equipment, Labor, or Materials

1.1.3, 1.1.6, 3.4, 3.5, 3.8.2, 3.8.3, 3.12, 3.13, 3.15.1, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 5.2.1, 6.2.1, 7.3.4, 9.3.2, 9.3.3, 9.5.1.3, 9.10.2, 10.2.1, 10.2.4, 14.2.1.1, 14.2.1.2

Execution and Progress of the Work

1.1.3, 1.2.1, 1.2.2, 2.3.4, 2.3.6, 3.1, 3.3.1, 3.4.1, 3.7.1, 3.10.1, 3.12, 3.14, 4.2, 6.2.2, 7.1.3, 7.3.6, 8.2, 9.5.1, 9.9.1, 10.2, 10.3, 12.1, 12.2, 14.2, 14.3.1, 15.1.4

Extensions of Time

3.2.4, 3.7.4, 5.2.3, 7.2.1, 7.3, 7.4, 9.5.1, 9.7, 10.3.2, 10.4, 14.3, 15.1.6, **15.2.5**

## **Failure of Payment**

9.5.1.3, **9.7**, 9.10.2, 13.5, 14.1.1.3, 14.2.1.2

Faulty Work

(See Defective or Nonconforming Work)

## **Final Completion and Final Payment**

4.2.1, 4.2.9, 9.8.2, **9.10**, 12.3, 14.2.4, 14.4.3

Financial Arrangements, Owner's

2.2.1, 13.2.2, 14.1.1.4

## **GENERAL PROVISIONS**

### **1**

#### **Governing Law**

##### **13.1**

Guarantees (See Warranty)

#### **Hazardous Materials and Substances**

##### **10.2.4, 10.3**

Identification of Subcontractors and Suppliers

5.2.1

#### **Indemnification**

3.17, **3.18**, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 10.3.3, 11.3

#### **Information and Services Required of the Owner**

2.1.2, **2.2**, 2.3, 3.2.2, 3.12.10.1, 6.1.3, 6.1.4, 6.2.5,

9.6.1, 9.9.2, 9.10.3, 10.3.3, 11.2, 13.4.1, 13.4.2,

14.1.1.4, 14.1.4, 15.1.4

#### **Initial Decision**

##### **15.2**

#### **Initial Decision Maker, Definition of**

1.1.8

Initial Decision Maker, Decisions

14.2.4, 15.1.4.2, 15.2.1, 15.2.2, 15.2.3, 15.2.4, 15.2.5

Initial Decision Maker, Extent of Authority

14.2.4, 15.1.4.2, 15.2.1, 15.2.2, 15.2.3, 15.2.4, 15.2.5

#### **Injury or Damage to Person or Property**

##### **10.2.8, 10.4**

Inspections

3.1.3, 3.3.3, 3.7.1, 4.2.2, 4.2.6, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.8.3,

9.9.2, 9.10.1, 12.2.1, 13.4

Instructions to Bidders

1.1.1

Instructions to the Contractor

3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.8.1, 5.2.1, 7, 8.2.2, 12, 13.4.2

#### **Instruments of Service, Definition of**

##### **1.1.7**

Insurance

6.1.1, 7.3.4, 8.2.2, 9.3.2, 9.8.4, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 10.2.5,

## **11**

#### **Insurance, Notice of Cancellation or Expiration**

##### **11.1.4, 11.2.3**

#### **Insurance, Contractor's Liability**

##### **11.1**

Insurance, Effective Date of

8.2.2, 14.4.2

#### **Insurance, Owner's Liability**

##### **11.2**

#### **Insurance, Property**

**10.2.5**, 11.2, 11.4, 11.5

Insurance, Stored Materials

9.3.2

## **INSURANCE AND BONDS**

### **11**

Insurance Companies, Consent to Partial Occupancy

9.9.1

Insured loss, Adjustment and Settlement of

11.5

Intent of the Contract Documents

1.2.1, 4.2.7, 4.2.12, 4.2.13

#### **Interest**

##### **13.5**

#### **Interpretation**

1.1.8, 1.2.3, **1.4**, 4.1.1, 5.1, 6.1.2, 15.1.1

Interpretations, Written

4.2.11, 4.2.12

Judgment on Final Award

15.4.2

#### **Labor and Materials, Equipment**

1.1.3, 1.1.6, **3.4**, 3.5, 3.8.2, 3.8.3, 3.12, 3.13, 3.15.1,

5.2.1, 6.2.1, 7.3.4, 9.3.2, 9.3.3, 9.5.1.3, 9.10.2, 10.2.1,

10.2.4, 14.2.1.1, 14.2.1.2

Labor Disputes

8.3.1

Laws and Regulations

1.5, 2.3.2, 3.2.3, 3.2.4, 3.6, 3.7, 3.12.10, 3.13, 9.6.4,

9.9.1, 10.2.2, 13.1, 13.3.1, 13.4.2, 13.5, 14, 15.2.8,

15.4

Liens

2.1.2, 9.3.1, 9.3.3, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 9.10.4, 15.2.8

Limitations, Statutes of

12.2.5, 15.1.2, 15.4.1.1

Limitations of Liability

3.2.2, 3.5, 3.12.10, 3.12.10.1, 3.17, 3.18.1, 4.2.6,

4.2.7, 6.2.2, 9.4.2, 9.6.4, 9.6.7, 9.6.8, 10.2.5, 10.3.3,

11.3, 12.2.5, 13.3.1

Limitations of Time

2.1.2, 2.2, 2.5, 3.2.2, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12.5, 3.15.1, 4.2.7,

5.2, 5.3, 5.4.1, 6.2.4, 7.3, 7.4, 8.2, 9.2, 9.3.1, 9.3.3,

9.4.1, 9.5, 9.6, 9.7, 9.8, 9.9, 9.10, 12.2, 13.4, 14, 15,

15.1.2, 15.1.3, 15.1.5

#### **Materials, Hazardous**

##### **10.2.4, 10.3**

Materials, Labor, Equipment and

1.1.3, 1.1.6, 3.4.1, 3.5, 3.8.2, 3.8.3, 3.12, 3.13, 3.15.1,

5.2.1, 6.2.1, 7.3.4, 9.3.2, 9.3.3, 9.5.1.3, 9.10.2,

10.2.1.2, 10.2.4, 14.2.1.1, 14.2.1.2

Means, Methods, Techniques, Sequences and

Procedures of Construction

3.3.1, 3.12.10, 4.2.2, 4.2.7, 9.4.2

Mechanic's Lien

2.1.2, 9.3.1, 9.3.3, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 9.10.4, 15.2.8

#### **Mediation**

8.3.1, 15.1.3.2, 15.2.1, 15.2.5, 15.2.6, **15.3**, 15.4.1,

15.4.1.1

#### **Minor Changes in the Work**

1.1.1, 3.4.2, 3.12.8, 4.2.8, 7.1, **7.4**

## **MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS**

### **13**

## **Modifications, Definition of**

### **1.1.1**

#### **Modifications to the Contract**

1.1.1, 1.1.2, 2.5, 3.11, 4.1.2, 4.2.1, 5.2.3, 7, 8.3.1, 9.7, 10.3.2

## **Mutual Responsibility**

### **6.2**

#### **Nonconforming Work, Acceptance of**

9.6.6, 9.9.3, **12.3**

Nonconforming Work, Rejection and Correction of  
2.4, 2.5, 3.5, 4.2.6, 6.2.4, 9.5.1, 9.8.2, 9.9.3, 9.10.4, 12.2

#### **Notice**

**1.6**, 1.6.1, 1.6.2, 2.1.2, 2.2.2., 2.2.3, 2.2.4, 2.5, 3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.9.2, 3.12.9, 3.12.10, 5.2.1, 7.4, 8.2.2, 9.6.8, 9.7, 9.10.1, 10.2.8, 10.3.2, 11.5, 12.2.2.1, 13.4.1, 13.4.2, 14.1, 14.2.2, 14.4.2, 15.1.3, 15.1.5, 15.1.6, 15.4.1

Notice of Cancellation or Expiration of Insurance

11.1.4, 11.2.3

#### **Notice of Claims**

1.6.2, 2.1.2, 3.7.4, 9.6.8, 10.2.8, **15.1.3**, 15.1.5, 15.1.6, 15.2.8, 15.3.2, 15.4.1

Notice of Testing and Inspections

13.4.1, 13.4.2

Observations, Contractor's

3.2, 3.7.4

Occupancy

2.3.1, 9.6.6, 9.8

Orders, Written

1.1.1, 2.4, 3.9.2, 7, 8.2.2, 11.5, 12.1, 12.2.2.1, 13.4.2, 14.3.1

## **OWNER**

### **2**

**Owner, Definition of**

#### **2.1.1**

**Owner, Evidence of Financial Arrangements**

**2.2**, 13.2.2, 14.1.1.4

**Owner, Information and Services Required of the**

2.1.2, **2.2**, 2.3, 3.2.2, 3.12.10, 6.1.3, 6.1.4, 6.2.5, 9.3.2, 9.6.1, 9.6.4, 9.9.2, 9.10.3, 10.3.3, 11.2, 13.4.1, 13.4.2, 14.1.1.4, 14.1.4, 15.1.4

Owner's Authority

1.5, 2.1.1, 2.3.32.4, 2.5, 3.4.2, 3.8.1, 3.12.10, 3.14.2, 4.1.2, 4.2.4, 4.2.9, 5.2.1, 5.2.4, 5.4.1, 6.1, 6.3, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 8.2.2, 8.3.1, 9.3.2, 9.5.1, 9.6.4, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 10.3.2, 11.4, 11.5, 12.2.2, 12.3, 13.2.2, 14.3, 14.4, 15.2.7

**Owner's Insurance**

#### **11.2**

Owner's Relationship with Subcontractors

1.1.2, 5.2, 5.3, 5.4, 9.6.4, 9.10.2, 14.2.2

**Owner's Right to Carry Out the Work**

**2.5**, 14.2.2

**Owner's Right to Clean Up**

#### **6.3**

**Owner's Right to Perform Construction and to**

**Award Separate Contracts**

### **6.1**

**Owner's Right to Stop the Work**

#### **2.4**

Owner's Right to Suspend the Work

14.3

Owner's Right to Terminate the Contract

14.2, 14.4

**Ownership and Use of Drawings, Specifications and Other Instruments of Service**

1.1.1, 1.1.6, 1.1.7, **1.5**, 2.3.6, 3.2.2, 3.11, 3.17, 4.2.12, 5.3

**Partial Occupancy or Use**

9.6.6, **9.9**

**Patching, Cutting and**

**3.14**, 6.2.5

Patents

3.17

**Payment, Applications for**

4.2.5, 7.3.9, 9.2, **9.3**, 9.4, 9.5, 9.6.3, 9.7, 9.8.5, 9.10.1, 14.2.3, 14.2.4, 14.4.3

**Payment, Certificates for**

4.2.5, 4.2.9, 9.3.3, **9.4**, 9.5, 9.6.1, 9.6.6, 9.7, 9.10.1, 9.10.3, 14.1.1.3, 14.2.4

**Payment, Failure of**

9.5.1.3, **9.7**, 9.10.2, 13.5, 14.1.1.3, 14.2.1.2

Payment, Final

4.2.1, 4.2.9, **9.10**, 12.3, 14.2.4, 14.4.3

**Payment Bond, Performance Bond and**

7.3.4.4, 9.6.7, 9.10.3, **11.1.2**

**Payments, Progress**

9.3, **9.6**, 9.8.5, 9.10.3, 14.2.3, 15.1.4

## **PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION**

### **9**

Payments to Subcontractors

5.4.2, 9.5.1.3, 9.6.2, 9.6.3, 9.6.4, 9.6.7, 14.2.1.2

PCB

10.3.1

**Performance Bond and Payment Bond**

7.3.4.4, 9.6.7, 9.10.3, **11.1.2**

**Permits, Fees, Notices and Compliance with Laws**

2.3.1, **3.7**, 3.13, 7.3.4.4, 10.2.2

## **PERSONS AND PROPERTY, PROTECTION OF**

### **10**

Polychlorinated Biphenyl

10.3.1

**Product Data, Definition of**

#### **3.12.2**

**Product Data and Samples, Shop Drawings**

3.11, **3.12**, 4.2.7

**Progress and Completion**

4.2.2, **8.2**, 9.8, 9.9.1, 14.1.4, 15.1.4

**Progress Payments**

9.3, **9.6**, 9.8.5, 9.10.3, 14.2.3, 15.1.4

**Project, Definition of**

#### **1.1.4**

Project Representatives  
4.2.10  
**Property Insurance**  
10.2.5, 11.2  
**Proposal Requirements**  
1.1.1  
**PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY**  
**10**  
Regulations and Laws  
1.5, 2.3.2, 3.2.3, 3.6, 3.7, 3.12.10, 3.13, 9.6.4, 9.9.1,  
10.2.2, 13.1, 13.3, 13.4.1, 13.4.2, 13.5, 14, 15.2.8,  
15.4  
Rejection of Work  
4.2.6, 12.2.1  
Releases and Waivers of Liens  
9.3.1, 9.10.2  
Representations  
3.2.1, 3.5, 3.12.6, 8.2.1, 9.3.3, 9.4.2, 9.5.1, 9.10.1  
Representatives  
2.1.1, 3.1.1, 3.9, 4.1.1, 4.2.10, 13.2.1  
Responsibility for Those Performing the Work  
3.3.2, 3.18, 4.2.2, 4.2.3, 5.3, 6.1.3, 6.2, 6.3, 9.5.1, 10  
Retainage  
9.3.1, 9.6.2, 9.8.5, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.3  
**Review of Contract Documents and Field**  
**Conditions by Contractor**  
**3.2**, 3.12.7, 6.1.3  
Review of Contractor's Submittals by Owner and  
Architect  
3.10.1, 3.10.2, 3.11, 3.12, 4.2, 5.2, 6.1.3, 9.2, 9.8.2  
Review of Shop Drawings, Product Data and  
Samples by Contractor  
3.12  
**Rights and Remedies**  
1.1.2, 2.4, 2.5, 3.5, 3.7.4, 3.15.2, 4.2.6, 5.3, 5.4, 6.1,  
6.3, 7.3.1, 8.3, 9.5.1, 9.7, 10.2.5, 10.3, 12.2.1, 12.2.2,  
12.2.4, 13.3, 14, 15.4  
**Royalties, Patents and Copyrights**  
**3.17**  
Rules and Notices for Arbitration  
15.4.1  
**Safety of Persons and Property**  
**10.2**, 10.4  
**Safety Precautions and Programs**  
3.3.1, 4.2.2, 4.2.7, 5.3, 10.1, 10.2, 10.4  
**Samples, Definition of**  
**3.12.3**  
**Samples, Shop Drawings, Product Data and**  
3.11, 3.12, 4.2.7  
**Samples at the Site, Documents and**  
**3.11**  
**Schedule of Values**  
**9.2**, 9.3.1  
Schedules, Construction  
3.10, 3.12.1, 3.12.2, 6.1.3, 15.1.6.2  
Separate Contracts and Contractors  
1.1.4, 3.12.5, 3.14.2, 4.2.4, 4.2.7, 6, 8.3.1, 12.1.2

**Separate Contractors, Definition of**  
**6.1.1**  
**Shop Drawings, Definition of**  
**3.12.1**  
**Shop Drawings, Product Data and Samples**  
3.11, 3.12, 4.2.7  
**Site, Use of**  
**3.13**, 6.1.1, 6.2.1  
Site Inspections  
3.2.2, 3.3.3, 3.7.1, 3.7.4, 4.2, 9.9.2, 9.4.2, 9.10.1, 13.4  
Site Visits, Architect's  
3.7.4, 4.2.2, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.5.1, 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 13.4  
Special Inspections and Testing  
4.2.6, 12.2.1, 13.4  
**Specifications, Definition of**  
**1.1.6**  
**Specifications**  
1.1.1, 1.1.6, 1.2.2, 1.5, 3.12.10, 3.17, 4.2.14  
Statute of Limitations  
15.1.2, 15.4.1.1  
Stopping the Work  
2.2.2, 2.4, 9.7, 10.3, 14.1  
Stored Materials  
6.2.1, 9.3.2, 10.2.1.2, 10.2.4  
**Subcontractor, Definition of**  
**5.1.1**  
**SUBCONTRACTORS**  
**5**  
Subcontractors, Work by  
1.2.2, 3.3.2, 3.12.1, 3.18, 4.2.3, 5.2.3, 5.3, 5.4,  
9.3.1.2, 9.6.7  
**Subcontractual Relations**  
**5.3**, 5.4, 9.3.1.2, 9.6, 9.10, 10.2.1, 14.1, 14.2.1  
Submittals  
3.10, 3.11, 3.12, 4.2.7, 5.2.1, 5.2.3, 7.3.4, 9.2, 9.3,  
9.8, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.3  
Submittal Schedule  
3.10.2, 3.12.5, 4.2.7  
**Subrogation, Waivers of**  
6.1.1, 11.3  
**Substances, Hazardous**  
**10.3**  
**Substantial Completion**  
4.2.9, 8.1.1, 8.1.3, 8.2.3, 9.4.2, 9.8, 9.9.1, 9.10.3,  
12.2, 15.1.2  
**Substantial Completion, Definition of**  
**9.8.1**  
Substitution of Subcontractors  
5.2.3, 5.2.4  
Substitution of Architect  
2.3.3  
Substitutions of Materials  
3.4.2, 3.5, 7.3.8  
**Sub-subcontractor, Definition of**  
**5.1.2**  
Subsurface Conditions  
3.7.4

## **Successors and Assigns**

### **13.2**

#### **Superintendent**

3.9, 10.2.6

#### **Supervision and Construction Procedures**

1.2.2, 3.3, 3.4, 3.12.10, 4.2.2, 4.2.7, 6.1.3, 6.2.4,

7.1.3, 7.3.4, 8.2, 8.3.1, 9.4.2, 10, 12, 14, 15.1.4

#### **Suppliers**

1.5, 3.12.1, 4.2.4, 4.2.6, 5.2.1, 9.3, 9.4.2, 9.5.4, 9.6,

9.10.5, 14.2.1

#### **Surety**

5.4.1.2, 9.6.8, 9.8.5, 9.10.2, 9.10.3, 11.1.2, 14.2.2,

15.2.7

Surety, Consent of

9.8.5, 9.10.2, 9.10.3

#### **Surveys**

1.1.7, 2.3.4

#### **Suspension by the Owner for Convenience**

### **14.3**

Suspension of the Work

3.7.5, 5.4.2, 14.3

Suspension or Termination of the Contract

5.4.1.1, 14

#### **Taxes**

3.6, 3.8.2.1, 7.3.4.4

#### **Termination by the Contractor**

14.1, 15.1.7

#### **Termination by the Owner for Cause**

5.4.1.1, 14.2, 15.1.7

#### **Termination by the Owner for Convenience**

### **14.4**

Termination of the Architect

2.3.3

Termination of the Contractor Employment

14.2.2

## **TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE CONTRACT**

### **14**

#### **Tests and Inspections**

3.1.3, 3.3.3, 3.7.1, 4.2.2, 4.2.6, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.8.3,

9.9.2, 9.10.1, 10.3.2, 12.2.1, 13.4

#### **TIME**

### **8**

#### **Time, Delays and Extensions of**

3.2.4, 3.7.4, 5.2.3, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 7.4, 8.3, 9.5.1, 9.7,

10.3.2, 10.4, 14.3.2, 15.1.6, 15.2.5

Time Limits

2.1.2, 2.2, 2.5, 3.2.2, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12.5, 3.15.1, 4.2,  
5.2, 5.3, 5.4, 6.2.4, 7.3, 7.4, 8.2, 9.2, 9.3.1, 9.3.3,  
9.4.1, 9.5, 9.6, 9.7, 9.8, 9.9, 9.10, 12.2, 13.4, 14,  
15.1.2, 15.1.3, 15.4

#### **Time Limits on Claims**

3.7.4, 10.2.8, 15.1.2, 15.1.3

Title to Work

9.3.2, 9.3.3

## **UNCOVERING AND CORRECTION OF WORK**

### **12**

#### **Uncovering of Work**

### **12.1**

Unforeseen Conditions, Concealed or Unknown

3.7.4, 8.3.1, 10.3

Unit Prices

7.3.3.2, 9.1.2

Use of Documents

1.1.1, 1.5, 2.3.6, 3.12.6, 5.3

#### **Use of Site**

3.13, 6.1.1, 6.2.1

#### **Values, Schedule of**

9.2, 9.3.1

Waiver of Claims by the Architect

13.3.2

Waiver of Claims by the Contractor

9.10.5, 13.3.2, 15.1.7

Waiver of Claims by the Owner

9.9.3, 9.10.3, 9.10.4, 12.2.2.1, 13.3.2, 14.2.4, 15.1.7

Waiver of Consequential Damages

14.2.4, 15.1.7

Waiver of Liens

9.3, 9.10.2, 9.10.4

#### **Waivers of Subrogation**

6.1.1, 11.3

#### **Warranty**

3.5, 4.2.9, 9.3.3, 9.8.4, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.4, 12.2.2,

15.1.2

Weather Delays

8.3, 15.1.6.2

#### **Work, Definition of**

### **1.1.3**

Written Consent

1.5.2, 3.4.2, 3.7.4, 3.12.8, 3.14.2, 4.1.2, 9.3.2, 9.10.3,

13.2, 13.3.2, 15.4.4.2

Written Interpretations

4.2.11, 4.2.12

Written Orders

1.1.1, 2.4, 3.9, 7, 8.2.2, 12.1, 12.2, 13.4.2, 14.3.1

## **ARTICLE 1 GENERAL PROVISIONS**

### **§ 1.1 Basic Definitions**

#### **§ 1.1.1 The Contract Documents**

The Contract Documents are enumerated in the Agreement between the Owner and Contractor (hereinafter the Agreement) and consist of the Agreement, Conditions of the Contract (General, Supplementary and other Conditions), Drawings, Specifications, Addenda issued prior to execution of the Contract, other documents listed in the Agreement, and Modifications issued after execution of the Contract. A Modification is (1) a written amendment to the Contract signed by both parties, (2) a Change Order, (3) a Construction Change Directive, or (4) a written order for a minor change in the Work issued by the Architect. Unless specifically enumerated in the Agreement, the Contract Documents do not include the advertisement or invitation to bid, Instructions to Bidders, sample forms, other information furnished by the Owner in anticipation of receiving bids or proposals, the Contractor's bid or proposal, or portions of Addenda relating to bidding or proposal requirements.

#### **§ 1.1.2 The Contract**

The Contract Documents form the Contract for Construction. The Contract represents the entire and integrated agreement between the parties hereto and supersedes prior negotiations, representations, or agreements, either written or oral. The Contract may be amended or modified only by a Modification. The Contract Documents shall not be construed to create a contractual relationship of any kind (1) between the Contractor and the Architect or the Architect's consultants, (2) between the Owner and a Subcontractor or a Sub-subcontractor, (3) between the Owner and the Architect or the Architect's consultants, or (4) between any persons or entities other than the Owner and the Contractor. The Architect shall, however, be entitled to performance and enforcement of obligations under the Contract intended to facilitate performance of the Architect's duties.

#### **§ 1.1.3 The Work**

The term "Work" means the construction and services required by the Contract Documents, whether completed or partially completed, and includes all other labor, materials, equipment, and services provided or to be provided by the Contractor to fulfill the Contractor's obligations. The Work may constitute the whole or a part of the Project.

#### **§ 1.1.4 The Project**

The Project is the total construction of which the Work performed under the Contract Documents may be the whole or a part and which may include construction by the Owner and by Separate Contractors.

#### **§ 1.1.5 The Drawings**

The Drawings are the graphic and pictorial portions of the Contract Documents showing the design, location and dimensions of the Work, generally including plans, elevations, sections, details, schedules, and diagrams.

#### **§ 1.1.6 The Specifications**

The Specifications are that portion of the Contract Documents consisting of the written requirements for materials, equipment, systems, standards and workmanship for the Work, and performance of related services.

#### **§ 1.1.7 Instruments of Service**

Instruments of Service are representations, in any medium of expression now known or later developed, of the tangible and intangible creative work performed by the Architect and the Architect's consultants under their respective professional services agreements. Instruments of Service may include, without limitation, studies, surveys, models, sketches, drawings, specifications, and other similar materials.

#### **§ 1.1.8 Initial Decision Maker**

The Initial Decision Maker is the person identified in the Agreement to render initial decisions on Claims in accordance with Section 15.2. The Initial Decision Maker shall not show partiality to the Owner or Contractor and shall not be liable for results of interpretations or decisions rendered in good faith.

### **§ 1.2 Correlation and Intent of the Contract Documents**

**§ 1.2.1** The intent of the Contract Documents is to include all items necessary for the proper execution and completion of the Work by the Contractor. The Contract Documents are complementary, and what is required by one shall be as binding as if required by all; performance by the Contractor shall be required only to the extent consistent with the Contract Documents and reasonably inferable from them as being necessary to produce the indicated results.



**§ 1.2.1.1** The invalidity of any provision of the Contract Documents shall not invalidate the Contract or its remaining provisions. If it is determined that any provision of the Contract Documents violates any law, or is otherwise invalid or unenforceable, then that provision shall be revised to the extent necessary to make that provision legal and enforceable. In such case the Contract Documents shall be construed, to the fullest extent permitted by law, to give effect to the parties' intentions and purposes in executing the Contract.

**§ 1.2.2** Organization of the Specifications into divisions, sections and articles, and arrangement of Drawings shall not control the Contractor in dividing the Work among Subcontractors or in establishing the extent of Work to be performed by any trade.

**§ 1.2.3** Unless otherwise stated in the Contract Documents, words that have well-known technical or construction industry meanings are used in the Contract Documents in accordance with such recognized meanings.

### **§ 1.3 Capitalization**

Terms capitalized in these General Conditions include those that are (1) specifically defined, (2) the titles of numbered articles, or (3) the titles of other documents published by the American Institute of Architects.

### **§ 1.4 Interpretation**

In the interest of brevity the Contract Documents frequently omit modifying words such as "all" and "any" and articles such as "the" and "an," but the fact that a modifier or an article is absent from one statement and appears in another is not intended to affect the interpretation of either statement.

### **§ 1.5 Ownership and Use of Drawings, Specifications, and Other Instruments of Service**

**§ 1.5.1** The Architect and the Architect's consultants shall be deemed the authors and owners of their respective Instruments of Service, including the Drawings and Specifications, and retain all common law, statutory, and other reserved rights in their Instruments of Service, including copyrights. The Contractor, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, and suppliers shall not own or claim a copyright in the Instruments of Service. Submittal or distribution to meet official regulatory requirements or for other purposes in connection with the Project is not to be construed as publication in derogation of the Architect's or Architect's consultants' reserved rights.

**§ 1.5.2** The Contractor, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, and suppliers are authorized to use and reproduce the Instruments of Service provided to them, subject to any protocols established pursuant to Sections 1.7 and 1.8, solely and exclusively for execution of the Work. All copies made under this authorization shall bear the copyright notice, if any, shown on the Instruments of Service. The Contractor, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, and suppliers may not use the Instruments of Service on other projects or for additions to the Project outside the scope of the Work without the specific written consent of the Owner, Architect, and the Architect's consultants.

### **§ 1.6 Notice**

**§ 1.6.1** Except as otherwise provided in Section 1.6.2, where the Contract Documents require one party to notify or give notice to the other party, such notice shall be provided in writing to the designated representative of the party to whom the notice is addressed and shall be deemed to have been duly served if delivered in person, by mail, by courier, or by electronic transmission if a method for electronic transmission is set forth in the Agreement.

**§ 1.6.2** Notice of Claims as provided in Section 15.1.3 shall be provided in writing and shall be deemed to have been duly served only if delivered to the designated representative of the party to whom the notice is addressed by certified or registered mail, or by courier providing proof of delivery.

### **§ 1.7 Digital Data Use and Transmission**

The parties shall agree upon protocols governing the transmission and use of Instruments of Service or any other information or documentation in digital form. The parties will use AIA Document E203™–2013, Building Information Modeling and Digital Data Exhibit, to establish the protocols for the development, use, transmission, and exchange of digital data.

### **§ 1.8 Building Information Models Use and Reliance**

Any use of, or reliance on, all or a portion of a building information model without agreement to protocols governing the use of, and reliance on, the information contained in the model and without having those protocols set

forth in AIA Document E203™–2013, Building Information Modeling and Digital Data Exhibit, and the requisite AIA Document G202™–2013, Project Building Information Modeling Protocol Form, shall be at the using or relying party's sole risk and without liability to the other party and its contractors or consultants, the authors of, or contributors to, the building information model, and each of their agents and employees.

## **ARTICLE 2 OWNER**

### **§ 2.1 General**

**§ 2.1.1** The Owner is the person or entity identified as such in the Agreement and is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number. The Owner shall designate in writing a representative who shall have express authority to bind the Owner with respect to all matters requiring the Owner's approval or authorization. Except as otherwise provided in Section 4.2.1, the Architect does not have such authority. The term "Owner" means the Owner or the Owner's authorized representative.

**§ 2.1.2** The Owner shall furnish to the Contractor, within fifteen days after receipt of a written request, information necessary and relevant for the Contractor to evaluate, give notice of, or enforce mechanic's lien rights. Such information shall include a correct statement of the record legal title to the property on which the Project is located, usually referred to as the site, and the Owner's interest therein.

### **§ 2.2 Evidence of the Owner's Financial Arrangements**

**§ 2.2.1** Prior to commencement of the Work and upon written request by the Contractor, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor reasonable evidence that the Owner has made financial arrangements to fulfill the Owner's obligations under the Contract. The Contractor shall have no obligation to commence the Work until the Owner provides such evidence. If commencement of the Work is delayed under this Section 2.2.1, the Contract Time shall be extended appropriately.

**§ 2.2.2** Following commencement of the Work and upon written request by the Contractor, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor reasonable evidence that the Owner has made financial arrangements to fulfill the Owner's obligations under the Contract only if (1) the Owner fails to make payments to the Contractor as the Contract Documents require; (2) the Contractor identifies in writing a reasonable concern regarding the Owner's ability to make payment when due; or (3) a change in the Work materially changes the Contract Sum. If the Owner fails to provide such evidence, as required, within fourteen days of the Contractor's request, the Contractor may immediately stop the Work and, in that event, shall notify the Owner that the Work has stopped. However, if the request is made because a change in the Work materially changes the Contract Sum under (3) above, the Contractor may immediately stop only that portion of the Work affected by the change until reasonable evidence is provided. If the Work is stopped under this Section 2.2.2, the Contract Time shall be extended appropriately and the Contract Sum shall be increased by the amount of the Contractor's reasonable costs of shutdown, delay and start-up, plus interest as provided in the Contract Documents.

**§ 2.2.3** After the Owner furnishes evidence of financial arrangements under this Section 2.2, the Owner shall not materially vary such financial arrangements without prior notice to the Contractor.

**§ 2.2.4** Where the Owner has designated information furnished under this Section 2.2 as "confidential," the Contractor shall keep the information confidential and shall not disclose it to any other person. However, the Contractor may disclose "confidential" information, after seven (7) days' notice to the Owner, where disclosure is required by law, including a subpoena or other form of compulsory legal process issued by a court or governmental entity, or by court or arbitrator(s) order. The Contractor may also disclose "confidential" information to its employees, consultants, sureties, Subcontractors and their employees, Sub-subcontractors, and others who need to know the content of such information solely and exclusively for the Project and who agree to maintain the confidentiality of such information.

### **§ 2.3 Information and Services Required of the Owner**

**§ 2.3.1** Except for permits and fees that are the responsibility of the Contractor under the Contract Documents, including those required under Section 3.7.1, the Owner shall secure and pay for necessary approvals, easements, assessments and charges required for construction, use or occupancy of permanent structures or for permanent changes in existing facilities.

**§ 2.3.2** The Owner shall retain an architect lawfully licensed to practice architecture, or an entity lawfully practicing architecture, in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. That person or entity is identified as the Architect in the Agreement and is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number.

**§ 2.3.3** If the employment of the Architect terminates, the Owner shall employ a successor to whom the Contractor has no reasonable objection and whose status under the Contract Documents shall be that of the Architect.

**§ 2.3.4** The Owner shall furnish surveys describing physical characteristics, legal limitations and utility locations for the site of the Project, and a legal description of the site. The Contractor shall be entitled to rely on the accuracy of information furnished by the Owner but shall exercise proper precautions relating to the safe performance of the Work.

**§ 2.3.5** The Owner shall furnish information or services required of the Owner by the Contract Documents with reasonable promptness. The Owner shall also furnish any other information or services under the Owner's control and relevant to the Contractor's performance of the Work with reasonable promptness after receiving the Contractor's written request for such information or services.

**§ 2.3.6** Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor one copy of the Contract Documents for purposes of making reproductions pursuant to Section 1.5.2.

#### **§ 2.4 Owner's Right to Stop the Work**

If the Contractor fails to correct Work that is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents as required by Section 12.2 or repeatedly fails to carry out Work in accordance with the Contract Documents, the Owner may issue a written order to the Contractor to stop the Work, or any portion thereof, until the cause for such order has been eliminated; however, the right of the Owner to stop the Work shall not give rise to a duty on the part of the Owner to exercise this right for the benefit of the Contractor or any other person or entity, except to the extent required by Section 6.1.3.

#### **§ 2.5 Owner's Right to Carry Out the Work**

If the Contractor defaults or neglects to carry out the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents and fails within a ten-day period after receipt of notice from the Owner to commence and continue correction of such default or neglect with diligence and promptness, the Owner may, without prejudice to other remedies the Owner may have, correct such default or neglect. Such action by the Owner and amounts charged to the Contractor are both subject to prior approval of the Architect and the Architect may, pursuant to Section 9.5.1, withhold or nullify a Certificate for Payment in whole or in part, to the extent reasonably necessary to reimburse the Owner for the reasonable cost of correcting such deficiencies, including Owner's expenses and compensation for the Architect's additional services made necessary by such default, neglect, or failure. If current and future payments are not sufficient to cover such amounts, the Contractor shall pay the difference to the Owner. If the Contractor disagrees with the actions of the Owner or the Architect, or the amounts claimed as costs to the Owner, the Contractor may file a Claim pursuant to Article 15.

### **ARTICLE 3 CONTRACTOR**

#### **§ 3.1 General**

**§ 3.1.1** The Contractor is the person or entity identified as such in the Agreement and is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number. The Contractor shall be lawfully licensed, if required in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. The Contractor shall designate in writing a representative who shall have express authority to bind the Contractor with respect to all matters under this Contract. The term "Contractor" means the Contractor or the Contractor's authorized representative.

**§ 3.1.2** The Contractor shall perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

**§ 3.1.3** The Contractor shall not be relieved of its obligations to perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents either by activities or duties of the Architect in the Architect's administration of the Contract, or by tests, inspections or approvals required or performed by persons or entities other than the Contractor.

### **§ 3.2 Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions by Contractor**

**§ 3.2.1** Execution of the Contract by the Contractor is a representation that the Contractor has visited the site, become generally familiar with local conditions under which the Work is to be performed, and correlated personal observations with requirements of the Contract Documents.

**§ 3.2.2** Because the Contract Documents are complementary, the Contractor shall, before starting each portion of the Work, carefully study and compare the various Contract Documents relative to that portion of the Work, as well as the information furnished by the Owner pursuant to Section 2.3.4, shall take field measurements of any existing conditions related to that portion of the Work, and shall observe any conditions at the site affecting it. These obligations are for the purpose of facilitating coordination and construction by the Contractor and are not for the purpose of discovering errors, omissions, or inconsistencies in the Contract Documents; however, the Contractor shall promptly report to the Architect any errors, inconsistencies or omissions discovered by or made known to the Contractor as a request for information in such form as the Architect may require. It is recognized that the Contractor's review is made in the Contractor's capacity as a contractor and not as a licensed design professional, unless otherwise specifically provided in the Contract Documents.

**§ 3.2.3** The Contractor is not required to ascertain that the Contract Documents are in accordance with applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, or lawful orders of public authorities, but the Contractor shall promptly report to the Architect any nonconformity discovered by or made known to the Contractor as a request for information in such form as the Architect may require.

**§ 3.2.4** If the Contractor believes that additional cost or time is involved because of clarifications or instructions the Architect issues in response to the Contractor's notices or requests for information pursuant to Sections 3.2.2 or 3.2.3, the Contractor shall submit Claims as provided in Article 15. If the Contractor fails to perform the obligations of Sections 3.2.2 or 3.2.3, the Contractor shall pay such costs and damages to the Owner, subject to Section 15.1.7, as would have been avoided if the Contractor had performed such obligations. If the Contractor performs those obligations, the Contractor shall not be liable to the Owner or Architect for damages resulting from errors, inconsistencies or omissions in the Contract Documents, for differences between field measurements or conditions and the Contract Documents, or for nonconformities of the Contract Documents to applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities.

### **§ 3.3 Supervision and Construction Procedures**

**§ 3.3.1** The Contractor shall supervise and direct the Work, using the Contractor's best skill and attention. The Contractor shall be solely responsible for, and have control over, construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures, and for coordinating all portions of the Work under the Contract. If the Contract Documents give specific instructions concerning construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures, the Contractor shall evaluate the jobsite safety thereof and shall be solely responsible for the jobsite safety of such means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures. If the Contractor determines that such means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures may not be safe, the Contractor shall give timely notice to the Owner and Architect, and shall propose alternative means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures. The Architect shall evaluate the proposed alternative solely for conformance with the design intent for the completed construction. Unless the Architect objects to the Contractor's proposed alternative, the Contractor shall perform the Work using its alternative means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures.

**§ 3.3.2** The Contractor shall be responsible to the Owner for acts and omissions of the Contractor's employees, Subcontractors and their agents and employees, and other persons or entities performing portions of the Work for, or on behalf of, the Contractor or any of its Subcontractors.

**§ 3.3.3** The Contractor shall be responsible for inspection of portions of Work already performed to determine that such portions are in proper condition to receive subsequent Work.

### **§ 3.4 Labor and Materials**

**§ 3.4.1** Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall provide and pay for labor, materials, equipment, tools, construction equipment and machinery, water, heat, utilities, transportation, and other facilities and services necessary for proper execution and completion of the Work, whether temporary or permanent and whether or not incorporated or to be incorporated in the Work.

**§ 3.4.2** Except in the case of minor changes in the Work approved by the Architect in accordance with Section 3.12.8 or ordered by the Architect in accordance with Section 7.4, the Contractor may make substitutions only with the consent of the Owner, after evaluation by the Architect and in accordance with a Change Order or Construction Change Directive.

**§ 3.4.3** The Contractor shall enforce strict discipline and good order among the Contractor's employees and other persons carrying out the Work. The Contractor shall not permit employment of unfit persons or persons not properly skilled in tasks assigned to them.

### **§ 3.5 Warranty**

**§ 3.5.1** The Contractor warrants to the Owner and Architect that materials and equipment furnished under the Contract will be of good quality and new unless the Contract Documents require or permit otherwise. The Contractor further warrants that the Work will conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents and will be free from defects, except for those inherent in the quality of the Work the Contract Documents require or permit. Work, materials, or equipment not conforming to these requirements may be considered defective. The Contractor's warranty excludes remedy for damage or defect caused by abuse, alterations to the Work not executed by the Contractor, improper or insufficient maintenance, improper operation, or normal wear and tear and normal usage. If required by the Architect, the Contractor shall furnish satisfactory evidence as to the kind and quality of materials and equipment.

**§ 3.5.2** All material, equipment, or other special warranties required by the Contract Documents shall be issued in the name of the Owner, or shall be transferable to the Owner, and shall commence in accordance with Section 9.8.4.

### **§ 3.6 Taxes**

The Contractor shall pay sales, consumer, use and similar taxes for the Work provided by the Contractor that are legally enacted when bids are received or negotiations concluded, whether or not yet effective or merely scheduled to go into effect.

### **§ 3.7 Permits, Fees, Notices and Compliance with Laws**

**§ 3.7.1** Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall secure and pay for the building permit as well as for other permits, fees, licenses, and inspections by government agencies necessary for proper execution and completion of the Work that are customarily secured after execution of the Contract and legally required at the time bids are received or negotiations concluded.

**§ 3.7.2** The Contractor shall comply with and give notices required by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities applicable to performance of the Work.

**§ 3.7.3** If the Contractor performs Work knowing it to be contrary to applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, or lawful orders of public authorities, the Contractor shall assume appropriate responsibility for such Work and shall bear the costs attributable to correction.

### **§ 3.7.4 Concealed or Unknown Conditions**

If the Contractor encounters conditions at the site that are (1) subsurface or otherwise concealed physical conditions that differ materially from those indicated in the Contract Documents or (2) unknown physical conditions of an unusual nature that differ materially from those ordinarily found to exist and generally recognized as inherent in construction activities of the character provided for in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall promptly provide notice to the Owner and the Architect before conditions are disturbed and in no event later than 14 days after first observance of the conditions. The Architect will promptly investigate such conditions and, if the Architect determines that they differ materially and cause an increase or decrease in the Contractor's cost of, or time required for, performance of any part of the Work, will recommend that an equitable adjustment be made in the Contract Sum or Contract Time, or both. If the Architect determines that the conditions at the site are not materially different from those indicated in the Contract Documents and that no change in the terms of the Contract is justified, the Architect shall promptly notify the Owner and Contractor, stating the reasons. If either party disputes the Architect's determination or recommendation, that party may submit a Claim as provided in Article 15.

**§ 3.7.5** If, in the course of the Work, the Contractor encounters human remains or recognizes the existence of burial markers, archaeological sites or wetlands not indicated in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall immediately

suspend any operations that would affect them and shall notify the Owner and Architect. Upon receipt of such notice, the Owner shall promptly take any action necessary to obtain governmental authorization required to resume the operations. The Contractor shall continue to suspend such operations until otherwise instructed by the Owner but shall continue with all other operations that do not affect those remains or features. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Sum and Contract Time arising from the existence of such remains or features may be made as provided in Article 15.

### **§ 3.8 Allowances**

**§ 3.8.1** The Contractor shall include in the Contract Sum all allowances stated in the Contract Documents. Items covered by allowances shall be supplied for such amounts and by such persons or entities as the Owner may direct, but the Contractor shall not be required to employ persons or entities to whom the Contractor has reasonable objection.

**§ 3.8.2** Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents,

- .1** allowances shall cover the cost to the Contractor of materials and equipment delivered at the site and all required taxes, less applicable trade discounts;
- .2** Contractor's costs for unloading and handling at the site, labor, installation costs, overhead, profit, and other expenses contemplated for stated allowance amounts shall be included in the Contract Sum but not in the allowances; and
- .3** whenever costs are more than or less than allowances, the Contract Sum shall be adjusted accordingly by Change Order. The amount of the Change Order shall reflect (1) the difference between actual costs and the allowances under Section 3.8.2.1 and (2) changes in Contractor's costs under Section 3.8.2.2.

**§ 3.8.3** Materials and equipment under an allowance shall be selected by the Owner with reasonable promptness.

### **§ 3.9 Superintendent**

**§ 3.9.1** The Contractor shall employ a competent superintendent and necessary assistants who shall be in attendance at the Project site during performance of the Work. The superintendent shall represent the Contractor, and communications given to the superintendent shall be as binding as if given to the Contractor.

**§ 3.9.2** The Contractor, as soon as practicable after award of the Contract, shall notify the Owner and Architect of the name and qualifications of a proposed superintendent. Within 14 days of receipt of the information, the Architect may notify the Contractor, stating whether the Owner or the Architect (1) has reasonable objection to the proposed superintendent or (2) requires additional time for review. Failure of the Architect to provide notice within the 14-day period shall constitute notice of no reasonable objection.

**§ 3.9.3** The Contractor shall not employ a proposed superintendent to whom the Owner or Architect has made reasonable and timely objection. The Contractor shall not change the superintendent without the Owner's consent, which shall not unreasonably be withheld or delayed.

### **§ 3.10 Contractor's Construction and Submittal Schedules**

**§ 3.10.1** The Contractor, promptly after being awarded the Contract, shall submit for the Owner's and Architect's information a Contractor's construction schedule for the Work. The schedule shall contain detail appropriate for the Project, including (1) the date of commencement of the Work, interim schedule milestone dates, and the date of Substantial Completion; (2) an apportionment of the Work by construction activity; and (3) the time required for completion of each portion of the Work. The schedule shall provide for the orderly progression of the Work to completion and shall not exceed time limits current under the Contract Documents. The schedule shall be revised at appropriate intervals as required by the conditions of the Work and Project.

**§ 3.10.2** The Contractor, promptly after being awarded the Contract and thereafter as necessary to maintain a current submittal schedule, shall submit a submittal schedule for the Architect's approval. The Architect's approval shall not be unreasonably delayed or withheld. The submittal schedule shall (1) be coordinated with the Contractor's construction schedule, and (2) allow the Architect reasonable time to review submittals. If the Contractor fails to submit a submittal schedule, or fails to provide submittals in accordance with the approved submittal schedule, the Contractor shall not be entitled to any increase in Contract Sum or extension of Contract Time based on the time required for review of submittals.

**§ 3.10.3** The Contractor shall perform the Work in general accordance with the most recent schedules submitted to the Owner and Architect.

**§ 3.11 Documents and Samples at the Site**

The Contractor shall make available, at the Project site, the Contract Documents, including Change Orders, Construction Change Directives, and other Modifications, in good order and marked currently to indicate field changes and selections made during construction, and the approved Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar required submittals. These shall be in electronic form or paper copy, available to the Architect and Owner, and delivered to the Architect for submittal to the Owner upon completion of the Work as a record of the Work as constructed.

**§ 3.12 Shop Drawings, Product Data and Samples**

**§ 3.12.1** Shop Drawings are drawings, diagrams, schedules, and other data specially prepared for the Work by the Contractor or a Subcontractor, Sub-subcontractor, manufacturer, supplier, or distributor to illustrate some portion of the Work.

**§ 3.12.2** Product Data are illustrations, standard schedules, performance charts, instructions, brochures, diagrams, and other information furnished by the Contractor to illustrate materials or equipment for some portion of the Work.

**§ 3.12.3** Samples are physical examples that illustrate materials, equipment, or workmanship, and establish standards by which the Work will be judged.

**§ 3.12.4** Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar submittals are not Contract Documents. Their purpose is to demonstrate how the Contractor proposes to conform to the information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents for those portions of the Work for which the Contract Documents require submittals. Review by the Architect is subject to the limitations of Section 4.2.7. Informational submittals upon which the Architect is not expected to take responsive action may be so identified in the Contract Documents. Submittals that are not required by the Contract Documents may be returned by the Architect without action.

**§ 3.12.5** The Contractor shall review for compliance with the Contract Documents, approve, and submit to the Architect, Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar submittals required by the Contract Documents, in accordance with the submittal schedule approved by the Architect or, in the absence of an approved submittal schedule, with reasonable promptness and in such sequence as to cause no delay in the Work or in the activities of the Owner or of Separate Contractors.

**§ 3.12.6** By submitting Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar submittals, the Contractor represents to the Owner and Architect that the Contractor has (1) reviewed and approved them, (2) determined and verified materials, field measurements and field construction criteria related thereto, or will do so, and (3) checked and coordinated the information contained within such submittals with the requirements of the Work and of the Contract Documents.

**§ 3.12.7** The Contractor shall perform no portion of the Work for which the Contract Documents require submittal and review of Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, until the respective submittal has been approved by the Architect.

**§ 3.12.8** The Work shall be in accordance with approved submittals except that the Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for deviations from the requirements of the Contract Documents by the Architect's approval of Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, unless the Contractor has specifically notified the Architect of such deviation at the time of submittal and (1) the Architect has given written approval to the specific deviation as a minor change in the Work, or (2) a Change Order or Construction Change Directive has been issued authorizing the deviation. The Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for errors or omissions in Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, by the Architect's approval thereof.

**§ 3.12.9** The Contractor shall direct specific attention, in writing or on resubmitted Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, to revisions other than those requested by the Architect on previous submittals. In the absence of such notice, the Architect's approval of a resubmission shall not apply to such revisions.

**§ 3.12.10** The Contractor shall not be required to provide professional services that constitute the practice of architecture or engineering unless such services are specifically required by the Contract Documents for a portion of the Work or unless the Contractor needs to provide such services in order to carry out the Contractor's responsibilities for construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures. The Contractor shall not be required to provide professional services in violation of applicable law.

**§ 3.12.10.1** If professional design services or certifications by a design professional related to systems, materials, or equipment are specifically required of the Contractor by the Contract Documents, the Owner and the Architect will specify all performance and design criteria that such services must satisfy. The Contractor shall be entitled to rely upon the adequacy and accuracy of the performance and design criteria provided in the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall cause such services or certifications to be provided by an appropriately licensed design professional, whose signature and seal shall appear on all drawings, calculations, specifications, certifications, Shop Drawings, and other submittals prepared by such professional. Shop Drawings, and other submittals related to the Work, designed or certified by such professional, if prepared by others, shall bear such professional's written approval when submitted to the Architect. The Owner and the Architect shall be entitled to rely upon the adequacy and accuracy of the services, certifications, and approvals performed or provided by such design professionals, provided the Owner and Architect have specified to the Contractor the performance and design criteria that such services must satisfy. Pursuant to this Section 3.12.10, the Architect will review and approve or take other appropriate action on submittals only for the limited purpose of checking for conformance with information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents.

**§ 3.12.10.2** If the Contract Documents require the Contractor's design professional to certify that the Work has been performed in accordance with the design criteria, the Contractor shall furnish such certifications to the Architect at the time and in the form specified by the Architect.

### **§ 3.13 Use of Site**

The Contractor shall confine operations at the site to areas permitted by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, lawful orders of public authorities, and the Contract Documents and shall not unreasonably encumber the site with materials or equipment.

### **§ 3.14 Cutting and Patching**

**§ 3.14.1** The Contractor shall be responsible for cutting, fitting, or patching required to complete the Work or to make its parts fit together properly. All areas requiring cutting, fitting, or patching shall be restored to the condition existing prior to the cutting, fitting, or patching, unless otherwise required by the Contract Documents.

**§ 3.14.2** The Contractor shall not damage or endanger a portion of the Work or fully or partially completed construction of the Owner or Separate Contractors by cutting, patching, or otherwise altering such construction, or by excavation. The Contractor shall not cut or otherwise alter construction by the Owner or a Separate Contractor except with written consent of the Owner and of the Separate Contractor. Consent shall not be unreasonably withheld. The Contractor shall not unreasonably withhold, from the Owner or a Separate Contractor, its consent to cutting or otherwise altering the Work.

### **§ 3.15 Cleaning Up**

**§ 3.15.1** The Contractor shall keep the premises and surrounding area free from accumulation of waste materials and rubbish caused by operations under the Contract. At completion of the Work, the Contractor shall remove waste materials, rubbish, the Contractor's tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus materials from and about the Project.

**§ 3.15.2** If the Contractor fails to clean up as provided in the Contract Documents, the Owner may do so and the Owner shall be entitled to reimbursement from the Contractor.

### **§ 3.16 Access to Work**

The Contractor shall provide the Owner and Architect with access to the Work in preparation and progress wherever located.



### **§ 3.17 Royalties, Patents and Copyrights**

The Contractor shall pay all royalties and license fees. The Contractor shall defend suits or claims for infringement of copyrights and patent rights and shall hold the Owner and Architect harmless from loss on account thereof, but shall not be responsible for defense or loss when a particular design, process, or product of a particular manufacturer or manufacturers is required by the Contract Documents, or where the copyright violations are contained in Drawings, Specifications, or other documents prepared by the Owner or Architect. However, if an infringement of a copyright or patent is discovered by, or made known to, the Contractor, the Contractor shall be responsible for the loss unless the information is promptly furnished to the Architect.

### **§ 3.18 Indemnification**

**§ 3.18.1** To the fullest extent permitted by law, the Contractor shall indemnify and hold harmless the Owner, Architect, Architect's consultants, and agents and employees of any of them from and against claims, damages, losses, and expenses, including but not limited to attorneys' fees, arising out of or resulting from performance of the Work, provided that such claim, damage, loss, or expense is attributable to bodily injury, sickness, disease or death, or to injury to or destruction of tangible property (other than the Work itself), but only to the extent caused by the negligent acts or omissions of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, anyone directly or indirectly employed by them, or anyone for whose acts they may be liable, regardless of whether or not such claim, damage, loss, or expense is caused in part by a party indemnified hereunder. Such obligation shall not be construed to negate, abridge, or reduce other rights or obligations of indemnity that would otherwise exist as to a party or person described in this Section 3.18.

**§ 3.18.2** In claims against any person or entity indemnified under this Section 3.18 by an employee of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, anyone directly or indirectly employed by them, or anyone for whose acts they may be liable, the indemnification obligation under Section 3.18.1 shall not be limited by a limitation on amount or type of damages, compensation, or benefits payable by or for the Contractor or a Subcontractor under workers' compensation acts, disability benefit acts, or other employee benefit acts.

## **ARTICLE 4 ARCHITECT**

### **§ 4.1 General**

**§ 4.1.1** The Architect is the person or entity retained by the Owner pursuant to Section 2.3.2 and identified as such in the Agreement.

**§ 4.1.2** Duties, responsibilities, and limitations of authority of the Architect as set forth in the Contract Documents shall not be restricted, modified, or extended without written consent of the Owner, Contractor, and Architect. Consent shall not be unreasonably withheld.

### **§ 4.2 Administration of the Contract**

**§ 4.2.1** The Architect will provide administration of the Contract as described in the Contract Documents and will be an Owner's representative during construction until the date the Architect issues the final Certificate for Payment. The Architect will have authority to act on behalf of the Owner only to the extent provided in the Contract Documents.

**§ 4.2.2** The Architect will visit the site at intervals appropriate to the stage of construction, or as otherwise agreed with the Owner, to become generally familiar with the progress and quality of the portion of the Work completed, and to determine in general if the Work observed is being performed in a manner indicating that the Work, when fully completed, will be in accordance with the Contract Documents. However, the Architect will not be required to make exhaustive or continuous on-site inspections to check the quality or quantity of the Work. The Architect will not have control over, charge of, or responsibility for the construction means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures, or for the safety precautions and programs in connection with the Work, since these are solely the Contractor's rights and responsibilities under the Contract Documents.

**§ 4.2.3** On the basis of the site visits, the Architect will keep the Owner reasonably informed about the progress and quality of the portion of the Work completed, and promptly report to the Owner (1) known deviations from the Contract Documents, (2) known deviations from the most recent construction schedule submitted by the Contractor, and (3) defects and deficiencies observed in the Work. The Architect will not be responsible for the Contractor's failure to perform the Work in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents. The Architect will not

have control over or charge of, and will not be responsible for acts or omissions of, the Contractor, Subcontractors, or their agents or employees, or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work.

#### **§ 4.2.4 Communications**

The Owner and Contractor shall include the Architect in all communications that relate to or affect the Architect's services or professional responsibilities. The Owner shall promptly notify the Architect of the substance of any direct communications between the Owner and the Contractor otherwise relating to the Project. Communications by and with the Architect's consultants shall be through the Architect. Communications by and with Subcontractors and suppliers shall be through the Contractor. Communications by and with Separate Contractors shall be through the Owner. The Contract Documents may specify other communication protocols.

**§ 4.2.5** Based on the Architect's evaluations of the Contractor's Applications for Payment, the Architect will review and certify the amounts due the Contractor and will issue Certificates for Payment in such amounts.

**§ 4.2.6** The Architect has authority to reject Work that does not conform to the Contract Documents. Whenever the Architect considers it necessary or advisable, the Architect will have authority to require inspection or testing of the Work in accordance with Sections 13.4.2 and 13.4.3, whether or not the Work is fabricated, installed or completed. However, neither this authority of the Architect nor a decision made in good faith either to exercise or not to exercise such authority shall give rise to a duty or responsibility of the Architect to the Contractor, Subcontractors, suppliers, their agents or employees, or other persons or entities performing portions of the Work.

**§ 4.2.7** The Architect will review and approve, or take other appropriate action upon, the Contractor's submittals such as Shop Drawings, Product Data, and Samples, but only for the limited purpose of checking for conformance with information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents. The Architect's action will be taken in accordance with the submittal schedule approved by the Architect or, in the absence of an approved submittal schedule, with reasonable promptness while allowing sufficient time in the Architect's professional judgment to permit adequate review. Review of such submittals is not conducted for the purpose of determining the accuracy and completeness of other details such as dimensions and quantities, or for substantiating instructions for installation or performance of equipment or systems, all of which remain the responsibility of the Contractor as required by the Contract Documents. The Architect's review of the Contractor's submittals shall not relieve the Contractor of the obligations under Sections 3.3, 3.5, and 3.12. The Architect's review shall not constitute approval of safety precautions or of any construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures. The Architect's approval of a specific item shall not indicate approval of an assembly of which the item is a component.

**§ 4.2.8** The Architect will prepare Change Orders and Construction Change Directives, and may order minor changes in the Work as provided in Section 7.4. The Architect will investigate and make determinations and recommendations regarding concealed and unknown conditions as provided in Section 3.7.4.

**§ 4.2.9** The Architect will conduct inspections to determine the date or dates of Substantial Completion and the date of final completion; issue Certificates of Substantial Completion pursuant to Section 9.8; receive and forward to the Owner, for the Owner's review and records, written warranties and related documents required by the Contract and assembled by the Contractor pursuant to Section 9.10; and issue a final Certificate for Payment pursuant to Section 9.10.

**§ 4.2.10** If the Owner and Architect agree, the Architect will provide one or more Project representatives to assist in carrying out the Architect's responsibilities at the site. The Owner shall notify the Contractor of any change in the duties, responsibilities and limitations of authority of the Project representatives.

**§ 4.2.11** The Architect will interpret and decide matters concerning performance under, and requirements of, the Contract Documents on written request of either the Owner or Contractor. The Architect's response to such requests will be made in writing within any time limits agreed upon or otherwise with reasonable promptness.

**§ 4.2.12** Interpretations and decisions of the Architect will be consistent with the intent of, and reasonably inferable from, the Contract Documents and will be in writing or in the form of drawings. When making such interpretations and decisions, the Architect will endeavor to secure faithful performance by both Owner and Contractor, will not show partiality to either, and will not be liable for results of interpretations or decisions rendered in good faith.

§ 4.2.13 The Architect's decisions on matters relating to aesthetic effect will be final if consistent with the intent expressed in the Contract Documents.

§ 4.2.14 The Architect will review and respond to requests for information about the Contract Documents. The Architect's response to such requests will be made in writing within any time limits agreed upon or otherwise with reasonable promptness. If appropriate, the Architect will prepare and issue supplemental Drawings and Specifications in response to the requests for information.

## **ARTICLE 5 SUBCONTRACTORS**

### **§ 5.1 Definitions**

§ 5.1.1 A Subcontractor is a person or entity who has a direct contract with the Contractor to perform a portion of the Work at the site. The term "Subcontractor" is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number and means a Subcontractor or an authorized representative of the Subcontractor. The term "Subcontractor" does not include a Separate Contractor or the subcontractors of a Separate Contractor.

§ 5.1.2 A Sub-subcontractor is a person or entity who has a direct or indirect contract with a Subcontractor to perform a portion of the Work at the site. The term "Sub-subcontractor" is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number and means a Sub-subcontractor or an authorized representative of the Sub-subcontractor.

### **§ 5.2 Award of Subcontracts and Other Contracts for Portions of the Work**

§ 5.2.1 Unless otherwise stated in the Contract Documents, the Contractor, as soon as practicable after award of the Contract, shall notify the Owner and Architect of the persons or entities proposed for each principal portion of the Work, including those who are to furnish materials or equipment fabricated to a special design. Within 14 days of receipt of the information, the Architect may notify the Contractor whether the Owner or the Architect (1) has reasonable objection to any such proposed person or entity or (2) requires additional time for review. Failure of the Architect to provide notice within the 14-day period shall constitute notice of no reasonable objection.

§ 5.2.2 The Contractor shall not contract with a proposed person or entity to whom the Owner or Architect has made reasonable and timely objection. The Contractor shall not be required to contract with anyone to whom the Contractor has made reasonable objection.

§ 5.2.3 If the Owner or Architect has reasonable objection to a person or entity proposed by the Contractor, the Contractor shall propose another to whom the Owner or Architect has no reasonable objection. If the proposed but rejected Subcontractor was reasonably capable of performing the Work, the Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be increased or decreased by the difference, if any, occasioned by such change, and an appropriate Change Order shall be issued before commencement of the substitute Subcontractor's Work. However, no increase in the Contract Sum or Contract Time shall be allowed for such change unless the Contractor has acted promptly and responsively in submitting names as required.

§ 5.2.4 The Contractor shall not substitute a Subcontractor, person, or entity for one previously selected if the Owner or Architect makes reasonable objection to such substitution.

### **§ 5.3 Subcontractual Relations**

By appropriate written agreement, the Contractor shall require each Subcontractor, to the extent of the Work to be performed by the Subcontractor, to be bound to the Contractor by terms of the Contract Documents, and to assume toward the Contractor all the obligations and responsibilities, including the responsibility for safety of the Subcontractor's Work that the Contractor, by these Contract Documents, assumes toward the Owner and Architect. Each subcontract agreement shall preserve and protect the rights of the Owner and Architect under the Contract Documents with respect to the Work to be performed by the Subcontractor so that subcontracting thereof will not prejudice such rights, and shall allow to the Subcontractor, unless specifically provided otherwise in the subcontract agreement, the benefit of all rights, remedies, and redress against the Contractor that the Contractor, by the Contract Documents, has against the Owner. Where appropriate, the Contractor shall require each Subcontractor to enter into similar agreements with Sub-subcontractors. The Contractor shall make available to each proposed Subcontractor, prior to the execution of the subcontract agreement, copies of the Contract Documents to which the Subcontractor will be bound, and, upon written request of the Subcontractor, identify to the Subcontractor terms and conditions of the proposed subcontract agreement that may be at variance with the Contract Documents. Subcontractors will

similarly make copies of applicable portions of such documents available to their respective proposed Sub-subcontractors.

#### **§ 5.4 Contingent Assignment of Subcontracts**

**§ 5.4.1** Each subcontract agreement for a portion of the Work is assigned by the Contractor to the Owner, provided that

- .1 assignment is effective only after termination of the Contract by the Owner for cause pursuant to Section 14.2 and only for those subcontract agreements that the Owner accepts by notifying the Subcontractor and Contractor; and
- .2 assignment is subject to the prior rights of the surety, if any, obligated under bond relating to the Contract.

When the Owner accepts the assignment of a subcontract agreement, the Owner assumes the Contractor's rights and obligations under the subcontract.

**§ 5.4.2** Upon such assignment, if the Work has been suspended for more than 30 days, the Subcontractor's compensation shall be equitably adjusted for increases in cost resulting from the suspension.

**§ 5.4.3** Upon assignment to the Owner under this Section 5.4, the Owner may further assign the subcontract to a successor contractor or other entity. If the Owner assigns the subcontract to a successor contractor or other entity, the Owner shall nevertheless remain legally responsible for all of the successor contractor's obligations under the subcontract.

### **ARTICLE 6 CONSTRUCTION BY OWNER OR BY SEPARATE CONTRACTORS**

#### **§ 6.1 Owner's Right to Perform Construction and to Award Separate Contracts**

**§ 6.1.1** The term "Separate Contractor(s)" shall mean other contractors retained by the Owner under separate agreements. The Owner reserves the right to perform construction or operations related to the Project with the Owner's own forces, and with Separate Contractors retained under Conditions of the Contract substantially similar to those of this Contract, including those provisions of the Conditions of the Contract related to insurance and waiver of subrogation.

**§ 6.1.2** When separate contracts are awarded for different portions of the Project or other construction or operations on the site, the term "Contractor" in the Contract Documents in each case shall mean the Contractor who executes each separate Owner-Contractor Agreement.

**§ 6.1.3** The Owner shall provide for coordination of the activities of the Owner's own forces and of each Separate Contractor with the Work of the Contractor, who shall cooperate with them. The Contractor shall participate with any Separate Contractors and the Owner in reviewing their construction schedules. The Contractor shall make any revisions to its construction schedule deemed necessary after a joint review and mutual agreement. The construction schedules shall then constitute the schedules to be used by the Contractor, Separate Contractors, and the Owner until subsequently revised.

**§ 6.1.4** Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, when the Owner performs construction or operations related to the Project with the Owner's own forces or with Separate Contractors, the Owner or its Separate Contractors shall have the same obligations and rights that the Contractor has under the Conditions of the Contract, including, without excluding others, those stated in Article 3, this Article 6, and Articles 10, 11, and 12.

#### **§ 6.2 Mutual Responsibility**

**§ 6.2.1** The Contractor shall afford the Owner and Separate Contractors reasonable opportunity for introduction and storage of their materials and equipment and performance of their activities, and shall connect and coordinate the Contractor's construction and operations with theirs as required by the Contract Documents.

**§ 6.2.2** If part of the Contractor's Work depends for proper execution or results upon construction or operations by the Owner or a Separate Contractor, the Contractor shall, prior to proceeding with that portion of the Work, promptly notify the Architect of apparent discrepancies or defects in the construction or operations by the Owner or Separate Contractor that would render it unsuitable for proper execution and results of the Contractor's Work. Failure of the Contractor to notify the Architect of apparent discrepancies or defects prior to proceeding with the

Work shall constitute an acknowledgment that the Owner's or Separate Contractor's completed or partially completed construction is fit and proper to receive the Contractor's Work. The Contractor shall not be responsible for discrepancies or defects in the construction or operations by the Owner or Separate Contractor that are not apparent.

**§ 6.2.3** The Contractor shall reimburse the Owner for costs the Owner incurs that are payable to a Separate Contractor because of the Contractor's delays, improperly timed activities or defective construction. The Owner shall be responsible to the Contractor for costs the Contractor incurs because of a Separate Contractor's delays, improperly timed activities, damage to the Work or defective construction.

**§ 6.2.4** The Contractor shall promptly remedy damage that the Contractor wrongfully causes to completed or partially completed construction or to property of the Owner or Separate Contractor as provided in Section 10.2.5.

**§ 6.2.5** The Owner and each Separate Contractor shall have the same responsibilities for cutting and patching as are described for the Contractor in Section 3.14.

### **§ 6.3 Owner's Right to Clean Up**

If a dispute arises among the Contractor, Separate Contractors, and the Owner as to the responsibility under their respective contracts for maintaining the premises and surrounding area free from waste materials and rubbish, the Owner may clean up and the Architect will allocate the cost among those responsible.

## **ARTICLE 7 CHANGES IN THE WORK**

### **§ 7.1 General**

**§ 7.1.1** Changes in the Work may be accomplished after execution of the Contract, and without invalidating the Contract, by Change Order, Construction Change Directive or order for a minor change in the Work, subject to the limitations stated in this Article 7 and elsewhere in the Contract Documents.

**§ 7.1.2** A Change Order shall be based upon agreement among the Owner, Contractor, and Architect. A Construction Change Directive requires agreement by the Owner and Architect and may or may not be agreed to by the Contractor. An order for a minor change in the Work may be issued by the Architect alone.

**§ 7.1.3** Changes in the Work shall be performed under applicable provisions of the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall proceed promptly with changes in the Work, unless otherwise provided in the Change Order, Construction Change Directive, or order for a minor change in the Work.

### **§ 7.2 Change Orders**

**§ 7.2.1** A Change Order is a written instrument prepared by the Architect and signed by the Owner, Contractor, and Architect stating their agreement upon all of the following:

- .1 The change in the Work;
- .2 The amount of the adjustment, if any, in the Contract Sum; and
- .3 The extent of the adjustment, if any, in the Contract Time.

### **§ 7.3 Construction Change Directives**

**§ 7.3.1** A Construction Change Directive is a written order prepared by the Architect and signed by the Owner and Architect, directing a change in the Work prior to agreement on adjustment, if any, in the Contract Sum or Contract Time, or both. The Owner may by Construction Change Directive, without invalidating the Contract, order changes in the Work within the general scope of the Contract consisting of additions, deletions, or other revisions, the Contract Sum and Contract Time being adjusted accordingly.

**§ 7.3.2** A Construction Change Directive shall be used in the absence of total agreement on the terms of a Change Order.

**§ 7.3.3** If the Construction Change Directive provides for an adjustment to the Contract Sum, the adjustment shall be based on one of the following methods:

- .1 Mutual acceptance of a lump sum properly itemized and supported by sufficient substantiating data to permit evaluation;
- .2 Unit prices stated in the Contract Documents or subsequently agreed upon;

- .3 Cost to be determined in a manner agreed upon by the parties and a mutually acceptable fixed or percentage fee; or
- .4 As provided in Section 7.3.4.

**§ 7.3.4** If the Contractor does not respond promptly or disagrees with the method for adjustment in the Contract Sum, the Architect shall determine the adjustment on the basis of reasonable expenditures and savings of those performing the Work attributable to the change, including, in case of an increase in the Contract Sum, an amount for overhead and profit as set forth in the Agreement, or if no such amount is set forth in the Agreement, a reasonable amount. In such case, and also under Section 7.3.3.3, the Contractor shall keep and present, in such form as the Architect may prescribe, an itemized accounting together with appropriate supporting data. Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, costs for the purposes of this Section 7.3.4 shall be limited to the following:

- .1 Costs of labor, including applicable payroll taxes, fringe benefits required by agreement or custom, workers' compensation insurance, and other employee costs approved by the Architect;
- .2 Costs of materials, supplies, and equipment, including cost of transportation, whether incorporated or consumed;
- .3 Rental costs of machinery and equipment, exclusive of hand tools, whether rented from the Contractor or others;
- .4 Costs of premiums for all bonds and insurance, permit fees, and sales, use, or similar taxes, directly related to the change; and
- .5 Costs of supervision and field office personnel directly attributable to the change.

**§ 7.3.5** If the Contractor disagrees with the adjustment in the Contract Time, the Contractor may make a Claim in accordance with applicable provisions of Article 15.

**§ 7.3.6** Upon receipt of a Construction Change Directive, the Contractor shall promptly proceed with the change in the Work involved and advise the Architect of the Contractor's agreement or disagreement with the method, if any, provided in the Construction Change Directive for determining the proposed adjustment in the Contract Sum or Contract Time.

**§ 7.3.7** A Construction Change Directive signed by the Contractor indicates the Contractor's agreement therewith, including adjustment in Contract Sum and Contract Time or the method for determining them. Such agreement shall be effective immediately and shall be recorded as a Change Order.

**§ 7.3.8** The amount of credit to be allowed by the Contractor to the Owner for a deletion or change that results in a net decrease in the Contract Sum shall be actual net cost as confirmed by the Architect. When both additions and credits covering related Work or substitutions are involved in a change, the allowance for overhead and profit shall be figured on the basis of net increase, if any, with respect to that change.

**§ 7.3.9** Pending final determination of the total cost of a Construction Change Directive to the Owner, the Contractor may request payment for Work completed under the Construction Change Directive in Applications for Payment. The Architect will make an interim determination for purposes of monthly certification for payment for those costs and certify for payment the amount that the Architect determines, in the Architect's professional judgment, to be reasonably justified. The Architect's interim determination of cost shall adjust the Contract Sum on the same basis as a Change Order, subject to the right of either party to disagree and assert a Claim in accordance with Article 15.

**§ 7.3.10** When the Owner and Contractor agree with a determination made by the Architect concerning the adjustments in the Contract Sum and Contract Time, or otherwise reach agreement upon the adjustments, such agreement shall be effective immediately and the Architect will prepare a Change Order. Change Orders may be issued for all or any part of a Construction Change Directive.

#### **§ 7.4 Minor Changes in the Work**

The Architect may order minor changes in the Work that are consistent with the intent of the Contract Documents and do not involve an adjustment in the Contract Sum or an extension of the Contract Time. The Architect's order for minor changes shall be in writing. If the Contractor believes that the proposed minor change in the Work will affect the Contract Sum or Contract Time, the Contractor shall notify the Architect and shall not proceed to implement the change in the Work. If the Contractor performs the Work set forth in the Architect's order for a minor

change without prior notice to the Architect that such change will affect the Contract Sum or Contract Time, the Contractor waives any adjustment to the Contract Sum or extension of the Contract Time.

## **ARTICLE 8 TIME**

### **§ 8.1 Definitions**

**§ 8.1.1** Unless otherwise provided, Contract Time is the period of time, including authorized adjustments, allotted in the Contract Documents for Substantial Completion of the Work.

**§ 8.1.2** The date of commencement of the Work is the date established in the Agreement.

**§ 8.1.3** The date of Substantial Completion is the date certified by the Architect in accordance with Section 9.8.

**§ 8.1.4** The term “day” as used in the Contract Documents shall mean calendar day unless otherwise specifically defined.

### **§ 8.2 Progress and Completion**

**§ 8.2.1** Time limits stated in the Contract Documents are of the essence of the Contract. By executing the Agreement, the Contractor confirms that the Contract Time is a reasonable period for performing the Work.

**§ 8.2.2** The Contractor shall not knowingly, except by agreement or instruction of the Owner in writing, commence the Work prior to the effective date of insurance required to be furnished by the Contractor and Owner.

**§ 8.2.3** The Contractor shall proceed expeditiously with adequate forces and shall achieve Substantial Completion within the Contract Time.

### **§ 8.3 Delays and Extensions of Time**

**§ 8.3.1** If the Contractor is delayed at any time in the commencement or progress of the Work by (1) an act or neglect of the Owner or Architect, of an employee of either, or of a Separate Contractor; (2) by changes ordered in the Work; (3) by labor disputes, fire, unusual delay in deliveries, unavoidable casualties, adverse weather conditions documented in accordance with Section 15.1.6.2, or other causes beyond the Contractor’s control; (4) by delay authorized by the Owner pending mediation and binding dispute resolution; or (5) by other causes that the Contractor asserts, and the Architect determines, justify delay, then the Contract Time shall be extended for such reasonable time as the Architect may determine.

**§ 8.3.2** Claims relating to time shall be made in accordance with applicable provisions of Article 15.

**§ 8.3.3** This Section 8.3 does not preclude recovery of damages for delay by either party under other provisions of the Contract Documents.

## **ARTICLE 9 PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION**

### **§ 9.1 Contract Sum**

**§ 9.1.1** The Contract Sum is stated in the Agreement and, including authorized adjustments, is the total amount payable by the Owner to the Contractor for performance of the Work under the Contract Documents.

**§ 9.1.2** If unit prices are stated in the Contract Documents or subsequently agreed upon, and if quantities originally contemplated are materially changed so that application of such unit prices to the actual quantities causes substantial inequity to the Owner or Contractor, the applicable unit prices shall be equitably adjusted.

### **§ 9.2 Schedule of Values**

Where the Contract is based on a stipulated sum or Guaranteed Maximum Price, the Contractor shall submit a schedule of values to the Architect before the first Application for Payment, allocating the entire Contract Sum to the various portions of the Work. The schedule of values shall be prepared in the form, and supported by the data to substantiate its accuracy, required by the Architect. This schedule, unless objected to by the Architect, shall be used as a basis for reviewing the Contractor’s Applications for Payment. Any changes to the schedule of values shall be submitted to the Architect and supported by such data to substantiate its accuracy as the Architect may require, and unless objected to by the Architect, shall be used as a basis for reviewing the Contractor’s subsequent Applications for Payment.

### **§ 9.3 Applications for Payment**

**§ 9.3.1** At least ten days before the date established for each progress payment, the Contractor shall submit to the Architect an itemized Application for Payment prepared in accordance with the schedule of values, if required under Section 9.2, for completed portions of the Work. The application shall be notarized, if required, and supported by all data substantiating the Contractor's right to payment that the Owner or Architect require, such as copies of requisitions, and releases and waivers of liens from Subcontractors and suppliers, and shall reflect retainage if provided for in the Contract Documents.

**§ 9.3.1.1** As provided in Section 7.3.9, such applications may include requests for payment on account of changes in the Work that have been properly authorized by Construction Change Directives, or by interim determinations of the Architect, but not yet included in Change Orders.

**§ 9.3.1.2** Applications for Payment shall not include requests for payment for portions of the Work for which the Contractor does not intend to pay a Subcontractor or supplier, unless such Work has been performed by others whom the Contractor intends to pay.

**§ 9.3.2** Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, payments shall be made on account of materials and equipment delivered and suitably stored at the site for subsequent incorporation in the Work. If approved in advance by the Owner, payment may similarly be made for materials and equipment suitably stored off the site at a location agreed upon in writing. Payment for materials and equipment stored on or off the site shall be conditioned upon compliance by the Contractor with procedures satisfactory to the Owner to establish the Owner's title to such materials and equipment or otherwise protect the Owner's interest, and shall include the costs of applicable insurance, storage, and transportation to the site, for such materials and equipment stored off the site.

**§ 9.3.3** The Contractor warrants that title to all Work covered by an Application for Payment will pass to the Owner no later than the time of payment. The Contractor further warrants that upon submittal of an Application for Payment all Work for which Certificates for Payment have been previously issued and payments received from the Owner shall, to the best of the Contractor's knowledge, information, and belief, be free and clear of liens, claims, security interests, or encumbrances, in favor of the Contractor, Subcontractors, suppliers, or other persons or entities that provided labor, materials, and equipment relating to the Work.

### **§ 9.4 Certificates for Payment**

**§ 9.4.1** The Architect will, within seven days after receipt of the Contractor's Application for Payment, either (1) issue to the Owner a Certificate for Payment in the full amount of the Application for Payment, with a copy to the Contractor; or (2) issue to the Owner a Certificate for Payment for such amount as the Architect determines is properly due, and notify the Contractor and Owner of the Architect's reasons for withholding certification in part as provided in Section 9.5.1; or (3) withhold certification of the entire Application for Payment, and notify the Contractor and Owner of the Architect's reason for withholding certification in whole as provided in Section 9.5.1.

**§ 9.4.2** The issuance of a Certificate for Payment will constitute a representation by the Architect to the Owner, based on the Architect's evaluation of the Work and the data in the Application for Payment, that, to the best of the Architect's knowledge, information, and belief, the Work has progressed to the point indicated, the quality of the Work is in accordance with the Contract Documents, and that the Contractor is entitled to payment in the amount certified. The foregoing representations are subject to an evaluation of the Work for conformance with the Contract Documents upon Substantial Completion, to results of subsequent tests and inspections, to correction of minor deviations from the Contract Documents prior to completion, and to specific qualifications expressed by the Architect. However, the issuance of a Certificate for Payment will not be a representation that the Architect has (1) made exhaustive or continuous on-site inspections to check the quality or quantity of the Work; (2) reviewed construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures; (3) reviewed copies of requisitions received from Subcontractors and suppliers and other data requested by the Owner to substantiate the Contractor's right to payment; or (4) made examination to ascertain how or for what purpose the Contractor has used money previously paid on account of the Contract Sum.

### **§ 9.5 Decisions to Withhold Certification**

**§ 9.5.1** The Architect may withhold a Certificate for Payment in whole or in part, to the extent reasonably necessary to protect the Owner, if in the Architect's opinion the representations to the Owner required by Section 9.4.2 cannot



be made. If the Architect is unable to certify payment in the amount of the Application, the Architect will notify the Contractor and Owner as provided in Section 9.4.1. If the Contractor and Architect cannot agree on a revised amount, the Architect will promptly issue a Certificate for Payment for the amount for which the Architect is able to make such representations to the Owner. The Architect may also withhold a Certificate for Payment or, because of subsequently discovered evidence, may nullify the whole or a part of a Certificate for Payment previously issued, to such extent as may be necessary in the Architect's opinion to protect the Owner from loss for which the Contractor is responsible, including loss resulting from acts and omissions described in Section 3.3.2, because of

- .1 defective Work not remedied;
- .2 third party claims filed or reasonable evidence indicating probable filing of such claims, unless security acceptable to the Owner is provided by the Contractor;
- .3 failure of the Contractor to make payments properly to Subcontractors or suppliers for labor, materials or equipment;
- .4 reasonable evidence that the Work cannot be completed for the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum;
- .5 damage to the Owner or a Separate Contractor;
- .6 reasonable evidence that the Work will not be completed within the Contract Time, and that the unpaid balance would not be adequate to cover actual or liquidated damages for the anticipated delay; or
- .7 repeated failure to carry out the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

**§ 9.5.2** When either party disputes the Architect's decision regarding a Certificate for Payment under Section 9.5.1, in whole or in part, that party may submit a Claim in accordance with Article 15.

**§ 9.5.3** When the reasons for withholding certification are removed, certification will be made for amounts previously withheld.

**§ 9.5.4** If the Architect withholds certification for payment under Section 9.5.1.3, the Owner may, at its sole option, issue joint checks to the Contractor and to any Subcontractor or supplier to whom the Contractor failed to make payment for Work properly performed or material or equipment suitably delivered. If the Owner makes payments by joint check, the Owner shall notify the Architect and the Contractor shall reflect such payment on its next Application for Payment.

## **§ 9.6 Progress Payments**

**§ 9.6.1** After the Architect has issued a Certificate for Payment, the Owner shall make payment in the manner and within the time provided in the Contract Documents, and shall so notify the Architect.

**§ 9.6.2** The Contractor shall pay each Subcontractor, no later than seven days after receipt of payment from the Owner, the amount to which the Subcontractor is entitled, reflecting percentages actually retained from payments to the Contractor on account of the Subcontractor's portion of the Work. The Contractor shall, by appropriate agreement with each Subcontractor, require each Subcontractor to make payments to Sub-subcontractors in a similar manner.

**§ 9.6.3** The Architect will, on request, furnish to a Subcontractor, if practicable, information regarding percentages of completion or amounts applied for by the Contractor and action taken thereon by the Architect and Owner on account of portions of the Work done by such Subcontractor.

**§ 9.6.4** The Owner has the right to request written evidence from the Contractor that the Contractor has properly paid Subcontractors and suppliers amounts paid by the Owner to the Contractor for subcontracted Work. If the Contractor fails to furnish such evidence within seven days, the Owner shall have the right to contact Subcontractors and suppliers to ascertain whether they have been properly paid. Neither the Owner nor Architect shall have an obligation to pay, or to see to the payment of money to, a Subcontractor or supplier, except as may otherwise be required by law.

**§ 9.6.5** The Contractor's payments to suppliers shall be treated in a manner similar to that provided in Sections 9.6.2, 9.6.3 and 9.6.4.

**§ 9.6.6** A Certificate for Payment, a progress payment, or partial or entire use or occupancy of the Project by the Owner shall not constitute acceptance of Work not in accordance with the Contract Documents.

**§ 9.6.7** Unless the Contractor provides the Owner with a payment bond in the full penal sum of the Contract Sum, payments received by the Contractor for Work properly performed by Subcontractors or provided by suppliers shall be held by the Contractor for those Subcontractors or suppliers who performed Work or furnished materials, or both, under contract with the Contractor for which payment was made by the Owner. Nothing contained herein shall require money to be placed in a separate account and not commingled with money of the Contractor, create any fiduciary liability or tort liability on the part of the Contractor for breach of trust, or entitle any person or entity to an award of punitive damages against the Contractor for breach of the requirements of this provision.

**§ 9.6.8** Provided the Owner has fulfilled its payment obligations under the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall defend and indemnify the Owner from all loss, liability, damage or expense, including reasonable attorney's fees and litigation expenses, arising out of any lien claim or other claim for payment by any Subcontractor or supplier of any tier. Upon receipt of notice of a lien claim or other claim for payment, the Owner shall notify the Contractor. If approved by the applicable court, when required, the Contractor may substitute a surety bond for the property against which the lien or other claim for payment has been asserted.

### **§ 9.7 Failure of Payment**

If the Architect does not issue a Certificate for Payment, through no fault of the Contractor, within seven days after receipt of the Contractor's Application for Payment, or if the Owner does not pay the Contractor within seven days after the date established in the Contract Documents, the amount certified by the Architect or awarded by binding dispute resolution, then the Contractor may, upon seven additional days' notice to the Owner and Architect, stop the Work until payment of the amount owing has been received. The Contract Time shall be extended appropriately and the Contract Sum shall be increased by the amount of the Contractor's reasonable costs of shutdown, delay and start-up, plus interest as provided for in the Contract Documents.

### **§ 9.8 Substantial Completion**

**§ 9.8.1** Substantial Completion is the stage in the progress of the Work when the Work or designated portion thereof is sufficiently complete in accordance with the Contract Documents so that the Owner can occupy or utilize the Work for its intended use.

**§ 9.8.2** When the Contractor considers that the Work, or a portion thereof which the Owner agrees to accept separately, is substantially complete, the Contractor shall prepare and submit to the Architect a comprehensive list of items to be completed or corrected prior to final payment. Failure to include an item on such list does not alter the responsibility of the Contractor to complete all Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

**§ 9.8.3** Upon receipt of the Contractor's list, the Architect will make an inspection to determine whether the Work or designated portion thereof is substantially complete. If the Architect's inspection discloses any item, whether or not included on the Contractor's list, which is not sufficiently complete in accordance with the Contract Documents so that the Owner can occupy or utilize the Work or designated portion thereof for its intended use, the Contractor shall, before issuance of the Certificate of Substantial Completion, complete or correct such item upon notification by the Architect. In such case, the Contractor shall then submit a request for another inspection by the Architect to determine Substantial Completion.

**§ 9.8.4** When the Work or designated portion thereof is substantially complete, the Architect will prepare a Certificate of Substantial Completion that shall establish the date of Substantial Completion; establish responsibilities of the Owner and Contractor for security, maintenance, heat, utilities, damage to the Work and insurance; and fix the time within which the Contractor shall finish all items on the list accompanying the Certificate. Warranties required by the Contract Documents shall commence on the date of Substantial Completion of the Work or designated portion thereof unless otherwise provided in the Certificate of Substantial Completion.

**§ 9.8.5** The Certificate of Substantial Completion shall be submitted to the Owner and Contractor for their written acceptance of responsibilities assigned to them in the Certificate. Upon such acceptance, and consent of surety if any, the Owner shall make payment of retainage applying to the Work or designated portion thereof. Such payment shall be adjusted for Work that is incomplete or not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

### **§ 9.9 Partial Occupancy or Use**

**§ 9.9.1** The Owner may occupy or use any completed or partially completed portion of the Work at any stage when such portion is designated by separate agreement with the Contractor, provided such occupancy or use is consented

to by the insurer and authorized by public authorities having jurisdiction over the Project. Such partial occupancy or use may commence whether or not the portion is substantially complete, provided the Owner and Contractor have accepted in writing the responsibilities assigned to each of them for payments, retainage, if any, security, maintenance, heat, utilities, damage to the Work and insurance, and have agreed in writing concerning the period for correction of the Work and commencement of warranties required by the Contract Documents. When the Contractor considers a portion substantially complete, the Contractor shall prepare and submit a list to the Architect as provided under Section 9.8.2. Consent of the Contractor to partial occupancy or use shall not be unreasonably withheld. The stage of the progress of the Work shall be determined by written agreement between the Owner and Contractor or, if no agreement is reached, by decision of the Architect.

**§ 9.9.2** Immediately prior to such partial occupancy or use, the Owner, Contractor, and Architect shall jointly inspect the area to be occupied or portion of the Work to be used in order to determine and record the condition of the Work.

**§ 9.9.3** Unless otherwise agreed upon, partial occupancy or use of a portion or portions of the Work shall not constitute acceptance of Work not complying with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

### **§ 9.10 Final Completion and Final Payment**

**§ 9.10.1** Upon receipt of the Contractor's notice that the Work is ready for final inspection and acceptance and upon receipt of a final Application for Payment, the Architect will promptly make such inspection. When the Architect finds the Work acceptable under the Contract Documents and the Contract fully performed, the Architect will promptly issue a final Certificate for Payment stating that to the best of the Architect's knowledge, information and belief, and on the basis of the Architect's on-site visits and inspections, the Work has been completed in accordance with the Contract Documents and that the entire balance found to be due the Contractor and noted in the final Certificate is due and payable. The Architect's final Certificate for Payment will constitute a further representation that conditions listed in Section 9.10.2 as precedent to the Contractor's being entitled to final payment have been fulfilled.

**§ 9.10.2** Neither final payment nor any remaining retained percentage shall become due until the Contractor submits to the Architect (1) an affidavit that payrolls, bills for materials and equipment, and other indebtedness connected with the Work for which the Owner or the Owner's property might be responsible or encumbered (less amounts withheld by Owner) have been paid or otherwise satisfied, (2) a certificate evidencing that insurance required by the Contract Documents to remain in force after final payment is currently in effect, (3) a written statement that the Contractor knows of no reason that the insurance will not be renewable to cover the period required by the Contract Documents, (4) consent of surety, if any, to final payment, (5) documentation of any special warranties, such as manufacturers' warranties or specific Subcontractor warranties, and (6) if required by the Owner, other data establishing payment or satisfaction of obligations, such as receipts and releases and waivers of liens, claims, security interests, or encumbrances arising out of the Contract, to the extent and in such form as may be designated by the Owner. If a Subcontractor refuses to furnish a release or waiver required by the Owner, the Contractor may furnish a bond satisfactory to the Owner to indemnify the Owner against such lien, claim, security interest, or encumbrance. If a lien, claim, security interest, or encumbrance remains unsatisfied after payments are made, the Contractor shall refund to the Owner all money that the Owner may be compelled to pay in discharging the lien, claim, security interest, or encumbrance, including all costs and reasonable attorneys' fees.

**§ 9.10.3** If, after Substantial Completion of the Work, final completion thereof is materially delayed through no fault of the Contractor or by issuance of Change Orders affecting final completion, and the Architect so confirms, the Owner shall, upon application by the Contractor and certification by the Architect, and without terminating the Contract, make payment of the balance due for that portion of the Work fully completed, corrected, and accepted. If the remaining balance for Work not fully completed or corrected is less than retainage stipulated in the Contract Documents, and if bonds have been furnished, the written consent of the surety to payment of the balance due for that portion of the Work fully completed and accepted shall be submitted by the Contractor to the Architect prior to certification of such payment. Such payment shall be made under terms and conditions governing final payment, except that it shall not constitute a waiver of Claims.

**§ 9.10.4** The making of final payment shall constitute a waiver of Claims by the Owner except those arising from

- .1 liens, Claims, security interests, or encumbrances arising out of the Contract and unsettled;
- .2 failure of the Work to comply with the requirements of the Contract Documents;

- .3 terms of special warranties required by the Contract Documents; or
- .4 audits performed by the Owner, if permitted by the Contract Documents, after final payment.

§ 9.10.5 Acceptance of final payment by the Contractor, a Subcontractor, or a supplier, shall constitute a waiver of claims by that payee except those previously made in writing and identified by that payee as unsettled at the time of final Application for Payment.

## **ARTICLE 10 PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY**

### **§ 10.1 Safety Precautions and Programs**

The Contractor shall be responsible for initiating, maintaining, and supervising all safety precautions and programs in connection with the performance of the Contract.

### **§ 10.2 Safety of Persons and Property**

§ 10.2.1 The Contractor shall take reasonable precautions for safety of, and shall provide reasonable protection to prevent damage, injury, or loss to

- .1 employees on the Work and other persons who may be affected thereby;
- .2 the Work and materials and equipment to be incorporated therein, whether in storage on or off the site, under care, custody, or control of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, or a Sub-subcontractor; and
- .3 other property at the site or adjacent thereto, such as trees, shrubs, lawns, walks, pavements, roadways, structures, and utilities not designated for removal, relocation, or replacement in the course of construction.

§ 10.2.2 The Contractor shall comply with, and give notices required by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities, bearing on safety of persons or property or their protection from damage, injury, or loss.

§ 10.2.3 The Contractor shall implement, erect, and maintain, as required by existing conditions and performance of the Contract, reasonable safeguards for safety and protection, including posting danger signs and other warnings against hazards; promulgating safety regulations; and notifying the owners and users of adjacent sites and utilities of the safeguards.

§ 10.2.4 When use or storage of explosives or other hazardous materials or equipment, or unusual methods are necessary for execution of the Work, the Contractor shall exercise utmost care and carry on such activities under supervision of properly qualified personnel.

§ 10.2.5 The Contractor shall promptly remedy damage and loss (other than damage or loss insured under property insurance required by the Contract Documents) to property referred to in Sections 10.2.1.2 and 10.2.1.3 caused in whole or in part by the Contractor, a Subcontractor, a Sub-subcontractor, or anyone directly or indirectly employed by any of them, or by anyone for whose acts they may be liable and for which the Contractor is responsible under Sections 10.2.1.2 and 10.2.1.3. The Contractor may make a Claim for the cost to remedy the damage or loss to the extent such damage or loss is attributable to acts or omissions of the Owner or Architect or anyone directly or indirectly employed by either of them, or by anyone for whose acts either of them may be liable, and not attributable to the fault or negligence of the Contractor. The foregoing obligations of the Contractor are in addition to the Contractor's obligations under Section 3.18.

§ 10.2.6 The Contractor shall designate a responsible member of the Contractor's organization at the site whose duty shall be the prevention of accidents. This person shall be the Contractor's superintendent unless otherwise designated by the Contractor in writing to the Owner and Architect.

§ 10.2.7 The Contractor shall not permit any part of the construction or site to be loaded so as to cause damage or create an unsafe condition.

### **§ 10.2.8 Injury or Damage to Person or Property**

If either party suffers injury or damage to person or property because of an act or omission of the other party, or of others for whose acts such party is legally responsible, notice of the injury or damage, whether or not insured, shall be given to the other party within a reasonable time not exceeding 21 days after discovery. The notice shall provide sufficient detail to enable the other party to investigate the matter.

### **§ 10.3 Hazardous Materials and Substances**

**§ 10.3.1** The Contractor is responsible for compliance with any requirements included in the Contract Documents regarding hazardous materials or substances. If the Contractor encounters a hazardous material or substance not addressed in the Contract Documents and if reasonable precautions will be inadequate to prevent foreseeable bodily injury or death to persons resulting from a material or substance, including but not limited to asbestos or polychlorinated biphenyl (PCB), encountered on the site by the Contractor, the Contractor shall, upon recognizing the condition, immediately stop Work in the affected area and notify the Owner and Architect of the condition.

**§ 10.3.2** Upon receipt of the Contractor's notice, the Owner shall obtain the services of a licensed laboratory to verify the presence or absence of the material or substance reported by the Contractor and, in the event such material or substance is found to be present, to cause it to be rendered harmless. Unless otherwise required by the Contract Documents, the Owner shall furnish in writing to the Contractor and Architect the names and qualifications of persons or entities who are to perform tests verifying the presence or absence of the material or substance or who are to perform the task of removal or safe containment of the material or substance. The Contractor and the Architect will promptly reply to the Owner in writing stating whether or not either has reasonable objection to the persons or entities proposed by the Owner. If either the Contractor or Architect has an objection to a person or entity proposed by the Owner, the Owner shall propose another to whom the Contractor and the Architect have no reasonable objection. When the material or substance has been rendered harmless, Work in the affected area shall resume upon written agreement of the Owner and Contractor. By Change Order, the Contract Time shall be extended appropriately and the Contract Sum shall be increased by the amount of the Contractor's reasonable additional costs of shutdown, delay, and start-up.

**§ 10.3.3** To the fullest extent permitted by law, the Owner shall indemnify and hold harmless the Contractor, Subcontractors, Architect, Architect's consultants, and agents and employees of any of them from and against claims, damages, losses, and expenses, including but not limited to attorneys' fees, arising out of or resulting from performance of the Work in the affected area if in fact the material or substance presents the risk of bodily injury or death as described in Section 10.3.1 and has not been rendered harmless, provided that such claim, damage, loss, or expense is attributable to bodily injury, sickness, disease or death, or to injury to or destruction of tangible property (other than the Work itself), except to the extent that such damage, loss, or expense is due to the fault or negligence of the party seeking indemnity.

**§ 10.3.4** The Owner shall not be responsible under this Section 10.3 for hazardous materials or substances the Contractor brings to the site unless such materials or substances are required by the Contract Documents. The Owner shall be responsible for hazardous materials or substances required by the Contract Documents, except to the extent of the Contractor's fault or negligence in the use and handling of such materials or substances.

**§ 10.3.5** The Contractor shall reimburse the Owner for the cost and expense the Owner incurs (1) for remediation of hazardous materials or substances the Contractor brings to the site and negligently handles, or (2) where the Contractor fails to perform its obligations under Section 10.3.1, except to the extent that the cost and expense are due to the Owner's fault or negligence.

**§ 10.3.6** If, without negligence on the part of the Contractor, the Contractor is held liable by a government agency for the cost of remediation of a hazardous material or substance solely by reason of performing Work as required by the Contract Documents, the Owner shall reimburse the Contractor for all cost and expense thereby incurred.

### **§ 10.4 Emergencies**

In an emergency affecting safety of persons or property, the Contractor shall act, at the Contractor's discretion, to prevent threatened damage, injury, or loss. Additional compensation or extension of time claimed by the Contractor on account of an emergency shall be determined as provided in Article 15 and Article 7.

## **ARTICLE 11 INSURANCE AND BONDS**

### **§ 11.1 Contractor's Insurance and Bonds**

**§ 11.1.1** The Contractor shall purchase and maintain insurance of the types and limits of liability, containing the endorsements, and subject to the terms and conditions, as described in the Agreement or elsewhere in the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall purchase and maintain the required insurance from an insurance company or insurance companies lawfully authorized to issue insurance in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. The

Owner, Architect, and Architect's consultants shall be named as additional insureds under the Contractor's commercial general liability policy or as otherwise described in the Contract Documents.

**§ 11.1.2** The Contractor shall provide surety bonds of the types, for such penal sums, and subject to such terms and conditions as required by the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall purchase and maintain the required bonds from a company or companies lawfully authorized to issue surety bonds in the jurisdiction where the Project is located.

**§ 11.1.3** Upon the request of any person or entity appearing to be a potential beneficiary of bonds covering payment of obligations arising under the Contract, the Contractor shall promptly furnish a copy of the bonds or shall authorize a copy to be furnished.

**§ 11.1.4 Notice of Cancellation or Expiration of Contractor's Required Insurance.** Within three (3) business days of the date the Contractor becomes aware of an impending or actual cancellation or expiration of any insurance required by the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall provide notice to the Owner of such impending or actual cancellation or expiration. Upon receipt of notice from the Contractor, the Owner shall, unless the lapse in coverage arises from an act or omission of the Owner, have the right to stop the Work until the lapse in coverage has been cured by the procurement of replacement coverage by the Contractor. The furnishing of notice by the Contractor shall not relieve the Contractor of any contractual obligation to provide any required coverage.

## **§ 11.2 Owner's Insurance**

**§ 11.2.1** The Owner shall purchase and maintain insurance of the types and limits of liability, containing the endorsements, and subject to the terms and conditions, as described in the Agreement or elsewhere in the Contract Documents. The Owner shall purchase and maintain the required insurance from an insurance company or insurance companies lawfully authorized to issue insurance in the jurisdiction where the Project is located.

**§ 11.2.2 Failure to Purchase Required Property Insurance.** If the Owner fails to purchase and maintain the required property insurance, with all of the coverages and in the amounts described in the Agreement or elsewhere in the Contract Documents, the Owner shall inform the Contractor in writing prior to commencement of the Work. Upon receipt of notice from the Owner, the Contractor may delay commencement of the Work and may obtain insurance that will protect the interests of the Contractor, Subcontractors, and Sub-Subcontractors in the Work. When the failure to provide coverage has been cured or resolved, the Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be equitably adjusted. In the event the Owner fails to procure coverage, the Owner waives all rights against the Contractor, Subcontractors, and Sub-subcontractors to the extent the loss to the Owner would have been covered by the insurance to have been procured by the Owner. The cost of the insurance shall be charged to the Owner by a Change Order. If the Owner does not provide written notice, and the Contractor is damaged by the failure or neglect of the Owner to purchase or maintain the required insurance, the Owner shall reimburse the Contractor for all reasonable costs and damages attributable thereto.

**§ 11.2.3 Notice of Cancellation or Expiration of Owner's Required Property Insurance.** Within three (3) business days of the date the Owner becomes aware of an impending or actual cancellation or expiration of any property insurance required by the Contract Documents, the Owner shall provide notice to the Contractor of such impending or actual cancellation or expiration. Unless the lapse in coverage arises from an act or omission of the Contractor: (1) the Contractor, upon receipt of notice from the Owner, shall have the right to stop the Work until the lapse in coverage has been cured by the procurement of replacement coverage by either the Owner or the Contractor; (2) the Contract Time and Contract Sum shall be equitably adjusted; and (3) the Owner waives all rights against the Contractor, Subcontractors, and Sub-subcontractors to the extent any loss to the Owner would have been covered by the insurance had it not expired or been cancelled. If the Contractor purchases replacement coverage, the cost of the insurance shall be charged to the Owner by an appropriate Change Order. The furnishing of notice by the Owner shall not relieve the Owner of any contractual obligation to provide required insurance.

## **§ 11.3 Waivers of Subrogation**

**§ 11.3.1** The Owner and Contractor waive all rights against (1) each other and any of their subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, agents, and employees, each of the other; (2) the Architect and Architect's consultants; and (3) Separate Contractors, if any, and any of their subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, agents, and employees, for damages caused by fire, or other causes of loss, to the extent those losses are covered by property insurance required by the Agreement or other property insurance applicable to the Project, except such rights as they have to proceeds

of such insurance. The Owner or Contractor, as appropriate, shall require similar written waivers in favor of the individuals and entities identified above from the Architect, Architect's consultants, Separate Contractors, subcontractors, and sub-subcontractors. The policies of insurance purchased and maintained by each person or entity agreeing to waive claims pursuant to this section 11.3.1 shall not prohibit this waiver of subrogation. This waiver of subrogation shall be effective as to a person or entity (1) even though that person or entity would otherwise have a duty of indemnification, contractual or otherwise, (2) even though that person or entity did not pay the insurance premium directly or indirectly, or (3) whether or not the person or entity had an insurable interest in the damaged property.

**§ 11.3.2** If during the Project construction period the Owner insures properties, real or personal or both, at or adjacent to the site by property insurance under policies separate from those insuring the Project, or if after final payment property insurance is to be provided on the completed Project through a policy or policies other than those insuring the Project during the construction period, to the extent permissible by such policies, the Owner waives all rights in accordance with the terms of Section 11.3.1 for damages caused by fire or other causes of loss covered by this separate property insurance.

#### **§ 11.4 Loss of Use, Business Interruption, and Delay in Completion Insurance**

The Owner, at the Owner's option, may purchase and maintain insurance that will protect the Owner against loss of use of the Owner's property, or the inability to conduct normal operations, due to fire or other causes of loss. The Owner waives all rights of action against the Contractor and Architect for loss of use of the Owner's property, due to fire or other hazards however caused.

#### **§ 11.5 Adjustment and Settlement of Insured Loss**

**§ 11.5.1** A loss insured under the property insurance required by the Agreement shall be adjusted by the Owner as fiduciary and made payable to the Owner as fiduciary for the insureds, as their interests may appear, subject to requirements of any applicable mortgagee clause and of Section 11.5.2. The Owner shall pay the Architect and Contractor their just shares of insurance proceeds received by the Owner, and by appropriate agreements the Architect and Contractor shall make payments to their consultants and Subcontractors in similar manner.

**§ 11.5.2** Prior to settlement of an insured loss, the Owner shall notify the Contractor of the terms of the proposed settlement as well as the proposed allocation of the insurance proceeds. The Contractor shall have 14 days from receipt of notice to object to the proposed settlement or allocation of the proceeds. If the Contractor does not object, the Owner shall settle the loss and the Contractor shall be bound by the settlement and allocation. Upon receipt, the Owner shall deposit the insurance proceeds in a separate account and make the appropriate distributions. Thereafter, if no other agreement is made or the Owner does not terminate the Contract for convenience, the Owner and Contractor shall execute a Change Order for reconstruction of the damaged or destroyed Work in the amount allocated for that purpose. If the Contractor timely objects to either the terms of the proposed settlement or the allocation of the proceeds, the Owner may proceed to settle the insured loss, and any dispute between the Owner and Contractor arising out of the settlement or allocation of the proceeds shall be resolved pursuant to Article 15. Pending resolution of any dispute, the Owner may issue a Construction Change Directive for the reconstruction of the damaged or destroyed Work.

### **ARTICLE 12 UNCOVERING AND CORRECTION OF WORK**

#### **§ 12.1 Uncovering of Work**

**§ 12.1.1** If a portion of the Work is covered contrary to the Architect's request or to requirements specifically expressed in the Contract Documents, it must, if requested in writing by the Architect, be uncovered for the Architect's examination and be replaced at the Contractor's expense without change in the Contract Time.

**§ 12.1.2** If a portion of the Work has been covered that the Architect has not specifically requested to examine prior to its being covered, the Architect may request to see such Work and it shall be uncovered by the Contractor. If such Work is in accordance with the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall be entitled to an equitable adjustment to the Contract Sum and Contract Time as may be appropriate. If such Work is not in accordance with the Contract Documents, the costs of uncovering the Work, and the cost of correction, shall be at the Contractor's expense.

## **§ 12.2 Correction of Work**

### **§ 12.2.1 Before Substantial Completion**

The Contractor shall promptly correct Work rejected by the Architect or failing to conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents, discovered before Substantial Completion and whether or not fabricated, installed or completed. Costs of correcting such rejected Work, including additional testing and inspections, the cost of uncovering and replacement, and compensation for the Architect's services and expenses made necessary thereby, shall be at the Contractor's expense.

### **§ 12.2.2 After Substantial Completion**

**§ 12.2.2.1** In addition to the Contractor's obligations under Section 3.5, if, within one year after the date of Substantial Completion of the Work or designated portion thereof or after the date for commencement of warranties established under Section 9.9.1, or by terms of any applicable special warranty required by the Contract Documents, any of the Work is found to be not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall correct it promptly after receipt of notice from the Owner to do so, unless the Owner has previously given the Contractor a written acceptance of such condition. The Owner shall give such notice promptly after discovery of the condition. During the one-year period for correction of Work, if the Owner fails to notify the Contractor and give the Contractor an opportunity to make the correction, the Owner waives the rights to require correction by the Contractor and to make a claim for breach of warranty. If the Contractor fails to correct nonconforming Work within a reasonable time during that period after receipt of notice from the Owner or Architect, the Owner may correct it in accordance with Section 2.5.

**§ 12.2.2.2** The one-year period for correction of Work shall be extended with respect to portions of Work first performed after Substantial Completion by the period of time between Substantial Completion and the actual completion of that portion of the Work.

**§ 12.2.2.3** The one-year period for correction of Work shall not be extended by corrective Work performed by the Contractor pursuant to this Section 12.2.

**§ 12.2.3** The Contractor shall remove from the site portions of the Work that are not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents and are neither corrected by the Contractor nor accepted by the Owner.

**§ 12.2.4** The Contractor shall bear the cost of correcting destroyed or damaged construction of the Owner or Separate Contractors, whether completed or partially completed, caused by the Contractor's correction or removal of Work that is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

**§ 12.2.5** Nothing contained in this Section 12.2 shall be construed to establish a period of limitation with respect to other obligations the Contractor has under the Contract Documents. Establishment of the one-year period for correction of Work as described in Section 12.2.2 relates only to the specific obligation of the Contractor to correct the Work, and has no relationship to the time within which the obligation to comply with the Contract Documents may be sought to be enforced, nor to the time within which proceedings may be commenced to establish the Contractor's liability with respect to the Contractor's obligations other than specifically to correct the Work.

## **§ 12.3 Acceptance of Nonconforming Work**

If the Owner prefers to accept Work that is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents, the Owner may do so instead of requiring its removal and correction, in which case the Contract Sum will be reduced as appropriate and equitable. Such adjustment shall be effected whether or not final payment has been made.

## **ARTICLE 13 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS**

### **§ 13.1 Governing Law**

The Contract shall be governed by the law of the place where the Project is located, excluding that jurisdiction's choice of law rules. If the parties have selected arbitration as the method of binding dispute resolution, the Federal Arbitration Act shall govern Section 15.4.

### **§ 13.2 Successors and Assigns**

**§ 13.2.1** The Owner and Contractor respectively bind themselves, their partners, successors, assigns, and legal representatives to covenants, agreements, and obligations contained in the Contract Documents. Except as provided in Section 13.2.2, neither party to the Contract shall assign the Contract as a whole without written consent of the



other. If either party attempts to make an assignment without such consent, that party shall nevertheless remain legally responsible for all obligations under the Contract.

**§ 13.2.2** The Owner may, without consent of the Contractor, assign the Contract to a lender providing construction financing for the Project, if the lender assumes the Owner's rights and obligations under the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall execute all consents reasonably required to facilitate the assignment.

### **§ 13.3 Rights and Remedies**

**§ 13.3.1** Duties and obligations imposed by the Contract Documents and rights and remedies available thereunder shall be in addition to and not a limitation of duties, obligations, rights, and remedies otherwise imposed or available by law.

**§ 13.3.2** No action or failure to act by the Owner, Architect, or Contractor shall constitute a waiver of a right or duty afforded them under the Contract, nor shall such action or failure to act constitute approval of or acquiescence in a breach thereunder, except as may be specifically agreed upon in writing.

### **§ 13.4 Tests and Inspections**

**§ 13.4.1** Tests, inspections, and approvals of portions of the Work shall be made as required by the Contract Documents and by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules, and regulations or lawful orders of public authorities. Unless otherwise provided, the Contractor shall make arrangements for such tests, inspections, and approvals with an independent testing laboratory or entity acceptable to the Owner, or with the appropriate public authority, and shall bear all related costs of tests, inspections, and approvals. The Contractor shall give the Architect timely notice of when and where tests and inspections are to be made so that the Architect may be present for such procedures. The Owner shall bear costs of tests, inspections, or approvals that do not become requirements until after bids are received or negotiations concluded. The Owner shall directly arrange and pay for tests, inspections, or approvals where building codes or applicable laws or regulations so require.

**§ 13.4.2** If the Architect, Owner, or public authorities having jurisdiction determine that portions of the Work require additional testing, inspection, or approval not included under Section 13.4.1, the Architect will, upon written authorization from the Owner, instruct the Contractor to make arrangements for such additional testing, inspection, or approval, by an entity acceptable to the Owner, and the Contractor shall give timely notice to the Architect of when and where tests and inspections are to be made so that the Architect may be present for such procedures. Such costs, except as provided in Section 13.4.3, shall be at the Owner's expense.

**§ 13.4.3** If procedures for testing, inspection, or approval under Sections 13.4.1 and 13.4.2 reveal failure of the portions of the Work to comply with requirements established by the Contract Documents, all costs made necessary by such failure, including those of repeated procedures and compensation for the Architect's services and expenses, shall be at the Contractor's expense.

**§ 13.4.4** Required certificates of testing, inspection, or approval shall, unless otherwise required by the Contract Documents, be secured by the Contractor and promptly delivered to the Architect.

**§ 13.4.5** If the Architect is to observe tests, inspections, or approvals required by the Contract Documents, the Architect will do so promptly and, where practicable, at the normal place of testing.

**§ 13.4.6** Tests or inspections conducted pursuant to the Contract Documents shall be made promptly to avoid unreasonable delay in the Work.

### **§ 13.5 Interest**

Payments due and unpaid under the Contract Documents shall bear interest from the date payment is due at the rate the parties agree upon in writing or, in the absence thereof, at the legal rate prevailing from time to time at the place where the Project is located.

## **ARTICLE 14 TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE CONTRACT**

### **§ 14.1 Termination by the Contractor**

**§ 14.1.1** The Contractor may terminate the Contract if the Work is stopped for a period of 30 consecutive days through no act or fault of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, a Sub-subcontractor, their agents or employees, or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work, for any of the following reasons:

- .1 Issuance of an order of a court or other public authority having jurisdiction that requires all Work to be stopped;
- .2 An act of government, such as a declaration of national emergency, that requires all Work to be stopped;
- .3 Because the Architect has not issued a Certificate for Payment and has not notified the Contractor of the reason for withholding certification as provided in Section 9.4.1, or because the Owner has not made payment on a Certificate for Payment within the time stated in the Contract Documents; or
- .4 The Owner has failed to furnish to the Contractor reasonable evidence as required by Section 2.2.

**§ 14.1.2** The Contractor may terminate the Contract if, through no act or fault of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, a Sub-subcontractor, their agents or employees, or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work, repeated suspensions, delays, or interruptions of the entire Work by the Owner as described in Section 14.3, constitute in the aggregate more than 100 percent of the total number of days scheduled for completion, or 120 days in any 365-day period, whichever is less.

**§ 14.1.3** If one of the reasons described in Section 14.1.1 or 14.1.2 exists, the Contractor may, upon seven days' notice to the Owner and Architect, terminate the Contract and recover from the Owner payment for Work executed, as well as reasonable overhead and profit on Work not executed, and costs incurred by reason of such termination.

**§ 14.1.4** If the Work is stopped for a period of 60 consecutive days through no act or fault of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, a Sub-subcontractor, or their agents or employees or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work because the Owner has repeatedly failed to fulfill the Owner's obligations under the Contract Documents with respect to matters important to the progress of the Work, the Contractor may, upon seven additional days' notice to the Owner and the Architect, terminate the Contract and recover from the Owner as provided in Section 14.1.3.

### **§ 14.2 Termination by the Owner for Cause**

**§ 14.2.1** The Owner may terminate the Contract if the Contractor

- .1 repeatedly refuses or fails to supply enough properly skilled workers or proper materials;
- .2 fails to make payment to Subcontractors or suppliers in accordance with the respective agreements between the Contractor and the Subcontractors or suppliers;
- .3 repeatedly disregards applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, or lawful orders of a public authority; or
- .4 otherwise is guilty of substantial breach of a provision of the Contract Documents.

**§ 14.2.2** When any of the reasons described in Section 14.2.1 exist, and upon certification by the Architect that sufficient cause exists to justify such action, the Owner may, without prejudice to any other rights or remedies of the Owner and after giving the Contractor and the Contractor's surety, if any, seven days' notice, terminate employment of the Contractor and may, subject to any prior rights of the surety:

- .1 Exclude the Contractor from the site and take possession of all materials, equipment, tools, and construction equipment and machinery thereon owned by the Contractor;
- .2 Accept assignment of subcontracts pursuant to Section 5.4; and
- .3 Finish the Work by whatever reasonable method the Owner may deem expedient. Upon written request of the Contractor, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor a detailed accounting of the costs incurred by the Owner in finishing the Work.

**§ 14.2.3** When the Owner terminates the Contract for one of the reasons stated in Section 14.2.1, the Contractor shall not be entitled to receive further payment until the Work is finished.

**§ 14.2.4** If the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum exceeds costs of finishing the Work, including compensation for the Architect's services and expenses made necessary thereby, and other damages incurred by the Owner and not expressly waived, such excess shall be paid to the Contractor. If such costs and damages exceed the unpaid balance,

the Contractor shall pay the difference to the Owner. The amount to be paid to the Contractor or Owner, as the case may be, shall be certified by the Initial Decision Maker, upon application, and this obligation for payment shall survive termination of the Contract.

#### **§ 14.3 Suspension by the Owner for Convenience**

**§ 14.3.1** The Owner may, without cause, order the Contractor in writing to suspend, delay or interrupt the Work, in whole or in part for such period of time as the Owner may determine.

**§ 14.3.2** The Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be adjusted for increases in the cost and time caused by suspension, delay, or interruption under Section 14.3.1. Adjustment of the Contract Sum shall include profit. No adjustment shall be made to the extent

- .1 that performance is, was, or would have been, so suspended, delayed, or interrupted, by another cause for which the Contractor is responsible; or
- .2 that an equitable adjustment is made or denied under another provision of the Contract.

#### **§ 14.4 Termination by the Owner for Convenience**

**§ 14.4.1** The Owner may, at any time, terminate the Contract for the Owner's convenience and without cause.

**§ 14.4.2** Upon receipt of notice from the Owner of such termination for the Owner's convenience, the Contractor shall

- .1 cease operations as directed by the Owner in the notice;
- .2 take actions necessary, or that the Owner may direct, for the protection and preservation of the Work; and
- .3 except for Work directed to be performed prior to the effective date of termination stated in the notice, terminate all existing subcontracts and purchase orders and enter into no further subcontracts and purchase orders.

**§ 14.4.3** In case of such termination for the Owner's convenience, the Owner shall pay the Contractor for Work properly executed; costs incurred by reason of the termination, including costs attributable to termination of Subcontracts; and the termination fee, if any, set forth in the Agreement.

### **ARTICLE 15 CLAIMS AND DISPUTES**

#### **§ 15.1 Claims**

##### **§ 15.1.1 Definition**

A Claim is a demand or assertion by one of the parties seeking, as a matter of right, payment of money, a change in the Contract Time, or other relief with respect to the terms of the Contract. The term "Claim" also includes other disputes and matters in question between the Owner and Contractor arising out of or relating to the Contract. The responsibility to substantiate Claims shall rest with the party making the Claim. This Section 15.1.1 does not require the Owner to file a Claim in order to impose liquidated damages in accordance with the Contract Documents.

##### **§ 15.1.2 Time Limits on Claims**

The Owner and Contractor shall commence all Claims and causes of action against the other and arising out of or related to the Contract, whether in contract, tort, breach of warranty or otherwise, in accordance with the requirements of the binding dispute resolution method selected in the Agreement and within the period specified by applicable law, but in any case not more than 10 years after the date of Substantial Completion of the Work. The Owner and Contractor waive all Claims and causes of action not commenced in accordance with this Section 15.1.2.

##### **§ 15.1.3 Notice of Claims**

**§ 15.1.3.1** Claims by either the Owner or Contractor, where the condition giving rise to the Claim is first discovered prior to expiration of the period for correction of the Work set forth in Section 12.2.2, shall be initiated by notice to the other party and to the Initial Decision Maker with a copy sent to the Architect, if the Architect is not serving as the Initial Decision Maker. Claims by either party under this Section 15.1.3.1 shall be initiated within 21 days after occurrence of the event giving rise to such Claim or within 21 days after the claimant first recognizes the condition giving rise to the Claim, whichever is later.

**§ 15.1.3.2** Claims by either the Owner or Contractor, where the condition giving rise to the Claim is first discovered after expiration of the period for correction of the Work set forth in Section 12.2.2, shall be initiated by notice to the other party. In such event, no decision by the Initial Decision Maker is required.

#### **§ 15.1.4 Continuing Contract Performance**

**§ 15.1.4.1** Pending final resolution of a Claim, except as otherwise agreed in writing or as provided in Section 9.7 and Article 14, the Contractor shall proceed diligently with performance of the Contract and the Owner shall continue to make payments in accordance with the Contract Documents.

**§ 15.1.4.2** The Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be adjusted in accordance with the Initial Decision Maker's decision, subject to the right of either party to proceed in accordance with this Article 15. The Architect will issue Certificates for Payment in accordance with the decision of the Initial Decision Maker.

#### **§ 15.1.5 Claims for Additional Cost**

If the Contractor wishes to make a Claim for an increase in the Contract Sum, notice as provided in Section 15.1.3 shall be given before proceeding to execute the portion of the Work that is the subject of the Claim. Prior notice is not required for Claims relating to an emergency endangering life or property arising under Section 10.4.

#### **§ 15.1.6 Claims for Additional Time**

**§ 15.1.6.1** If the Contractor wishes to make a Claim for an increase in the Contract Time, notice as provided in Section 15.1.3 shall be given. The Contractor's Claim shall include an estimate of cost and of probable effect of delay on progress of the Work. In the case of a continuing delay, only one Claim is necessary.

**§ 15.1.6.2** If adverse weather conditions are the basis for a Claim for additional time, such Claim shall be documented by data substantiating that weather conditions were abnormal for the period of time, could not have been reasonably anticipated, and had an adverse effect on the scheduled construction.

#### **§ 15.1.7 Waiver of Claims for Consequential Damages**

The Contractor and Owner waive Claims against each other for consequential damages arising out of or relating to this Contract. This mutual waiver includes

- .1 damages incurred by the Owner for rental expenses, for losses of use, income, profit, financing, business and reputation, and for loss of management or employee productivity or of the services of such persons; and
- .2 damages incurred by the Contractor for principal office expenses including the compensation of personnel stationed there, for losses of financing, business and reputation, and for loss of profit, except anticipated profit arising directly from the Work.

This mutual waiver is applicable, without limitation, to all consequential damages due to either party's termination in accordance with Article 14. Nothing contained in this Section 15.1.7 shall be deemed to preclude assessment of liquidated damages, when applicable, in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

#### **§ 15.2 Initial Decision**

**§ 15.2.1** Claims, excluding those where the condition giving rise to the Claim is first discovered after expiration of the period for correction of the Work set forth in Section 12.2.2 or arising under Sections 10.3, 10.4, and 11.5, shall be referred to the Initial Decision Maker for initial decision. The Architect will serve as the Initial Decision Maker, unless otherwise indicated in the Agreement. Except for those Claims excluded by this Section 15.2.1, an initial decision shall be required as a condition precedent to mediation of any Claim. If an initial decision has not been rendered within 30 days after the Claim has been referred to the Initial Decision Maker, the party asserting the Claim may demand mediation and binding dispute resolution without a decision having been rendered. Unless the Initial Decision Maker and all affected parties agree, the Initial Decision Maker will not decide disputes between the Contractor and persons or entities other than the Owner.

**§ 15.2.2** The Initial Decision Maker will review Claims and within ten days of the receipt of a Claim take one or more of the following actions: (1) request additional supporting data from the claimant or a response with supporting data from the other party, (2) reject the Claim in whole or in part, (3) approve the Claim, (4) suggest a compromise, or (5) advise the parties that the Initial Decision Maker is unable to resolve the Claim if the Initial Decision Maker lacks sufficient information to evaluate the merits of the Claim or if the Initial Decision Maker concludes that, in the

Initial Decision Maker's sole discretion, it would be inappropriate for the Initial Decision Maker to resolve the Claim.

**§ 15.2.3** In evaluating Claims, the Initial Decision Maker may, but shall not be obligated to, consult with or seek information from either party or from persons with special knowledge or expertise who may assist the Initial Decision Maker in rendering a decision. The Initial Decision Maker may request the Owner to authorize retention of such persons at the Owner's expense.

**§ 15.2.4** If the Initial Decision Maker requests a party to provide a response to a Claim or to furnish additional supporting data, such party shall respond, within ten days after receipt of the request, and shall either (1) provide a response on the requested supporting data, (2) advise the Initial Decision Maker when the response or supporting data will be furnished, or (3) advise the Initial Decision Maker that no supporting data will be furnished. Upon receipt of the response or supporting data, if any, the Initial Decision Maker will either reject or approve the Claim in whole or in part.

**§ 15.2.5** The Initial Decision Maker will render an initial decision approving or rejecting the Claim, or indicating that the Initial Decision Maker is unable to resolve the Claim. This initial decision shall (1) be in writing; (2) state the reasons therefor; and (3) notify the parties and the Architect, if the Architect is not serving as the Initial Decision Maker, of any change in the Contract Sum or Contract Time or both. The initial decision shall be final and binding on the parties but subject to mediation and, if the parties fail to resolve their dispute through mediation, to binding dispute resolution.

**§ 15.2.6** Either party may file for mediation of an initial decision at any time, subject to the terms of Section 15.2.6.1.

**§ 15.2.6.1** Either party may, within 30 days from the date of receipt of an initial decision, demand in writing that the other party file for mediation. If such a demand is made and the party receiving the demand fails to file for mediation within 30 days after receipt thereof, then both parties waive their rights to mediate or pursue binding dispute resolution proceedings with respect to the initial decision.

**§ 15.2.7** In the event of a Claim against the Contractor, the Owner may, but is not obligated to, notify the surety, if any, of the nature and amount of the Claim. If the Claim relates to a possibility of a Contractor's default, the Owner may, but is not obligated to, notify the surety and request the surety's assistance in resolving the controversy.

**§ 15.2.8** If a Claim relates to or is the subject of a mechanic's lien, the party asserting such Claim may proceed in accordance with applicable law to comply with the lien notice or filing deadlines.

### **§ 15.3 Mediation**

**§ 15.3.1** Claims, disputes, or other matters in controversy arising out of or related to the Contract, except those waived as provided for in Sections 9.10.4, 9.10.5, and 15.1.7, shall be subject to mediation as a condition precedent to binding dispute resolution.

**§ 15.3.2** The parties shall endeavor to resolve their Claims by mediation which, unless the parties mutually agree otherwise, shall be administered by the American Arbitration Association in accordance with its Construction Industry Mediation Procedures in effect on the date of the Agreement. A request for mediation shall be made in writing, delivered to the other party to the Contract, and filed with the person or entity administering the mediation. The request may be made concurrently with the filing of binding dispute resolution proceedings but, in such event, mediation shall proceed in advance of binding dispute resolution proceedings, which shall be stayed pending mediation for a period of 60 days from the date of filing, unless stayed for a longer period by agreement of the parties or court order. If an arbitration is stayed pursuant to this Section 15.3.2, the parties may nonetheless proceed to the selection of the arbitrator(s) and agree upon a schedule for later proceedings.

**§ 15.3.3** Either party may, within 30 days from the date that mediation has been concluded without resolution of the dispute or 60 days after mediation has been demanded without resolution of the dispute, demand in writing that the other party file for binding dispute resolution. If such a demand is made and the party receiving the demand fails to file for binding dispute resolution within 60 days after receipt thereof, then both parties waive their rights to binding dispute resolution proceedings with respect to the initial decision.

**§ 15.3.4** The parties shall share the mediator's fee and any filing fees equally. The mediation shall be held in the place where the Project is located, unless another location is mutually agreed upon. Agreements reached in mediation shall be enforceable as settlement agreements in any court having jurisdiction thereof.

**§ 15.4 Arbitration**

**§ 15.4.1** If the parties have selected arbitration as the method for binding dispute resolution in the Agreement, any Claim subject to, but not resolved by, mediation shall be subject to arbitration which, unless the parties mutually agree otherwise, shall be administered by the American Arbitration Association in accordance with its Construction Industry Arbitration Rules in effect on the date of the Agreement. The Arbitration shall be conducted in the place where the Project is located, unless another location is mutually agreed upon. A demand for arbitration shall be made in writing, delivered to the other party to the Contract, and filed with the person or entity administering the arbitration. The party filing a notice of demand for arbitration must assert in the demand all Claims then known to that party on which arbitration is permitted to be demanded.

**§ 15.4.1.1** A demand for arbitration shall be made no earlier than concurrently with the filing of a request for mediation, but in no event shall it be made after the date when the institution of legal or equitable proceedings based on the Claim would be barred by the applicable statute of limitations. For statute of limitations purposes, receipt of a written demand for arbitration by the person or entity administering the arbitration shall constitute the institution of legal or equitable proceedings based on the Claim.

**§ 15.4.2** The award rendered by the arbitrator or arbitrators shall be final, and judgment may be entered upon it in accordance with applicable law in any court having jurisdiction thereof.

**§ 15.4.3** The foregoing agreement to arbitrate and other agreements to arbitrate with an additional person or entity duly consented to by parties to the Agreement, shall be specifically enforceable under applicable law in any court having jurisdiction thereof.

**§ 15.4.4 Consolidation or Joinder**

**§ 15.4.4.1** Subject to the rules of the American Arbitration Association or other applicable arbitration rules, either party may consolidate an arbitration conducted under this Agreement with any other arbitration to which it is a party provided that (1) the arbitration agreement governing the other arbitration permits consolidation, (2) the arbitrations to be consolidated substantially involve common questions of law or fact, and (3) the arbitrations employ materially similar procedural rules and methods for selecting arbitrator(s).

**§ 15.4.4.2** Subject to the rules of the American Arbitration Association or other applicable arbitration rules, either party may include by joinder persons or entities substantially involved in a common question of law or fact whose presence is required if complete relief is to be accorded in arbitration, provided that the party sought to be joined consents in writing to such joinder. Consent to arbitration involving an additional person or entity shall not constitute consent to arbitration of any claim, dispute or other matter in question not described in the written consent.

**§ 15.4.4.3** The Owner and Contractor grant to any person or entity made a party to an arbitration conducted under this Section 15.4, whether by joinder or consolidation, the same rights of joinder and consolidation as those of the Owner and Contractor under this Agreement.

## **Certification of Document's Authenticity**

**AIA® Document D401™ – 2003**

I, , hereby certify, to the best of my knowledge, information and belief, that I created the attached final document simultaneously with this certification 11:15:17 ET on 09/15/2023 under Order No. 2114465994 from AIA Contract Documents software and that in preparing the attached final document I made no changes to the original text of AIA® Document A201™ - 2017, General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, other than changes shown in the attached final document by underscoring added text and striking over deleted text.

---

*(Signed)*

---

*(Title)*

---

*(Dated)*

LITTLE™  
DIVERSIFIED ARCHITECTURAL CONSULTING



## SECTION 01 10 00 - SUMMARY

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Project information.
  - 2. Work covered by Contract Documents.
  - 3. Contractor's use of site and premises.
  - 4. Work restrictions.
  - 5. Specification and Drawing conventions.
  - 6. Miscellaneous provisions.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Work Package: A group of specifications, drawings, and schedules prepared by the design team to describe a portion of the Project Work for pricing, permitting, and construction.

## 1.4 PROJECT INFORMATION

- A. Project Identification: Novant ASC Leland.
  - 1. Project Location: 9151 Ocean Highway E, Leland, North Carolina 28451.
- B. Owner: Novant Health.
  - 1. Owner's Representative: Taylor Simms, Novant Health, 2085 Frontis Plaza Blvd., Winston Salem, NC 27103, 336-765-5221, [taylor.simms@novanthealth.org](mailto:taylor.simms@novanthealth.org).
- C. Architect: Little Diversified Architectural Consulting, Inc.
  - 1. Architect's Representative: William Mumford, Little Diversified Architectural Consulting, Inc., 615 South College Street, Suite 1600, Charlotte, NC 28202, 704-561-7572, [William.mumford@littleonline.com](mailto:William.mumford@littleonline.com).
- D. Architect's Consultants: Architect has retained the following design professionals, who have prepared designated portions of the Contract Documents:
  - 1. Mechanical:

- a. Mechanical Representative: Andrea Thompson, Specialized Engineering Solutions, 1300 Baxter Street, No. 230, Charlotte, NC 28204, 704-348-3097, [athompson@specializedeng.com](mailto:athompson@specializedeng.com).
  2. Plumbing:
    - a. Plumbing Representative: Scott Cathey, Specialized Engineering Solutions, 1300 Baxter Street, No. 230, Charlotte, NC 28204, 704-348-3097, [scathey@specializedeng.com](mailto:scathey@specializedeng.com).
  3. Electrical:
    - a. Electrical Representative: Steven Handley, Specialized Engineering Solutions, 1300 Baxter Street, No. 230, Charlotte, NC 28204, 704-348-3097, [shandley@specializedeng.com](mailto:shandley@specializedeng.com).
  4. Civil:
    - a. Civil Representative: John Tunstall, Norris + Tunstall, 2602 Iron Gate Drive, Ste. 102, Wilmington, NC 28412, 910-343-9653, [jtunstall@ntengineers.com](mailto:jtunstall@ntengineers.com).
  - E. Other Owner Consultants: Owner has retained the following design professionals who have prepared designated portions of the Contract Documents:
    1. Structural: Citadel Contractors, Inc. has prepared designated portions of the Contract Documents:
      - a. Structural Representative: Chris Jackson, Citadel Contractors, Inc., 3405 Apex Peakway, Apex, NC 27502, 919-362-5122, [cjackson@citadelcontractors.com](mailto:cjackson@citadelcontractors.com).
  - F. Contractor: Thomas Construction Group, LLC has been engaged as Contractor for this Project.
    1. Contractor Representative: Christopher Thorn, Thomas Construction Group, LLC, 1022 Ashes Drive, Wilmington, NC 28405, 910-679-8480, [cthorn@thomasconstructiongroup.com](mailto:cthorn@thomasconstructiongroup.com).
  - G. Web-Based Project Software: Project software will be used for purposes of managing communication and documents during the construction stage.
    1. See Section 01 31 00 "Project Management and Coordination." for requirements for using web-based Project software.
- 1.5 WORK COVERED BY CONTRACT DOCUMENTS
- A. The Work of Project is defined by the Contract Documents and includes, but is not limited to, the following:
    1. Construction of a single story, approximately 16,647 square foot medical office building, associated plumbing, mechanical, electrical, civil, landscaping, and other Work indicated in the Contract Documents.
  - B. Type of Contract:

1. Project will be constructed under a single prime contract.

#### 1.6 CONTRACTOR'S USE OF SITE AND PREMISES

- A. Limits on Use of Site: Limit use of Project site to areas within the Contract limits indicated. Do not disturb portions of Project site beyond areas in which the Work is indicated.
  1. Driveways, Walkways and Entrances: Keep driveways and entrances serving premises clear and available to Owner, Owner's employees, and emergency vehicles at all times. Do not use these areas for parking or for storage of materials.
    - a. Schedule deliveries to minimize use of driveways and entrances by construction operations.
    - b. Schedule deliveries to minimize space and time requirements for storage of materials and equipment on-site.
- B. Condition of Existing Grounds: Maintain portions of existing grounds, landscaping, and hardscaping affected by construction operations throughout construction period. Repair damage caused by construction operations.

#### 1.7 WORK RESTRICTIONS

- A. Comply with restrictions on construction operations.
  1. Comply with limitations on use of public streets, work on public streets, rights of way, and other requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. On-Site Work Hours: Limit work to between 6 a.m. to 6 p.m., Monday through Friday, unless otherwise indicated. Work hours may be modified to meet Project requirements if approved by Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
  1. Weekend Hours: Coordinate with Owner and Authorities Having Jurisdiction.
  2. Early Morning Hours: Coordinate with Owner and Authorities Having Jurisdiction.
  3. Hours for Utility Shutdowns: Coordinate with Owner.
- C. Existing Utility Interruptions: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging for temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:
  1. Notify Architect and Owner not less than three days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
  2. Obtain Owner's written permission before proceeding with utility interruptions.
- D. Noise, Vibration, Dust, and Odors: Coordinate operations that may result in high levels of noise and vibration, dust, odors, or other disruption to Owner occupancy with Owner.
  1. Notify Architect and Owner not less than three days in advance of proposed disruptive operations.
  2. Obtain Owner's written permission before proceeding with disruptive operations.
- E. Smoking and Controlled Substance Restrictions: Use of tobacco products, alcoholic beverages, and other controlled substances on Project site is not permitted.

- F. Employee Identification: Provide identification tags for Contractor personnel working on Project site. Require personnel to use identification tags at all times.
- G. Employee Screening: Comply with Owner's requirements for drug and background screening of Contractor personnel working on Project site.
  - 1. Maintain list of approved screened personnel with Owner's representative.

## 1.8 SPECIFICATION AND DRAWING CONVENTIONS

- A. Specification Content: The Specifications use certain conventions for the style of language and the intended meaning of certain terms, words, and phrases when used in particular situations. These conventions are as follows:
  - 1. Imperative mood and streamlined language are generally used in the Specifications. The words "shall," "shall be," or "shall comply with," depending on the context, are implied where a colon (:) is used within a sentence or phrase.
  - 2. Text Color: Text used in the Specifications, including units of measure, manufacturer and product names, and other text may appear in multiple colors or underlined as part of a hyperlink; no emphasis is implied by text with these characteristics.
  - 3. Hypertext: Text used in the Specifications may contain hyperlinks. Hyperlinks may allow for access to linked information that is not residing in the Specifications. Unless otherwise indicated, linked information is not part of the Contract Documents.
  - 4. Specification requirements are to be performed by Contractor unless specifically stated otherwise.
- B. Division 00 Contracting Requirements: General provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions, apply to all Sections of the Specifications.
- C. Division 01 General Requirements: Requirements of Sections in Division 01 apply to the Work of all Sections in the Specifications.
- D. Drawing Coordination: Requirements for materials and products identified on Drawings are described in detail in the Specifications. One or more of the following are used on Drawings to identify materials and products:
  - 1. Terminology: Materials and products are identified by the typical generic terms used in the individual Specifications Sections.
  - 2. Abbreviations: Materials and products are identified by abbreviations scheduled on Drawings.
  - 3. Keynoting: Materials and products are identified by reference keynotes referencing Specification Section numbers found in this Project Manual.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 10 00

## SECTION 01 25 00 - SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for substitutions.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Substitutions: Changes in products, materials, equipment, and methods of construction from those required by the Contract Documents and proposed by Contractor.
  - 1. Substitutions for Cause: Changes proposed by Contractor that are required due to changed Project conditions, such as unavailability of product, regulatory changes, or unavailability of required warranty terms.
  - 2. Substitutions for Convenience: Changes proposed by Contractor or Owner that are not required in order to meet other Project requirements but may offer advantage to Contractor or Owner.

## 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Substitution Requests: Submit three copies of each request for consideration. Identify product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.
  - 1. Substitution Request Form: Use CSI Form 13.1A or form acceptable to Architect.
  - 2. Documentation: Show compliance with requirements for substitutions and the following, as applicable:
    - a. Statement indicating why specified product or fabrication or installation cannot be provided, if applicable.
    - b. Coordination information, including a list of changes or revisions needed to other parts of the Work and to construction performed by Owner and separate contractors, that will be necessary to accommodate proposed substitution.
    - c. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed substitution with those of the Work specified. Include annotated copy of applicable Specification Section. Significant qualities may include attributes such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, sustainable design characteristics, warranties, and specific features and requirements indicated. Indicate deviations, if any, from the Work specified.
    - d. Product Data, including drawings and descriptions of products and fabrication and installation procedures.
    - e. Samples, where applicable or requested.

- f. Certificates and qualification data, where applicable or requested.
  - g. List of similar installations for completed projects with project names and addresses and names and addresses of architects and owners.
  - h. Material test reports from a qualified testing agency indicating and interpreting test results for compliance with requirements indicated.
  - i. Research reports evidencing compliance with building code in effect for Project, from North Carolina State Building Code.
  - j. Detailed comparison of Contractor's construction schedule using proposed substitution with products specified for the Work, including effect on the overall Contract Time. If specified product or method of construction cannot be provided within the Contract Time, include letter from manufacturer, on manufacturer's letterhead, stating date of receipt of purchase order, lack of availability, or delays in delivery.
  - k. Cost information, including a proposal of change, if any, in the Contract Sum.
  - l. Contractor's certification that proposed substitution complies with requirements in the Contract Documents except as indicated in substitution request, is compatible with related materials, and is appropriate for applications indicated.
  - m. Contractor's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently become necessary because of failure of proposed substitution to produce indicated results.
3. Architect's Action: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within seven days of receipt of a request for substitution. Architect will notify Contractor through Construction Manager of acceptance or rejection of proposed substitution within 15 days of receipt of request, or seven days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.
- a. Forms of Acceptance: Change Order, Construction Change Directive, or Architect's Supplemental Instructions for minor changes in the Work.
  - b. Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a proposed substitution within time allocated.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Compatibility of Substitutions: Investigate and document compatibility of proposed substitution with related products and materials. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform compatibility tests recommended by manufacturers.

## 1.6 PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Revise or adjust affected work as necessary to integrate work of the approved substitutions.

## 1.7 SUBSTITUTIONS

- A. Substitutions for Cause: Submit requests for substitution immediately on discovery of need for change, but not later than 15 days prior to time required for preparation and review of related submittals.
  - 1. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect

will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:

- a. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
- b. Requested substitution provides sustainable design characteristics that specified product provided.
- c. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
- d. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule.
- e. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
- f. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
- g. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
- h. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
- i. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.

B. Substitutions for Convenience: Not allowed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 25 00





## SECTION 01 26 00 - CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section specifies administrative and procedural requirements for handling and processing Contract modifications.

## 1.3 MINOR CHANGES IN THE WORK

- A. Architect will issue through Construction Manager supplemental instructions authorizing Minor Changes in the Work, not involving adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time, on AIA Document G710, "Architect's Supplemental Instructions."

## 1.4 PROPOSAL REQUESTS

- A. Owner-Initiated Proposal Requests: Construction Manager will issue a detailed description of proposed changes in the Work that may require adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time. If necessary, the description will include supplemental or revised Drawings and Specifications.

1. Work Change Proposal Requests issued by Construction Manager are not instructions either to stop work in progress or to execute the proposed change.
2. Within time specified in Proposal Request or 14 days after receipt of Proposal Request, submit a quotation estimating cost adjustments to the Contract Sum and the Contract Time necessary to execute the change.

- a. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
- b. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
- c. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
- d. Include an updated Contractor's Construction Schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.

- B. Contractor-Initiated Proposals: If latent or unforeseen conditions require modifications to the Contract, Contractor may propose changes by submitting a request for a change to Construction Manager.

1. Include a statement outlining reasons for the change and the effect of the change on the Work. Provide a complete description of the proposed change. Indicate the effect of the proposed change on the Contract Sum and the Contract Time.

2. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
3. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
4. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
5. Include an updated Contractor's Construction Schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
6. Comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Product Requirements" if the proposed change requires substitution of one product or system for product or system specified.

C. Proposal Request Form: Use AIA Document G709 for Proposal Requests.

## 1.5 ALLOWANCES

- A. Allowance Adjustment: To adjust allowance amounts, base each Change Order proposal on the difference between purchase amount and the allowance, multiplied by final measurement of work-in-place. If applicable, include reasonable allowances for cutting losses, tolerances, mixing wastes, normal product imperfections, and similar margins.
1. Include installation costs in purchase amount only where indicated as part of the allowance.
  2. If requested, prepare explanation and documentation to substantiate distribution of overhead costs and other margins claimed.
  3. Submit substantiation of a change in scope of work, if any, claimed in Change Orders related to unit-cost allowances.
  4. Owner reserves the right to establish the quantity of work-in-place by independent quantity survey, measure, or count.
- B. Submit claims for increased costs because of a change in scope or nature of the allowance described in the Contract Documents, whether for the Purchase Order amount or Contractor's handling, labor, installation, overhead, and profit. Submit claims within 21 days of receipt of the Change Order or Construction Change Directive authorizing work to proceed. Owner will reject claims submitted later than 21 days after such authorization.
1. Do not include Contractor's or subcontractor's indirect expense in the Change Order cost amount unless it is clearly shown that the nature or extent of work has changed from what could have been foreseen from information in the Contract Documents.
  2. No change to Contractor's indirect expense is permitted for selection of higher- or lower-priced materials or systems of the same scope and nature as originally indicated.

## 1.6 CHANGE ORDER PROCEDURES

- A. On Owner's approval of a Proposal Request, Construction Manager will issue a Change Order for signatures of Owner and Contractor on State form.

1.7 CONSTRUCTION CHANGE DIRECTIVE

- A. Construction Change Directive: Construction Manager may issue a Construction Change Directive on AIA Document G714. Construction Change Directive instructs Contractor to proceed with a change in the Work, for subsequent inclusion in a Change Order.
  - 1. Construction Change Directive contains a complete description of change in the Work. It also designates method to be followed to determine change in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time.
- B. Documentation: Maintain detailed records on a time and material basis of work required by the Construction Change Directive.
  - 1. After completion of change, submit an itemized account and supporting data necessary to substantiate cost and time adjustments to the Contract.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 26 00

September 15, 2023

Novant ASC Leland  
Construction Documents

1721843900



## SECTION 01 29 00 - PAYMENT PROCEDURES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section specifies administrative and procedural requirements necessary to prepare and process Applications for Payment.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Schedule of Values: A statement furnished by Contractor allocating portions of the Contract Sum to various portions of the Work and used as the basis for reviewing Contractor's Applications for Payment.

## 1.4 SCHEDULE OF VALUES

- A. Coordination: Coordinate preparation of the Schedule of Values with preparation of Contractor's Construction Schedule.

- 1. Correlate line items in the Schedule of Values with other required administrative forms and schedules, including the following:

- a. Application for Payment forms with Continuation Sheets.
- b. Submittals Schedule.
- c. Contractor's Construction Schedule.

- 2. Submit the Schedule of Values to Architect through Construction Manager at earliest possible date but no later than 21 days before the date scheduled for submittal of initial Applications for Payment.

- B. Format and Content: Use the Project Manual table of contents as a guide to establish line items for the Schedule of Values. Provide at least one line item for each Specification Section.

- 1. Identification: Include the following Project identification on the Schedule of Values:

- a. Project name and location.
- b. Name of Architect.
- c. Architect's project number.
- d. Contractor's name and address.
- e. Date of submittal.

- 2. Submit draft of AIA Document G703 Continuation Sheets.

3. Arrange the Schedule of Values in tabular form with separate columns to indicate the following for each item listed:
  - a. Related Specification Section or Division.
  - b. Description of the Work.
  - c. Name of subcontractor.
  - d. Name of manufacturer or fabricator.
  - e. Name of supplier.
  - f. Change Orders (numbers) that affect value.
  - g. Dollar value.
    - 1) Percentage of the Contract Sum to nearest one-hundredth percent, adjusted to total 100 percent.
4. Provide a breakdown of the Contract Sum in enough detail to facilitate continued evaluation of Applications for Payment and progress reports. Coordinate with the Project Manual table of contents. Provide several line items for principal subcontract amounts, where appropriate. Include separate line items under required principal subcontracts for operation and maintenance manuals, punch list activities, Project Record Documents, and demonstration and training in the amount of 5 percent of the Contract Sum.
5. Round amounts to nearest whole dollar; total shall equal the Contract Sum.
6. Provide a separate line item in the Schedule of Values for each part of the Work where Applications for Payment may include materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed.
  - a. Differentiate between items stored on-site and items stored off-site. If specified, include evidence of insurance or bonded warehousing.
7. Provide separate line items in the Schedule of Values for initial cost of materials, for each subsequent stage of completion, and for total installed value of that part of the Work.
8. Allowances: Provide a separate line item in the Schedule of Values for each allowance. Show line-item value of unit-cost allowances, as a product of the unit cost, multiplied by measured quantity. Use information indicated in the Contract Documents to determine quantities.
9. Each item in the Schedule of Values and Applications for Payment shall be complete. Include total cost and proportionate share of general overhead and profit for each item.
  - a. Temporary facilities and other major cost items that are not direct cost of actual work-in-place may be shown either as separate line items in the Schedule of Values or distributed as general overhead expense, at Contractor's option.
10. Schedule Updating: Update and resubmit the Schedule of Values before the next Applications for Payment when Change Orders or Construction Change Directives result in a change in the Contract Sum.

## 1.5 APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENT

- A. Each Application for Payment shall be consistent with previous applications and payments as certified by Architect and Construction Manager and paid for by Owner.
  1. Initial Application for Payment, Application for Payment at time of Substantial Completion, and final Application for Payment involve additional requirements.

- B. Payment Application Times: The date for each progress payment is indicated in the Agreement between Owner and Contractor. The period of construction Work covered by each Application for Payment is the period indicated in the Agreement.
- C. Payment Application Times: Progress payments shall be submitted to Architect by the 25th of the month. The period covered by each Application for Payment is one month, ending on the last day of the month.
- D. Payment Application Forms: Use AIA Document G702 and AIA Document G703 Continuation Sheets as form for Applications for Payment.
- E. Application Preparation: Complete every entry on form. Notarize and execute by a person authorized to sign legal documents on behalf of Contractor. Construction Manager will return incomplete applications without action.
1. Entries shall match data on the Schedule of Values and Contractor's Construction Schedule. Use updated schedules if revisions were made.
  2. Include amounts of Change Orders and Construction Change Directives issued before last day of construction period covered by application.
- F. Transmittal: Submit 6 signed and notarized original copies of each Application for Payment to Construction Manager by a method ensuring receipt within 48 hours. One copy shall include waivers of lien and similar attachments if required.
1. Transmit each copy with a transmittal form listing attachments and recording appropriate information about application.
- G. Waivers of Mechanic's Lien: With each Application for Payment, submit waivers of mechanic's lien from every entity who is lawfully entitled to file a mechanic's lien arising out of the Contract and related to the Work covered by the payment.
1. Submit partial waivers on each item for amount requested in previous application, after deduction for retainage, on each item.
  2. When an application shows completion of an item, submit final or full waivers.
  3. Owner reserves the right to designate which entities involved in the Work must submit waivers.
  4. Waiver Forms: Submit waivers of lien on forms, executed in a manner acceptable to Owner.
- H. Initial Application for Payment: Administrative actions and submittals that must precede or coincide with submittal of first Application for Payment include the following:
1. List of subcontractors.
  2. Schedule of Values.
  3. Contractor's Construction Schedule (preliminary if not final).
  4. Products list.
  5. Schedule of unit prices.
  6. Submittals Schedule (preliminary if not final).
  7. List of Contractor's staff assignments.
  8. List of Contractor's principal consultants.
  9. Certificates of insurance and insurance policies.
  10. Performance and payment bonds.
  11. Data needed to acquire Owner's insurance.

- I. Application for Payment at Substantial Completion: After issuing the Certificate of Substantial Completion, submit an Application for Payment showing 100 percent completion for portion of the Work claimed as substantially complete.
  1. Include documentation supporting claim that the Work is substantially complete and a statement showing an accounting of changes to the Contract Sum.
  2. This application shall reflect Certificates of Partial Substantial Completion issued previously for Owner occupancy of designated portions of the Work.
  
- J. Final Payment Application: Submit final Application for Payment with releases and supporting documentation not previously submitted and accepted, including, but not limited, to the following:
  1. Evidence of completion of Project closeout requirements.
  2. Insurance certificates for products and completed operations where required and proof that taxes, fees, and similar obligations were paid.
  3. Updated final statement, accounting for final changes to the Contract Sum.
  4. "Contractor's Affidavit of Payment of Debts and Claims."
  5. "Contractor's Affidavit of Release of Liens."
  6. "Consent of Surety to Final Payment."
  7. Evidence that claims have been settled.
  8. Final meter readings for utilities, a measured record of stored fuel, and similar data as of date of Substantial Completion or when Owner took possession of and assumed responsibility for corresponding elements of the Work.
  9. Final, liquidated damages settlement statement.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 29 00



## SECTION 01 31 00 - PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative provisions for coordinating construction operations on Project including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. General coordination procedures.
  - 2. Coordination drawings.
  - 3. RFIs.
  - 4. Digital project management procedures.
  - 5. Project meetings.
- B. Each contractor shall participate in coordination requirements. Certain areas of responsibility are assigned to a specific contractor.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. BIM: Building Information Modeling.
- B. RFI: Request for Information. Request from Owner, Architect, or Contractor seeking information required by or clarifications of the Contract Documents.

## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Subcontract List: Prepare a written summary identifying individuals or firms proposed for each portion of the Work, including those who are to furnish products or equipment fabricated to a special design. Include the following information in tabular form:
  - 1. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of entity performing subcontract or supplying products.
  - 2. Number and title of related Specification Section(s) covered by subcontract.
  - 3. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate, covered by subcontract.
- B. Key Personnel Names: Within 15 days of starting construction operations, submit a list of key personnel assignments, including superintendent and other personnel in attendance at Project site. Identify individuals and their duties and responsibilities; list addresses and cellular telephone numbers and e-mail addresses. Provide names, addresses, and telephone numbers of individuals assigned as alternates in the absence of individuals assigned to Project.
  - 1. Post copies of list in project meeting room, in temporary field office, in web-based Project software directory, and in prominent location in built facility. Keep list current at all times.

## 1.5 GENERAL COORDINATION PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work. Coordinate construction operations included in different Sections that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.
  - 1. Schedule construction operations in sequence required to obtain the best results where installation of one part of the Work depends on installation of other components, before or after its own installation.
  - 2. Coordinate installation of different components to ensure maximum performance and accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair.
  - 3. Make adequate provisions to accommodate items scheduled for later installation.
- B. Prepare memoranda for distribution to each party involved, outlining special procedures required for coordination. Include such items as required notices, reports, and list of attendees at meetings.
  - 1. Prepare similar memoranda for Owner and separate contractors if coordination of their Work is required.
- C. Administrative Procedures: Coordinate scheduling and timing of required administrative procedures with other construction activities and scheduled activities of other contractors to avoid conflicts and to ensure orderly progress of the Work. Such administrative activities include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 2. Preparation of the schedule of values.
  - 3. Installation and removal of temporary facilities and controls.
  - 4. Delivery and processing of submittals.
  - 5. Progress meetings.
  - 6. Preinstallation conferences.
  - 7. Project closeout activities.
  - 8. Startup and adjustment of systems.

## 1.6 COORDINATION DRAWINGS

- A. Coordination Drawings, General: Prepare coordination drawings according to requirements in individual Sections, and additionally where installation is not completely indicated on Shop Drawings, where limited space availability necessitates coordination, or if coordination is required to facilitate integration of products and materials fabricated or installed by more than one entity.
  - 1. Content: Project-specific information, drawn accurately to a scale large enough to indicate and resolve conflicts. Do not base coordination drawings on standard printed data. Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Use applicable Drawings as a basis for preparation of coordination drawings. Prepare sections, elevations, and details as needed to describe relationship of various systems and components.
    - b. Coordinate the addition of trade-specific information to coordination drawings in a sequence that best provides for coordination of the information and resolution of conflicts between installed components before submitting for review.

- c. Indicate functional and spatial relationships of components of architectural, structural, civil, mechanical, and electrical systems.
- d. Indicate space requirements for routine maintenance and for anticipated replacement of components during the life of the installation.
- e. Show location and size of access doors required for access to concealed dampers, valves, and other controls.
- f. Indicate required installation sequences.
- g. Indicate dimensions shown on Drawings. Specifically note dimensions that appear to be in conflict with submitted equipment and minimum clearance requirements. Provide alternative sketches to Architect indicating proposed resolution of such conflicts. Minor dimension changes and difficult installations will not be considered changes to the Contract.

B. Coordination Drawing Organization: Organize coordination drawings as follows:

1. Floor Plans and Reflected Ceiling Plans: Show architectural and structural elements, and mechanical, plumbing, fire-protection, fire-alarm, and electrical Work. Show locations of visible ceiling-mounted devices relative to acoustical ceiling grid. Supplement plan drawings with section drawings where required to adequately represent the Work.
2. Plenum Space: Indicate subframing for support of ceiling and wall systems, mechanical and electrical equipment, and related Work. Locate components within plenums to accommodate layout of light fixtures and other components indicated on Drawings. Indicate areas of conflict between light fixtures and other components.
3. Mechanical Rooms: Provide coordination drawings for mechanical rooms showing plans and elevations of mechanical, plumbing, fire-protection, fire-alarm, and electrical equipment.
4. Structural Penetrations: Indicate penetrations and openings required for all disciplines.
5. Slab Edge and Embedded Items: Indicate slab edge locations and sizes and locations of embedded items for metal fabrications, sleeves, anchor bolts, bearing plates, angles, door floor closers, slab depressions for floor finishes, curbs and housekeeping pads, and similar items.
6. Mechanical and Plumbing Work: Show the following:
  - a. Sizes and bottom elevations of ductwork, piping, and conduit runs, including insulation, bracing, flanges, and support systems.
  - b. Dimensions of major components, such as dampers, valves, diffusers, access doors, cleanouts and electrical distribution equipment.
  - c. Fire-rated enclosures around ductwork.
7. Electrical Work: Show the following:
  - a. Runs of vertical and horizontal conduit 1-1/4 inches in diameter and larger.
  - b. Light fixture, exit light, emergency battery pack, smoke detector, and other fire-alarm locations.
  - c. Panel board, switch board, switchgear, transformer, busway, generator, and motor-control center locations.
  - d. Location of pull boxes and junction boxes, dimensioned from column center lines.
8. Fire-Protection System: Show the following:
  - a. Locations of standpipes, mains piping, branch lines, pipe drops, and sprinkler heads.
9. Review: Architect will review coordination drawings to confirm that in general the Work is being coordinated, but not for the details of the coordination, which are Contractor's responsibility. If Architect determines that coordination drawings are not being prepared

in sufficient scope or detail, or are otherwise deficient, Architect will so inform Contractor, who shall make suitable modifications and resubmit.

10. Coordination Drawing Prints: Prepare coordination drawing prints according to requirements in Section 01 33 00 "Submittal Procedures."

- C. Coordination Digital Data Files: Prepare coordination digital data files according to the following requirements:

1. File Preparation Format: DWG, operating in Microsoft Windows operating system.
2. File Submittal Format: Submit or post coordination drawing files using format same as file preparation format.
3. BIM File Incorporation: Develop and incorporate coordination drawing files into BIM established for Project.
  - a. Perform three-dimensional component conflict analysis as part of preparation of coordination drawings. Resolve component conflicts prior to submittal. Indicate where conflict resolution requires modification of design requirements by Architect.

#### 1.7 REQUEST FOR INFORMATION (RFI)

- A. General: Immediately on discovery of the need for additional information, clarification, or interpretation of the Contract Documents, Contractor shall prepare and submit an RFI in the form specified.

1. Architect will return without response those RFIs submitted to Architect by other entities controlled by Contractor.
2. Coordinate and submit RFIs in a prompt manner so as to avoid delays in Contractor's work or work of subcontractors.

- B. Content of the RFI: Include a detailed, legible description of item needing information or interpretation and the following:

1. Project name.
2. Project number.
3. Date.
4. Name of Contractor.
5. Name of Architect.
6. RFI number, numbered sequentially.
7. RFI subject.
8. Specification Section number and title and related paragraphs, as appropriate.
9. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
10. Field dimensions and conditions, as appropriate.
11. Contractor's suggested resolution. If Contractor's suggested resolution impacts the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, Contractor shall state impact in the RFI.
12. Contractor's signature.
13. Attachments: Include sketches, descriptions, measurements, photos, Product Data, Shop Drawings, coordination drawings, and other information necessary to fully describe items needing interpretation.

- a. Include dimensions, thicknesses, structural grid references, and details of affected materials, assemblies, and attachments on attached sketches.

- C. RFI Forms: AIA Document G716 or software-generated form with substantially the same content as indicated above, acceptable to Owner and Architect.

1. Attachments shall be electronic files in PDF format.
- D. Architect's Action: Architect will review each RFI, determine action required, and respond. Allow seven working days for Architect's response for each RFI. RFIs received by Architect after 1:00 p.m. will be considered as received the following working day.
1. The following Contractor-generated RFIs will be returned without action:
    - a. Requests for approval of submittals.
    - b. Requests for approval of substitutions.
    - c. Requests for approval of Contractor's means and methods.
    - d. Requests for coordination information already indicated in the Contract Documents.
    - e. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum.
    - f. Requests for interpretation of Architect's actions on submittals.
    - g. Incomplete RFIs or inaccurately prepared RFIs.
  2. Architect's action may include a request for additional information, in which case Architect's time for response will date from time of receipt by Architect of additional information.
  3. Architect's action on RFIs that may result in a change to the Contract Time or the Contract Sum may be eligible for Contractor to submit Change Proposal according to Section 01 26 00 "Contract Modification Procedures."
    - a. If Contractor believes the RFI response warrants change in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, notify Architect in writing within 10 days of receipt of the RFI response.
- E. RFI Log: Prepare, maintain, and submit a tabular log of RFIs organized by the RFI number. Submit log weekly. Use software log that is part of web-based Project software. Include the following:
1. Project name.
  2. Name and address of Contractor.
  3. Name and address of Architect.
  4. RFI number including RFIs that were returned without action or withdrawn.
  5. RFI description.
  6. Date the RFI was submitted.
  7. Date Architect's response was received.
  8. Identification of related Minor Change in the Work, Construction Change Directive, and Proposal Request, as appropriate.
  9. Identification of related Field Order, Work Change Directive, and Proposal Request, as appropriate.
- F. On receipt of Architect's action, update the RFI log and immediately distribute the RFI response to affected parties. Review response and notify Architect within seven days if Contractor disagrees with response.
- 1.8 PROJECT WEB SITE
- A. Web-Based Project Software: Use Architect's web-based Project software site, Newforma, for purposes of hosting and managing Project communication and documentation until Final Completion.

1. Web-based Project software site includes, at a minimum, the following features:
  - a. Compilation of Project data, including Contractor, subcontractors, Architect, architect's consultants, Owner, and other entities involved in Project. Include names of individuals and contact information.
  - b. Access control for each entity for each workflow process, to determine entity's digital rights to create, modify, view, and print documents.
  - c. Document workflow planning, allowing customization of workflow between project entities.
  - d. Creation, logging, tracking, and notification for Project communications required in other Specification Sections, including, but not limited to, RFIs, submittals, Minor Changes in the Work, Construction Change Directives, and Change Orders.
  - e. Track status of each Project communication in real time, and log time and date when responses are provided.
  - f. Procedures for handling PDFs or similar file formats, allowing markups by each entity. Provide security features to lock markups against changes once submitted.
  - g. Processing and tracking of payment applications.
  - h. Processing and tracking of contract modifications.
  - i. Creating and distributing meeting minutes.
  - j. Document management for Drawings, Specifications, and coordination drawings, including revision control.
  - k. Management of construction progress photographs.
  - l. Mobile device compatibility, including smartphones and tablets.

## 1.9 PROJECT MEETINGS

- A. General: Schedule and conduct meetings and conferences at Project site unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Attendees: Inform participants and others involved, and individuals whose presence is required, of date and time of each meeting. Notify Owner and Architect of scheduled meeting dates and times a minimum of 10 working days prior to meeting.
  2. Agenda: Prepare the meeting agenda. Distribute the agenda to all invited attendees.
  3. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting meeting will record significant discussions and agreements achieved. Distribute the meeting minutes to everyone concerned, including Owner and Architect, within three days of the meeting.
- B. Preconstruction Conference: Architect will schedule and conduct Schedule and conduct a preconstruction conference before starting construction, at a time convenient to Owner and Architect, but no later than 15 days after execution of the Agreement.
  1. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the conference. Participants at the conference shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
  2. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect progress, including the following:
    - a. Responsibilities and personnel assignments.
    - b. Tentative construction schedule.
    - c. Phasing.
    - d. Critical work sequencing and long lead items.
    - e. Designation of key personnel and their duties.
    - f. Lines of communications.
    - g. Use of web-based Project software.
    - h. Procedures for processing field decisions and Change Orders.

- i. Procedures for RFIs.
  - j. Procedures for testing and inspecting.
  - k. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment.
  - l. Distribution of the Contract Documents.
  - m. Submittal procedures.
  - n. Sustainable design requirements.
  - o. Preparation of Record Documents.
  - p. Use of the premises.
  - q. Work restrictions.
  - r. Working hours.
  - s. Owner's occupancy requirements.
  - t. Responsibility for temporary facilities and controls.
  - u. Procedures for moisture and mold control.
  - v. Procedures for disruptions and shutdowns.
  - w. Construction waste management and recycling.
  - x. Parking availability.
  - y. Office, work, and storage areas.
  - z. Equipment deliveries and priorities.
  - aa. First aid.
  - bb. Security.
  - cc. Progress cleaning.
3. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting meeting will record and distribute meeting minutes.
- C. Preinstallation Conferences: Conduct a preinstallation conference at Project site before each construction activity when required by other sections and when required for coordination with other construction.
1. Attendees: Installer and representatives of manufacturers and fabricators involved in or affected by the installation and its coordination or integration with other materials and installations that have preceded or will follow, shall attend the meeting. Advise Architect of scheduled meeting dates.
  2. Agenda: Review progress of other construction activities and preparations for the particular activity under consideration, including requirements for the following:
    - a. Contract Documents.
    - b. Options.
    - c. Related RFIs.
    - d. Related Change Orders.
    - e. Purchases.
    - f. Deliveries.
    - g. Submittals.
    - h. Sustainable design requirements.
    - i. Review of mockups.
    - j. Possible conflicts.
    - k. Compatibility requirements.
    - l. Time schedules.
    - m. Weather limitations.
    - n. Manufacturer's written instructions.
    - o. Warranty requirements.
    - p. Compatibility of materials.
    - q. Acceptability of substrates.
    - r. Temporary facilities and controls.
    - s. Space and access limitations.
    - t. Regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.

- u. Testing and inspecting requirements.
  - v. Installation procedures.
  - w. Coordination with other work.
  - x. Required performance results.
  - y. Protection of adjacent work.
  - z. Protection of construction and personnel.
3. Record significant conference discussions, agreements, and disagreements, including required corrective measures and actions.
  4. Reporting: Distribute minutes of the meeting to each party present and to other parties requiring information.
  5. Do not proceed with installation if the conference cannot be successfully concluded. Initiate whatever actions are necessary to resolve impediments to performance of the Work and reconvene the conference at earliest feasible date.
- D. Project Closeout Conference: Schedule and conduct a project closeout conference, at a time convenient to Owner and Architect, but no later than 90 days prior to the scheduled date of Substantial Completion.
1. Conduct the conference to review requirements and responsibilities related to Project closeout.
  2. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner, Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the meeting. Participants at the meeting shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
  3. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect or delay Project closeout, including the following:
    - a. Preparation of Record Documents.
    - b. Procedures required prior to inspection for Substantial Completion and for final inspection for acceptance.
    - c. Procedures for completing and archiving web-based Project software site data files.
    - d. Submittal of written warranties.
    - e. Requirements for completing sustainable design documentation.
    - f. Requirements for preparing operations and maintenance data.
    - g. Requirements for delivery of material samples, attic stock, and spare parts.
    - h. Requirements for demonstration and training.
    - i. Preparation of Contractor's punch list.
    - j. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment at Substantial Completion and for final payment.
    - k. Submittal procedures.
    - l. Coordination of separate contracts.
    - m. Owner's partial occupancy requirements.
    - n. Installation of Owner's furniture, fixtures, and equipment.
    - o. Responsibility for removing temporary facilities and controls.
  4. Minutes: Entity conducting meeting will record and distribute meeting minutes.
- E. Progress Meetings: Conduct progress meetings at regular intervals.
1. Coordinate dates of meetings with preparation of payment requests.
  2. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner and Architect, each contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these



- meetings. All participants at the meeting shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
3. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of previous progress meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.
    - a. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last meeting. Determine whether each activity is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to Contractor's construction schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.
      - 1) Review schedule for next period.
    - b. Review present and future needs of each entity present, including the following:
      - 1) Interface requirements.
      - 2) Sequence of operations.
      - 3) Resolution of BIM component conflicts.
      - 4) Status of submittals.
      - 5) Status of sustainable design documentation.
      - 6) Deliveries.
      - 7) Off-site fabrication.
      - 8) Access.
      - 9) Site use.
      - 10) Temporary facilities and controls.
      - 11) Progress cleaning.
      - 12) Quality and work standards.
      - 13) Status of correction of deficient items.
      - 14) Field observations.
      - 15) Status of RFIs.
      - 16) Status of Proposal Requests.
      - 17) Pending changes.
      - 18) Status of Change Orders.
      - 19) Pending claims and disputes.
      - 20) Documentation of information for payment requests.
  4. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting the meeting will record and distribute the meeting minutes to each party present and to parties requiring information.
    - a. Schedule Updating: Revise Contractor's construction schedule after each progress meeting where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with the report of each meeting.
- F. Coordination Meetings: Conduct Project coordination meetings at regular intervals. Project coordination meetings are in addition to specific meetings held for other purposes, such as progress meetings and preinstallation conferences.
1. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner and Architect, each contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at the meetings shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.

2. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of the previous coordination meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.
  - a. Combined Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last coordination meeting. Determine whether each contract is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to combined Contractor's construction schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.
  - b. Schedule Updating: Revise combined Contractor's construction schedule after each coordination meeting where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with report of each meeting.
  - c. Review present and future needs of each contractor present, including the following:
    - 1) Interface requirements.
    - 2) Sequence of operations.
    - 3) Resolution of BIM component conflicts.
    - 4) Status of submittals.
    - 5) Deliveries.
    - 6) Off-site fabrication.
    - 7) Access.
    - 8) Site use.
    - 9) Temporary facilities and controls.
    - 10) Work hours.
    - 11) Hazards and risks.
    - 12) Progress cleaning.
    - 13) Quality and work standards.
    - 14) Status of RFIs.
    - 15) Proposal Requests.
    - 16) Change Orders.
    - 17) Pending changes.
3. Reporting: Record meeting results and distribute copies to everyone in attendance and to others affected by decisions or actions resulting from each meeting.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 31 00

## SECTION 01 32 00 - CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for documenting the progress of construction during performance of the Work, including the following:
  - 1. Startup construction schedule.
  - 2. Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 3. Construction schedule updating reports.
  - 4. Daily construction reports.
  - 5. Material location reports.
  - 6. Site condition reports.
  - 7. Special reports.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Activity: A discrete part of a project that can be identified for planning, scheduling, monitoring, and controlling the construction project. Activities included in a construction schedule consume time and resources.
  - 1. Critical Activity: An activity on the critical path that must start and finish on the planned early start and finish times.
  - 2. Predecessor Activity: An activity that precedes another activity in the network.
  - 3. Successor Activity: An activity that follows another activity in the network.
- B. Critical Path: The longest connected chain of interdependent activities through the network schedule that establishes the minimum overall Project duration and contains no float.
- C. Event: The starting or ending point of an activity.
- D. Float: The measure of leeway in starting and completing an activity.
  - 1. Float time belongs to Owner.
  - 2. Free float is the amount of time an activity can be delayed without adversely affecting the early start of the successor activity.
  - 3. Total float is the measure of leeway in starting or completing an activity without adversely affecting the planned Project completion date.
- E. Resource Loading: The allocation of manpower and equipment necessary for the completion of an activity as scheduled.

## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Format for Submittals: Submit required submittals in the following format:
  - 1. PDF electronic file.
- B. Startup construction schedule.
  - 1. Approval of cost-loaded, startup construction schedule will not constitute approval of schedule of values for cost-loaded activities.
- C. Startup Network Diagram: Of size required to display entire network for entire construction period. Show logic ties for activities.
- D. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Initial schedule, of size required to display entire schedule for entire construction period.
  - 1. Submit a working electronic copy of schedule, using software indicated, and labeled to comply with requirements for submittals. Include type of schedule (initial or updated) and date on label.
- E. Construction Schedule Updating Reports: Submit with Applications for Payment.
- F. Daily Construction Reports: Submit at monthly intervals.
- G. Material Location Reports: Submit at monthly intervals.
- H. Site Condition Reports: Submit at time of discovery of differing conditions.
- I. Special Reports: Submit at time of unusual event.
- J. Qualification Data: For scheduling consultant.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Scheduling Consultant Qualifications: An experienced specialist in CPM scheduling and reporting, with capability of producing CPM reports and diagrams within 24 hours of Architect's request.
- B. Prescheduling Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination." Review methods and procedures related to the preliminary construction schedule and Contractor's construction schedule, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Review software limitations and content and format for reports.
  - 2. Verify availability of qualified personnel needed to develop and update schedule.
  - 3. Discuss constraints, including area separations, interim milestones and partial Owner occupancy.
  - 4. Review delivery dates for Owner-furnished products.
  - 5. Review schedule for work of Owner's separate contracts.
  - 6. Review submittal requirements and procedures.
  - 7. Review time required for review of submittals and resubmittals.
  - 8. Review requirements for tests and inspections by independent testing and inspecting agencies.

9. Review time required for Project closeout and Owner startup procedures, including commissioning activities.
10. Review and finalize list of construction activities to be included in schedule.
11. Review procedures for updating schedule.

## 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate preparation and processing of schedules and reports with performance of construction activities and with scheduling and reporting of separate contractors.
- B. Coordinate Contractor's construction schedule with the schedule of values, list of subcontracts, submittal schedule, progress reports, payment requests, and other required schedules and reports.
  1. Secure time commitments for performing critical elements of the Work from entities involved.
  2. Coordinate each construction activity in the network with other activities and schedule them in proper sequence.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Time Frame: Extend schedule from date established for the Notice of Award to date of final completion.
  1. Contract completion date shall not be changed by submission of a schedule that shows an early completion date, unless specifically authorized by Change Order.
- B. Activities: Treat each story or separate area as a separate numbered activity for each main element of the Work. Comply with the following:
  1. Activity Duration: Define activities so no activity is longer than 20 days, unless specifically allowed by Architect.
  2. Procurement Activities: Include procurement process activities for the following long lead items and major items, requiring a cycle of more than 60 days, as separate activities in schedule. Procurement cycle activities include, but are not limited to, submittals, approvals, purchasing, fabrication, and delivery.
  3. Submittal Review Time: Include review and resubmittal times indicated in Division 01 Section "Submittal Procedures" in schedule. Coordinate submittal review times in Contractor's construction schedule with submittal schedule.
  4. Startup and Testing Time: Include no fewer than 15 days for startup and testing.
  5. Substantial Completion: Indicate completion in advance of date established for Substantial Completion, and allow time for Architect's administrative procedures necessary for certification of Substantial Completion.
  6. Punch List and Final Completion: Include not more than 30 days for completion of punch list items and final completion.
- C. Constraints: Include constraints and work restrictions indicated in the Contract Documents and as follows in schedule, and show how the sequence of the Work is affected.
  1. Work Restrictions: Show the effect of the following items on the schedule:

- a. Coordination with existing construction.
  - b. Limitations of continued occupancies.
  - c. Uninterruptible services.
  - d. Partial occupancy before Substantial Completion.
  - e. Use of premises restrictions.
  - f. Provisions for future construction.
  - g. Seasonal variations.
  - h. Environmental control.
2. Work Stages: Indicate important stages of construction for each major portion of the Work, including, but not limited to, the following:
- a. Subcontract awards.
  - b. Submittals.
  - c. Purchases.
  - d. Mockups.
  - e. Fabrication.
  - f. Sample testing.
  - g. Deliveries.
  - h. Installation.
  - i. Tests and inspections.
  - j. Adjusting.
  - k. Curing.
  - l. Building flush-out.
  - m. Startup and placement into final use and operation.
3. Construction Areas: Identify each major area of construction for each major portion of the Work. Indicate where each construction activity within a major area must be sequenced or integrated with other construction activities to provide for the following:
- a. Structural completion.
  - b. Temporary enclosure and space conditioning.
  - c. Permanent space enclosure.
  - d. Completion of mechanical installation.
  - e. Completion of electrical installation.
  - f. Substantial Completion.
- D. Milestones: Include milestones indicated in the Contract Documents in schedule, including, but not limited to, the Notice to Proceed, Substantial Completion, and final completion.
- E. Cost Correlation: Superimpose a cost correlation timeline, indicating planned and actual costs. On the line, show planned and actual dollar volume of the Work performed as of planned and actual dates used for preparation of payment requests.
1. See Division 01 Section "Payment Procedures" for cost reporting and payment procedures.
- F. Upcoming Work Summary: Prepare summary report indicating activities scheduled to occur or commence prior to submittal of next schedule update. Summarize the following issues:
1. Unresolved issues.
  2. Unanswered Requests for Information.
  3. Rejected or unreturned submittals.
  4. Notations on returned submittals.
  5. Pending modifications affecting the Work and Contract Time.

- G. Recovery Schedule: When periodic update indicates the Work is 14 or more calendar days behind the current approved schedule, submit a separate recovery schedule indicating means by which Contractor intends to regain compliance with the schedule. Indicate changes to working hours, working days, crew sizes, and equipment required to achieve compliance, and date by which recovery will be accomplished.
- H. Computer Scheduling Software: Prepare schedules using current version of a program that has been developed specifically to manage construction schedules.
  - 1. Use Microsoft Project, for Windows XP operating system.

## 2.2 STARTUP CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE

- A. Bar-Chart Schedule: Submit startup, horizontal, bar-chart-type construction schedule within seven days of date established for the Notice of Award.
- B. Preparation: Indicate each significant construction activity separately. Identify first workday of each week with a continuous vertical line. Outline significant construction activities for first 90 days of construction. Include skeleton diagram for the remainder of the Work and a cash requirement prediction based on indicated activities.

## 2.3 GANTT-CHART SCHEDULE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Gantt-Chart Schedule: Submit a comprehensive, fully developed, horizontal, Gantt-chart-type, Contractor's Construction Schedule within 15 days of date established for the Notice of Award.
- B. Preparation: Indicate each significant construction activity separately. Identify first workday of each week with a continuous vertical line.
  - 1. For construction activities that require three months or longer to complete, indicate an estimated completion percentage in 10 percent increments within time bar.

## 2.4 REPORTS

- A. Daily Construction Reports: Prepare a daily construction report recording the following information concerning events at Project site:
  - 1. List of subcontractors at Project site.
  - 2. List of separate contractors at Project site.
  - 3. Approximate count of personnel at Project site.
  - 4. Equipment at Project site.
  - 5. Material deliveries.
  - 6. High and low temperatures and general weather conditions, including presence of rain or snow.
  - 7. Accidents.
  - 8. Meetings and significant decisions.
  - 9. Unusual events (see special reports).
  - 10. Stoppages, delays, shortages, and losses.
  - 11. Meter readings and similar recordings.
  - 12. Emergency procedures.
  - 13. Orders and requests of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 14. Change Orders received and implemented.
  - 15. Construction Change Directives received and implemented.

16. Services connected and disconnected.
17. Equipment or system tests and startups.
18. Partial completions and occupancies.
19. Substantial Completions authorized.

B. Material Location Reports: At monthly intervals, prepare and submit a comprehensive list of materials delivered to and stored at Project site. List shall be cumulative, showing materials previously reported plus items recently delivered. Include with list a statement of progress on and delivery dates for materials or items of equipment fabricated or stored away from Project site. Indicate the following categories for stored materials:

1. Material stored prior to previous report and remaining in storage.
2. Material stored prior to previous report and since removed from storage and installed.
3. Material stored following previous report and remaining in storage.

C. Site Condition Reports: Immediately on discovery of a difference between site conditions and the Contract Documents, prepare and submit a detailed report. Submit with a Request for Information. Include a detailed description of the differing conditions, together with recommendations for changing the Contract Documents.

## 2.5 SPECIAL REPORTS

- A. General: Submit special reports directly to Owner within one day(s) of an occurrence. Distribute copies of report to parties affected by the occurrence.
- B. Reporting Unusual Events: When an event of an unusual and significant nature occurs at Project site, whether or not related directly to the Work, prepare and submit a special report. List chain of events, persons participating, response by Contractor's personnel, evaluation of results or effects, and similar pertinent information. Advise Owner in advance when these events are known or predictable.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE

- A. Scheduling Consultant: Engage a consultant to provide planning, evaluation, and reporting using CPM scheduling.
1. In-House Option: Owner may waive the requirement to retain a consultant if Contractor employs skilled personnel with experience in CPM scheduling and reporting techniques. Submit qualifications.
  2. Meetings: Scheduling consultant shall attend all meetings related to Project progress, alleged delays, and time impact.
- B. Contractor's Construction Schedule Updating: At monthly intervals, update schedule to reflect actual construction progress and activities. Issue schedule one week before each regularly scheduled progress meeting.
1. Revise schedule immediately after each meeting or other activity where revisions have been recognized or made. Issue updated schedule concurrently with the report of each such meeting.



2. Include a report with updated schedule that indicates every change, including, but not limited to, changes in logic, durations, actual starts and finishes, and activity durations.
  3. As the Work progresses, indicate final completion percentage for each activity.
- C. Distribution: Distribute copies of approved schedule to Architect, Owner, separate contractors, testing and inspecting agencies, and other parties identified by Contractor with a need-to-know schedule responsibility.
1. Post copies in Project meeting rooms and temporary field offices.
  2. When revisions are made, distribute updated schedules to the same parties and post in the same locations. Delete parties from distribution when they have completed their assigned portion of the Work and are no longer involved in performance of construction activities.

END OF SECTION 01 32 00



## SECTION 01 33 00 - SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for submitting Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and other miscellaneous submittals.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Action Submittals: Written and graphic information that requires Architect's responsive action.
- B. Informational Submittals: Written information that does not require Architect's approval. Submittals may be rejected for not complying with requirements.

## 1.4 SUBMITTAL SCHEDULE

- A. Submittal Schedule: Submit, as an action submittal, a list of submittals, arranged in chronological order by dates required by construction schedule. Include time required for review, ordering, manufacturing, fabrication, and delivery when establishing dates. Include additional time required for making corrections or revisions to submittals noted by Architect and additional time for handling and reviewing submittals required by those corrections.
  1. Coordinate submittal schedule with list of subcontracts, the schedule of values, and Contractor's construction schedule.
  2. Initial Submittal: Submit concurrently with startup construction schedule. Include submittals required during the first 60 days of construction. List those submittals required to maintain orderly progress of the Work and those required early because of long lead time for manufacture or fabrication.
  3. Final Submittal: Submit concurrently with the first complete submittal of Contractor's construction schedule.
    - a. Submit revised submittal schedule to reflect changes in current status and timing for submittals.
  4. Format: Arrange the following information in a tabular format:
    - a. Scheduled date for first submittal.
    - b. Specification Section number and title.
    - c. Submittal Category: Action; informational.
    - d. Name of subcontractor.
    - e. Description of the Work covered.
    - f. Scheduled date for Architect's final release or approval.

- g. Scheduled dates for purchasing.
- h. Scheduled date of fabrication.
- i. Scheduled dates for installation.
- j. Activity or event number.

## 1.5 SUBMITTAL FORMATS

### A. Submittal Information: Include the following information in each submittal:

- 1. Project name.
- 2. Date.
- 3. Name of Architect.
- 4. Name of Contractor.
- 5. Name of firm or entity that prepared submittal.
- 6. Names of subcontractor, manufacturer, and supplier.
- 7. Unique submittal number, including revision identifier. Include Specification Section number with sequential alphanumeric identifier; and alphanumeric suffix for resubmittals.
- 8. Category and type of submittal.
- 9. Submittal purpose and description.
- 10. Number and title of Specification Section, with paragraph number and generic name for each of multiple items.
- 11. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
- 12. Indication of full or partial submittal.
- 13. Location(s) where product is to be installed, as appropriate.
- 14. Other necessary identification.
- 15. Remarks.
- 16. Signature of transmitter.

### B. Options: Identify options requiring selection by Architect.

### C. Deviations and Additional Information: On each submittal, clearly indicate deviations from requirements in the Contract Documents, including minor variations and limitations; include relevant additional information and revisions, other than those requested by Architect on previous submittals. Indicate by highlighting on each submittal or noting on attached separate sheet.

### D. Submittals for Web-Based Project Software: Prepare submittals as PDF files, or other format indicated by the Architect's software website, Newforma.

## 1.6 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

### A. Prepare and submit submittals required by individual Specification Sections. Types of submittals are indicated in individual Specification Sections.

- 1. Web-Based Project Software: Prepare submittals in PDF form, and upload to Newforma website. Enter required data in web-based software site to fully identify submittal.

### B. Coordination: Coordinate preparation and processing of submittals with performance of construction activities.

- 1. Coordinate each submittal with fabrication, purchasing, testing, delivery, other submittals, and related activities that require sequential activity.

2. Coordinate transmittal of different types of submittals for related parts of the Work so processing will not be delayed because of need to review submittals concurrently for coordination.
  - a. Architect reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with other submittals until related submittals are received.
- C. Submittals Schedule: Comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Construction Progress Documentation" for list of submittals and time requirements for scheduled performance of related construction activities.
  1. Final Submittals to be completed prior to 50 percent application of payment approval.
- D. Processing Time: Allow enough time for submittal review, including time for resubmittals, as follows. Time for review shall commence on Architect's receipt of submittal.
  1. Initial Review: Allow 7 days for initial review of each submittal. Allow additional time if processing must be delayed to permit coordination with subsequent submittals. Architect will advise Contractor when a submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination.
  2. If intermediate submittal is necessary, process it in same manner as initial submittal.
  3. Allow 10 days for processing each resubmittal.
  4. No extension of the Contract Time will be authorized because of failure to transmit submittals enough in advance of the Work to permit processing.
- E. Identification: Place a permanent label or title block on each submittal for identification.
  1. Indicate name of firm or entity that prepared each submittal on label or title block.
  2. Provide a space approximately 4 by 5 inches on label or beside title block to record Contractor's review and approval markings and action taken by Architect.
  3. Include the following information on label for processing and recording action taken:
    - a. Project name.
    - b. Date.
    - c. Name and address of Architect.
    - d. Name and address of Contractor.
    - e. Name and address of subcontractor.
    - f. Name and address of supplier.
    - g. Name of manufacturer.
    - h. Unique identifier, including revision number.
    - i. Number and title of appropriate Specification Section.
    - j. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
    - k. Other necessary identification.
- F. Deviations: Highlight, encircle, or otherwise identify deviations from the Contract Documents on submittals.
- G. Additional Copies: Unless additional copies are required for final submittal, and unless Architect observes noncompliance with provisions of the Contract Documents, initial submittal may serve as final submittal.
  1. Submit one copy of submittal to concurrent reviewer in addition to specified number of copies to Architect.
  2. Additional copies submitted for maintenance manuals will be marked with action taken and will be returned.

- H. Transmittal: Package each submittal individually and appropriately for transmittal and handling. Transmit each submittal using a transmittal form. Architect will return submittals, without review, received from sources other than Contractor.
1. On an attached separate sheet, prepared on Contractor's letterhead, record relevant information, requests for data, revisions other than those requested by Architect on previous submittals, and deviations from requirements of the Contract Documents, including minor variations and limitations. Include the same label information as the related submittal.
  2. Include Contractor's certification stating that information submitted complies with requirements of the Contract Documents.
  3. Transmittal Form: Use AIA Document G810.
- I. Resubmittals: Make resubmittals in same form and number of copies as initial submittal.
1. Note date and content of previous submittal.
  2. Note date and content of revision in label or title block and clearly indicate extent of revision.
  3. Resubmit submittals until they are marked with approval notation from Architect's action stamp.
- J. Distribution: Furnish copies of final submittals to manufacturers, subcontractors, suppliers, fabricators, installers, authorities having jurisdiction, and others as necessary for performance of construction activities. Show distribution on transmittal forms.
- K. Use for Construction: Use only final submittals with mark indicating action taken by Architect in connection with construction.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Prepare and submit Action Submittals required by individual Specification Sections.
1. Number of Copies: Submit six copies of each submittal, unless otherwise indicated. Architect will return two copies. Mark up and retain one returned copy as a Project Record Document.
- B. Product Data: Collect information into a single submittal for each element of construction and type of product or equipment.
1. If information must be specially prepared for submittal because standard printed data are not suitable for use, submit as Shop Drawings, not as Product Data.
  2. Mark each copy of each submittal to show which products and options are applicable.
  3. Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Manufacturer's written recommendations.
    - b. Manufacturer's product specifications.
    - c. Manufacturer's installation instructions.
    - d. Standard color charts.
    - e. Manufacturer's catalog cuts.
    - f. Wiring diagrams showing factory-installed wiring.
    - g. Printed performance curves.

- h. Operational range diagrams.
  - i. Mill reports.
  - j. Standard product operating and maintenance manuals.
  - k. Compliance with recognized trade association standards.
  - l. Compliance with recognized testing agency standards.
  - m. Application of testing agency labels and seals.
  - n. Notation of coordination requirements.
- C. Shop Drawings: Prepare Project-specific information, drawn accurately to scale. Do not base Shop Drawings on reproductions of the Contract Documents or standard printed data.
- 1. Preparation: Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Dimensions.
    - b. Identification of products.
    - c. Fabrication and installation drawings.
    - d. Roughing-in and setting diagrams.
    - e. Wiring diagrams showing field-installed wiring, including power, signal, and control wiring.
    - f. Shop work manufacturing instructions.
    - g. Templates and patterns.
    - h. Schedules.
    - i. Design calculations.
    - j. Compliance with specified standards.
    - k. Notation of coordination requirements.
    - l. Notation of dimensions established by field measurement.
  - 2. Wiring Diagrams: Differentiate between manufacturer-installed and field-installed wiring.
  - 3. Number of Copies: Submit copies of each submittal, as follows:
    - a. Initial Submittal: Submit one correctable, translucent, reproducible print and one blue- or black-line print. Architect will return the reproducible print.
    - b. Final Submittal: Submit four blue- or black-line prints, unless prints are required for operation and maintenance manuals. Submit six prints where prints are required for operation and maintenance manuals. Architect will retain three prints; remainder will be returned.
- D. Coordination Drawings: Comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination."
- E. Samples: Prepare physical units of materials or products, including the following:
- 1. Samples for Initial Selection: Submit manufacturer's color charts consisting of units or sections of units showing the full range of colors, textures, and patterns available.
  - 2. Samples for Verification: Submit full-size units or Samples of size indicated, prepared from the same material to be used for the Work, cured and finished in manner specified, and physically identical with the product proposed for use, and that show full range of color and texture variations expected. Samples include, but are not limited to, the following: partial sections of manufactured or fabricated components; small cuts or containers of materials; complete units of repetitively used materials; swatches showing color, texture, and pattern; color range sets; and components used for independent testing and inspection.
  - 3. Preparation: Mount, display, or package Samples in manner specified to facilitate review of qualities indicated. Prepare Samples to match Architect's sample where so indicated. Attach label on unexposed side that includes the following:

- a. Generic description of Sample.
  - b. Product name or name of manufacturer.
  - c. Sample source.
4. Additional Information: On an attached separate sheet, prepared on Contractor's letterhead, provide the following:
- a. Size limitations.
  - b. Compliance with recognized standards.
  - c. Availability.
  - d. Delivery time.
5. Submit Samples for review of kind, color, pattern, and texture for a final check of these characteristics with other elements and for a comparison of these characteristics between final submittal and actual component as delivered and installed.
- a. If variation in color, pattern, texture, or other characteristic is inherent in the product represented by a Sample, submit at least three sets of paired units that show approximate limits of the variations.
  - b. Refer to individual Specification Sections for requirements for Samples that illustrate workmanship, fabrication techniques, details of assembly, connections, operation, and similar construction characteristics.
6. Number of Samples for Initial Selection: Submit one full set of available choices where color, pattern, texture, or similar characteristics are required to be selected from manufacturer's product line. Architect will return submittal with options selected.
7. Number of Samples for Verification: Submit three sets of Samples. Architect will retain two Sample sets; remainder will be returned.
- a. Submit a single Sample where assembly details, workmanship, fabrication techniques, connections, operation, and other similar characteristics are to be demonstrated.
8. Disposition: Maintain sets of approved Samples at Project site, available for quality-control comparisons throughout the course of construction activity. Sample sets may be used to determine final acceptance of construction associated with each set.
- a. Samples not incorporated into the Work, or otherwise designated as Owner's property, are the property of Contractor.
- F. Product Schedule or List: Prepare a written summary indicating types of products required for the Work and their intended location. Include the following information in tabular form:
1. Type of product. Include unique identifier for each product.
  2. Number and name of room or space.
  3. Location within room or space.
- G. Submittals Schedule: Comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Construction Progress Documentation."
- H. Application for Payment: Comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Payment Procedures."
- I. Schedule of Values: Comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Payment Procedures."



- J. Subcontract List: Prepare a written summary identifying individuals or firms proposed for each portion of the Work, including those who are to furnish products or equipment fabricated to a special design. Include the following information in tabular form:
1. Name, address, and telephone number of entity performing subcontract or supplying products.
  2. Number and title of related Specification Section(s) covered by subcontract.
  3. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate, covered by subcontract.

## 2.2 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Prepare and submit Informational Submittals required by other Specification Sections.
1. Number of Copies: Submit three copies of each submittal, unless otherwise indicated. Architect will not return copies.
  2. Certificates and Certifications: Provide a notarized statement that includes signature of entity responsible for preparing certification. Certificates and certifications shall be signed by an officer or other individual authorized to sign documents on behalf of that entity.
- B. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Construction Progress Documentation."
- C. Qualification Data: Prepare written information that demonstrates capabilities and experience of firm or person. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, names and addresses of architects and owners, and other information specified.
- D. Product Certificates: Prepare written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that product complies with requirements.
- E. Welding Certificates: Prepare written certification that welding procedures and personnel comply with requirements. Submit record of Welding Procedure Specification (WPS) and Procedure Qualification Record (PQR) on AWS forms. Include names of firms and personnel certified.
- F. Installer Certificates: Prepare written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that Installer complies with requirements and, where required, is authorized for this specific Project.
- G. Manufacturer Certificates: Prepare written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that manufacturer complies with requirements. Include evidence of manufacturing experience where required.
- H. Material Certificates: Prepare written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that material complies with requirements.
- I. Material Test Reports: Prepare reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting test results of material for compliance with requirements.
- J. Pre-construction Test Reports: Prepare reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of tests performed before installation of product, for compliance with performance requirements.

- K. Compatibility Test Reports: Prepare reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of compatibility tests performed before installation of product. Include written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.
- L. Field Test Reports: Prepare reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of field tests performed either during installation of product or after product is installed in its final location, for compliance with requirements.
- M. Product Test Reports: Prepare written reports indicating current product produced by manufacturer complies with requirements. Base reports on evaluation of tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, or on comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- N. Research/Evaluation Reports: Prepare written evidence, from a model code organization acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, that product complies with building code in effect for Project. Include the following information:
1. Name of evaluation organization.
  2. Date of evaluation.
  3. Time period when report is in effect.
  4. Product and manufacturers' names.
  5. Description of product.
  6. Test procedures and results.
  7. Limitations of use.
- O. Maintenance Data: Prepare written and graphic instructions and procedures for operation and normal maintenance of products and equipment. Comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Closeout Procedures."
- P. Design Data: Prepare written and graphic information, including, but not limited to, performance and design criteria, list of applicable codes and regulations, and calculations. Include list of assumptions and other performance and design criteria and a summary of loads. Include load diagrams if applicable. Provide name and version of software, if any, used for calculations. Include page numbers.
- Q. Manufacturer's Instructions: Prepare written or published information that documents manufacturer's recommendations, guidelines, and procedures for installing or operating a product or equipment. Include name of product and name, address, and telephone number of manufacturer. Include the following, as applicable:
1. Preparation of substrates.
  2. Required substrate tolerances.
  3. Sequence of installation or erection.
  4. Required installation tolerances.
  5. Required adjustments.
  6. Recommendations for cleaning and protection.
- R. Manufacturer's Field Reports: Prepare written information documenting factory-authorized service representative's tests and inspections. Include the following, as applicable:
1. Name, address, and telephone number of factory-authorized service representative making report.
  2. Statement on condition of substrates and their acceptability for installation of product.

3. Statement that products at Project site comply with requirements.
  4. Summary of installation procedures being followed, whether they comply with requirements and, if not, what corrective action was taken.
  5. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
  6. Statement whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
  7. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.
- S. Insurance Certificates and Bonds: Prepare written information indicating current status of insurance or bonding coverage. Include name of entity covered by insurance or bond, limits of coverage, amounts of deductibles, if any, and term of the coverage.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 CONTRACTOR'S REVIEW

- A. Review each submittal and check for compliance with the Contract Documents. Note corrections and field dimensions. Mark with approval stamp before submitting to Architect.
- B. Approval Stamp: Stamp each submittal with a uniform, approval stamp. Include Project name and location, submittal number, Specification Section title and number, name of reviewer, date of Contractor's approval, and statement certifying that submittal has been reviewed, checked, and approved for compliance with the Contract Documents.

#### 3.2 ARCHITECT'S ACTION

- A. General: Architect will not review submittals that do not bear Contractor's approval stamp and will return them without action.
- B. Action Submittals: Architect will review each submittal, make marks to indicate corrections or modifications required, and return it. Architect will stamp each submittal with an action stamp and will mark stamp appropriately to indicate action taken, as follows:
  1. Reviewed.
  2. Reviewed and corrected.
  3. Revise and Resubmit.
  4. Not Approved.
- C. Informational Submittals: Architect will review each submittal and will not return it, or will reject and return it if it does not comply with requirements. Architect will forward each submittal to appropriate party.
- D. Submittals not required by the Contract Documents will not be reviewed and may be discarded.

END OF SECTION 01 33 00



## SECTION 01 40 00 - QUALITY REQUIREMENTS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for quality assurance and quality control.
- B. Testing and inspecting services are required to verify compliance with requirements specified or indicated. These services do not relieve Contractor of responsibility for compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
  - 1. Specific quality-assurance and -control requirements for individual construction activities are specified in the Sections that specify those activities. Requirements in those Sections may also cover production of standard products.
  - 2. Specified tests, inspections, and related actions do not limit Contractor's other quality-assurance and -control procedures that facilitate compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
  - 3. Requirements for Contractor to provide quality-assurance and -control services required by Architect, Owner, Commissioning Authority, or authorities having jurisdiction are not limited by provisions of this Section.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Quality-Assurance Services: Activities, actions, and procedures performed before and during execution of the Work to guard against defects and deficiencies and substantiate that proposed construction will comply with requirements.
- B. Quality-Control Services: Tests, inspections, procedures, and related actions during and after execution of the Work to evaluate that actual products incorporated into the Work and completed construction comply with requirements. Services do not include contract enforcement activities performed by Architect.
- C. Preconstruction Testing: Tests and inspections performed specifically for Project before products and materials are incorporated into the Work, to verify performance or compliance with specified criteria.
- D. Product Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed by an NRTL, an NVLAP, or a testing agency qualified to conduct product testing and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, to establish product performance and compliance with specified requirements.
- E. Source Quality-Control Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed at the source, e.g., plant, mill, factory, or shop.

- F. Field Quality-Control Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed on-site for installation of the Work and for completed Work.
- G. Testing Agency: An entity engaged to perform specific tests, inspections, or both. Testing laboratory shall mean the same as testing agency.
- H. Installer/Applicator/Erector: Contractor or another entity engaged by Contractor as an employee, Subcontractor, or Sub-subcontractor, to perform a particular construction operation, including installation, erection, application, and similar operations.
  - 1. Use of trade-specific terminology in referring to a trade or entity does not require that certain construction activities be performed by accredited or unionized individuals, or that requirements specified apply exclusively to specific trade(s).
- I. Experienced: When used with an entity or individual, "experienced" means having successfully completed a minimum of five previous projects similar in nature, size, and extent to this Project; being familiar with special requirements indicated; and having complied with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

#### 1.4 CONFLICTING REQUIREMENTS

- A. Referenced Standards: If compliance with two or more standards is specified and the standards establish different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, comply with the most stringent requirement. Refer conflicting requirements that are different, but apparently equal, to Architect for a decision before proceeding.
- B. Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels: The quantity or quality level shown or specified shall be the minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as appropriate, for the context of requirements. Refer uncertainties to Architect for a decision before proceeding.

#### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: For integrated exterior mockups, provide plans, sections, and elevations, indicating materials and size of mockup construction.
  - 1. Indicate manufacturer and model number of individual components.
  - 2. Provide axonometric drawings for conditions difficult to illustrate in two dimensions.

#### 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Contractor's Quality-Control Plan: For quality-assurance and quality-control activities and responsibilities.
- B. Qualification Data: For Contractor's quality-control personnel.
- C. Contractor's Statement of Responsibility: When required by authorities having jurisdiction, submit copy of written statement of responsibility sent to authorities having jurisdiction before starting work on the following systems:

1. Seismic-force-resisting system, designated seismic system, or component listed in the designated seismic system quality-assurance plan prepared by Architect.
  2. Main wind-force-resisting system or a wind-resisting component listed in the wind-force-resisting system quality-assurance plan prepared by Architect.
- D. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agencies specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include proof of qualifications in the form of a recent report on the inspection of the testing agency by a recognized authority.
- E. Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Prepare in tabular form and include the following:
1. Specification Section number and title.
  2. Entity responsible for performing tests and inspections.
  3. Description of test and inspection.
  4. Identification of applicable standards.
  5. Identification of test and inspection methods.
  6. Number of tests and inspections required.
  7. Time schedule or time span for tests and inspections.
  8. Requirements for obtaining samples.
  9. Unique characteristics of each quality-control service.

#### 1.7 CONTRACTOR'S QUALITY-CONTROL PLAN

- A. Quality-Control Plan, General: Submit quality-control plan within 20 days of Notice of Award, and not less than five days prior to preconstruction conference. Submit in format acceptable to Architect. Identify personnel, procedures, controls, instructions, tests, records, and forms to be used to carry out Contractor's quality-assurance and quality-control responsibilities. Coordinate with Contractor's construction schedule.
- B. Quality-Control Personnel Qualifications: Engage qualified full-time personnel trained and experienced in managing and executing quality-assurance and quality-control procedures similar in nature and extent to those required for Project.
1. Project quality-control manager may also serve as Project superintendent.
- C. Submittal Procedure: Describe procedures for ensuring compliance with requirements through review and management of submittal process. Indicate qualifications of personnel responsible for submittal review.
- D. Testing and Inspection: In quality-control plan, include a comprehensive schedule of Work requiring testing or inspection, including the following:
1. Contractor-performed tests and inspections including subcontractor-performed tests and inspections. Include required tests and inspections and Contractor-elected tests and inspections.
  2. Special inspections required by authorities having jurisdiction and indicated on the "Statement of Special Inspections."
- E. Continuous Inspection of Workmanship: Describe process for continuous inspection during construction to identify and correct deficiencies in workmanship in addition to testing and inspection specified. Indicate types of corrective actions to be required to bring work into compliance with standards of workmanship established by Contract requirements and approved mockups.

- F. Monitoring and Documentation: Maintain testing and inspection reports including log of approved and rejected results. Include work Architect has indicated as nonconforming or defective. Indicate corrective actions taken to bring nonconforming work into compliance with requirements. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

## 1.8 REPORTS AND DOCUMENTS

- A. Test and Inspection Reports: Prepare and submit certified written reports specified in other Sections. Include the following:
1. Date of issue.
  2. Project title and number.
  3. Name, address, and telephone number of testing agency.
  4. Dates and locations of samples and tests or inspections.
  5. Names of individuals making tests and inspections.
  6. Description of the Work and test and inspection method.
  7. Identification of product and Specification Section.
  8. Complete test or inspection data.
  9. Test and inspection results and an interpretation of test results.
  10. Record of temperature and weather conditions at time of sample taking and testing and inspecting.
  11. Comments or professional opinion on whether tested or inspected Work complies with the Contract Document requirements.
  12. Name and signature of laboratory inspector.
  13. Recommendations on retesting and reinspecting.
- B. Manufacturer's Technical Representative's Field Reports: Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's technical representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:
1. Name, address, and telephone number of technical representative making report.
  2. Statement on condition of substrates and their acceptability for installation of product.
  3. Statement that products at Project site comply with requirements.
  4. Summary of installation procedures being followed, whether they comply with requirements and, if not, what corrective action was taken.
  5. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
  6. Statement whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
  7. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.
- C. Factory-Authorized Service Representative's Reports: Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's factory-authorized service representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:
1. Name, address, and telephone number of factory-authorized service representative making report.
  2. Statement that equipment complies with requirements.
  3. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
  4. Statement whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
  5. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.



- D. Permits, Licenses, and Certificates: For Owner's records, submit copies of permits, licenses, certifications, inspection reports, releases, jurisdictional settlements, notices, receipts for fee payments, judgments, correspondence, records, and similar documents, established for compliance with standards and regulations bearing on performance of the Work.

## 1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. General: Qualifications paragraphs in this article establish the minimum qualification levels required; individual Specification Sections specify additional requirements.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing products or systems similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
- C. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm experienced in producing products similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
- D. Installer Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in installing, erecting, or assembling work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.
- E. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of the system, assembly, or product that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- F. Specialists: Certain Specification Sections require that specific construction activities shall be performed by entities who are recognized experts in those operations. Specialists shall satisfy qualification requirements indicated and shall be engaged for the activities indicated.
  - 1. Requirements of authorities having jurisdiction shall supersede requirements for specialists.
- G. Testing Agency Qualifications: An NRTL, an NVLAP, or an independent agency with the experience and capability to conduct testing and inspecting indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 329; and with additional qualifications specified in individual Sections; and, where required by authorities having jurisdiction, that is acceptable to authorities.
  - 1. NRTL: A nationally recognized testing laboratory according to 29 CFR 1910.7.
  - 2. NVLAP: A testing agency accredited according to NIST's National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program.
- H. Manufacturer's Technical Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to observe and inspect installation of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- I. Factory-Authorized Service Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to inspect installation of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.

- J. Preconstruction Testing: Where testing agency is indicated to perform preconstruction testing for compliance with specified requirements for performance and test methods, comply with the following:
1. Contractor responsibilities include the following:
    - a. Provide test specimens representative of proposed products and construction.
    - b. Submit specimens in a timely manner with sufficient time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
    - c. Provide sizes and configurations of test assemblies, mockups, and laboratory mockups to adequately demonstrate capability of products to comply with performance requirements.
    - d. Build site-assembled test assemblies and mockups using installers who will perform same tasks for Project.
    - e. Build laboratory mockups at testing facility using personnel, products, and methods of construction indicated for the completed Work.
    - f. When testing is complete, remove test specimens, assemblies, and mockups; do not reuse products on Project.
  2. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Submit a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-assurance service to Architect and Commissioning Authority, with copy to Contractor. Interpret tests and inspections and state in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.

#### 1.10 QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Contractor Responsibilities: Tests and inspections not explicitly assigned to Owner are Contractor's responsibility. Perform additional quality-control activities required to verify that the Work complies with requirements, whether specified or not.
1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide quality-control services specified and those required by authorities having jurisdiction. Perform quality-control services required of Contractor by authorities having jurisdiction, whether specified or not.
  2. Where services are indicated as Contractor's responsibility, engage a qualified testing agency to perform these quality-control services.
  3. Notify testing agencies at least 24 hours in advance of time when Work that requires testing or inspecting will be performed.
  4. Where quality-control services are indicated as Contractor's responsibility, submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each quality-control service.
  5. Testing and inspecting requested by Contractor and not required by the Contract Documents are Contractor's responsibility.
  6. Submit additional copies of each written report directly to authorities having jurisdiction, when they so direct.
  7. Provide Backflow Prevention Assembly Test Report to local authorities having jurisdiction and provides a copy Architect. Form attached to this section for reference.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Services: Where indicated, engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including service connections. Report results in writing as specified in Division 01 Section "Submittal Procedures."
- C. Manufacturer's Technical Services: Where indicated, engage a manufacturer's technical representative to observe and inspect the Work. Manufacturer's technical representative's services include participation in preinstallation conferences, examination of substrates and conditions, verification of materials, observation of Installer activities, inspection of completed portions of the Work, and submittal of written reports.

- D. Retesting/Reinspecting: Regardless of whether original tests or inspections were Contractor's responsibility, provide quality-control services, including retesting and reinspecting, for construction that replaced Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents.
- E. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Cooperate with Architect, Commissioning Authority, and Contractor in performance of duties. Provide qualified personnel to perform required tests and inspections.
1. Notify Architect, Commissioning Authority, and Contractor promptly of irregularities or deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
  2. Determine the location from which test samples will be taken and in which in-situ tests are conducted.
  3. Conduct and interpret tests and inspections and state in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from requirements.
  4. Submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service through Contractor.
  5. Do not release, revoke, alter, or increase the Contract Document requirements or approve or accept any portion of the Work.
  6. Do not perform any duties of Contractor.
- F. Associated Services: Cooperate with agencies performing required tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services, and provide reasonable auxiliary services as requested. Notify agency sufficiently in advance of operations to permit assignment of personnel. Provide the following:
1. Access to the Work.
  2. Incidental labor and facilities necessary to facilitate tests and inspections.
  3. Adequate quantities of representative samples of materials that require testing and inspecting. Assist agency in obtaining samples.
  4. Facilities for storage and field curing of test samples.
  5. Delivery of samples to testing agencies.
  6. Preliminary design mix proposed for use for material mixes that require control by testing agency.
  7. Security and protection for samples and for testing and inspecting equipment at Project site.
- G. Coordination: Coordinate sequence of activities to accommodate required quality-assurance and -control services with a minimum of delay and to avoid necessity of removing and replacing construction to accommodate testing and inspecting.
1. Schedule times for tests, inspections, obtaining samples, and similar activities.
- H. Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Prepare a schedule of tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services required by the Contract Documents as a component of Contractor's quality-control plan. Coordinate and submit concurrently with Contractor's construction schedule. Update as the Work progresses.
1. Distribution: Distribute schedule to Owner, Architect, testing agencies, and each party involved in performance of portions of the Work where tests and inspections are required.

#### 1.11 SPECIAL TESTS AND INSPECTIONS

- A. Special Tests and Inspections: General Contractor will engage a qualified third party special inspector to conduct special tests and inspections required by authorities having jurisdiction as the responsibility of Owner, as indicated in Statement of Special Inspections as indicated on the Structural Drawings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 TEST AND INSPECTION LOG

- A. Test and Inspection Log: Prepare a record of tests and inspections. Include the following:
  - 1. Date test or inspection was conducted.
  - 2. Description of the Work tested or inspected.
  - 3. Date test or inspection results were transmitted to Architect.
  - 4. Identification of testing agency or special inspector conducting test or inspection.
- B. Maintain log at Project site. Post changes and revisions as they occur. Provide access to test and inspection log for Architect's, Commissioning Authority's, reference during normal working hours.

3.2 REPAIR AND PROTECTION

- A. General: On completion of testing, inspecting, sample taking, and similar services, repair damaged construction and restore substrates and finishes.
  - 1. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Specification Sections or matching existing substrates and finishes. Restore patched areas and extend restoration into adjoining areas with durable seams that are as invisible as possible. Comply with the Contract Document requirements for cutting and patching in Division 01 Section "Execution."
- B. Protect construction exposed by or for quality-control service activities.
- C. Repair and protection are Contractor's responsibility, regardless of the assignment of responsibility for quality-control services.

END OF SECTION 01 40 00

## SECTION 01 42 00 - REFERENCES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 DEFINITIONS

- A. General: Basic Contract definitions are included in the Conditions of the Contract.
- B. "Approved": When used to convey Architect's action on Contractor's submittals, applications, and requests, "approved" is limited to Architect's duties and responsibilities as stated in the Conditions of the Contract.
- C. "Directed": A command or instruction by Architect. Other terms including "requested," "authorized," "selected," "approved," "required," and "permitted" have the same meaning as "directed."
- D. "Indicated": Requirements expressed by graphic representations or in written form on Drawings, in Specifications, and in other Contract Documents. Other terms including "shown," "noted," "scheduled," and "specified" have the same meaning as "indicated."
- E. "Regulations": Laws, ordinances, statutes, and lawful orders issued by authorities having jurisdiction, and rules, conventions, and agreements within the construction industry that control performance of the Work.
- F. "Furnish": Supply and deliver to Project site, ready for unloading, unpacking, assembly, installation, and similar operations.
- G. "Install": Operations at Project site including unloading, temporarily storing, unpacking, assembling, erecting, placing, anchoring, applying, working to dimension, finishing, curing, protecting, cleaning, and similar operations.
- H. "Provide": Furnish and install, complete and ready for the intended use.
- I. "Project Site": Space available for performing construction activities. The extent of Project site is shown on Drawings and may or may not be identical with the description of the land on which Project is to be built.

## 1.2 INDUSTRY STANDARDS

- A. Applicability of Standards: Unless the Contract Documents include more stringent requirements, applicable construction industry standards have the same force and effect as if bound or copied directly into the Contract Documents to the extent referenced. Such standards are made a part of the Contract Documents by reference.
- B. Publication Dates: Comply with standards in effect as of date of the Contract Documents, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Copies of Standards: Each entity engaged in construction on Project should be familiar with industry standards applicable to its construction activity. Copies of applicable standards are not bound with the Contract Documents.

1. Where copies of standards are needed to perform a required construction activity, obtain copies directly from publication source.

- D. Abbreviations and Acronyms for Standards and Regulations: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the standards and regulations in the following list. Names, telephone numbers, and Web-site addresses are subject to change and are believed to be accurate and up-to-date as of the date of the Contract Documents.

### 1.3 ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS

- A. Industry Organizations: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities indicated in Gale Research's "Encyclopedia of Associations" or in Columbia Books' "National Trade & Professional Associations of the U.S."
- B. Code Agencies: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. Names, telephone numbers, and Web-site addresses are subject to change and are believed to be accurate and up-to-date as of the date of the Contract Documents.

IAPMO	International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials www.iapmo.org	(909) 472-4100
-------	---	----------------

ICBO	International Conference of Building Officials (See ICC)	
------	---	--

ICBO ES	ICBO Evaluation Service, Inc. (See ICC-ES)	
---------	---	--

ICC	International Code Council (Formerly: CABO - Council of American Building Officials) www.iccsafe.org	(703) 931-4533
-----	--	----------------

ICC-ES	ICC Evaluation Service, Inc. www.icc-es.org	(800) 423-6587 (562) 699-0543
--------	--	----------------------------------

NES	National Evaluation Service (See ICC-ES)	
-----	---	--

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 42 00

## SECTION 01 50 00 - TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes requirements for temporary utilities, support facilities, and security and protection facilities.

## 1.3 USE CHARGES

- A. General: Installation and removal of and use charges for temporary facilities shall be included in the Contract Sum unless otherwise indicated. Allow other entities to use temporary services and facilities without cost, including, but not limited to, Architect, testing agencies, and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Sewer Service: Pay sewer-service use charges for sewer usage by all entities for construction operations.
- C. Water Service: Pay water-service use charges for water used by all entities for construction operations.
- D. Electric Power Service: Pay electric-power-service use charges for electricity used by all entities for construction operations.

## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Site Plan: Show temporary facilities, utility hookups, staging areas, and parking areas for construction personnel.
- B. Erosion- and Sedimentation-Control Plan: Show compliance with requirements of EPA Construction General Permit or authorities having jurisdiction, whichever is more stringent.
- C. Fire-Safety Program: Show compliance with requirements of NFPA 241 and authorities having jurisdiction. Indicate Contractor personnel responsible for management of fire-prevention program.
- D. Moisture-Protection Plan: Describe procedures and controls for protecting materials and construction from water absorption and damage.
  - 1. Describe delivery, handling, and storage provisions for materials subject to water absorption or water damage.
  - 2. Indicate procedures for discarding water-damaged materials, protocols for mitigating water intrusion into completed Work, and replacing water-damaged Work.

3. Indicate sequencing of work that requires water, such as sprayed fire-resistive materials, plastering, and terrazzo grinding, and describe plans for dealing with water from these operations. Show procedures for verifying that wet construction has dried sufficiently to permit installation of finish materials.
- E. Dust- and HVAC-Control Plan: Submit coordination drawing and narrative that indicates the dust- and HVAC-control measures proposed for use, proposed locations, and proposed time frame for their operation. Identify further options if proposed measures are later determined to be inadequate. Include the following:
1. Locations of dust-control partitions at each phase of work.
  2. HVAC system isolation schematic drawing.
  3. Location of proposed air-filtration system discharge.
  4. Waste handling procedures.
  5. Other dust-control measures.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electric Service: Comply with NECA, NEMA, and UL standards and regulations for temporary electric service. Install service to comply with NFPA 70.
- B. Tests and Inspections: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to test and inspect each temporary utility before use. Obtain required certifications and permits.
- C. Accessible Temporary Egress: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines and ICC/ANSI A117.1.

## 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Temporary Use of Permanent Facilities: Engage Installer of each permanent service to assume responsibility for operation, maintenance, and protection of each permanent service during its use as a construction facility before Owner's acceptance, regardless of previously assigned responsibilities.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Chain-Link Fencing: Minimum 2-inch, 0.148-inch- thick, galvanized-steel, chain-link fabric fencing; minimum 6 feet high with galvanized-steel pipe posts; minimum 2-3/8-inch- OD line posts and 2-7/8-inch- OD corner and pull posts, with 1-5/8-inch- OD top rails.
- B. Portable Chain-Link Fencing: Minimum 2-inch, 0.148-inch- thick, galvanized-steel, chain-link fabric fencing; minimum 6 feet high with galvanized-steel pipe posts; minimum 2-3/8-inch- OD line posts and 2-7/8-inch- OD corner and pull posts, with 1-5/8-inch- OD top and bottom rails. Provide concrete bases for supporting posts.
- C. Wood Enclosure Fence: Plywood, 8 feet high, framed with four 2-by-4-inch rails, with preservative-treated wood posts spaced not more than 8 feet apart.



- D. Polyethylene Sheet: Reinforced, fire-resistive sheet, 10-mil minimum thickness, with flame-spread rating of 15 or less per ASTM E 84 and passing NFPA 701 Test Method 2.
- E. Dust-Control Adhesive-Surface Walk-off Mats: Provide mats minimum 36 by 60 inches.
- F. Insulation: Unfaced mineral-fiber blanket, manufactured from glass, slag wool, or rock wool; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively.

## 2.2 TEMPORARY FACILITIES

- A. Field Offices, General: Prefabricated or mobile units with serviceable finishes, temperature controls, and foundations adequate for normal loading.
- B. Storage and Fabrication Sheds: Provide sheds sized, furnished, and equipped to accommodate materials and equipment for construction operations.
  - 1. Store combustible materials apart from building.

## 2.3 EQUIPMENT

- A. Fire Extinguishers: Portable, UL rated; with class and extinguishing agent as required by locations and classes of fire exposures.
- B. HVAC Equipment: Unless Owner authorizes use of permanent HVAC system, provide vented, self-contained, liquid-propane-gas or fuel-oil heaters with individual space thermostatic control.
  - 1. Use of gasoline-burning space heaters, open-flame heaters, or salamander-type heating units is prohibited.
  - 2. Heating Units: Listed and labeled for type of fuel being consumed, by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
  - 3. Permanent HVAC System: If Owner authorizes use of permanent HVAC system for temporary use during construction, provide filter with MERV of 13 at each return-air grille in system and remove at end of construction.
- C. Air-Filtration Units: Primary and secondary HEPA-filter-equipped portable units with four-stage filtration. Provide single switch for emergency shutoff. Configure to run continuously.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Locate facilities where they will serve Project adequately and result in minimum interference with performance of the Work. Relocate and modify facilities as required by progress of the Work.
  - 1. Locate facilities to limit site disturbance as specified in Division 01 Section "Summary."
- B. Provide each facility ready for use when needed to avoid delay. Do not remove until facilities are no longer needed or are replaced by authorized use of completed permanent facilities.

### 3.2 TEMPORARY UTILITY INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install temporary service or connect to existing service.
  - 1. Arrange with utility company, Owner, and existing users for time when service can be interrupted, if necessary, to make connections for temporary services.
- B. Sewers and Drainage: Provide temporary utilities to remove effluent lawfully.
  - 1. Connect temporary sewers to municipal system as directed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Water Service: Install water service and distribution piping in sizes and pressures adequate for construction.
- D. Sanitary Facilities: Provide temporary toilets, wash facilities, and drinking water for use of construction personnel. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for type, number, location, operation, and maintenance of fixtures and facilities.
- E. Heating and Cooling: Provide temporary heating and cooling required by construction activities for curing or drying of completed installations or for protecting installed construction from adverse effects of low temperatures or high humidity. Select equipment that will not have a harmful effect on completed installations or elements being installed.
- F. Ventilation and Humidity Control: Provide temporary ventilation required by construction activities for curing or drying of completed installations or for protecting installed construction from adverse effects of high humidity. Select equipment that will not have a harmful effect on completed installations or elements being installed. Coordinate ventilation requirements to produce ambient condition required and minimize energy consumption.
  - 1. Provide dehumidification systems when required to reduce substrate moisture levels to level required to allow installation or application of finishes.
- G. Electric Power Service: Provide electric power service and distribution system of sufficient size, capacity, and power characteristics required for construction operations.
  - 1. Install electric power service underground unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Lighting: Provide temporary lighting with local switching that provides adequate illumination for construction operations, observations, inspections, and traffic conditions.
  - 1. Install and operate temporary lighting that fulfills security and protection requirements without operating entire system.
  - 2. Install lighting for Project identification sign.

### 3.3 SUPPORT FACILITIES INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with the following:
  - 1. Provide construction for temporary offices, shops, and sheds located within construction area or within 30 feet of building lines that is noncombustible according to ASTM E 136. Comply with NFPA 241.

2. Maintain support facilities until Architect schedules Substantial Completion inspection. Remove before Substantial Completion. Personnel remaining after Substantial Completion will be permitted to use permanent facilities, under conditions acceptable to Owner.
- B. Temporary Roads and Paved Areas: Construct and maintain temporary roads and paved areas adequate for construction operations. Locate temporary roads and paved areas as indicated on Drawings.
1. Provide dust-control treatment that is nonpolluting and nontracking. Reapply treatment as required to minimize dust.
- C. Temporary Use of Permanent Roads and Paved Areas: Locate temporary roads and paved areas in same location as permanent roads and paved areas. Construct and maintain temporary roads and paved areas adequate for construction operations. Extend temporary roads and paved areas, within construction limits indicated, as necessary for construction operations.
1. Coordinate elevations of temporary roads and paved areas with permanent roads and paved areas.
  2. Prepare subgrade and install subbase and base for temporary roads and paved areas according to Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."
  3. Recondition base after temporary use, including removing contaminated material, regrading, proofrolling, compacting, and testing.
  4. Delay installation of final course of permanent hot-mix asphalt pavement until immediately before Substantial Completion. Repair hot-mix asphalt base-course pavement before installation of final course according to Division 32 Section "Asphalt Paving."
- D. Traffic Controls: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Protect existing site improvements to remain including curbs, pavement, and utilities.
  2. Maintain access for fire-fighting equipment and access to fire hydrants.
- E. Parking: Provide temporary parking areas for construction personnel.
- F. Dewatering Facilities and Drains: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Maintain Project site, excavations, and construction free of water.
1. Dispose of rainwater in a lawful manner that will not result in flooding Project or adjoining properties or endanger permanent Work or temporary facilities.
  2. Remove snow and ice as required to minimize accumulations.
- G. Project Signs: Provide Project signs as indicated. Unauthorized signs are not permitted.
1. Identification Signs: Provide Project identification signs as indicated on Drawings.
  2. Temporary Signs: Provide other signs as indicated and as required to inform public and individuals seeking entrance to Project.
    - a. Provide temporary, directional signs for construction personnel and visitors.
  3. Maintain and touchup signs so they are legible at all times.
- H. Waste Disposal Facilities: Comply with requirements specified in Division 01 Section "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."

- I. Lifts and Hoists: Provide facilities necessary for hoisting materials and personnel.
  - 1. Truck cranes and similar devices used for hoisting materials are considered "tools and equipment" and not temporary facilities.
- J. Temporary Use of Permanent Stairs: Use of new stairs for construction traffic will be permitted, provided stairs are protected and finishes restored to new condition at time of Substantial Completion.

### 3.4 SECURITY AND PROTECTION FACILITIES INSTALLATION

- A. Protection of Existing Facilities: Protect existing vegetation, equipment, structures, utilities, and other improvements at Project site and on adjacent properties, except those indicated to be removed or altered. Repair damage to existing facilities.
- B. Environmental Protection: Provide protection, operate temporary facilities, and conduct construction as required to comply with environmental regulations and that minimize possible air, waterway, and subsoil contamination or pollution or other undesirable effects.
  - 1. Comply with work restrictions specified in Division 01 Section "Summary."
- C. Temporary Erosion and Sedimentation Control: Provide measures to prevent soil erosion and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff and airborne dust to undisturbed areas and to adjacent properties and walkways, according to erosion- and sedimentation-control Drawings] [requirements of 2003 EPA Construction General Permit or authorities having jurisdiction, whichever is more stringent.
  - 1. Verify that flows of water redirected from construction areas or generated by construction activity do not enter or cross tree- or plant- protection zones.
  - 2. Inspect, repair, and maintain erosion- and sedimentation-control measures during construction until permanent vegetation has been established.
  - 3. Clean, repair, and restore adjoining properties and roads affected by erosion and sedimentation from Project site during the course of Project.
  - 4. Remove erosion and sedimentation controls and restore and stabilize areas disturbed during removal.
  - 5. There is an existing NPDES Permit, ID number LINCO-2017-001 for the existing site demolition project. The permit is for a separate on-site contract. Repair or replace any erosion control measures damaged under this Contract execution.
- D. Stormwater Control: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Provide barriers in and around excavations and subgrade construction to prevent flooding by runoff of stormwater from heavy rains.
- E. Tree and Plant Protection: Comply with requirements specified in Division 01 Section "Temporary Tree and Plant Protection."
- F. Tree and Plant Protection: Install temporary fencing located as indicated or outside the drip line of trees to protect vegetation from damage from construction operations. Protect tree root systems from damage, flooding, and erosion.
- G. Pest Control: Engage pest-control service to recommend practices to minimize attraction and harboring of rodents, roaches, and other pests and to perform extermination and control procedures at regular intervals so Project will be free of pests and their residues at Substantial Completion. Perform control operations lawfully, using environmentally safe materials.

- H. Site Enclosure Fence: Before construction operations begin, furnish and install site enclosure fence in a manner that will prevent people and animals from easily entering site except by entrance gates.
  - 1. Extent of Fence: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Maintain security by limiting number of keys and restricting distribution to authorized personnel.
- I. Security Enclosure and Lockup: Install temporary enclosure around partially completed areas of construction. Provide lockable entrances to prevent unauthorized entrance, vandalism, theft, and similar violations of security. Lock entrances at end of each work day.
- J. Barricades, Warning Signs, and Lights: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for erecting structurally adequate barricades, including warning signs and lighting.
- K. Temporary Egress: Maintain temporary egress from existing occupied facilities as indicated and as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- L. Temporary Enclosures: Provide temporary enclosures for protection of construction, in progress and completed, from exposure, foul weather, other construction operations, and similar activities. Provide temporary weathertight enclosure for building exterior.
  - 1. Where heating or cooling is needed and permanent enclosure is incomplete, insulate temporary enclosures.
- M. Temporary Fire Protection: Install and maintain temporary fire-protection facilities of types needed to protect against reasonably predictable and controllable fire losses. Comply with NFPA 241; manage fire-prevention program.
  - 1. Prohibit smoking in construction areas.
  - 2. Supervise welding operations, combustion-type temporary heating units, and similar sources of fire ignition according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 3. Develop and supervise an overall fire-prevention and -protection program for personnel at Project site. Review needs with local fire department and establish procedures to be followed. Instruct personnel in methods and procedures. Post warnings and information.
  - 4. Provide temporary standpipes and hoses for fire protection. Hang hoses with a warning sign stating that hoses are for fire-protection purposes only and are not to be removed. Match hose size with outlet size and equip with suitable nozzles.

### 3.5 MOISTURE AND MOLD CONTROL

- A. Contractor's Moisture-Protection Plan: Avoid trapping water in finished work. Document visible signs of mold that may appear during construction.
- B. Exposed Construction Phase: Before installation of weather barriers, when materials are subject to wetting and exposure and to airborne mold spores, protect as follows:
  - 1. Protect porous materials from water damage.
  - 2. Protect stored and installed material from flowing or standing water.
  - 3. Keep porous and organic materials from coming into prolonged contact with concrete.
  - 4. Remove standing water from decks.
  - 5. Keep deck openings covered or dammed.

- C. Partially Enclosed Construction Phase: After installation of weather barriers but before full enclosure and conditioning of building, when installed materials are still subject to infiltration of moisture and ambient mold spores, protect as follows:
1. Do not load or install drywall or other porous materials or components, or items with high organic content, into partially enclosed building.
  2. Keep interior spaces reasonably clean and protected from water damage.
  3. Periodically collect and remove waste containing cellulose or other organic matter.
  4. Discard or replace water-damaged material.
  5. Do not install material that is wet.
  6. Discard, replace, or clean stored or installed material that begins to grow mold.
  7. Perform work in a sequence that allows any wet materials adequate time to dry before enclosing the material in drywall or other interior finishes.
- D. Controlled Construction Phase of Construction: After completing and sealing of the building enclosure but prior to the full operation of permanent HVAC systems, maintain as follows:
1. Control moisture and humidity inside building by maintaining effective dry-in conditions.
  2. Use permanent HVAC system to control humidity.
  3. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, relative humidity, and exposure to water limits.
    - a. Hygroscopic materials that may support mold growth, including wood and gypsum-based products, that become wet during the course of construction and remain wet for 48 hours are considered defective.
    - b. Measure moisture content of materials that have been exposed to moisture during construction operations or after installation. Record readings beginning at time of exposure and continuing daily for 48 hours. Identify materials containing moisture levels higher than allowed. Report findings in writing to Architect.
    - c. Remove materials that can not be completely restored to their manufactured moisture level within 48 hours.

### 3.6 OPERATION, TERMINATION, AND REMOVAL

- A. Supervision: Enforce strict discipline in use of temporary facilities. To minimize waste and abuse, limit availability of temporary facilities to essential and intended uses.
- B. Maintenance: Maintain facilities in good operating condition until removal.
1. Maintain operation of temporary enclosures, heating, cooling, humidity control, ventilation, and similar facilities on a 24-hour basis where required to achieve indicated results and to avoid possibility of damage.
- C. Temporary Facility Changeover: Do not change over from using temporary security and protection facilities to permanent facilities until Substantial Completion.
- D. Termination and Removal: Remove each temporary facility when need for its service has ended, when it has been replaced by authorized use of a permanent facility, or no later than Substantial Completion. Complete or, if necessary, restore permanent construction that may have been delayed because of interference with temporary facility. Repair damaged Work, clean exposed surfaces, and replace construction that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.
1. Materials and facilities that constitute temporary facilities are property of Contractor. Owner reserves right to take possession of Project identification signs.

2. Remove temporary roads and paved areas not intended for or acceptable for integration into permanent construction. Where area is intended for landscape development, remove soil and aggregate fill that do not comply with requirements for fill or subsoil. Remove materials contaminated with road oil, asphalt and other petrochemical compounds, and other substances that might impair growth of plant materials or lawns. Repair or replace street paving, curbs, and sidewalks at temporary entrances, as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
3. At Substantial Completion, repair, renovate, and clean permanent facilities used during construction period. Comply with final cleaning requirements specified in Division 01 Section "Closeout Procedures."

END OF SECTION 01 50 00





## SECTION 01 60 00 - PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for selection of products for use in Project; product delivery, storage, and handling; manufacturers' standard warranties on products; special warranties; and comparable products.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Products: Items obtained for incorporating into the Work, whether purchased for Project or taken from previously purchased stock. The term "product" includes the terms "material," "equipment," "system," and terms of similar intent.
  - 1. Named Products: Items identified by manufacturer's product name, including make or model number or other designation shown or listed in manufacturer's published product literature, that is current as of date of the Contract Documents.
  - 2. New Products: Items that have not previously been incorporated into another project or facility. Products salvaged or recycled from other projects are not considered new products.
  - 3. Comparable Product: Product that is demonstrated and approved through submittal process to have the indicated qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics that equal or exceed those of specified product.
- B. Basis-of-Design Product Specification: A specification in which a specific manufacturer's product is named and accompanied by the words "basis-of-design product," including make or model number or other designation, to establish the significant qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics for purposes of evaluating comparable products of additional manufacturers named in the specification.

## 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product Specification Submittal: Comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Submittal Procedures." Show compliance with requirements.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Compatibility of Options: If Contractor is given option of selecting between two or more products for use on Project, select product compatible with products previously selected, even if previously selected products were also options.
1. Each contractor is responsible for providing products and construction methods compatible with products and construction methods of other contractors.
  2. If a dispute arises between contractors over concurrently selectable but incompatible products, Architect will determine which products shall be used.

## 1.6 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, and handle products using means and methods that will prevent damage, deterioration, and loss, including theft and vandalism. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Delivery and Handling:
1. Schedule delivery to minimize long-term storage at Project site and to prevent overcrowding of construction spaces.
  2. Coordinate delivery with installation time to ensure minimum holding time for items that are flammable, hazardous, easily damaged, or sensitive to deterioration, theft, and other losses.
  3. Deliver products to Project site in an undamaged condition in manufacturer's original sealed container or other packaging system, complete with labels and instructions for handling, storing, unpacking, protecting, and installing.
  4. Inspect products on delivery to determine compliance with the Contract Documents and to determine that products are undamaged and properly protected.
- C. Storage:
1. Store products to allow for inspection and measurement of quantity or counting of units.
  2. Store materials in a manner that will not endanger Project structure.
  3. Store products that are subject to damage by the elements, under cover in a weathertight enclosure above ground, with ventilation adequate to prevent condensation.
  4. Protect foam plastic from exposure to sunlight, except to extent necessary for period of installation and concealment.
  5. Comply with product manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, humidity, ventilation, and weather-protection requirements for storage.
  6. Protect stored products from damage and liquids from freezing.

## 1.7 PRODUCT WARRANTIES

- A. Warranties specified in other Sections shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties required by the Contract Documents. Manufacturer's disclaimers and limitations on product warranties do not relieve Contractor of obligations under requirements of the Contract Documents.
1. Manufacturer's Warranty: Written warranty furnished by individual manufacturer for a particular product and specifically endorsed by manufacturer to Owner.
  2. Special Warranty: Written warranty required by the Contract Documents to provide specific rights for Owner.

- B. Special Warranties: Prepare a written document that contains appropriate terms and identification, ready for execution.
1. Manufacturer's Standard Form: Modified to include Project-specific information and properly executed.
  2. Specified Form: When specified forms are included with the Specifications, prepare a written document using indicated form properly executed.
  3. See Divisions 02 through 33 Sections for specific content requirements and particular requirements for submitting special warranties.
- C. Submittal Time: Comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Closeout Procedures."

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PRODUCT SELECTION PROCEDURES

- A. General Product Requirements: Provide products that comply with the Contract Documents, are undamaged and, unless otherwise indicated, are new at time of installation.
1. Provide products complete with accessories, trim, finish, fasteners, and other items needed for a complete installation and indicated use and effect.
  2. Standard Products: If available, and unless custom products or nonstandard options are specified, provide standard products of types that have been produced and used successfully in similar situations on other projects.
  3. Owner reserves the right to limit selection to products with warranties not in conflict with requirements of the Contract Documents.
  4. Where products are accompanied by the term "as selected," Architect will make selection.
  5. Descriptive, performance, and reference standard requirements in the Specifications establish salient characteristics of products.
- B. Product Selection Procedures:
1. Product: Where Specifications name a single manufacturer and product, provide the named product that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.
  2. Products:
    - a. Restricted List: Where Specifications include a list of names of both manufacturers and products, provide one of the products listed that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.
    - b. Nonrestricted List: Where Specifications include a list of names of both available manufacturers and products, provide one of the products listed, or an unnamed product, that complies with requirements. Comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article for consideration of an unnamed product.
  3. Manufacturers:
    - a. Restricted List: Where Specifications include a list of manufacturers' names, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.

- b. Nonrestricted List: Where Specifications include a list of available manufacturers, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed, or a product by an unnamed manufacturer, that complies with requirements. Comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article for consideration of an unnamed manufacturer's product.
4. Basis-of-Design Product: Where Specifications name a product, or refer to a product indicated on Drawings, and include a list of manufacturers, provide the specified or indicated product or a comparable product by one of the other named manufacturers. Drawings and Specifications indicate sizes, profiles, dimensions, and other characteristics that are based on the product named. Comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article for consideration of an unnamed product by one of the other named manufacturers.
- C. Visual Matching Specification: Where Specifications require "match Architect's sample", provide a product that complies with requirements and matches Architect's sample. Architect's decision will be final on whether a proposed product matches.
  1. If no product available within specified category matches and complies with other specified requirements, comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Substitution Procedures" for proposal of product.
- D. Visual Selection Specification: Where Specifications include the phrase "as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range" or similar phrase, select a product that complies with requirements. Architect will select color, gloss, pattern, density, or texture from manufacturer's product line that includes both standard and premium items.

## 2.2 COMPARABLE PRODUCTS

- A. Conditions for Consideration of Comparable Products: Architect will consider Contractor's request for comparable product when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect may return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
  1. Evidence that proposed product does not require revisions to the Contract Documents, is consistent with the Contract Documents, will produce the indicated results, and is compatible with other portions of the Work. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed product with those named in the Specifications. Significant product qualities include attributes such as type, function, in-service performance and physical properties, weight, dimension, durability, visual characteristics, and other specific features and requirements.
  2. Evidence that proposed product provides specified warranty.
  3. List of similar installations for completed projects with project names and addresses and names and addresses of architects and owners, if requested.
  4. Samples, if requested.
- B. Submittal Requirements: Approval by the Architect of Contractor's request for use of comparable product is not intended to satisfy other submittal requirements. Comply with specified submittal requirements.

September 15, 2023

Novant ASC Leland  
Construction Documents

1721843900

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 60 00



## SECTION 01 73 00 - EXECUTION

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general administrative and procedural requirements governing execution of the Work including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Construction layout.
  - 2. Field engineering and surveying.
  - 3. Installation of the Work.
  - 4. Progress cleaning.
  - 5. Starting and adjusting.
  - 6. Protection of installed construction.
  - 7. Correction of the Work.

## 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For professional engineer.
- B. Landfill Receipts: Submit copy of receipts issued by a landfill facility, licensed to accept hazardous materials, for hazardous waste disposal.
- C. Final Property Survey: Submit 5 copies showing the Work performed and record survey data for site work associated with the building renovation.

## 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Obtain and maintain on-site manufacturer's written recommendations and instructions for installation of products and equipment.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with requirements specified in other Sections.
  - 1. For projects requiring compliance with sustainable design and construction practices and procedures, use products for patching that comply with requirements in Division 01 sustainable design requirements Section.

- B. In-Place Materials: Use materials for patching identical to in-place materials. For exposed surfaces, use materials that visually match in-place adjacent surfaces to the fullest extent possible.
  - 1. If identical materials are unavailable or cannot be used, use materials that, when installed, will provide a match acceptable to Architect for the visual and functional performance of in-place materials.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Existing Conditions: The existence and location of underground and other utilities and construction indicated as existing are not guaranteed. Before beginning sitework, investigate and verify the existence and location of underground utilities, mechanical and electrical systems, and other construction affecting the Work.
  - 1. Before construction, verify the location and invert elevation at points of connection of sanitary sewer, storm sewer, and water-service piping; underground electrical services, and other utilities.
  - 2. Furnish location data for work related to Project that must be performed by public utilities serving Project site.
- B. Examination and Acceptance of Conditions: Before proceeding with each component of the Work, examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer or Applicator present where indicated, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance. Record observations.
  - 1. Examine roughing-in for mechanical and electrical systems to verify actual locations of connections before equipment and fixture installation.
  - 2. Examine walls, floors, and roofs for suitable conditions where products and systems are to be installed.
  - 3. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.
- C. Written Report: Where a written report listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work is required by other Sections, include the following:
  - 1. Description of the Work.
  - 2. List of detrimental conditions, including substrates.
  - 3. List of unacceptable installation tolerances.
  - 4. Recommended corrections.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. Proceeding with the Work indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Existing Utility Information: Furnish information to Owner that is necessary to adjust, move, or relocate existing utility structures, utility poles, lines, services, or other utility appurtenances located in or affected by construction. Coordinate with authorities having jurisdiction.



- B. Field Measurements: Take field measurements as required to fit the Work properly. Recheck measurements before installing each product. Where portions of the Work are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
- C. Space Requirements: Verify space requirements and dimensions of items shown diagrammatically on Drawings.
- D. Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions: Immediately on discovery of the need for clarification of the Contract Documents caused by differing field conditions outside the control of Contractor, submit a request for information to Architect according to requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

### 3.3 CONSTRUCTION LAYOUT

- A. Verification: Before proceeding to lay out the Work, verify layout information shown on Drawings, in relation to the property survey and existing benchmarks. If discrepancies are discovered, notify Architect promptly.
- B. General: Engage a professional land surveyor to lay out the Work using accepted surveying practices.
  - 1. Establish benchmarks and control points to set lines and levels at each story of construction and elsewhere as needed to locate each element of Project.
  - 2. Establish limits on use of Project site.
  - 3. Establish dimensions within tolerances indicated. Do not scale Drawings to obtain required dimensions.
  - 4. Inform installers of lines and levels to which they must comply.
  - 5. Check the location, level and plumb, of every major element as the Work progresses.
  - 6. Notify Architect when deviations from required lines and levels exceed allowable tolerances.
  - 7. Close site surveys with an error of closure equal to or less than the standard established by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Site Improvements: Locate and lay out site improvements, including pavements, grading, fill and topsoil placement, utility slopes, and rim and invert elevations.
- D. Building Lines and Levels: Locate and lay out control lines and levels for structures, building foundations, column grids, and floor levels, including those required for mechanical and electrical work. Transfer survey markings and elevations for use with control lines and levels. Level foundations and piers from two or more locations.
- E. Record Log: Maintain a log of layout control work. Record deviations from required lines and levels. Include beginning and ending dates and times of surveys, weather conditions, name and duty of each survey party member, and types of instruments and tapes used. Make the log available for reference by Architect.

### 3.4 FIELD ENGINEERING

- A. Identification: Owner will identify existing benchmarks, control points, and property corners.

- B. Reference Points: Locate existing permanent benchmarks, control points, and similar reference points before beginning the Work. Preserve and protect permanent benchmarks and control points during construction operations.
  - 1. Do not change or relocate existing benchmarks or control points without prior written approval of Architect. Report lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks or control points promptly. Report the need to relocate permanent benchmarks or control points to Architect before proceeding.
  - 2. Replace lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks and control points promptly. Base replacements on the original survey control points.
- C. Benchmarks: Establish and maintain a minimum of two permanent benchmarks on Project site, referenced to data established by survey control points. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction for type and size of benchmark.
  - 1. Record benchmark locations, with horizontal and vertical data, on Project Record Documents.
  - 2. Where the actual location or elevation of layout points cannot be marked, provide temporary reference points sufficient to locate the Work.
  - 3. Remove temporary reference points when no longer needed. Restore marked construction to its original condition.
- D. Final Property Survey: As required by jurisdiction, engage a professional land surveyor to prepare a final property survey showing significant features (real property) for Project.
  - 1. Show monuments, streets, site improvements and utilities, existing improvements and significant vegetation, adjoining properties, acreage, grade contours, and the distance and bearing from a site corner to a legal point.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Locate the Work and components of the Work accurately, in correct alignment and elevation, as indicated.
  - 1. Make vertical work plumb and make horizontal work level.
  - 2. Where space is limited, install components to maximize space available for maintenance and ease of removal for replacement.
  - 3. Conceal pipes, ducts, and wiring in finished areas unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4. Maintain minimum headroom clearance of 96 inches in occupied spaces and 90 inches in unoccupied spaces.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations for installing products in applications indicated.
- C. Install products at the time and under conditions that will ensure the best possible results. Maintain conditions required for product performance until Substantial Completion.
- D. Conduct construction operations so no part of the Work is subjected to damaging operations or loading in excess of that expected during normal conditions of occupancy.
- E. Sequence the Work and allow adequate clearances to accommodate movement of construction items on site and placement in permanent locations.
- F. Tools and Equipment: Do not use tools or equipment that produce harmful noise levels.

- G. Templates: Obtain and distribute to the parties involved templates for work specified to be factory prepared and field installed. Check Shop Drawings of other work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing products to comply with indicated requirements.
- H. Attachment: Provide blocking and attachment plates and anchors and fasteners of adequate size and number to securely anchor each component in place, accurately located and aligned with other portions of the Work. Where size and type of attachments are not indicated, verify size and type required for load conditions.
  - 1. Mounting Heights: Where mounting heights are not indicated, mount components at heights directed by Architect.
  - 2. Allow for building movement, including thermal expansion and contraction.
  - 3. Coordinate installation of anchorages. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- I. Joints: Make joints of uniform width. Where joint locations in exposed work are not indicated, arrange joints for the best visual effect. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints.
- J. Hazardous Materials: Use products, cleaners, and installation materials that are not considered hazardous.

### 3.6 PROGRESS CLEANING

- A. General: Clean Project site and work areas daily, including common areas. Enforce requirements strictly. Dispose of materials lawfully.
  - 1. Comply with requirements in NFPA 241 for removal of combustible waste materials and debris.
  - 2. Do not hold waste materials more than seven days during normal weather or three days if the temperature is expected to rise above 80 deg F.
  - 3. Containerize hazardous and unsanitary waste materials separately from other waste. Mark containers appropriately and dispose of legally, according to regulations.
    - a. Use containers intended for holding waste materials of type to be stored.
  - 4. Coordinate progress cleaning for joint-use areas where Contractor and other contractors are working concurrently.
- B. Site: Maintain Project site free of waste materials and debris.
- C. Work Areas: Clean areas where work is in progress to the level of cleanliness necessary for proper execution of the Work.
  - 1. Remove liquid spills promptly.
  - 2. Where dust would impair proper execution of the Work, broom-clean or vacuum the entire work area, as appropriate.
- D. Installed Work: Keep installed work clean. Clean installed surfaces according to written instructions of manufacturer or fabricator of product installed, using only cleaning materials specifically recommended. If specific cleaning materials are not recommended, use cleaning materials that are not hazardous to health or property and that will not damage exposed surfaces.

- E. Concealed Spaces: Remove debris from concealed spaces before enclosing the space.
- F. Exposed Surfaces in Finished Areas: Clean exposed surfaces and protect as necessary to ensure freedom from damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- G. Waste Disposal: Do not bury or burn waste materials on-site. Do not wash waste materials down sewers or into waterways. Comply with waste disposal requirements in Division 01 Section "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."
- H. During handling and installation, clean and protect construction in progress and adjoining materials already in place. Apply protective covering where required to ensure protection from damage or deterioration at Substantial Completion.
- I. Clean and provide maintenance on completed construction as frequently as necessary through the remainder of the construction period. Adjust and lubricate operable components to ensure operability without damaging effects.
- J. Limiting Exposures: Supervise construction operations to assure that no part of the construction, completed or in progress, is subject to harmful, dangerous, damaging, or otherwise deleterious exposure during the construction period.

### 3.7 STARTING AND ADJUSTING

- A. Start equipment and operating components to confirm proper operation. Remove malfunctioning units, replace with new units, and retest.
- B. Adjust equipment for proper operation. Adjust operating components for proper operation without binding.
- C. Test each piece of equipment to verify proper operation. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

### 3.8 PROTECTION OF INSTALLED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure installed Work is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature and relative humidity.

END OF SECTION 01 73 00

## SECTION 01 74 19 - CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for the following:

1. Salvaging nonhazardous construction waste.
2. Recycling nonhazardous construction waste.
3. Disposing of nonhazardous construction waste.

## 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Construction Waste: Building and site improvement materials and other solid waste resulting from construction, remodeling, renovation, or repair operations. Construction waste includes packaging.
- B. Disposal: Removal off-site of demolition and construction waste and subsequent sale, recycling, reuse, or deposit in landfill or incinerator acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Recycle: Recovery of demolition or construction waste for subsequent processing in preparation for reuse.
- D. Salvage: Recovery of demolition or construction waste and subsequent sale or reuse in another facility.
- E. Salvage and Reuse: Recovery of demolition or construction waste and subsequent incorporation into the Work.

## 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Develop waste management plan that results in end-of-Project rates for salvage/recycling of 75 percent by weight of total waste generated by the Work.
- B. Salvage/Recycle Requirements: Owner's goal is to salvage and recycle as much nonhazardous demolition and construction waste as possible including the following materials:
- C. Salvage/Recycle Requirements: Owner's goal is to salvage and recycle as much nonhazardous demolition and construction waste as possible. Owner has established minimum goals for the following materials:
1. Demolition Waste:
    - a. Concrete.
    - b. Concrete reinforcing steel.
    - c. Plywood and oriented strand board.
    - d. Structural and miscellaneous steel.
    - e. Rough hardware.
    - f. Insulation.

- g. Doors and frames.
- h. Door hardware.
- i. Windows.
- j. Glazing.
- k. Metal studs.
- l. Gypsum board.
- m. Equipment.
- n. Plumbing fixtures.
- o. Piping.
- p. Supports and hangers.
- q. Valves.
- r. Sprinklers.
- s. Mechanical equipment.
- t. Refrigerants.
- u. Electrical conduit.
- v. Copper wiring.
- w. Lighting fixtures.
- x. Lamps.
- y. Ballasts.
- z. Electrical devices.
- aa. Switchgear and panelboards.
- bb. Transformers.

2. Construction Waste:

- a. Concrete.
- b. Lumber.
- c. Wood sheet materials.
- d. Wood trim.
- e. Metals.
- f. Roofing.
- g. Insulation.
- h. Carpet.
- i. Gypsum board.
- j. Piping.
- k. Electrical conduit.
- l. Packaging: Regardless of salvage/recycle goal indicated above, salvage or recycle 100 percent of the following uncontaminated packaging materials:
  - 1) Paper.
  - 2) Cardboard.
  - 3) Boxes.
  - 4) Plastic sheet and film.
  - 5) Polystyrene packaging.
  - 6) Wood crates.
  - 7) Plastic pails.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Waste Management Plan: Submit 3 copies of plan within 10 days of date established for the Notice to Proceed.
- B. Waste Reduction Progress Reports: Concurrent with each Application for Payment, submit three copies of report. Include separate reports for demolition and construction waste. Include the following information:

1. Material category.
  2. Generation point of waste.
  3. Total quantity of waste in tons.
  4. Quantity of waste salvaged, both estimated and actual in tons.
  5. Quantity of waste recycled, both estimated and actual in tons.
  6. Total quantity of waste recovered (salvaged plus recycled) in tons.
  7. Total quantity of waste recovered (salvaged plus recycled) as a percentage of total waste.
- C. Waste Reduction Calculations: Before request for Substantial Completion, submit three copies of calculated end-of-Project rates for salvage, recycling, and disposal as a percentage of total waste generated by the Work.
- D. Records of Donations: Indicate receipt and acceptance of salvageable waste donated to individuals and organizations. Indicate whether organization is tax exempt.
- E. Records of Sales: Indicate receipt and acceptance of salvageable waste sold to individuals and organizations. Indicate whether organization is tax exempt.
- F. Recycling and Processing Facility Records: Indicate receipt and acceptance of recyclable waste by recycling and processing facilities licensed to accept them. Include manifests, weight tickets, receipts, and invoices.
- G. Landfill and Incinerator Disposal Records: Indicate receipt and acceptance of waste by landfills and incinerator facilities licensed to accept them. Include manifests, weight tickets, receipts, and invoices.
- H. Statement of Refrigerant Recovery: Signed by refrigerant recovery technician responsible for recovering refrigerant, stating that all refrigerant that was present was recovered and that recovery was performed according to EPA regulations. Include name and address of technician and date refrigerant was recovered.
- 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Refrigerant Recovery Technician Qualifications: Certified by EPA-approved certification program.
- B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Waste Management Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination." Review methods and procedures related to waste management including, but not limited to, the following:
1. Review and discuss waste management plan including responsibilities of Waste Management Coordinator.
  2. Review requirements for documenting quantities of each type of waste and its disposition.
  3. Review and finalize procedures for materials separation and verify availability of containers and bins needed to avoid delays.
  4. Review procedures for periodic waste collection and transportation to recycling and disposal facilities.
  5. Review waste management requirements for each trade.

## 1.6 WASTE MANAGEMENT PLAN

- A. General: Develop plan consisting of waste identification, waste reduction work plan, and cost/revenue analysis. Include separate sections in plan for demolition and construction waste. Indicate quantities by weight or volume, but use same units of measure throughout waste management plan.
- B. Waste Identification: Indicate anticipated types and quantities of demolition and construction waste generated by the Work. Include estimated quantities and assumptions for estimates.
- C. Waste Reduction Work Plan: List each type of waste and whether it will be salvaged, recycled, or disposed of in landfill or incinerator. Include points of waste generation, total quantity of each type of waste, quantity for each means of recovery, and handling and transportation procedures.
  - 1. Salvaged Materials for Reuse: For materials that will be salvaged and reused in this Project, describe methods for preparing salvaged materials before incorporation into the Work.
  - 2. Salvaged Materials for Sale: For materials that will be sold to individuals and organizations, include list of their names, addresses, and telephone numbers.
  - 3. Salvaged Materials for Donation: For materials that will be donated to individuals and organizations, include list of their names, addresses, and telephone numbers.
  - 4. Recycled Materials: Include list of local receivers and processors and type of recycled materials each will accept. Include names, addresses, and telephone numbers.
  - 5. Disposed Materials: Indicate how and where materials will be disposed of. Include name, address, and telephone number of each landfill and incinerator facility.
  - 6. Handling and Transportation Procedures: Include method that will be used for separating recyclable waste including sizes of containers, container labeling, and designated location on Project site where materials separation will be located.
- D. Cost/Revenue Analysis: Indicate total cost of waste disposal as if there was no waste management plan and net additional cost or net savings resulting from implementing waste management plan. Include the following:
  - 1. Total quantity of waste.
  - 2. Estimated cost of disposal (cost per unit). Include hauling and tipping fees and cost of collection containers for each type of waste.
  - 3. Total cost of disposal (with no waste management).
  - 4. Revenue from salvaged materials.
  - 5. Revenue from recycled materials.
  - 6. Savings in hauling and tipping fees by donating materials.
  - 7. Savings in hauling and tipping fees that are avoided.
  - 8. Handling and transportation costs. Include cost of collection containers for each type of waste.
  - 9. Net additional cost or net savings from waste management plan.



## PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 PLAN IMPLEMENTATION

- A. General: Implement waste management plan as approved by Architect. Provide handling, containers, storage, signage, transportation, and other items as required to implement waste management plan during the entire duration of the Contract.
  - 1. Comply with Division 01 Section "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for operation, termination, and removal requirements.
- B. Waste Management Coordinator: Engage a waste management coordinator to be responsible for implementing, monitoring, and reporting status of waste management work plan. Coordinator shall be present at Project site full time for duration of Project.
- C. Training: Train workers, subcontractors, and suppliers on proper waste management procedures, as appropriate for the Work occurring at Project site.
  - 1. Distribute waste management plan to everyone concerned within three days of submittal return.
  - 2. Distribute waste management plan to entities when they first begin work on-site. Review plan procedures and locations established for salvage, recycling, and disposal.
- D. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct waste management operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
  - 1. Designate and label specific areas on Project site necessary for separating materials that are to be salvaged, recycled, reused, donated, and sold.
  - 2. Comply with Division 01 Section "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for controlling dust and dirt, environmental protection, and noise control.

## 3.2 SALVAGING DEMOLITION WASTE

- A. Salvaged Items for Reuse in the Work:
  - 1. Clean salvaged items.
  - 2. Pack or crate items after cleaning. Identify contents of containers.
  - 3. Store items in a secure area until installation.
  - 4. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
  - 5. Install salvaged items to comply with installation requirements for new materials and equipment. Provide connections, supports, and miscellaneous materials necessary to make items functional for use indicated.
- B. Salvaged Items for Sale and Donation: Not permitted on Project site.
- C. Salvaged Items for Owner's Use:
  - 1. Clean salvaged items.
  - 2. Pack or crate items after cleaning. Identify contents of containers.

3. Store items in a secure area until delivery to Owner.
4. Transport items to Owner's storage area designated by Owner.
5. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.

- D. Doors and Hardware: Brace open end of door frames. Except for removing door closers, leave door hardware attached to doors.

### 3.3 RECYCLING DEMOLITION AND CONSTRUCTION WASTE, GENERAL

- A. General: Recycle paper and beverage containers used by on-site workers.
- B. Recycling Incentives: Revenues, savings, rebates, tax credits, and other incentives received for recycling waste materials shall accrue to Contractor.
- C. Procedures: Separate recyclable waste from other waste materials, trash, and debris. Separate recyclable waste by type at Project site to the maximum extent practical.
1. Provide appropriately marked containers or bins for controlling recyclable waste until they are removed from Project site. Include list of acceptable and unacceptable materials at each container and bin.
    - a. Inspect containers and bins for contamination and remove contaminated materials if found.
  2. Stockpile processed materials on-site without intermixing with other materials. Place, grade, and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust.
  3. Stockpile materials away from construction area. Do not store within drip line of remaining trees.
  4. Store components off the ground and protect from the weather.
  5. Remove recyclable waste off Owner's property and transport to recycling receiver or processor.

### 3.4 RECYCLING DEMOLITION WASTE

- A. Concrete: Remove reinforcement and other metals from concrete and sort with other metals.
1. Pulverize concrete to maximum 1-1/2-inch size.
- B. Wood Materials: Sort and stack members according to size, type, and length. Separate lumber, engineered wood products, panel products, and treated wood materials.
- C. Metals: Separate metals by type.
1. Structural Steel: Stack members according to size, type of member, and length.
  2. Remove and dispose of bolts, nuts, washers, and other rough hardware.
- D. Gypsum Board: Stack large clean pieces on wood pallets and store in a dry location. Remove edge trim and sort with other metals. Remove and dispose of fasteners.
- E. Acoustical Ceiling Panels and Tile: Stack large clean pieces on wood pallets and store in a dry location.
1. Separate suspension system, trim, and other metals from panels and tile and sort with other metals.

- F. Carpet: Roll large pieces tightly after removing debris, trash, adhesive, and tack strips.
  - 1. Store clean, dry carpet in a closed container or trailer provided by Carpet Reclamation Agency or carpet recycler.
- G. Equipment: Drain tanks, piping, and fixtures. Seal openings with caps or plugs. Protect equipment from exposure to weather.
- H. Plumbing Fixtures: Separate by type and size.
- I. Piping: Reduce piping to straight lengths and store by type and size. Separate supports, hangers, valves, sprinklers, and other components by type and size.
- J. Lighting Fixtures: Separate lamps by type and protect from breakage.
- K. Electrical Devices: Separate switches, receptacles, switchgear, transformers, meters, panelboards, circuit breakers, and other devices by type.
- L. Conduit: Reduce conduit to straight lengths and store by type and size.

### 3.5 RECYCLING CONSTRUCTION WASTE

- A. Packaging:
  - 1. Cardboard and Boxes: Break down packaging into flat sheets. Bundle and store in a dry location.
  - 2. Polystyrene Packaging: Separate and bag materials.
  - 3. Pallets: As much as possible, require deliveries using pallets to remove pallets from Project site. For pallets that remain on-site, break down pallets into component wood pieces and comply with requirements for recycling wood.
  - 4. Crates: Break down crates into component wood pieces and comply with requirements for recycling wood.
- B. Wood Materials:
  - 1. Clean Cut-Offs of Lumber: Grind or chip into small pieces.
  - 2. Clean Sawdust: Bag sawdust that does not contain painted or treated wood.
- C. Gypsum Board: Stack large clean pieces on wood pallets and store in a dry location.

### 3.6 DISPOSAL OF WASTE

- A. General: Except for items or materials to be salvaged, recycled, or otherwise reused, remove waste materials from Project site and legally dispose of them in a landfill or incinerator acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Except as otherwise specified, do not allow waste materials that are to be disposed of accumulate on-site.
  - 2. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
- B. Burning: Do not burn waste materials.

- C. Disposal: Transport waste materials off Owner's property and legally dispose of them.

END OF SECTION 01 74 19

## SECTION 01 77 00 - CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
  - 1. Procedures for compliance with certain Green Building Initiative's (GBI) "Green Globes for New Construction, Version 1.1 may apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for contract closeout, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Inspection procedures.
  - 2. Warranties.
  - 3. Final cleaning.

## 1.3 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION

- A. Preliminary Procedures: Before requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion, complete the following. List items below that are incomplete in request.
  - 1. Prepare a list of items to be completed and corrected (punch list), the value of items on the list, and reasons why the Work is not complete.
  - 2. Advise Owner of pending insurance changeover requirements.
  - 3. Obtain and submit releases permitting Owner unrestricted use of the Work and access to services and utilities. Include occupancy permits, operating certificates, and similar releases.
  - 4. Deliver tools, spare parts, extra materials, and similar items to location designated by Owner. Label with manufacturer's name and model number where applicable.
  - 5. Make final changeover of permanent locks and deliver keys to Owner. Advise Owner's personnel of changeover in security provisions.
  - 6. Complete startup testing of systems.
  - 7. Submit test/adjust/balance records.
  - 8. Terminate and remove temporary facilities from Project site, along with mockups, construction tools, and similar elements.
  - 9. Advise Owner of changeover in heat and other utilities.
  - 10. Submit changeover information related to Owner's occupancy, use, operation, and maintenance.
  - 11. Complete final cleaning requirements, including touchup painting.
  - 12. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred exposed finishes to eliminate visual defects.
  - 13. Green Globes Documentation completed.
  - 14. Sign off by commissioning agent.

- B. Inspection: Submit a written request for inspection for Substantial Completion. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare the Certificate of Substantial Completion after inspection or will notify Contractor of items, either on Contractor's list or additional items identified by Architect, that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.
  - 1. Reinspection: Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.
  - 2. Results of completed inspection will form the basis of requirements for Final Completion.

#### 1.4 FINAL COMPLETION

- A. Preliminary Procedures: Before requesting final inspection for determining date of Final Completion, complete the following:
  - 1. Submit a final Application for Payment according to Division 01 Section "Payment Procedures."
  - 2. Submit certified copy of Architect's Substantial Completion inspection list of items to be completed or corrected (punch list), endorsed and dated by Architect. The certified copy of the list shall state that each item has been completed or otherwise resolved for acceptance.
  - 3. Submit evidence of final, continuing insurance coverage complying with insurance requirements.
  - 4. Submit pest-control final inspection report and warranty.
  - 5. Instruct Owner's personnel in operation, adjustment, and maintenance of products, equipment, and systems.
  - 6. Submit specific warranties, workmanship bonds, maintenance service agreements, final certifications, and similar documents.
  - 7. Prepare and submit Project Record Documents, operation and maintenance manuals, Final Completion construction photographs, damage or settlement surveys, property surveys, and similar final record information.
  - 8. Green Globes documentation completed, uploaded to Green Globes online, and review Green Globes comments completely addressed.
- B. Inspection: Submit a written request for final inspection for acceptance. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare a final Certificate for Payment after inspection or will notify Contractor of construction that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.
  - 1. Reinspection: Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.

#### 1.5 LIST OF INCOMPLETE ITEMS (PUNCH LIST)

- A. Preparation: Submit three copies of list. Include name and identification of each space and area affected by construction operations for incomplete items and items needing correction including, if necessary, areas disturbed by Contractor that are outside the limits of construction.
  - 1. Organize list of spaces in sequential order, starting with exterior areas first and proceeding from highest floor to lowest floor.
  - 2. Organize items applying to each space by major element, including categories for ceiling, individual walls, floors, equipment, and building systems.
  - 3. Include the following information at the top of each page:

- a. Project name.
- b. Date.
- c. Name of Architect.
- d. Name of Contractor.
- e. Page number.

## 1.6 WARRANTIES

- A. Submittal Time: Submit written warranties on request of Architect for designated portions of the Work where commencement of warranties other than date of Substantial Completion is indicated.
- B. Partial Occupancy: Submit properly executed warranties within 15 days of completion of designated portions of the Work that are completed and occupied or used by Owner during construction period by separate agreement with Contractor.
- C. Organize warranty documents into an orderly sequence based on the table of contents of the Project Manual.
  1. Bind warranties and bonds in heavy-duty, 3-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, thickness as necessary to accommodate contents, and sized to receive 8-1/2-by-11-inch paper.
  2. Provide heavy paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each separate warranty. Mark tab to identify the product or installation. Provide a typed description of the product or installation, including the name of the product and the name, address, and telephone number of Installer.
  3. Identify each binder on the front and spine with the typed or printed title "WARRANTIES," Project name, and name of Contractor.
  4. Provide same in electronic pdf format.
- D. Provide additional copies of each warranty to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Cleaning Agents: Use cleaning materials and agents recommended by manufacturer or fabricator of the surface to be cleaned. Do not use cleaning agents that are potentially hazardous to health or property or that might damage finished surfaces.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 FINAL CLEANING

- A. General: Provide final cleaning. Conduct cleaning and waste-removal operations to comply with local laws and ordinances and Federal and local environmental and antipollution regulations.
- B. Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for certification of Substantial Completion for entire Project or for a portion of Project:
  - a. Clean Project site, yard, and grounds, in areas disturbed by construction activities, including landscape development areas, of rubbish, waste material, litter, and other foreign substances.
  - b. Sweep paved areas broom clean. Remove petrochemical spills, stains, and other foreign deposits.
  - c. Rake grounds that are neither planted nor paved to a smooth, even-textured surface.
  - d. Remove tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus material from Project site.
  - e. Remove snow and ice to provide safe access to building.
  - f. Clean exposed exterior and interior hard-surfaced finishes to a dirt-free condition, free of stains, films, and similar foreign substances. Avoid disturbing natural weathering of exterior surfaces. Restore reflective surfaces to their original condition.
  - g. Remove debris and surface dust from limited access spaces, including roofs, plenums, shafts, trenches, equipment vaults, manholes, attics, and similar spaces.
  - h. Sweep concrete floors broom clean in unoccupied spaces.
  - i. Vacuum carpet and similar soft surfaces, removing debris and excess nap; shampoo if visible soil or stains remain.
  - j. Clean transparent materials, including mirrors and glass in doors and windows. Remove glazing compounds and other noticeable, vision-obscuring materials. Replace chipped or broken glass and other damaged transparent materials. Polish mirrors and glass, taking care not to scratch surfaces.
  - k. Remove labels that are not permanent.
  - l. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred, exposed finishes and surfaces. Replace finishes and surfaces that cannot be satisfactorily repaired or restored or that already show evidence of repair or restoration.
    - 1) Do not paint over "UL" and similar labels, including mechanical and electrical nameplates.
  - m. Wipe surfaces of mechanical and electrical equipment, elevator equipment, and similar equipment. Remove excess lubrication, paint and mortar droppings, and other foreign substances.
  - n. Replace parts subject to unusual operating conditions.
  - o. Clean plumbing fixtures to a sanitary condition, free of stains, including stains resulting from water exposure.
  - p. Replace disposable air filters and clean permanent air filters. Clean exposed surfaces of diffusers, registers, and grills.
  - q. Clean ducts, blowers, and coils if units were operated without filters during construction.
  - r. Clean light fixtures, lamps, globes, and reflectors to function with full efficiency. Replace burned-out bulbs, and those noticeably dimmed by hours of use, and defective and noisy starters in fluorescent and mercury vapor fixtures to comply with requirements for new fixtures.
  - s. Leave Project clean and ready for occupancy.
- C. Pest Control: Engage an experienced, licensed exterminator to make a final inspection and rid Project of rodents, insects, and other pests. Prepare a report.
- D. Comply with safety standards for cleaning. Do not burn waste materials. Do not bury debris or excess materials on Owner's property. Do not discharge volatile, harmful, or dangerous



materials into drainage systems. Remove waste materials from Project site and dispose of lawfully.

END OF SECTION 01 77 00



## SECTION 01 78 23 - OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for preparing operation and maintenance manuals, including the following:
  - 1. Operation and maintenance documentation directory.
  - 2. Emergency manuals.
  - 3. Operation manuals for systems, subsystems, and equipment.
  - 4. Maintenance manuals for the care and maintenance of products, materials, and finishes systems and equipment.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. System: An organized collection of parts, equipment, or subsystems united by regular interaction.
- B. Subsystem: A portion of a system with characteristics similar to a system.

## 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Initial Submittal: Submit 2 draft copies of each manual at least 15 days before requesting inspection for Substantial Completion. Include a complete operation and maintenance directory. Architect will return one copy of draft and mark whether general scope and content of manual are acceptable.
- B. Final Submittal: Submit two copies of each manual in final form at least 15 days before final inspection. Architect will return copy with comments within 15 days after final inspection.
  - 1. Correct or modify each manual to comply with Architect's comments. Submit 3 copies of each corrected manual within 15 days of receipt of Architect's comments.
  - 2. Provide electronic copy via pdf format of final documentation.

## 1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Where operation and maintenance documentation includes information on installations by more than one factory-authorized service representative, assemble and coordinate information furnished by representatives and prepare manuals.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DOCUMENTATION DIRECTORY

- A. Organization: Include a section in the directory for each of the following:
  - 1. List of documents.
  - 2. List of systems.
  - 3. List of equipment.
  - 4. Table of contents.
- B. List of Systems and Subsystems: List systems alphabetically. Include references to operation and maintenance manuals that contain information about each system.
- C. List of Equipment: List equipment for each system, organized alphabetically by system. For pieces of equipment not part of system, list alphabetically in separate list.
- D. Tables of Contents: Include a table of contents for each emergency, operation, and maintenance manual.
- E. Identification: In the documentation directory and in each operation and maintenance manual, identify each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment with same designation used in the Contract Documents. If no designation exists, assign a designation according to ASHRAE Guideline 4, "Preparation of Operating and Maintenance Documentation for Building Systems."

## 2.2 MANUALS, GENERAL

- A. Organization: Unless otherwise indicated, organize each manual into a separate section for each system and subsystem, and a separate section for each piece of equipment not part of a system. Each manual shall contain the following materials, in the order listed:
  - 1. Title page.
  - 2. Table of contents.
  - 3. Manual contents.
- B. Title Page: Enclose title page in transparent plastic sleeve. Include the following information:
  - 1. Subject matter included in manual.
  - 2. Name and address of Project.
  - 3. Name and address of Owner.
  - 4. Date of submittal.
  - 5. Name, address, and telephone number of Contractor.
  - 6. Name and address of Architect.
  - 7. Cross-reference to related systems in other operation and maintenance manuals.
- C. Table of Contents: List each product included in manual, identified by product name, indexed to the content of the volume, and cross-referenced to Specification Section number in Project Manual.
  - 1. If operation or maintenance documentation requires more than one volume to accommodate data, include comprehensive table of contents for all volumes in each volume of the set.

- D. Manual Contents: Organize into sets of manageable size. Arrange contents alphabetically by system, subsystem, and equipment. If possible, assemble instructions for subsystems, equipment, and components of one system into a single binder.
1. Binders: Heavy-duty, 3-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, in thickness necessary to accommodate contents, sized to hold 8-1/2-by-11-inch paper; with clear plastic sleeve on spine to hold label describing contents and with pockets inside covers to hold folded oversize sheets.
    - a. If two or more binders are necessary to accommodate data of a system, organize data in each binder into groupings by subsystem and related components. Cross-reference other binders if necessary to provide essential information for proper operation or maintenance of equipment or system.
    - b. Identify each binder on front and spine, with printed title "OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL," Project title or name, and subject matter of contents. Indicate volume number for multiple-volume sets.
  2. Dividers: Heavy-paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each section. Mark each tab to indicate contents. Include typed list of products and major components of equipment included in the section on each divider, cross-referenced to Specification Section number and title of Project Manual.
  3. Protective Plastic Sleeves: Transparent plastic sleeves designed to enclose diagnostic software diskettes for computerized electronic equipment.
  4. Supplementary Text: Prepared on 8-1/2-by-11-inch white bond paper.
  5. Drawings: Attach reinforced, punched binder tabs on drawings and bind with text.
    - a. If oversize drawings are necessary, fold drawings to same size as text pages and use as foldouts.
    - b. If drawings are too large to be used as foldouts, fold and place drawings in labeled envelopes and bind envelopes in rear of manual. At appropriate locations in manual, insert typewritten pages indicating drawing titles, descriptions of contents, and drawing locations.

## 2.3 EMERGENCY MANUALS

- A. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each of the following:
1. Type of emergency.
  2. Emergency instructions.
  3. Emergency procedures.
- B. Type of Emergency: Where applicable for each type of emergency indicated below, include instructions and procedures for each system, subsystem, piece of equipment, and component:
1. Fire.
  2. Flood.
  3. Gas leak.
  4. Water leak.
  5. Power failure.
  6. Water outage.
  7. System, subsystem, or equipment failure.
  8. Chemical release or spill.

- C. Emergency Instructions: Describe and explain warnings, trouble indications, error messages, and similar codes and signals. Include responsibilities of Owner's operating personnel for notification of Installer, supplier, and manufacturer to maintain warranties.
- D. Emergency Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:
  - 1. Instructions on stopping.
  - 2. Shutdown instructions for each type of emergency.
  - 3. Operating instructions for conditions outside normal operating limits.
  - 4. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
  - 5. Special operating instructions and procedures.

## 2.4 OPERATION MANUALS

- A. Content: In addition to requirements in this Section, include operation data required in individual Specification Sections and the following information:
  - 1. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions.
  - 2. Performance and design criteria if Contractor is delegated design responsibility.
  - 3. Operating standards.
  - 4. Operating procedures.
  - 5. Operating logs.
  - 6. Wiring diagrams.
  - 7. Control diagrams.
  - 8. Piped system diagrams.
  - 9. Precautions against improper use.
  - 10. License requirements including inspection and renewal dates.
- B. Descriptions: Include the following:
  - 1. Product name and model number.
  - 2. Manufacturer's name.
  - 3. Equipment identification with serial number of each component.
  - 4. Equipment function.
  - 5. Operating characteristics.
  - 6. Limiting conditions.
  - 7. Performance curves.
  - 8. Engineering data and tests.
  - 9. Complete nomenclature and number of replacement parts.
- C. Operating Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:
  - 1. Startup procedures.
  - 2. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
  - 3. Routine and normal operating instructions.
  - 4. Regulation and control procedures.
  - 5. Instructions on stopping.
  - 6. Normal shutdown instructions.
  - 7. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
  - 8. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
  - 9. Special operating instructions and procedures.
- D. Systems and Equipment Controls: Describe the sequence of operation, and diagram controls as installed.

- E. Piped Systems: Diagram piping as installed, and identify color-coding where required for identification.

## 2.5 PRODUCT MAINTENANCE MANUAL

- A. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each product, material, and finish. Include source information, product information, maintenance procedures, repair materials and sources, and warranties and bonds, as described below.
- B. Source Information: List each product included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual.
- C. Product Information: Include the following, as applicable:
  - 1. Product name and model number.
  - 2. Manufacturer's name.
  - 3. Color, pattern, and texture.
  - 4. Material and chemical composition.
  - 5. Reordering information for specially manufactured products.
- D. Maintenance Procedures: Include manufacturer's written recommendations and the following:
  - 1. Inspection procedures.
  - 2. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
  - 3. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
  - 4. Schedule for routine cleaning and maintenance.
  - 5. Repair instructions.
- E. Repair Materials and Sources: Include lists of materials and local sources of materials and related services.
- F. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.
  - 1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.

## 2.6 SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT MAINTENANCE MANUAL

- A. Content: For each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system, include source information, manufacturers' maintenance documentation, maintenance procedures, maintenance and service schedules, spare parts list and source information, maintenance service contracts, and warranty and bond information, as described below.
- B. Source Information: List each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual.
- C. Manufacturers' Maintenance Documentation: Manufacturers' maintenance documentation including the following information for each component part or piece of equipment:
  - 1. Standard printed maintenance instructions and bulletins.

2. Drawings, diagrams, and instructions required for maintenance, including disassembly and component removal, replacement, and assembly.
  3. Identification and nomenclature of parts and components.
  4. List of items recommended to be stocked as spare parts.
- D. Maintenance Procedures: Include the following information and items that detail essential maintenance procedures:
1. Test and inspection instructions.
  2. Troubleshooting guide.
  3. Precautions against improper maintenance.
  4. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
  5. Aligning, adjusting, and checking instructions.
  6. Demonstration and training videotape, if available.
- E. Maintenance and Service Schedules: Include service and lubrication requirements, list of required lubricants for equipment, and separate schedules for preventive and routine maintenance and service with standard time allotment.
1. Scheduled Maintenance and Service: Tabulate actions for daily, weekly, monthly, quarterly, semiannual, and annual frequencies.
  2. Maintenance and Service Record: Include manufacturers' forms for recording maintenance.
- F. Spare Parts List and Source Information: Include lists of replacement and repair parts, with parts identified and cross-referenced to manufacturers' maintenance documentation and local sources of maintenance materials and related services.
- G. Maintenance Service Contracts: Include copies of maintenance agreements with name and telephone number of service agent.
- H. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.
1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 MANUAL PREPARATION

- A. Operation and Maintenance Documentation Directory: Prepare a separate manual that provides an organized reference to emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- B. Emergency Manual: Assemble a complete set of emergency information indicating procedures for use by emergency personnel and by Owner's operating personnel for types of emergencies indicated.
- C. Product Maintenance Manual: Assemble a complete set of maintenance data indicating care and maintenance of each product, material, and finish incorporated into the Work.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Manuals: Assemble a complete set of operation and maintenance data indicating operation and maintenance of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.



1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to assemble and prepare information for each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
  2. Prepare a separate manual for each system and subsystem, in the form of an instructional manual for use by Owner's operating personnel.
- E. Manufacturers' Data: Where manuals contain manufacturers' standard printed data, include only sheets pertinent to product or component installed. Mark each sheet to identify each product or component incorporated into the Work. If data include more than one item in a tabular format, identify each item using appropriate references from the Contract Documents. Identify data applicable to the Work and delete references to information not applicable.
1. Prepare supplementary text if manufacturers' standard printed data are not available and where the information is necessary for proper operation and maintenance of equipment or systems.
- F. Drawings: Prepare drawings supplementing manufacturers' printed data to illustrate the relationship of component parts of equipment and systems and to illustrate control sequence and flow diagrams. Coordinate these drawings with information contained in Record Drawings to ensure correct illustration of completed installation.
1. Do not use original Project Record Documents as part of operation and maintenance manuals.
  2. Comply with requirements of newly prepared Record Drawings in Division 01 Section "Project Record Documents."
- G. Comply with Division 01 Section "Closeout Procedures" for schedule for submitting operation and maintenance documentation.

END OF SECTION 01 78 23



## SECTION 01 78 39 - PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for project record documents, including the following:
  - 1. Record Drawings.
  - 2. Record Specifications.
  - 3. Record Product Data.
  - 4. Miscellaneous record submittals.

## 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Record Drawings: Comply with the following:
  - 1. Number of Copies: Submit copies of record Drawings as follows:
    - a. Initial Submittal:
      - 1) Submit PDF electronic files of scanned record prints and one of file prints.
      - 2) Architect will indicate whether general scope of changes, additional information recorded, and quality of drafting are acceptable.
    - b. Final Submittal:
      - 1) Submit PDF electronic files of scanned record prints and three set(s) of prints.
      - 2) Print each drawing, whether or not changes and additional information were recorded.
    - c. Final Submittal:
      - 1) Submit record digital data files and three set(s) of record digital data file plots.
- B. Record Specifications: Submit annotated PDF electronic files of Project's Specifications, including addenda and contract modifications.
- C. Record Product Data: Submit annotated PDF electronic files and directories of each submittal.
  - 1. Where record Product Data are required as part of operation and maintenance manuals, submit duplicate marked-up Product Data as a component of manual.

- D. Miscellaneous Record Submittals: See other Specification Sections for miscellaneous record-keeping requirements and submittals in connection with various construction activities. Submit annotated PDF electronic files and directories of each submittal.
- E. Reports: Submit written report weekly indicating items incorporated into project record documents concurrent with progress of the Work, including revisions, concealed conditions, field changes, product selections, and other notations incorporated.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 RECORD DRAWINGS

- A. Record Prints: Maintain one set of marked-up paper copies of the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings, incorporating new and revised drawings as modifications are issued.
  - 1. Preparation: Mark record prints to show the actual installation where installation varies from that shown originally. Require individual or entity who obtained record data, whether individual or entity is Installer, subcontractor, or similar entity, to provide information for preparation of corresponding marked-up record prints.
    - a. Give particular attention to information on concealed elements that would be difficult to identify or measure and record later.
    - b. Accurately record information in an acceptable drawing technique.
    - c. Record data as soon as possible after obtaining it.
    - d. Record and check the markup before enclosing concealed installations.
    - e. Cross-reference record prints to corresponding archive photographic documentation.
  - 2. Content: Types of items requiring marking include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Dimensional changes to Drawings.
    - b. Revisions to details shown on Drawings.
    - c. Depths of foundations below first floor.
    - d. Locations and depths of underground utilities.
    - e. Revisions to routing of piping and conduits.
    - f. Revisions to electrical circuitry.
    - g. Actual equipment locations.
    - h. Duct size and routing.
    - i. Locations of concealed internal utilities.
    - j. Changes made by Change Order or Construction Change Directive.
    - k. Changes made following Architect's written orders.
    - l. Details not on the original Contract Drawings.
    - m. Field records for variable and concealed conditions.
    - n. Record information on the Work that is shown only schematically.
  - 3. Mark the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings completely and accurately. Use personnel proficient at recording graphic information in production of marked-up record prints.
  - 4. Mark record sets with erasable, red-colored pencil. Use other colors to distinguish between changes for different categories of the Work at same location.
  - 5. Mark important additional information that was either shown schematically or omitted from original Drawings.

6. Note Construction Change Directive numbers, alternate numbers, Change Order numbers, and similar identification, where applicable.
- B. Record Digital Data Files: Immediately before inspection for Certificate of Substantial Completion, review marked-up record prints with Architect. When authorized, prepare a full set of corrected digital data files of the Contract Drawings, as follows:
1. Format: Same digital data software program, version, and operating system as the original Contract Drawings.
  2. Format: Annotated PDF electronic file with comment function enabled.
  3. Incorporate changes and additional information previously marked on record prints. Delete, redraw, and add details and notations where applicable.
  4. Refer instances of uncertainty to Architect for resolution.
- C. Newly Prepared Record Drawings: Prepare new Drawings instead of preparing record Drawings where Architect determines that neither the original Contract Drawings nor Shop Drawings are suitable to show actual installation.
1. New Drawings may be required when a Change Order is issued as a result of accepting an alternate, substitution, or other modification.
  2. Consult Architect for proper scale and scope of detailing and notations required to record the actual physical installation and its relation to other construction. Integrate newly prepared record Drawings into record Drawing sets; comply with procedures for formatting, organizing, copying, binding, and submitting.
- D. Format: Identify and date each record Drawing; include the designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWING" in a prominent location.
1. Record Prints: Organize record prints and newly prepared record Drawings into manageable sets. Bind each set with durable paper cover sheets. Include identification on cover sheets.
  2. Format: Annotated PDF electronic file.
  3. Record Digital Data Files: Organize digital data information into separate electronic files that correspond to each sheet of the Contract Drawings. Name each file with the sheet identification. Include identification in each digital data file.
  4. Identification: As follows:
    - a. Project name.
    - b. Date.
    - c. Designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWINGS."
    - d. Name of Architect.
    - e. Name of Contractor.

## 2.2 RECORD SPECIFICATIONS

- A. Preparation: Mark Specifications to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies from that indicated in Specifications, addenda, and contract modifications.
1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
  2. Mark copy with the proprietary name and model number of products, materials, and equipment furnished, including substitutions and product options selected.
  3. Record the name of manufacturer, supplier, Installer, and other information necessary to provide a record of selections made.

4. For each principal product, indicate whether record Product Data has been submitted in operation and maintenance manuals instead of submitted as record Product Data.
5. Note related Change Orders, record Product Data, and record Drawings where applicable.

B. Format: Submit record Specifications as annotated PDF electronic file.

### 2.3 RECORD PRODUCT DATA

A. Preparation: Mark Product Data to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies substantially from that indicated in Product Data submittal.

1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
2. Include significant changes in the product delivered to Project site and changes in manufacturer's written instructions for installation.
3. Note related Change Orders, record Specifications, and record Drawings where applicable.

B. Format: Submit record Product Data as annotated PDF electronic file.

1. Include record Product Data directory organized by Specification Section number and title, electronically linked to each item of record Product Data.

### 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS RECORD SUBMITTALS

A. Assemble miscellaneous records required by other Specification Sections for miscellaneous record keeping and submittal in connection with actual performance of the Work. Bind or file miscellaneous records and identify each, ready for continued use and reference.

B. Format: Submit miscellaneous record submittals as PDF electronic file.

1. Include miscellaneous record submittals directory organized by Specification Section number and title, electronically linked to each item of miscellaneous record submittals.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 RECORDING AND MAINTENANCE

A. Recording: Maintain one copy of each submittal during the construction period for project record document purposes. Post changes and revisions to project record documents as they occur; do not wait until end of Project.

B. Maintenance of Record Documents and Samples: Store record documents and Samples in the field office apart from the Contract Documents used for construction. Do not use project record documents for construction purposes? Maintain record documents in good order and in a clean, dry, legible condition, protected from deterioration and loss. Provide access to project record documents for Architect's reference during normal working hours.

END OF SECTION 01 78 39

## SECTION 01 79 00 - DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for instructing Owner's personnel, including the following:
  - 1. Demonstration of operation of systems, subsystems, and equipment.
  - 2. Training in operation and maintenance of systems, subsystems, and equipment.
  - 3. Demonstration and training videotapes.

## 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Instruction Program: Submit two copies of outline of instructional program for demonstration and training, including a schedule of proposed dates, times, length of instruction time, and instructors' names for each training module. Include learning objective and outline for each training module.
  - 1. At completion of training, submit one complete training manual(s) for Owner's use.
- B. Qualification Data: For instructor.
- C. Attendance Record: For each training module, submit list of participants and length of instruction time.
- D. Evaluations: For each participant and for each training module, submit results and documentation of performance-based test.
- E. Demonstration and Training Videotapes: Submit two copies within seven days of end of each training module.
  - 1. Identification: On each copy, provide an applied label with the following information:
    - a. Name of Project.
    - b. Name and address of photographer.
    - c. Name of Architect.
    - d. Name of Contractor.
    - e. Date videotape was recorded.
    - f. Description of vantage point, indicating location, direction (by compass point), and elevation or story of construction.
  - 2. Transcript: Prepared on 8-1/2-by-11-inch paper, punched and bound in heavy-duty, 3-ring, vinyl-covered binders. Mark appropriate identification on front and spine of each binder. Include a cover sheet with same label information as the corresponding videotape. Include name of Project and date of videotape on each page.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Facilitator Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in training or educating maintenance personnel in a training program similar in content and extent to that indicated for this Project, and whose work has resulted in training or education with a record of successful learning performance.
- B. Instructor Qualifications: A factory-authorized service representative, complying with requirements in Division 01 Section "Quality Requirements," experienced in operation and maintenance procedures and training.
- C. Photographer Qualifications: A professional photographer who is experienced photographing construction projects.
- D. Preinstruction Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination." Review methods and procedures related to demonstration and training including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Inspect and discuss locations and other facilities required for instruction.
  - 2. Review and finalize instruction schedule and verify availability of educational materials, instructors' personnel, audiovisual equipment, and facilities needed to avoid delays.
  - 3. Review required content of instruction.
  - 4. For instruction that must occur outside, review weather and forecasted weather conditions and procedures to follow if conditions are unfavorable.

#### 1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate instruction schedule with Owner's operations. Adjust schedule as required to minimize disrupting Owner's operations.
- B. Coordinate instructors, including providing notification of dates, times, length of instruction time, and course content.
- C. Coordinate content of training modules with content of approved emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. Do not submit instruction program until operation and maintenance data has been reviewed and approved by Architect.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 INSTRUCTION PROGRAM

- A. Program Structure: Develop an instruction program that includes individual training modules for each system and equipment not part of a system, as required by individual Specification Sections, and as follows:
  - 1. Motorized doors, including automatic entrance doors.
  - 2. Equipment, including loading dock equipment.
  - 3. Fire-protection systems, including fire alarm, fire pumps, and fire-extinguishing systems.
  - 4. Intrusion detection systems.
  - 5. Conveying systems, including elevators.
  - 6. Heat generation, including pumps and water distribution piping.



7. Refrigeration systems, including cooling towers, condensers, pumps, and distribution piping.
  8. HVAC systems, including air-handling equipment, air distribution systems, and terminal equipment and devices.
  9. HVAC instrumentation and controls.
  10. Electrical service and distribution, including transformers, switchboards, panelboards, uninterruptible power supplies, and motor controls.
  11. Packaged engine generators, including transfer switches.
  12. Lighting equipment and controls.
  13. Communication systems, including intercommunication equipment.
- B. Training Modules: Develop a learning objective and teaching outline for each module. Include a description of specific skills and knowledge that participant is expected to master. For each module, include instruction for the following:
1. Basis of System Design, Operational Requirements, and Criteria: Include the following:
    - a. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions.
    - b. Performance and design criteria if Contractor is delegated design responsibility.
    - c. Operating standards.
    - d. Regulatory requirements.
    - e. Equipment function.
    - f. Operating characteristics.
    - g. Limiting conditions.
    - h. Performance curves.
  2. Documentation: Review the following items in detail:
    - a. Emergency manuals.
    - b. Operations manuals.
    - c. Maintenance manuals.
    - d. Project Record Documents.
    - e. Identification systems.
    - f. Warranties and bonds.
    - g. Maintenance service agreements and similar continuing commitments.
  3. Emergencies: Include the following, as applicable:
    - a. Instructions on meaning of warnings, trouble indications, and error messages.
    - b. Instructions on stopping.
    - c. Shutdown instructions for each type of emergency.
    - d. Operating instructions for conditions outside of normal operating limits.
    - e. Sequences for electric or electronic systems.
    - f. Special operating instructions and procedures.
  4. Operations: Include the following, as applicable:
    - a. Startup procedures.
    - b. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
    - c. Routine and normal operating instructions.
    - d. Regulation and control procedures.
    - e. Control sequences.
    - f. Safety procedures.
    - g. Instructions on stopping.
    - h. Normal shutdown instructions.

- i. Operating procedures for emergencies.
  - j. Operating procedures for system, subsystem, or equipment failure.
  - k. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
  - l. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
  - m. Special operating instructions and procedures.
5. Adjustments: Include the following:
- a. Alignments.
  - b. Checking adjustments.
  - c. Noise and vibration adjustments.
  - d. Economy and efficiency adjustments.
6. Troubleshooting: Include the following:
- a. Diagnostic instructions.
  - b. Test and inspection procedures.
7. Maintenance: Include the following:
- a. Inspection procedures.
  - b. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
  - c. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
  - d. Procedures for routine cleaning
  - e. Procedures for preventive maintenance.
  - f. Procedures for routine maintenance.
  - g. Instruction on use of special tools.
8. Repairs: Include the following:
- a. Diagnosis instructions.
  - b. Repair instructions.
  - c. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
  - d. Instructions for identifying parts and components.
  - e. Review of spare parts needed for operation and maintenance.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Assemble educational materials necessary for instruction, including documentation and training module. Assemble training modules into a combined training manual.
- B. Set up instructional equipment at instruction location.

### 3.2 INSTRUCTION

- A. Facilitator: Engage a qualified facilitator to prepare instruction program and training modules, to coordinate instructors, and to coordinate between Contractor and Owner for number of participants, instruction times, and location.

- B. Engage qualified instructors to instruct Owner's personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain systems, subsystems, and equipment not part of a system.
  - 1. Architect will furnish an instructor to describe basis of system design, operational requirements, criteria, and regulatory requirements.
  - 2. Owner will furnish an instructor to describe Owner's operational philosophy.
  - 3. Owner will furnish Contractor with names and positions of participants.
- C. Scheduling: Provide instruction at mutually agreed on times. For equipment that requires seasonal operation, provide similar instruction at start of each season.
  - 1. Schedule training with Owner with at least seven days' advance notice.
- D. Evaluation: At conclusion of each training module, assess and document each participant's mastery of module by use of a demonstration performance-based test.
- E. Cleanup: Collect used and leftover educational materials and give to Owner. Remove instructional equipment. Restore systems and equipment to condition existing before initial training use.

### 3.3 DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING VIDEOTAPES

- A. General: Engage a qualified commercial photographer to record demonstration and training videotapes. Record each training module separately. Include classroom instructions and demonstrations, board diagrams, and other visual aids, but not student practice.
  - 1. At beginning of each training module, record each chart containing learning objective and lesson outline.
- B. Videotape Format: Provide on flash disk.
- C. Recording: Mount camera on tripod before starting recording, unless otherwise necessary to show area of demonstration and training. Display continuous running time.
- D. Narration: Describe scenes on videotape by audio narration by microphone while videotape is recorded. Include description of items being viewed. Describe vantage point, indicating location, direction (by compass point), and elevation or story of construction.
- E. Transcript: Provide a typewritten transcript of the narration. Display images and running time captured from videotape opposite the corresponding narration segment.

END OF SECTION 01 79 00

September 15, 2023

Novant ASC Leland  
Construction Documents

1721843900



## SECTION 04 43 13.16 - ADHERED STONE MASONRY VENEER

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Stone masonry adhered to cold-formed metal framing and sheathing.

## 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

## 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each variety of stone, stone accessory, and manufactured product.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For colored mortar and other items involving color selection.
- C. Samples for Verification:
  - 1. For each stone type indicated. Include at least three Samples in each set and show the full range of color and other visual characteristics in completed Work.
  - 2. For each color of mortar required.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. List of Materials Used in Constructing Mockups: List generic product names together with manufacturers, manufacturers' product names, supply sources, and other information as required to identify materials used. Include mix proportions for mortar and source of aggregates.
  - 1. Neither receipt of list nor approval of mockups constitutes approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect approves such deviations in writing.
- C. Material Test Reports:
  - 1. Stone Test Reports: For each stone variety proposed for use on Project, by a qualified testing agency, indicating compliance with required physical properties, other than

abrasion resistance, according to referenced ASTM standards. Base reports on testing done within previous three years.

2. Sealant Compatibility and Adhesion Test Report: From sealant manufacturer indicating that sealants will not stain or damage stone. Include interpretation of test results and recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs experienced stonemasons and stone fitters.
- B. Mockups: Build mockups to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for materials and execution.
  1. Build mockup of typical wall area as shown on Drawings.
  2. Build mockups for typical exterior wall in sizes approximately 48 inches long by 48 inches high by full thickness, including face and backup wythes and accessories.
    - a. Include a sealant-filled joint at least 16 inches long in mockup.
    - b. Include through-wall flashing installed for a 24-inch length in corner of mockup approximately 16 inches down from top of mockup, with a 12-inch length of flashing left exposed to view (omit stone masonry above half of flashing).
    - c. Include flashing, and weep holes in exterior masonry-veneer wall mockup.
  3. Protect accepted mockups from the elements with weather-resistant membrane.
  4. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
  5. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Final Acceptance.

## 1.7 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Sealant Compatibility and Adhesion Testing: Submit to joint-sealant manufacturers, for compatibility and adhesion testing according to sealant manufacturer's standard testing methods and Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants," Samples of materials that will contact or affect joint sealants.

## 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.
- B. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.
- C. Deliver preblended, dry mortar mix in moisture-resistant containers designed for use with dispensing silos. Store preblended, dry mortar mix in delivery containers on elevated platforms, under cover, in a dry location, or in covered weatherproof dispensing silos.

## 1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Protection of Stone Masonry: During construction, cover tops of walls, projections, and sills with waterproof sheeting at end of each day's work. Cover partially completed stone masonry when construction is not in progress.
  - 1. Extend cover a minimum of 24 inches down both sides and hold cover securely in place.
- B. Stain Prevention: Immediately remove mortar and soil to prevent them from staining stone masonry face.
  - 1. Protect base of walls from rain-splashed mud and mortar splatter using coverings spread on the ground and over the wall surface.
  - 2. Protect sills, ledges, and projections from mortar droppings.
  - 3. Protect surfaces of window and door frames, as well as similar products with painted and integral finishes, from mortar droppings.
  - 4. Turn scaffold boards near the wall on edge at end of each day to prevent rain from splashing mortar and dirt on completed stone masonry.
- C. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.

## 1.10 COORDINATION

- A. Advise installers of other work about specific requirements for placement of flashing and similar items to be built into stone masonry.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations for Stone: Obtain stone from single quarry with resources to provide materials of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.
- B. Source Limitations for Mortar Materials: Obtain mortar ingredients of uniform quality for each cementitious component from single manufacturer and each aggregate from single source or producer.

### 2.2 LIMESTONE

- A. Basis of Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products as manufactured by Coronado Stone Products or comparable by one of the following:
  - 1. Arriscraft International.
  - 2. Eldorado Stone.
- B. Material Standard: Comply with ASTM C 568/C 568M.
- C. Match Architect's samples for stone type, size, pattern, color, finish, and other stone characteristics relating to aesthetic effects.

1. Basis of Design Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## 2.3 MORTAR MATERIALS

- A. Mortar Cement: ASTM C 1329.
- B. Colored Portland Cement-Lime Mix: Packaged blend of portland cement, hydrated lime, and mortar pigments. Mix shall produce color indicated or, if not indicated, as selected from manufacturer's standard colors. Pigments shall not exceed 10 percent of portland cement by weight.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. Laticrete; Permacolor.
    - b. Lehigh Cement Company; Lehigh Custom Color Portland/Lime Cement.
    - c. Mutual Materials Co.; DesignMix Colored Mortar Mix.
- C. Aggregate: ASTM C 144 and as follows:
  1. For pointing mortar, use aggregate graded with 100 percent passing No. 16 sieve.
  2. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- D. Latex Additive: Manufacturer's standard water emulsion, serving as replacement for part or all of gaging water, of type specifically recommended by latex-additive manufacturer for use with field-mixed portland cement mortar bed, and not containing a retarder.
- E. Cold-Weather Admixture: Nonchloride, noncorrosive, accelerating admixture complying with ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type C, and recommended by manufacturer for use in masonry mortar of composition indicated.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Euclid Chemical Company (The), RPM International Inc.; Accelguard 80.
    - b. Grace Construction Products, a unit of W. R. Grace & Co. - Conn.; Morset.
    - c. Sonneborn Products, BASF Aktiengesellschaft; Trimix-NCA.
- F. Water: Potable.

## 2.4 EMBEDDED FLASHING MATERIALS

- A. Metal Flashing: Fabricate from the following metal complying with requirements specified in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" and below:
  1. Stainless Steel: 0.0156 inch thick.
  2. Fabricate through-wall metal flashing embedded in masonry from sheet metal indicated above and with ribs at 3-inch intervals along length of flashing to provide an integral mortar bond.
  3. Fabricate metal expansion-joint strips from sheet metal indicated above, formed to shape indicated.
  4. Fabricate metal drip edges from sheet metal indicated above. Extend at least 3 inches into wall and 1/2 inch out from wall, with a hemmed outer edge bent down 30 degrees.
  5. Fabricate metal flashing terminations from sheet metal indicated above. Extend at least 3 inches into wall and out to exterior face of wall. At exterior face of wall, bend metal



back on itself for 3/4 inch and then down into joint 3/8 inch to form a stop for retaining sealant backer rod.

- B. Application: Unless otherwise indicated, use the following:
1. Where flashing is indicated to receive counterflashing, use metal flashing.
  2. Where flashing is indicated to be turned down at or beyond wall face, use metal flashing.
  3. Where flashing is partly exposed and is indicated to terminate at wall face, use metal flashing or flexible flashing with a metal drip edge.
  4. Where flashing is fully concealed, use flexible flashing.
- C. Adhesives, Primers, and Seam Tapes for Flexible Flashings: Flashing manufacturer's standard products or products recommended by flashing manufacturer for bonding flashing sheets to each other and to substrates.

## 2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MASONRY ACCESSORIES

- A. Compressible Filler: Premolded filler strips complying with ASTM D 1056, Grade 2A1; compressible up to 35 percent; of width and thickness indicated; formulated from neoprene.
- B. Cementitious Dampproofing for Limestone: Cementitious formulation recommended by ILI and nonstaining to stone, compatible with joint sealants, and noncorrosive to veneer anchors and attachments.
- C. Weep Products: Use the following unless otherwise indicated:
1. Wicking Material: Absorbent rope, made from UV-resistant synthetic fiber, 1/4 to 3/8 inch in diameter.
  2. Mesh Weep Holes: Free-draining mesh; made from polyethylene strands, full width of head joint and 2 inches high by thickness of stone masonry; in color selected from manufacturer's standard.
- D. Expanded Metal Lath: 3.4 lb/sq. yd., self-furring, diamond-mesh lath complying with ASTM C 847. Fabricate from structural-quality, zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, G60.
- E. Lath Attachment Devices: Material and type required by ASTM C 1063 for installations indicated.

## 2.6 MASONRY CLEANERS

- A. Proprietary Acidic Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard-strength cleaner designed for removing mortar and grout stains, efflorescence, and other new construction stains from stone masonry surfaces without discoloring or damaging masonry surfaces; expressly approved for intended use by cleaner manufacturer and stone producer.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Diedrich Technologies, Inc.
    - b. Dominion Restoration Products.
    - c. Hydrochemical Techniques, Inc.
    - d. Prosoco, Inc.

## 2.7 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate stone units in sizes and shapes required to comply with requirements indicated.
  - 1. For limestone, comply with recommendations in ILI's "Indiana Limestone Handbook."
- B. Select stone to produce pieces of thickness, size, and shape indicated, including details on Drawings and pattern specified in "Setting Stone Masonry" Article.
  - 1. Shape stone specified to be laid in dry-stack, random pattern with beds as indicated, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
- C. Dress joints (bed and vertical) straight and at right angle to face unless otherwise indicated. Shape beds to fit supports.
- D. Carefully inspect stone at quarry or fabrication plant for compliance with requirements for appearance, material, and fabrication. Replace defective units before shipment.
  - 1. Clean sawed backs of stone to remove rust stains and iron particles.
- E. Gage backs of stones for adhered veneer if more than 81 sq. in. in area.
- F. Thickness of Stone: Provide thickness indicated, but not less than the following:
  - 1. Thickness: 1 inch plus or minus 1/8 inch.
- G. Finish exposed stone faces and edges to comply with requirements indicated for finish and to match approved samples and mockups.
  - 1. Finish: As indicated.

## 2.8 MORTAR MIXES

- A. General: Do not use admixtures, including pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, water-repellent agents, antifreeze compounds, or other admixtures, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Do not use calcium chloride.
  - 2. Use portland cement-lime mortar unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Add cold-weather admixture (if used) at same rate for all mortar that will be exposed to view, regardless of weather conditions, to ensure that mortar color is consistent.
  - 4. Mixing Pointing Mortar: Thoroughly mix cementitious and aggregate materials together before adding water. Then mix again, adding only enough water to produce a damp, unworkable mix that will retain its form when pressed into a ball. Maintain mortar in this dampened condition for one to two hours. Add remaining water in small portions until mortar reaches required consistency. Use mortar within 30 minutes of final mixing; do not retemper or use partially hardened material.
- B. Mortar for Stone Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 270, Property Specification.
  - 1. Mortar for Setting Stone: Type S.
  - 2. Mortar for Pointing Stone: Type N.

- C. Latex-Modified Portland Cement Setting Mortar: Proportion and mix portland cement, aggregate, and latex additive to comply with latex-additive manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Mortar for Scratch Coat over Metal Lath: 1 part portland cement, 1/2 part lime, 5 parts loose damp sand, and enough water to produce a workable consistency.
- E. Pigmented Mortar: Use colored cement product or select and proportion pigments with other ingredients to produce color required. Do not add pigments to colored cement products.
  - 1. Pigments shall not exceed 10 percent of portland cement by weight.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine surfaces indicated to receive stone masonry, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of stone masonry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean dirty or stained stone surfaces by removing soil, stains, and foreign materials before setting. Clean stone by thoroughly scrubbing with fiber brushes and then drenching with clear water. Use only mild cleaning compounds that contain no caustic or harsh materials or abrasives.

#### 3.3 SETTING STONE MASONRY

- A. Perform necessary field cutting and trimming as stone is set.
  - 1. Use power saws to cut stone that is fabricated with saw-cut surfaces. Cut lines straight and true, with edges eased slightly to prevent snipping.
  - 2. Use hammer and chisel to split stone that is fabricated with split surfaces. Make edges straight and true, matching similar surfaces that were shop or quarry fabricated.
  - 3. Pitch face at field-split edges as needed to match stones that are not field split.
- B. Sort stone before it is placed in wall to remove stone that does not comply with requirements relating to aesthetic effects, physical properties, or fabrication, or that is otherwise unsuitable for intended use.
- C. Arrange stones in dry-stack, random pattern with random course heights, random lengths (interrupted coursed), and uniform joint widths.
- D. Set stone to comply with requirements indicated on Drawings. Install supports, fasteners, and other attachments indicated or necessary to secure stone masonry in place. Set stone accurately in locations indicated with edges and faces aligned according to established relationships and indicated tolerances.

- E. Maintain uniform joint widths except for variations due to different stone sizes and where minor variations are required to maintain bond alignment if any. Lay walls with joints not less than 1/4 inch at narrowest points or more than 3/8 inch at widest points.
- F. Provide sealant joints of widths and at locations indicated.
  - 1. Keep sealant joints free of mortar and other rigid materials.
  - 2. Sealing joints is specified in Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants."
- G. Install metal expansion strips in sealant joints at locations indicated. Build flanges of expansion strips into masonry by embedding in mortar between stone masonry and backup wythe. Lap each joint 4 inches in direction of water flow. Seal joints below grade and at junctures with horizontal expansion joints if any.
- H. Install embedded flashing and weep holes at shelf angles, lintels, ledges, other obstructions to downward flow of water in wall, and where indicated.
  - 1. At concrete backing, extend flashing through stone masonry, turned up a minimum of 4 inches, and insert in reglet.
  - 2. At lintels and shelf angles, extend flashing full length of angles but not less than 6 inches into masonry at each end.
  - 3. At sills, extend flashing not less than 4 inches at ends.
  - 4. At ends of head and sill flashing, turn up not less than 2 inches to form end dams.
  - 5. Interlock end joints of ribbed sheet metal flashing by overlapping ribs not less than 1-1/2 inches or as recommended by flashing manufacturer, and seal lap with elastomeric sealant complying with requirements in Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants" for application indicated.
  - 6. Install metal drip edges and sealant stops with ribbed sheet metal flashing by interlocking hemmed edges to form hooked seam. Seal seam with elastomeric sealant complying with requirements in Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants" for application indicated.
  - 7. Extend sheet metal flashing 1/2 inch beyond masonry face at exterior, and turn flashing down to form a drip.
  - 8. Install metal drip edges beneath flexible flashing at exterior wall face. Stop flexible flashing 1/2 inch back from exterior wall face and adhere flexible flashing to top of metal drip edge.
  - 9. Install metal flashing termination beneath flexible flashing at exterior wall face. Stop flexible flashing 1/2 inch back from exterior wall face and adhere flexible flashing to top of metal flashing termination.
  - 10. Cut flexible flashing flush with wall face after completing masonry wall construction.
- I. Coat limestone with cementitious dampproofing as follows:
  - 1. Stone at Grade: Beds, joints, and back surfaces to at least 12 inches above finish-grade elevations.
  - 2. Stone Extending below Grade: Beds, joints, back surfaces, and face surfaces below grade.
  - 3. Allow cementitious dampproofing formulations to cure before setting dampproofed stone. Do not damage or remove dampproofing in the course of handling and setting stone.
- J. Place weep holes in joints where moisture may accumulate, including above shelf angles and at flashing.

### 3.4 CONSTRUCTION TOLERANCES

- A. Variation from Plumb: For vertical lines and surfaces, do not exceed 1/4 inch in 10 feet, 3/8 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2 inch in 40 feet or more. For external corners, expansion joints, control joints, and other conspicuous lines, do not exceed 1/4 inch in 20 feet or 1/2 inch in 40 feet or more.
- B. Variation from Level: For bed joints and lines of exposed lintels, sills, parapets, horizontal grooves, and other conspicuous lines, do not exceed 1/4 inch in 20 feet or 1/2 inch in 40 feet or more.
- C. Variation of Linear Building Line: For position shown in plan, do not exceed 1/2 inch in 20 feet or 3/4 inch in 40 feet or more.
- D. Measure variation from level, plumb, and position shown in plan as a variation of the average plane of each stone face from level, plumb, or dimensioned plane.
- E. Variation in Mortar-Joint Thickness: Do not vary from joint size range indicated.
- F. Variation in Plane between Adjacent Stones: Do not exceed one-half of tolerance specified for thickness of stone.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF ADHERED STONE MASONRY VENEER

- A. Install flashing over sheathing and behind weather-resistant sheathing paper by fastening through sheathing into framing.
- B. Install lath over unit masonry and concrete to comply with ASTM C 1063.
- C. Install scratch coat over metal lath 3/8 inch thick to comply with ASTM C 926.
- D. Rake out joints for pointing with mortar to depth of not less than 1/2 inch before setting mortar has hardened. Rake joints to uniform depths with square bottoms and clean sides.

### 3.6 POINTING

- A. Prepare stone-joint surfaces for pointing with mortar by removing dust and mortar particles. Where setting mortar was removed to depths greater than surrounding areas, apply pointing mortar in layers not more than 3/8 inch deep until a uniform depth is formed.
- B. Point stone joints by placing and compacting pointing mortar in layers of not more than 3/8 inch deep. Compact each layer thoroughly and allow to it become thumbprint hard before applying next layer.
- C. Tool joints, when pointing mortar is thumbprint hard, with a smooth jointing tool to produce the following joint profile:
  - 1. Joint Profile: As indicated.

### 3.7 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace stone masonry of the following description:

1. Broken, chipped, stained, or otherwise damaged stone. Stone may be repaired if methods and results are approved by Architect.
  2. Defective joints.
  3. Stone masonry not matching approved samples and mockups.
  4. Stone masonry not complying with other requirements indicated.
- B. Replace in a manner that results in stone masonry matching approved samples and mockups, complying with other requirements, and showing no evidence of replacement.
- C. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean stone masonry as work progresses. Remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.
- D. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean stone masonry as follows:
1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape hoes or chisels.
  2. Test cleaning methods on mockup; leave one-half of panel uncleaned for comparison purposes. Obtain Architect's approval of sample cleaning before cleaning stone masonry.
  3. Protect adjacent stone and nonmasonry surfaces from contact with cleaner by covering them with liquid strippable masking agent, polyethylene film, or waterproof masking tape.
  4. Wet wall surfaces with water before applying cleaner; remove cleaner promptly by rinsing thoroughly with clear water.
  5. Clean stone masonry by bucket and brush hand-cleaning method described in BIA Technical Note No. 20, Revised II, using job-mixed detergent solution.
1. Clean stone masonry with proprietary acidic cleaner applied according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  2. Clean limestone masonry to comply with recommendations in ILI's "Indiana Limestone Handbook."

### 3.8 EXCESS MATERIALS AND WASTE

- A. Excess Stone: Stack excess stone where directed by Owner for Owner's use.
- B. Disposal as Fill Material: Dispose of clean masonry waste, including mortar and excess or soil-contaminated sand, by crushing and mixing with fill material as fill is placed.
1. Crush masonry waste to less than 4 inches in greatest dimension.
  2. Mix masonry waste with at least 2 parts of specified fill material for each part of masonry waste. Fill material is specified in Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving."
  3. Do not dispose of masonry waste as fill within 18 inches of finished grade.
- C. Excess Masonry Waste: Remove excess clean masonry waste that cannot be used as fill, as described above, and other waste, and legally dispose of off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 04 43 13.16

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Exterior non-load-bearing wall framing.

## 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include layout, spacings, sizes, thicknesses, and types of cold-formed steel framing; fabrication; and fastening and anchorage details, including mechanical fasteners.
  - 2. Indicate reinforcing channels, opening framing, supplemental framing, strapping, bracing, bridging, splices, accessories, connection details, and attachment to adjoining work.

## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.
- B. Research Reports: For non-standard cold-formed steel framing, from ICC-ES.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
  - 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
  - 2. AWS D1.3/D1.3M, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect cold-formed steel framing from corrosion, moisture staining, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. ClarkDietrich Building Systems.
  2. Marino\WARE.
  3. Nuconsteel, A Nucor Company.
  4. Southeastern Stud & Components, Inc.
  5. Steel Construction Systems.
  6. Steel Network, Inc. (The).
  7. Steeler, Inc.
  8. United Metal Products, Inc.

## 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 01 40 00 "Quality Requirements," to design cold-formed steel framing.
- B. Structural Performance: Provide cold-formed steel framing capable of withstanding design loads within limits and under conditions indicated.
1. Design Loads: As indicated.
  2. Deflection Limits: Design framing systems to withstand design loads without deflections greater than the following:
    - a. Exterior Non-Load-Bearing Framing: Horizontal deflection of 1/600 of the wall height.
  3. Design framing systems to provide for movement of framing members located outside the insulated building envelope without damage or overstressing, sheathing failure, connection failure, undue strain on fasteners and anchors, or other detrimental effects when subject to a maximum ambient temperature change of 120 deg F.
  4. Design framing system to maintain clearances at openings, to allow for construction tolerances, and to accommodate live load deflection of primary building structure as follows:
    - a. Upward and downward movement of 1 inch.
  5. Design exterior non-load-bearing wall framing to accommodate horizontal deflection without regard for contribution of sheathing materials.
- C. Cold-Formed Steel Framing Design Standards:
1. Floor and Roof Systems: AISI S210.
  2. Wall Studs: AISI S211.
  3. Headers: AISI S212.
  4. Lateral Design: AISI S213.
- D. AISI Specifications and Standards: Unless more stringent requirements are indicated, comply with AISI S100 and AISI S200.



## 2.3 COLD-FORMED STEEL FRAMING, GENERAL

- A. Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1003/A 1003M, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of grade and coating weight as follows:
1. Grade: As required by structural performance.
  2. Coating: G60, A60, AZ50, or GF30.
- B. Steel Sheet for Vertical Deflection Clips: ASTM A 653/A 653M, structural steel, zinc coated, of grade and coating as follows:
1. Grade: As required by structural performance.
  2. Coating: G60.

## 2.4 EXTERIOR NON-LOAD-BEARING WALL FRAMING

- A. Steel Studs: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened flanges, and as follows:
1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0428 inch.
  2. Flange Width: 1-5/8 inches.
- B. Steel Track: Manufacturer's standard U-shaped steel track, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with unstiffened flanges, and as follows:
1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0428 inch.
  2. Flange Width: 1-1/4 inches minimum.
- C. Vertical Deflection Clips: Manufacturer's standard bypass clips, capable of accommodating upward and downward vertical displacement of primary structure through positive mechanical attachment to stud web.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. ClarkDietrich Building Systems.
    - b. MarinoWARE.
    - c. Simpson Strong-Tie Co., Inc.
    - d. Steel Network, Inc. (The).
- D. Single Deflection Track: Manufacturer's single, deep-leg, U-shaped steel track; unpunched, with unstiffened flanges, of web depth to contain studs while allowing free vertical movement, with flanges designed to support horizontal loads and transfer them to the primary structure, and as follows:
1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0538 inch.
  2. Flange Width: 1 inch plus twice the design gap for other applications.
- E. Double Deflection Tracks: Manufacturer's double, deep-leg, U-shaped steel tracks, consisting of nested inner and outer tracks; unpunched, with unstiffened flanges.
1. Outer Track: Of web depth to allow free vertical movement of inner track, with flanges designed to support horizontal loads and transfer them to the primary structure, and as follows:

- a. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0428 inch.
  - b. Flange Width: 1 inch plus twice the design gap for other applications.
2. Inner Track: Of web depth indicated, and as follows:
  - a. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0538 inch.
  - b. Flange Width: 4 inch.
- F. Drift Clips: Manufacturer's standard bypass or head clips, capable of isolating wall stud from upward and downward vertical displacement and lateral drift of primary structure through positive mechanical attachment to stud web and structure.

## 2.5 FRAMING ACCESSORIES

- A. Fabricate steel-framing accessories from steel sheet, ASTM A 1003/A 1003M, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of same grade and coating weight used for framing members.
- B. Provide accessories of manufacturer's standard thickness and configuration, unless otherwise indicated, as follows:
  1. Supplementary framing.
  2. Bracing, bridging, and solid blocking.
  3. Web stiffeners.
  4. Anchor clips.
  5. End clips.
  6. Foundation clips.
  7. Gusset plates.
  8. Stud kickers and knee braces.
  9. Joist hangers and end closures.
  10. Hole reinforcing plates.
  11. Backer plates.

## 2.6 ANCHORS, CLIPS, AND FASTENERS

- A. Steel Shapes and Clips: ASTM A 36/A 36M, zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 123/A 123M.
- B. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, threaded carbon-steel hex-headed bolts and carbon-steel nuts; and flat, hardened-steel washers; zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C.
- C. Expansion Anchors: Fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with allowable load or strength design capacities calculated according to ICC-ES AC193 and ACI 318 greater than or equal to the design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified testing agency.
- D. Power-Actuated Anchors: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with allowable load capacities calculated according to ICC-ES AC70, greater than or equal to the design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E 1190 conducted by a qualified testing agency.
- E. Mechanical Fasteners: ASTM C 1513, corrosion-resistant-coated, self-drilling, self-tapping, steel drill screws.

1. Head Type: Low-profile head beneath sheathing, manufacturer's standard elsewhere.

F. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS standards.

## 2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Galvanizing Repair Paint: ASTM A 780.

B. Cement Grout: Portland cement, ASTM C 150, Type I; and clean, natural sand, ASTM C 404. Mix at ratio of 1 part cement to 2-1/2 parts sand, by volume, with minimum water required for placement and hydration.

C. Nonmetallic, Nonshrink Grout: Premixed, nonmetallic, noncorrosive, nonstaining grout containing selected silica sands, portland cement, shrinkage-compensating agents, and plasticizing and water-reducing agents, complying with ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, with fluid consistency and 30-minute working time.

D. Shims: Load bearing, high-density multimonomer plastic, and nonleaching; or of cold-formed steel of same grade and coating as framing members supported by shims.

E. Sealer Gaskets: Closed-cell neoprene foam, 1/4 inch thick, selected from manufacturer's standard widths to match width of bottom track or rim track members.

## 2.8 FABRICATION

A. Fabricate cold-formed steel framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, and with connections securely fastened, according to referenced AISI's specifications and standards, manufacturer's written instructions, and requirements in this Section.

1. Fabricate framing assemblies using jigs or templates.

2. Cut framing members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.

3. Fasten cold-formed steel framing members by welding, screw fastening, clinch fastening, pneumatic pin fastening, or riveting as standard with fabricator. Wire tying of framing members is not permitted.

a. Comply with AWS D1.3/D1.3M requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.

b. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to Shop Drawings, with screw penetrating joined members by no fewer than three exposed screw threads.

4. Fasten other materials to cold-formed steel framing by welding, bolting, pneumatic pin fastening, or screw fastening, according to Shop Drawings.

B. Reinforce, stiffen, and brace framing assemblies to withstand handling, delivery, and erection stresses. Lift fabricated assemblies to prevent damage or permanent distortion.

C. Fabrication Tolerances: Fabricate assemblies level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable tolerance variation of 1/8 inch in 10 feet and as follows:

1. Spacing: Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus 1/8 inch from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.

2. Squareness: Fabricate each cold-formed steel framing assembly to a maximum out-of-square tolerance of 1/8 inch.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine supporting substrates and abutting structural framing for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Before sprayed fire-resistive materials are applied, attach continuous angles, supplementary framing, or tracks to structural members indicated to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials.
- B. After applying sprayed fire-resistive materials, remove only as much of these materials as needed to complete installation of cold-formed framing without reducing thickness of fire-resistive materials below that are required to obtain fire-resistance rating indicated. Protect remaining fire-resistive materials from damage.
- C. Install sealer gaskets at the underside of wall bottom track or rim track and at the top of foundation wall or slab at stud or joist locations.

#### 3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Cold-formed steel framing may be shop or field fabricated for installation, or it may be field assembled.
- B. Install cold-formed steel framing according to AISI S200 and to manufacturer's written instructions unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- C. Install shop- or field-fabricated, cold-formed framing and securely anchor to supporting structure.
  1. Screw, bolt, or weld wall panels at horizontal and vertical junctures to produce flush, even, true-to-line joints with maximum variation in plane and true position between fabricated panels not exceeding 1/16 inch.
- D. Install cold-formed steel framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, and with connections securely fastened.
  1. Cut framing members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.
  2. Fasten cold-formed steel framing members by welding, screw fastening, clinch fastening, or riveting. Wire tying of framing members is not permitted.
    - a. Comply with AWS D1.3/D1.3M requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
    - b. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to Shop Drawings, and complying with requirements for spacing, edge distances, and screw penetration.

- E. Install framing members in one-piece lengths unless splice connections are indicated for track or tension members.
- F. Install temporary bracing and supports to secure framing and support loads comparable in intensity to those for which structure was designed. Maintain braces and supports in place, undisturbed, until entire integrated supporting structure has been completed and permanent connections to framing are secured.
- G. Do not bridge building expansion joints with cold-formed steel framing. Independently frame both sides of joints.
- H. Install insulation, specified in Section 07 21 00 "Thermal Insulation," in built-up exterior framing members, such as headers, sills, boxed joists, and multiple studs at openings, that are inaccessible on completion of framing work.
- I. Fasten hole reinforcing plate over web penetrations that exceed size of manufacturer's approved or standard punched openings.
- J. Erection Tolerances: Install cold-formed steel framing level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable tolerance variation of 1/8 inch in 10 feet and as follows:
  - 1. Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus 1/8 inch from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.

### 3.4 EXTERIOR NON-LOAD-BEARING WALL INSTALLATION

- A. Install continuous tracks sized to match studs. Align tracks accurately and securely anchor to supporting structure as indicated.
- B. Fasten both flanges of studs to top and bottom track unless otherwise indicated. Space studs as follows:
  - 1. Stud Spacing: 16 inches.
- C. Set studs plumb, except as needed for diagonal bracing or required for nonplumb walls or warped surfaces and similar requirements.
- D. Isolate non-load-bearing steel framing from building structure to prevent transfer of vertical loads while providing lateral support.
  - 1. Install single deep-leg deflection tracks and anchor to building structure.
  - 2. Install double deep-leg deflection tracks and anchor outer track to building structure.
  - 3. Connect vertical deflection clips to bypassing studs and anchor to building structure.
  - 4. Connect drift clips to cold-formed metal framing and anchor to building structure.
- E. Install horizontal bridging in wall studs, spaced vertically in rows indicated on Shop Drawings but not more than 48 inches apart. Fasten at each stud intersection.
  - 1. Top Bridging for Single Deflection Track: Install row of horizontal bridging within 12 inches of single deflection track. Install a combination of bridging and stud or stud-track solid blocking of width and thickness matching studs, secured to stud webs or flanges.
    - a. Install solid blocking at centers indicated on Shop Drawings.

2. Bridging: Cold-rolled steel channel, welded or mechanically fastened to webs of punched studs.
  3. Bridging: Combination of flat, taut, steel sheet straps of width and thickness indicated and stud-track solid blocking of width and thickness to match studs. Fasten flat straps to stud flanges and secure solid blocking to stud webs or flanges.
  4. Bridging: Proprietary bridging bars installed according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Install miscellaneous framing and connections, including stud kickers, web stiffeners, clip angles, continuous angles, anchors, and fasteners, to provide a complete and stable wall-framing system.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Field and shop welds will be subject to testing and inspecting.
- C. Testing agency will report test results promptly and in writing to Contractor and Architect.
- D. Remove and replace work where test results indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.
- E. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

### 3.6 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- A. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on fabricated and installed cold-formed steel framing with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer, that ensure that cold-formed steel framing is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 05 40 00

## SECTION 05 50 00 - METAL FABRICATIONS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

## A. Section Includes:

1. Miscellaneous framing and supports.
2. Shelf angles.
3. Steel framing and supports for countertops.
4. Steel framing and supports for mechanical and electrical equipment.
5. Steel framing and supports for applications where framing and supports are not specified in other Sections
6. Metal ships' ladders.
7. Loose bearing and leveling plates.

## B. Products furnished, but not installed, under this Section include the following:

1. Loose steel lintels.
2. Steel weld plates and angles for casting into concrete for applications where they are not specified in other Sections.
3. Anchor bolts, steel pipe sleeves, slotted-channel inserts, and wedge-type inserts indicated to be cast into concrete or built into unit masonry.

## 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written instructions to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
- B. Coordinate installation of metal fabrications that are anchored to or that receive other work. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

## 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

## A. Product Data:

1. Nonslip aggregates and nonslip-aggregate surface finishes.
2. Fasteners.
3. Shop primers.
4. Shrinkage-resisting grout.

5. Slotted channel framing.
  6. Metal ships' ladders.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details of metal fabrications and their connections. Show anchorage and accessory items. Provide Shop Drawings for the following:
1. Miscellaneous framing and supports for applications where framing and supports are not specified in other Sections.
  2. Shelf angles.
  3. Metal ships' ladders.
  4. Loose steel lintels.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type and finish of extruded nosing.
- D. Delegated Design Submittals: For ladders and other fabrications requiring structural compliance, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Mill Certificates: Signed by stainless steel manufacturers, certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Paint Compatibility Certificates: From manufacturers of topcoats applied over shop primers, certifying that shop primers are compatible with topcoats.
- D. Research Reports: For post-installed anchors.
- E. Delegated design engineer qualifications.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with the following welding codes:
  1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
  2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."
  3. AWS D1.6/D1.6M, "Structural Welding Code - Stainless Steel."

#### 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls, floor slabs, decks, and other construction contiguous with metal fabrications by field measurements before fabrication.



## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 01 40 00 "Quality Requirements," to design ladders.
- B. Structural Performance of Alternating Tread Devices: Alternating tread devices are to withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated:
  - 1. Uniform Load: 100 lbf/sq. ft..
  - 2. Concentrated Load: 300 lbf applied on an area of 4 sq. in..
  - 3. Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
  - 4. Alternating Tread Device Framing: Capable of withstanding stresses resulting from railing loads in addition to loads specified above.
  - 5. Comply with applicable railing loadings in Section 05 52 13 "Pipe and Tube Railings."
- C. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.
  - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

## 2.2 METALS

- A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces unless otherwise indicated. For metal fabrications exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or blemishes.
- B. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A36/A36M.
- C. Stainless Steel Sheet, Strip, and Plate: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, Type 304.
- D. Stainless Steel Bars and Shapes: ASTM A276/A276M, Type 304.
- E. Rolled-Steel Floor Plate: ASTM A786/A786M, rolled from plate complying with ASTM A36/A36M or ASTM A283/A283M, Grade C or D.
- F. Steel Tubing: ASTM A500/A500M, cold-formed steel tubing.
- G. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, Standard Weight (Schedule 40) unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. breaking strength of steel prestressing strand with which they are used.
- H. Slotted Channel Framing: Cold-formed metal box channels (struts) complying with MFMA-4.
  - 1. Size of Channels: 1-5/8 by 1-5/8 inches unless otherwise indicated or required to meet structural requirements.
  - 2. Galvanized Steel: ASTM A653/A653M, commercial steel, Type B, with G90 coating; 0.108-inch nominal thickness.
  - 3. Cold-Rolled Steel: ASTM A1008/A1008M, commercial steel, Type B; 0.0966-inch minimum thickness; hot-dip galvanized after fabrication.

- I. Cast Iron: Either gray iron, ASTM A48/A48M, or malleable iron, ASTM A47/A47M, unless otherwise indicated.
- J. Aluminum Plate and Sheet: ASTM B209, Alloy 6061-T6.
- K. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B221, Alloy 6063-T6.
- L. Aluminum-Alloy Rolled Tread Plate: ASTM B632/B632M, Alloy 6061-T6.
- M. Aluminum Castings: ASTM B26/B26M, Alloy 443.0-F.

## 2.3 FASTENERS

- A. General: Unless otherwise indicated, provide Type 304 stainless steel fasteners for exterior use and zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B633 or ASTM F1941/F1941M, Class Fe/Zn 5, at exterior walls. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.
  - 1. Provide stainless steel fasteners for fastening aluminum or stainless steel.
- B. Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A307, Grade A; with hex nuts, ASTM A563; and, where indicated, flat washers.
- C. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM F3125/F3125M, Grade A325, Type 3, heavy-hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A563, Grade DH3, heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and where indicated, flat washers.
- D. Stainless Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head annealed stainless steel bolts, ASTM F593; with hex nuts, ASTM F594; and, where indicated, flat washers; Alloy Group 1.
- E. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F1554, Grade 36, of dimensions indicated; with nuts, ASTM A563; and, where indicated, flat washers.
  - 1. Hot-dip galvanize or provide mechanically deposited, zinc coating where item being fastened is indicated to be galvanized.
- F. Anchors, General: Capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing in accordance with ASTM E488/E488M, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
- G. Cast-in-Place Anchors in Concrete: Either threaded or wedge type unless otherwise indicated; galvanized ferrous castings, either ASTM A47/A47M malleable iron or ASTM A27/A27M cast steel. Provide bolts, washers, and shims as needed, all hot-dip galvanized per ASTM F2329/F2329M.
- H. Post-Installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion anchors.
  - 1. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B633 or ASTM F1941/F1941M, Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel Is Indicated: Alloy Group 1 stainless steel bolts, ASTM F593, and nuts, ASTM F594.
- I. Slotted-Channel Inserts: Cold-formed, hot-dip galvanized-steel box channels (struts) complying with MFMA-4, 1-5/8 by 7/8 inches by length indicated with anchor straps or studs not less than

3 inches long at not more than 8 inches o.c. Provide with temporary filler and tee-head bolts, complete with washers and nuts, all zinc-plated to comply with ASTM B633, Class Fe/Zn 5, as needed for fastening to inserts.

## 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Universal Shop Primer: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.
  - 1. Use primer that contains pigments that make it easily distinguishable from zinc-rich primer.
- B. Epoxy Zinc-Rich Primer: Complying with MPI#20 and compatible with topcoat.
- C. Shop Primer for Galvanized Steel: Primer formulated for exterior use over zinc-coated metal and compatible with finish paint systems indicated.
- D. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.
- E. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D1187/D1187M.
- F. Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: Factory-packaged, nonmetallic, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C1107/C1107M. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.
- G. Concrete: Comply with requirements in Section 03 30 00 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for normal-weight, air-entrained concrete with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi.

## 2.5 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Shop Assembly: Preassemble items in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
- B. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- C. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.
- D. Form exposed work with accurate angles and surfaces and straight edges.
- E. Weld corners and seams continuously to comply with the following:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.

- F. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners or welds where possible. Where exposed fasteners are required, use Phillips flat-head (countersunk) fasteners unless otherwise indicated. Locate joints where least conspicuous.
- G. Fabricate seams and other connections that are exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
- H. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap metal fabrications as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
- I. Provide for anchorage of type indicated; coordinate with supporting structure. Space anchoring devices to secure metal fabrications rigidly in place and to support indicated loads.
- J. Where units are indicated to be cast into concrete or built into masonry, equip with integrally welded steel strap anchors, 1/8 by 1-1/2 inches, with a minimum 6-inch embedment and 2-inch hook, not less than 8 inches from ends and corners of units and 24 inches o.c., unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.6 MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

- A. General: Provide steel framing and supports not specified in other Sections as needed to complete the Work.
- B. Fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of welded construction unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate to sizes, shapes, and profiles indicated and as necessary to receive adjacent construction.
  - 1. Fabricate units from slotted channel framing where indicated.
  - 2. Furnish inserts for units installed after concrete is placed.
- C. Fabricate supports for operable partitions from continuous steel beams of sizes indicated with attached bearing plates, anchors, and braces as recommended by partition manufacturer. Drill or punch bottom flanges of beams to receive partition track hanger rods; locate holes where indicated on operable partition Shop Drawings.
- D. Galvanize miscellaneous framing and supports where indicated.
- E. Prime miscellaneous framing and supports with zinc-rich primer where indicated.

## 2.7 SHELF ANGLES

- A. Fabricate shelf angles from steel angles of sizes indicated and for attachment to concrete framing. Provide horizontally slotted holes to receive 3/4-inch bolts, spaced not more than 6 inches from ends and 24 inches o.c., unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Provide mitered and welded units at corners.
  - 2. Provide open joints in shelf angles at expansion and control joints. Make open joint approximately 2 inches larger than expansion or control joint.
- B. For cavity walls, provide vertical channel brackets to support angles from backup masonry and concrete.
- C. Galvanize and prime shelf angles located in exterior walls.

- D. Prime shelf angles located in exterior walls with zinc-rich primer.
- E. Furnish wedge-type concrete inserts, complete with fasteners, to attach shelf angles to cast-in-place concrete.

## 2.8 METAL SHIPS' LADDERS

- A. Provide metal ships' ladders where indicated. Fabricate of open-type construction with channel or plate stringers and pipe and tube railings unless otherwise indicated. Provide brackets and fittings for installation.
  - 1. Treads are not to be less than 5 inches exclusive of nosing or less than 8-1/2 inches including the nosing, and riser height is not to be more than 9-1/2 inches.
  - 2. Fabricate ships' ladders, including railings from aluminum.
  - 3. Fabricate treads and platforms from pressure-locked aluminum bar grating. Limit openings in gratings to no more than 1/2 inch in least dimension.

## 2.9 LOOSE BEARING AND LEVELING PLATES

- A. Provide loose bearing and leveling plates for steel items bearing on masonry or concrete construction. Drill plates to receive anchor bolts and for grouting.
- B. Galvanize bearing and leveling plates.
- C. Prime plates with zinc-rich primer.

## 2.10 LOOSE STEEL LINTELS

- A. Fabricate loose steel lintels from steel angles and shapes of size indicated for openings and recesses in masonry walls and partitions at locations indicated. Fabricate in single lengths for each opening unless otherwise indicated. Weld adjoining members together to form a single unit where indicated.
- B. Size loose lintels to provide bearing length at each side of openings equal to one-twelfth of clear span, but not less than 8 inches unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Galvanize and prime loose steel lintels located in exterior walls.

## 2.11 STEEL WELD PLATES AND ANGLES

- A. Provide steel weld plates and angles not specified in other Sections, for items supported from concrete construction as needed to complete the Work. Provide each unit with no fewer than two integrally welded steel strap anchors for embedding in concrete.

## 2.12 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Finish metal fabrications after assembly.
- B. Finish exposed surfaces to remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, and to blend into surrounding surface.

## 2.13 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES

- A. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize items as indicated to comply with ASTM A153/A153M for steel and iron hardware and with ASTM A123/A123M for other steel and iron products.
  - 1. Do not quench or apply post galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesion.
- B. Preparation for Shop Priming Galvanized Items: After galvanizing, thoroughly clean galvanized surfaces of grease, dirt, oil, flux, and other foreign matter, and treat with metallic phosphate process.
- C. Shop prime iron and steel items not indicated to be galvanized unless they are to be embedded in concrete, sprayed-on fireproofing, or masonry, or unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Shop prime with universal shop primer unless zinc-rich primer is indicated.
- D. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare surfaces to comply with requirements indicated below:
  - 1. Exterior Items: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
  - 2. Items Indicated to Receive Zinc-Rich Primer: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
  - 3. Other Steel Items: SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
  - 4. Galvanized-Steel Items: SSPC-SP 16, "Brush-off Blast Cleaning of Coated and Uncoated Galvanized Steel, Stainless Steels, and Non-Ferrous Metals."
- E. Shop Priming: Apply shop primer to comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.
  - 1. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.

## 2.14 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. As-Fabricated Finish: AA-M12.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal fabrications. Set metal fabrications accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; with edges and surfaces level, plumb, true, and free of rack; and measured from established lines and levels.
- B. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with the following requirements:

1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
- D. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where metal fabrications are required to be fastened to in-place construction. Provide threaded fasteners for use with concrete and masonry inserts, toggle bolts, through bolts, lag screws, wood screws, and other connectors.
- E. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.
- F. Corrosion Protection: Coat concealed surfaces of aluminum that come into contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals with the following:
1. Cast Aluminum: Heavy coat of bituminous paint.
  2. Extruded Aluminum: Two coats of clear lacquer.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

- A. General: Install framing and supports to comply with requirements of items being supported, including manufacturers' written instructions and requirements indicated on Shop Drawings.
- B. Anchor supports for operable partitions, overhead doors and overhead grilles securely to, and rigidly brace from, building structure.
- C. Anchor shelf angles securely to existing construction with expansion anchors or anchor bolts.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF SHELF ANGLES

- A. Install shelf angles as required to keep masonry level, at correct elevation, and flush with vertical plane.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF METAL SHIPS' LADDERS

- A. Secure top and bottom of ships' ladders to construction to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF LOOSE BEARING AND LEVELING PLATES

- A. Clean concrete and masonry bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen to improve bond to surfaces. Clean bottom surface of plates.
- B. Set bearing and leveling plates on wedges, shims, or leveling nuts. After bearing members have been positioned and plumbed, tighten anchor bolts. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of bearing plate before packing with shrinkage-resistant grout. Pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates to ensure that no voids remain.

3.6 REPAIRS

A. Touchup Painting:

1. Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas. Paint uncoated and abraded areas with same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
  - a. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil dry film thickness.

B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A780/A780M.

END OF SECTION 05 50 00



## SECTION 06 10 53 – MISCELLANEOUS ROUGH CARPENTRY

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Wood cants, blocking and nailers.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Dimension Lumber: Lumber of 2 inches nominal or greater but less than 5 inches nominal in least dimension.
- B. Lumber grading agencies, and the abbreviations used to reference them, include the following:
  - 1. NHLA: National Hardwood Lumber Association.
  - 2. SPIB: The Southern Pine Inspection Bureau.

## 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.
  - 1. Include data for wood-preserved treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
  - 2. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Include physical properties of treated materials based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency.
  - 3. For fire-retardant treatments, include physical properties of treated lumber both before and after exposure to elevated temperatures, based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency according to ASTM D 5664.
  - 4. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.
  - 5. Include copies of warranties from chemical treatment manufacturers for each type of treatment.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agency providing classification marking for fire-retardant treated material, an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that periodically performs inspections to verify that the material bearing the classification marking is representative of the material tested.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Stack lumber flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect lumber from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 WOOD PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency is indicated, provide lumber that complies with the applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review. Provide lumber graded by an agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.
  - 1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.
  - 2. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark grade stamp on end or back of each piece or omit grade stamp and provide certificates of grade compliance issued by grading agency.
  - 3. Where nominal sizes are indicated, provide actual sizes required by DOC PS 20 for moisture content specified. Where actual sizes are indicated, they are minimum dressed sizes for dry lumber.
  - 4. Provide dressed lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Lumber: 15 percent unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.2 WOOD-PRESERVATIVE-TREATED MATERIALS

- A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWPA U1; Use Category UC2 for interior construction not in contact with the ground, Use Category UC3b for exterior construction not in contact with the ground, and Use Category UC4a for items in contact with the ground.
  - 1. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium.
- B. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Do not use material that is warped or does not comply with requirements for untreated material.
- C. Mark lumber with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the ALSC Board of Review.
  - 1. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark end or back of each piece or omit marking and provide certificates of treatment compliance issued by inspection agency.

- D. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings, and the following:
1. Wood cants, nailers, curbs, equipment support bases, blocking, stripping, and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.
  2. Wood sills, sleepers, blocking, furring, stripping, and similar concealed members in contact with masonry or concrete.
  3. Wood furring attached directly to the interior of below-grade exterior masonry or concrete walls.

### 2.3 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED MATERIALS

- A. General: Where fire-retardant-treated materials are indicated, use materials complying with requirements in this article, that are acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and with fire-test-response characteristics specified as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated by a qualified testing agency.
- B. Fire-Retardant-Treated Lumber and Plywood by Pressure Process: Products with a flame spread index of 25 or less when tested according to ASTM E 84, and with no evidence of significant progressive combustion when the test is extended an additional 20 minutes, and with the flame front not extending more than 10.5 feet beyond the centerline of the burners at any time during the test.
1. Use treatment that does not promote corrosion of metal fasteners.
  2. Exterior Type: Treated materials shall comply with requirements specified above for fire-retardant-treated lumber and plywood by pressure process after being subjected to accelerated weathering according to ASTM D 2898. Use for exterior locations and where indicated.
  3. Interior Type A: Treated materials shall have a moisture content of 28 percent or less when tested according to ASTM D 3201 at 92 percent relative humidity. Use where exterior type is not indicated.
  4. Design Value Adjustment Factors: Treated lumber shall be tested according ASTM D 5664, and design value adjustment factors shall be calculated according to ASTM D 6841.
- C. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Kiln-dry plywood after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 15 percent.
- D. Identify fire-retardant-treated wood with appropriate classification marking of testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
1. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark end or back of each piece or omit marking and provide certificates of treatment compliance issued by inspection agency.
- E. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, use chemical formulations that do not bleed through, contain colorants, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
- F. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings, and the following:
1. Concealed blocking.

## 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS LUMBER

- A. General: Provide miscellaneous lumber indicated and lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including the following:
  - 1. Blocking.
  - 2. Nailers.
- B. For concealed boards, provide lumber with 15 percent maximum moisture content and the following species and grades:
  - 1. Mixed southern pine, No. 2 grade; SPIB.
- C. For blocking not used for attachment of other construction, Utility, Stud, or No. 3 grade lumber of any species may be used provided that it is cut and selected to eliminate defects that will interfere with its attachment and purpose.
- D. For blocking and nailers used for attachment of other construction, select and cut lumber to eliminate knots and other defects that will interfere with attachment of other work.
- E. For furring strips for installing plywood or hardboard paneling, select boards with no knots capable of producing bent-over nails and damage to paneling.

## 2.5 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.
  - 1. Where carpentry is exposed to weather, in ground contact, pressure-preservative treated, or in area of high relative humidity, provide fasteners of Type 304 stainless steel.
- B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F 1667.
- C. Wood Screws: ASME B18.6.1.
- D. Screws for Fastening to Metal Framing: ASTM C 1002, length as recommended by screw manufacturer for material being fastened.
- E. Lag Bolts: ASME B18.2.1.
- F. Bolts: Steel bolts complying with ASTM A 307, Grade A; with ASTM A 563 hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers.
- G. Expansion Anchors: Anchor bolt and sleeve assembly of material indicated below with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 6 times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry assemblies and equal to 4 times the load imposed when installed in concrete as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency.
  - 1. Material: Carbon-steel components, zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5.
  - 2. Material: Stainless steel with bolts and nuts complying with ASTM F 593 and ASTM F 594, Alloy Group 1 or 2.

## 2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Adhesives for Gluing Furring to Concrete or Masonry: Formulation complying with ASTM D 3498 that is approved for use indicated by adhesive manufacturer.
  - 1. Adhesives shall have a VOC content of 70 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Set carpentry to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit carpentry to other construction; scribe and cope as needed for accurate fit. Locate furring, nailers, blocking, grounds, and similar supports to comply with requirements for attaching other construction.
- B. Where wood-preservative-treated lumber is installed adjacent to metal decking, install continuous flexible flashing separator between wood and metal decking.
- C. Framing Standard: Comply with AF&PA's WCD 1, "Details for Conventional Wood Frame Construction," unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Metal Framing Anchors: Install metal framing anchors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Install fasteners through each fastener hole.
- E. Do not splice structural members between supports unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Provide blocking and framing as indicated and as required to support facing materials, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.
  - 1. Provide metal clips for fastening gypsum board or lath at corners and intersections where framing or blocking does not provide a surface for fastening edges of panels. Space clips not more than 16 inches o.c.
- G. Provide fire blocking in furred spaces, stud spaces, and other concealed cavities as indicated and as follows:
  - 1. Fire block furred spaces of walls, at each floor level, at ceiling, and at not more than 96 inches o.c. with solid wood blocking or noncombustible materials accurately fitted to close furred spaces.
  - 2. Fire block concealed spaces of wood-framed walls and partitions at each floor level, at ceiling line of top story, and at not more than 96 inches o.c. Where fire blocking is not inherent in framing system used, provide closely fitted solid wood blocks of same width as framing members and 2-inch nominal thickness.
  - 3. Fire block concealed spaces behind combustible cornices and exterior trim at not more than 20 feet o.c.
- H. Sort and select lumber so that natural characteristics will not interfere with installation or with fastening other materials to lumber. Do not use materials with defects that interfere with function of member or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.

- I. Comply with AWPA M4 for applying field treatment to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.
  - 1. Use inorganic boron for items that are continuously protected from liquid water.
  - 2. Use copper naphthenate for items not continuously protected from liquid water.
  
- J. Securely attach carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
  - 1. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's International Building Code.
  - 2. Table R602.3(1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members," and Table R602.3(2), "Alternate Attachments," in ICC's International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.
  
- K. Use steel common nails unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood. Drive nails snug but do not countersink nail heads unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.2 WOOD GROUND, BLOCKING, AND NAILER INSTALLATION

- A. Install where indicated and where required for attaching other work. Form to shapes indicated and cut as required for true line and level of attached work. Coordinate locations with other work involved.
  
- B. Attach items to substrates to support applied loading. Recess bolts and nuts flush with surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
  
- C. Provide permanent grounds of dressed, pressure-preservative-treated, key-beveled lumber not less than 1-1/2 inches wide and of thickness required to bring face of ground to exact thickness of finish material. Remove temporary grounds when no longer required.

### 3.3 PROTECTION

- A. Protect wood that has been treated with inorganic boron (SBX) from weather. If, despite protection, inorganic boron-treated wood becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.
  
- B. Protect miscellaneous rough carpentry from weather. If, despite protection, miscellaneous rough carpentry becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.

END OF SECTION 06 10 53

## SECTION 06 16 00 - SHEATHING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Wall sheathing.
  - 2. Sheathing joint-and-penetration treatment.
  - 3. Flexible flashing at openings in sheathing.

## 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.
  - 1. Include data for wood-preserved treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated plywood complies with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
  - 2. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated plywood complies with requirements. Include physical properties of treated materials.
  - 3. For fire-retardant treatments, include physical properties of treated plywood both before and after exposure to elevated temperatures, based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency according to ASTM D 5516.
  - 4. For products receiving waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.
  - 5. For air-barrier and water-resistant glass-mat gypsum sheathing, include manufacturer's technical data and tested physical and performance properties of products.
- B. Shop Drawings: For air-barrier and water-resistant glass-mat gypsum sheathing assemblies.
  - 1. Show locations and extent of sheathing, accessories, and assemblies specific to Project conditions.
  - 2. Include details for sheathing joints and cracks, counterflashing strips, penetrations, inside and outside corners, terminations, and tie-ins with adjoining construction.
  - 3. Include details of interfaces with other materials that form part of air barrier.

## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

- B. Research/Evaluation Reports: For the following, showing compliance with building code in effect for Project:
  - 1. Foam-plastic sheathing.

## 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Stack panels flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect sheathing from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Resistance Ratings: As tested according to ASTM E 119; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Indicated by design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another qualified testing agency.

### 2.2 WOOD PANEL PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Thickness: As needed to comply with requirements specified, but not less than thickness indicated.
- B. Factory mark panels to indicate compliance with applicable standard.

### 2.3 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED PLYWOOD

- A. General: Where fire-retardant-treated materials are indicated, use materials complying with requirements in this article that are acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and with fire-test-response characteristics specified as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated by a qualified testing agency.
- B. Fire-Retardant-Treated Plywood by Pressure Process: Products with a flame-spread index of 25 or less when tested according to ASTM E 84, and with no evidence of significant progressive combustion when the test is extended an additional 20 minutes, and with the flame front not extending more than 10.5 feet beyond the centerline of the burners at any time during the test.
  - 1. Use treatment that does not promote corrosion of metal fasteners.
  - 2. Exterior Type: Treated materials shall comply with requirements specified above for fire-retardant-treated plywood by pressure process after being subjected to accelerated weathering according to ASTM D 2898. Use for exterior locations and where indicated.
  - 3. Interior Type A: Treated materials shall have a moisture content of 28 percent or less when tested according to ASTM D 3201/D 3201M at 92 percent relative humidity. Use where exterior type is not indicated.
  - 4. Design Value Adjustment Factors: Treated lumber plywood shall be tested according to ASTM D 5516 and design value adjustment factors shall be calculated according to ASTM D 6305. Span ratings after treatment shall be not less than span ratings specified.



- C. Kiln-dry material after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 15 percent. Do not use material that is warped or does not comply with requirements for untreated material.
- D. Identify fire-retardant-treated plywood with appropriate classification marking of qualified testing agency.
- E. Application: Treat all plywood unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.4 WALL SHEATHING

- A. Glass-Mat Gypsum Wall Sheathing: ASTM C 1177/1177M.
  - 1. Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide "Dens-Glass Gold" by G-P Gypsum Corporation or comparable by one of the following:
    - a. National Gypsum Company.
    - b. USG Corporation.
  - 2. Type and Thickness: Type X, 5/8 inch thick.

## 2.5 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this Article for material and manufacture.
  - 1. For wall sheathing, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M and Type 304 stainless steel.
- B. Power-Driven Fasteners: NES NER-272.
- C. Screws for Fastening Gypsum Sheathing to Cold-Formed Metal Framing: Steel drill screws, in length recommended by sheathing manufacturer for thickness of sheathing board to be attached, with organic-polymer or other corrosion-protective coating having a salt-spray resistance of more than 800 hours according to ASTM B 117.
  - 1. For steel framing less than 0.0329 inch thick, attach sheathing to comply with ASTM C 1002.
  - 2. For steel framing from 0.033 to 0.112 inch thick, attach sheathing to comply with ASTM C 954.

## 2.6 SHEATHING JOINT-AND-PENETRATION TREATMENT MATERIALS

- A. Sealant for Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing: Silicone emulsion sealant complying with ASTM C 834, compatible with sheathing tape and sheathing and recommended by tape and sheathing manufacturers for use with glass-fiber sheathing tape and for covering exposed fasteners.
  - 1. Sheathing Tape: Self-adhering glass-fiber tape, minimum 2 inches wide, 10 by 10 or 10 by 20 threads/inc, of type recommended by sheathing and tape manufacturers for use with silicone emulsion sealant in sealing joints in glass-mat gypsum sheathing and with a history of successful in-service use.

## 2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Flexible Flashing: Composite, self-adhesive, flashing product consisting of a pliable, rubberized-asphalt compound, bonded to a high-density, cross-laminated polyethylene film to produce an overall thickness of not less than 0.030 inch.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing; CCW-705-TWF Thru-Wall Flashing.
    - b. GCP Applied Technologies; Vycor Plus Self-Adhered Flashing.
    - c. Henry Company; Air-Bloc LF.
    - d. Polyguard Products, Inc.; Polyguard 300.
- B. Primer for Flexible Flashing: Product recommended by manufacturer of flexible flashing for substrate.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Do not use materials with defects that impair quality of sheathing or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.
- B. Cut panels at penetrations, edges, and other obstructions of work; fit tightly against abutting construction, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Securely attach to substrate by fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
  - 1. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in the ICC's International Building Code.
  - 2. ICC-ES evaluation report for fastener.
- D. Use common wire nails, unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections. Install fasteners without splitting wood.
- E. Coordinate wall sheathing installation with flashing and joint-sealant installation so these materials are installed in sequence and manner that prevent exterior moisture from passing through completed assembly.
- F. Do not bridge building expansion joints; cut and space edges of panels to match spacing of structural support elements.
- G. Coordinate sheathing installation with installation of materials installed over sheathing so sheathing is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at end of the workday when rain is forecast.

### 3.2 GYPSUM SHEATHING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with GA-253 and with manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Fasten gypsum sheathing to cold-formed metal framing with screws.
  2. Install boards with a 3/8-inch gap where non-load-bearing construction abuts structural elements.
  3. Install boards with a 1/4-inch gap where they abut masonry or similar materials that might retain moisture, to prevent wicking.
- B. Apply fasteners so heads bear tightly against face of sheathing boards but do not cut into facing.
- C. Vertical Installation: Install board vertical edges centered over studs. Abut ends and edges of each board with those of adjacent boards. Attach boards at perimeter and within field of board to each stud.
1. Space fasteners approximately 8 inches o.c. and set back a minimum of 3/8 inch from edges and ends of boards.
- D. Seal sheathing joints according to sheathing manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Apply elastomeric sealant to joints and fasteners and trowel flat. Apply sufficient amount of sealant to completely cover joints and fasteners after troweling. Seal other penetrations and openings.
  2. Apply glass-fiber sheathing tape to glass-mat gypsum sheathing joints and apply and trowel sealant to embed entire face of tape in sealant. Apply sealant to exposed fasteners with a trowel so fasteners are completely covered. Seal other penetrations and openings.

### 3.3 FLEXIBLE FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Apply flexible flashing where indicated to comply with manufacturers written instructions.
1. Prime substrates as recommended by flashing manufacturer.
  2. Lap seams and junctures with other materials at least 4 inches, except that at flashing flanges of other construction, laps need not exceed flange width.
  3. After flashing has been applied, roll surfaces with a hard rubber or metal roller to ensure that flashing is completely adhered to substrates.

END OF SECTION 06 16 00



## SECTION 06 41 16 - PLASTIC-LAMINATE-CLAD ARCHITECTURAL CABINETS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Plastic-laminate-clad architectural cabinets.
  - 2. Wood furring, blocking, shims, and hanging strips for installing plastic-laminate-clad architectural cabinets that are not concealed within other construction.

## 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of framing, blocking, furring, reinforcements, and other related units of Work specified in other Sections to support loads imposed by installed and fully loaded cabinets.

## 1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

## 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical-treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
  - 2. Show large-scale details.
  - 3. Show locations and sizes of furring, blocking, and hanging strips, including concealed blocking and reinforcement specified in other Sections.
  - 4. Show locations and sizes of cutouts and holes for items installed in plastic-laminate architectural cabinets.
  - 5. Apply AWI Quality Certification Program label to Shop Drawings.
- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, in manufacturer's or manufacturer's standard size.
- D. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of exposed finish.

- E. Samples for Verification: For the following:
1. Plastic Laminates: 8 by 10 inches, for each type, color, pattern, and surface finish required.
    - a. Provide one sample applied to core material with specified edge material applied to one edge.
  2. Thermoset Decorative Panels: 8 by 10 inches, for each color, pattern, and surface finish.
    - a. Provide edge banding on one edge.
  3. Corner Pieces:
    - a. Cabinet-front frame joints between stiles and rails and at exposed end pieces, 18 inches high by 18 inches wide by 6 inches deep.
    - b. Miter joints for standing trim.
  4. Exposed Cabinet Hardware and Accessories: One full-size unit for each type and finish.

#### 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For manufacturer and Installer.
- B. Product Certificates: For each of the following:
1. Composite wood and agrifiber products.
  2. Thermoset decorative panels.
  3. High-pressure decorative laminate.
  4. Adhesives.
- C. Evaluation Reports: For fire-retardant-treated materials, from ICC-ES.
- D. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer's Qualifications: Employs skilled workers who custom fabricate products similar to those required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer of products Licensed participant in AWI's Quality Certification Program.
- C. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for materials and execution.
1. Build mockups of typical architectural cabinets as shown on Drawings.
  2. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Final Acceptance.

## 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not deliver cabinets until painting and similar finish operations that might damage architectural cabinets have been completed in installation areas. Store cabinets in installation areas or in areas where environmental conditions comply with requirements specified in "Field Conditions" Article.

## 1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install cabinets until building is enclosed, wet-work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and relative humidity at levels planned for building occupants during the remainder of the construction period.
- B. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install cabinets until building is enclosed, wet-work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature between 60 and 90 deg F and relative humidity between 25 and 55 percent during the remainder of the construction period.
- C. Field Measurements: Where cabinets are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
  - 1. Locate concealed framing, blocking, and reinforcements that support cabinets by field measurements before being enclosed/concealed by construction, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.
- D. Established Dimensions: Where cabinets are indicated to fit to other construction, establish dimensions for areas where cabinets are to fit. Provide allowance for trimming at site, and coordinate construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 PLASTIC-LAMINATE-CLAD ARCHITECTURAL CABINETS

- A. Quality Standard: Unless otherwise indicated, comply with the Architectural Woodwork Standards for grades of cabinets indicated for construction, finishes, installation, and other requirements.
  - 1. The Contract Documents contain requirements that are more stringent than the referenced quality standard. Comply with requirements of Contract Documents in addition to those of the referenced quality standard.
- B. Architectural Woodwork Standards Grade: Custom.
- C. Type of Construction: Frameless.
- D. Door and Drawer-Front Style: Flush overlay.
- E. High-Pressure Decorative Laminate: NEMA LD 3, grades as indicated or if not indicated, as required by quality standard.

1. Basis-of-Design: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Basis-of-Design product as indicated on finish schedule or comparable products by one of the following:
    - a. Laminart.
    - b. Nevamar Company.
    - c. Wilsonart.
  
  - F. Laminate Cladding for Exposed Surfaces:
    1. Horizontal Surfaces: Grade HGS.
    2. Postformed Surfaces: Grade HGP.
    3. Vertical Surfaces: Grade HGS.
    4. Edges: Grade HGS.
    5. Pattern Direction: As indicated.
  
  - G. Materials for Semiexposed Surfaces:
    1. Surfaces Other Than Drawer Bodies: High-pressure decorative laminate, NEMA LD 3, Grade VGS.
      - a. Edges of Plastic-Laminate Shelves: PVC tape, 0.018-inch minimum thickness, matching laminate in color, pattern, and finish.
      - b. Edges of Thermoset Decorative Panel Shelves: PVC or polyester edge banding.
      - c. For semiexposed backs of panels with exposed plastic-laminate surfaces, provide surface of high-pressure decorative laminate, NEMA LD 3, Grade VGS.
    2. Drawer Sides and Backs: Solid-hardwood lumber.
    3. Drawer Bottoms: Hardwood plywood.
  
  - H. Dust Panels: 1/4-inch plywood or tempered hardboard above compartments and drawers unless located directly under tops.
  
  - I. Concealed Backs of Panels with Exposed Plastic-Laminate Surfaces: High-pressure decorative laminate, NEMA LD 3, Grade BKL.
  
  - J. Drawer Construction: Fabricate with exposed fronts fastened to subfront with mounting screws from interior of body.
    1. Join subfronts, backs, and sides with glued rabbeted joints supplemented by mechanical fasteners.
  
  - K. Colors, Patterns, and Finishes: Provide materials and products that result in colors and textures of exposed laminate surfaces complying with the following requirements:
    1. As indicated by laminate manufacturer's designations.
- 2.2 WOOD MATERIALS
- A. Wood Products: Provide materials that comply with requirements of referenced quality standard for each type of architectural cabinet and quality grade specified unless otherwise indicated.
    1. Wood Moisture Content: 5 to 10 percent.



- B. Composite Wood and Agrifiber Products: Provide materials that comply with requirements of referenced quality standard for each type of architectural cabinet and quality grade specified unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Composite Wood Products: Products shall be made using ultra-low-emitting formaldehyde resins as defined in the California Air Resources Board's "Airborne Toxic Control Measure to Reduce Formaldehyde Emissions from Composite Wood Products" or shall be made with no added formaldehyde.
  - 1. Medium-Density Fiberboard (MDF): ANSI A208.2, Grade 130.
  - 2. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2-Exterior Glue.
  - 3. Softwood Plywood: DOC PS 1, medium-density overlay.
  - 4. Thermoset Decorative Panels: Particleboard or MDF finished with thermally fused, melamine-impregnated decorative paper and complying with requirements of NEMA LD 3, Grade VGL, for Test Methods 3.3, 3.4, 3.6, 3.8, and 3.10.

### 2.3 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED MATERIALS

- A. Fire-Retardant-Treated Materials, General: Where fire-retardant-treated materials are indicated, use materials that are acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and with fire-test-response characteristics specified as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated by a qualified testing agency.
  - 1. Use treated materials that comply with requirements of referenced quality standard. Do not use materials that are warped, discolored, or otherwise defective.
  - 2. Use fire-retardant-treatment formulations that do not bleed through or otherwise adversely affect finishes. Do not use colorants to distinguish treated materials from untreated materials.
  - 3. Identify fire-retardant-treated materials with appropriate classification marking of qualified testing agency in the form of removable paper label or imprint on surfaces that will be concealed from view after installation.
- B. Fire-Retardant-Treated Lumber and Plywood: Products with a flame-spread index of 25 or less when tested according to ASTM E 84, with no evidence of significant progressive combustion when the test is extended an additional 20 minutes, and with the flame front not extending more than 10.5 feet beyond the centerline of the burners at any time during the test.
  - 1. Kiln-dry lumber and plywood after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 and 15 percent, respectively.
  - 2. For items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, use organic resin chemical formulation.
  - 3. Mill lumber after treatment within limits set for wood removal that do not affect listed fire-test-response characteristics, using a woodworking shop certified by testing and inspecting agency.
  - 4. Mill lumber before treatment and implement procedures during treatment and drying processes that prevent lumber from warping and developing discolorations from drying sticks or other causes, marring, and other defects affecting appearance of architectural cabinets.
- C. Fire-Retardant Particleboard: Made from softwood particles and fire-retardant chemicals mixed together at time of panel manufacture to achieve flame-spread index of 25 or less and smoke-developed index of 25 or less per ASTM E 84.

1. For panels 3/4 inch thick and less, comply with ANSI A208.1 for Grade M-2 except for the following minimum properties: modulus of rupture, 1600 psi; modulus of elasticity, 300,000 psi; internal bond, 80 psi; and screw-holding capacity on face and edge, 250 and 225 lbf, respectively.
  2. For panels 13/16 to 1-1/4 inches thick, comply with ANSI A208.1 for Grade M-1 except for the following minimum properties: modulus of rupture, 1300 psi; modulus of elasticity, 250,000 psi; linear expansion, 0.50 percent; and screw-holding capacity on face and edge, 250 and 175 lbf, respectively.
- D. Fire-Retardant Fiberboard: MDF panels complying with ANSI A208.2, made from softwood fibers, synthetic resins, and fire-retardant chemicals mixed together at time of panel manufacture to achieve flame-spread index of 25 or less and smoke-developed index of 200 or less per ASTM E 84.

## 2.4 CABINET HARDWARE AND ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Provide cabinet hardware and accessory materials associated with architectural cabinets except for items specified in Section 08 71 00 "Door Hardware."
- B. Frameless Concealed Hinges (European Type): BHMA A156.9, B01602, 135 degrees of opening, self-closing.
- C. Back-Mounted Pulls: BHMA A156.9, B02011.
- D. Catches: Magnetic catches, BHMA A156.9, B03141.
- E. Adjustable Shelf Standards and Supports: BHMA A156.9, B04071; with shelf rests, B04081.
- F. Shelf Rests: BHMA A156.9, B04013; metal.
- G. Drawer Slides: BHMA A156.9.
1. Grade 1 and Grade 2: Side mounted and extending under bottom edge of drawer.
    - a. Type: Full extension.
    - b. Material: Epoxy-coated steel with polymer rollers.
  2. Grade 1HD-100 and Grade 1HD-200: Side mounted; full-overtravel-extension type; zinc-plated-steel ball-bearing slides.
  3. For drawers not more than 3 inches high and not more than 24 inches wide, provide Grade 2.
  4. For drawers more than 3 inches high, but not more than 6 inches high and not more than 24 inches wide, provide Grade 1.
  5. For drawers more than 6 inches high or more than 24 inches wide, provide Grade 1HD-100.
  6. For computer keyboard shelves, provide Grade 1.
  7. For trash bins not more than 20 inches high and 16 inches wide, provide Grade 1HD-100.
- H. Door Locks: BHMA A156.11, E07121.
- I. Drawer Locks: BHMA A156.11, E07041.
- J. Door and Drawer Silencers: BHMA A156.16, L03011.

- K. Grommets for Cable Passage: 2-inch OD, molded-plastic grommets and matching plastic caps with slot for wire passage.
  - 1. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- L. Exposed Hardware Finishes: For exposed hardware, provide finish that complies with BHMA A156.18 for BHMA finish number indicated.
  - 1. Satin Chromium Plated: BHMA 616 for brass or bronze base.
- M. For concealed hardware, provide manufacturer's standard finish that complies with product class requirements in BHMA A156.9.

## 2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Furring, Blocking, Shims, and Hanging Strips: Fire-retardant-treated softwood lumber, kiln-dried to less than 15 percent moisture content.
- B. Anchors: Select material, type, size, and finish required for each substrate for secure anchorage. Provide metal expansion sleeves or expansion bolts for post-installed anchors. Use nonferrous-metal or hot-dip galvanized anchors and inserts at inside face of exterior walls and at floors.
- C. Adhesives, General: Adhesives shall not contain urea formaldehyde.
- D. Low-Emitting Materials: Adhesives shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- E. VOC Limits for Installation Adhesives: Installation adhesives shall comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):
  - 1. Wood Glues: 30 g/L.
  - 2. Multipurpose Construction Adhesives: 70 g/L.
  - 3. Contact Adhesive: 250 g/L.
- F. Adhesive for Bonding Plastic Laminate: Unpigmented contact cement.
  - 1. Adhesive for Bonding Edges: Hot-melt adhesive or adhesive specified above for faces.

## 2.6 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate architectural cabinets to dimensions, profiles, and details indicated.
- B. Complete fabrication, including assembly and hardware application, to maximum extent possible before shipment to Project site. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation. Where necessary for fitting at site, provide ample allowance for scribing, trimming, and fitting.
  - 1. Notify Architect seven days in advance of the dates and times architectural cabinet fabrication will be complete.
  - 2. Trial fit assemblies at manufacturer's shop that cannot be shipped completely assembled. Install dowels, screws, bolted connectors, and other fastening devices that can be

removed after trial fitting. Verify that various parts fit as intended and check measurements of assemblies against field measurements before disassembling for shipment.

- C. Shop-cut openings to maximum extent possible to receive hardware, appliances, electrical work, and similar items. Locate openings accurately and use templates or roughing-in diagrams to produce accurately sized and shaped openings. Sand edges of cutouts to remove splinters and burrs.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Before installation, condition cabinets to humidity conditions in installation areas for not less than 72 hours.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Architectural Woodwork Standards Grade: Install cabinets to comply with quality standard grade of item to be installed.
- B. Assemble cabinets and complete fabrication at Project site to extent that it was not completed in the shop.
- C. Anchor cabinets to anchors or blocking built in or directly attached to substrates. Secure with wafer-head cabinet installation screws.
- D. Install cabinets level, plumb, and true in line to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 96 inches using concealed shims.
  - 1. Scribe and cut cabinets to fit adjoining work, refinish cut surfaces, and repair damaged finish at cuts.
  - 2. Install cabinets without distortion so doors and drawers fit openings and are accurately aligned. Adjust hardware to center doors and drawers in openings and to provide unencumbered operation. Complete installation of hardware and accessory items as indicated.
  - 3. Fasten wall cabinets through back, near top and bottom, and at ends not more than 16 inches o.c. with No. 10 wafer-head screws sized for not less than 1-1/2-inch penetration into wood framing, blocking, or hanging strips.

#### 3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Repair damaged and defective cabinets, where possible, to eliminate functional and visual defects. Where not possible to repair, replace architectural cabinets. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.
- B. Clean, lubricate, and adjust hardware.
- C. Clean cabinets on exposed and semiexposed surfaces.

END OF SECTION 06 41 16

## SECTION 07 11 13 - BITUMINOUS DAMPPROOFING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Cold-applied, emulsified-asphalt dampproofing installed at foundations and other locations as indicated.

## 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

## 1.4 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with application only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit dampproofing to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions.
- B. Ventilation: Provide adequate ventilation during application of dampproofing in enclosed spaces. Maintain ventilation until dampproofing has cured.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain primary dampproofing materials and primers from single source from single manufacturer. Provide protection course and auxiliary materials recommended in writing by manufacturer of primary materials.

## 2.2 COLD-APPLIED, EMULSIFIED-ASPHALT DAMPPROOFING

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. BASF Corporation; Construction Systems.
  - 2. ChemMasters, Inc.
  - 3. Henry Company.
  - 4. Karnak Corporation.

- B. Trowel Coats: ASTM D 1227, Type II, Class 1.
- C. Fibered Brush and Spray Coats: ASTM D 1227, Type II, Class 1.
- D. Brush and Spray Coats: ASTM D 1227, Type III, Class 1.

### 2.3 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. Furnish auxiliary materials recommended in writing by dampproofing manufacturer for intended use and compatible with bituminous dampproofing.
- B. Emulsified-Asphalt Primer: ASTM D 1227, Type III, Class 1, except diluted with water as recommended in writing by manufacturer.
- C. Asphalt-Coated Glass Fabric: ASTM D 1668/D 1668M, Type I.
- D. Patching Compound: Asbestos-free fibered mastic of type recommended in writing by dampproofing manufacturer.
- E. Protection Course: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation, unfaced, ASTM C 578, Type X, 1/2 inch thick.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for surface smoothness, maximum surface moisture content, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with application only after substrate construction and penetrating work have been completed and unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean, prepare, and treat substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions. Provide clean, dust-free, and dry substrates for dampproofing application.
- B. Mask or otherwise protect adjoining exposed surfaces from being stained, spotted, or coated with dampproofing. Prevent dampproofing materials from entering and clogging weep holes and drains.
- C. Clean substrates of projections and substances detrimental to dampproofing work; fill voids, seal joints, and remove bond breakers if any.
- D. Apply patching compound to patch and fill tie holes, honeycombs, reveals, and other imperfections; cover with asphalt-coated glass fabric.

### 3.3 APPLICATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for dampproofing application, cure time between coats, and drying time before backfilling unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Apply dampproofing to provide continuous plane of protection.
  - 2. Apply additional coats if recommended in writing by manufacturer or to achieve a smooth surface and uninterrupted coverage.
- B. Where dampproofing footings and foundation walls, apply from finished-grade line to top of footing; extend over top of footing and down a minimum of 6 inches over outside face of footing.
  - 1. Extend dampproofing 12 inches onto intersecting walls and footings, but do not extend onto surfaces exposed to view when Project is completed.
  - 2. Install flashings and corner protection stripping at internal and external corners, changes in plane, construction joints, cracks, and where indicated as "reinforced," by embedding an 8-inch-wide strip of asphalt-coated glass fabric in a heavy coat of dampproofing. Dampproofing coat for embedding fabric is in addition to other coats required.

### 3.4 COLD-APPLIED, EMULSIFIED-ASPHALT DAMPPROOFING

- A. Concrete Foundations: Apply one trowel coat at not less than 4 gal./100 sq. ft.
- B. Unexposed Face of Concrete Retaining Walls: Apply one brush or spray coat at not less than 1.25 gal./100 sq. ft..

### 3.5 PROTECTION COURSE INSTALLATION

- A. Install protection course over completed-and-cured dampproofing. Comply with dampproofing-material and protection-course manufacturers' written instructions for attaching protection course.
  - 1. Support protection course over cured coating with spot application of adhesive type recommended in writing by protection-board manufacturer.
  - 2. Install protection course on same day of dampproofing installation (while coating is tacky) to ensure adhesion.

### 3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Correct dampproofing that does not comply with requirements; repair substrates, and reapply dampproofing.

END OF SECTION 07 11 13





## SECTION 07 21 00 - THERMAL INSULATION

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes:
  - 1. Extruded polystyrene foam-plastic board.
  - 2. Polyisocyanurate foam-plastic board insulation.
  - 3. Mineral-wool blanket insulation.
  - 4. Spray-foam insulation.

## 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Plenum Rating: Provide slag-wool-fiber/rock-wool-fiber insulation where indicated in ceiling plenums whose test performance is rated as follows for use in plenums as determined by testing identical products per "Erosion Test" and "Mold Growth and Humidity Test" described in UL 181, or on comparable tests from another standard acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Erosion Test Results: Insulation shows no visible evidence of cracking, flaking, peeling, or delamination of interior surface of duct assembly, after testing for 4 hours at 2500-fpm air velocity.
  - 2. Mold Growth and Humidity Test Results: Insulation shows no evidence of mold growth, delamination, or other deterioration due to the effects of high humidity, after inoculation with *Chaetomium globosum* on all surfaces and storing for 60 days at 100 percent relative humidity in the dark.

## 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Samples for Verification: Full-size units for each type of exposed insulation indicated.
- C. Research/Evaluation Reports: For foam-plastic insulation.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of building insulation through one source from a single manufacturer.

- B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide insulation and related materials with the fire-test-response characteristics indicated, as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated below by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Identify materials with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: ASTM E 84.
  2. Fire-Resistance Ratings: ASTM E 119.
  3. Combustion Characteristics: ASTM E 136.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store inside and in a dry location. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

### 2.2 EXTRUDED POLYSTYRENE FOAM-PLASTIC BOARD

- A. Extruded Polystyrene Board: ASTM C 578, Type IV, 25-psi minimum compressive strength, unfaced; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed index of 25 and 45, respectively per ASTM E 84.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. DiversiFoam Products.
    - b. Dow Chemical Company (The).
    - c. Owens Corning.
  2. Flame-Spread Index: Not more than 25 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
  3. Smoke-Developed Index: Not more than 450 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
  4. Fire Propagation Characteristics: Passes NFPA 285 testing as part of an approved assembly.

### 2.3 POLYISOCYANURATE FOAM-PLASTIC BOARD INSULATION

- A. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation, Foil Faced: ASTM C1289, foil faced, Type I, Class 1 or 2.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Johns Manville.
  - b. DuPont.
  - c. Dow Chemical Company (The).
2. Flame-Spread Index: Not more than 25 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
3. Smoke-Developed Index: Not more than 450 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.

#### 2.4 MINERAL-WOOL BLANKET INSULATION

- A. Mineral-Wool Blanket Insulation, Unfaced: ASTM C665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing); consisting of fibers; passing ASTM E136 for combustion characteristics.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
    - b. Rockwool International.
    - c. Thermafiber, Inc.; an Owens Corning company.
  2. Flame-Spread Index: Not more than 25 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
  3. Smoke-Developed Index: Not more than 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
  4. Labeling: Provide identification of mark indicating R-value of each piece of insulation 12 inches and wider in width.

#### 2.5 SPRAY-FOAM INSULATION

- A. Foam Insulation for Miscellaneous Voids: Polyurethane foam insulation used to fill cavities, penetrations and cracks for air sealing, insulation, and sound damping.
  1. Open-Cell Polyurethane Foam Insulation: Spray-applied polyurethane foam using water as a blowing agent, with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively, per ASTM E 84.

#### 2.6 INSULATION FASTENERS

- A. Adhesives shall have a VOC content of 70 g/L or less.
- B. Adhesively Attached, Spindle-Type Anchors: Plate welded to projecting spindle; capable of holding insulation of specified thickness securely in position with self-locking washer in place.
  1. Plate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
  2. Spindle: Copper-coated, low-carbon steel; fully annealed; 0.105 inch in diameter; length to suit depth of insulation.
- C. Adhesively Attached, Angle-Shaped, Spindle-Type Anchors: Angle welded to projecting spindle; capable of holding insulation of specified thickness securely in position with self-locking washer in place.

1. Angle: Formed from 0.030-inch-thick, perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet with each leg 2 inches square.
  2. Spindle: Copper-coated, low-carbon steel; fully annealed; 0.105 inch in diameter; length to suit depth of insulation.
- D. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick galvanized-steel sheet, with beveled edge for increased stiffness, sized as required to hold insulation securely in place, but not less than 1-1/2 inches square or in diameter.
- E. Insulation Standoff: Spacer fabricated from galvanized mild-steel sheet for fitting over spindle of insulation anchor to maintain air space of 1 inch between face of insulation and substrate to which anchor is attached.
- F. Anchor Adhesive: Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation anchors securely to substrates without damaging insulation, fasteners, or substrates.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements of Sections in which substrates and related work are specified and for other conditions affecting performance.
1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrates of substances harmful to insulation or vapor retarders, including removing projections capable of puncturing vapor retarders or of interfering with insulation attachment.

#### 3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions applicable to products and application indicated.
- B. Install insulation that is undamaged, dry, and unsoiled and that has not been left exposed at any time to ice, rain, and snow.
- C. Extend insulation in thickness indicated to envelop entire area to be insulated. Cut and fit tightly around obstructions and fill voids with insulation. Remove projections that interfere with placement.
- D. Water-Piping Coordination: If water piping is located within insulated exterior walls, coordinate location of piping to ensure that it is placed on warm side of insulation and insulation encapsulates piping.
- E. For preformed insulating units, provide sizes to fit applications indicated and selected from manufacturer's standard thicknesses, widths, and lengths. Apply single layer of insulation units to produce thickness indicated unless multiple layers are otherwise shown or required to make up total thickness.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF UNDER-SLAB INSULATION

- A. On horizontal surfaces, loosely lay insulation units according to manufacturer's written instructions. Stagger end joints and tightly abut insulation units.
- B. Protect top surface of horizontal insulation from damage during concrete work by applying protection course with joints butted.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF GENERAL BUILDING INSULATION

- A. Apply insulation units to substrates by method indicated, complying with manufacturer's written instructions. If no specific method is indicated, bond units to substrate with adhesive or use mechanical anchorage to provide permanent placement and support of units.
- B. Install mineral-fiber insulation in cavities formed by framing members according to the following requirements:
  - 1. Use insulation widths and lengths that fill the cavities formed by framing members. If more than one length is required to fill cavity, provide lengths that will produce a snug fit between ends.
  - 2. Place insulation in cavities formed by framing members to produce a friction fit between edges of insulation and adjoining framing members.
  - 3. Maintain 3-inch clearance of insulation around recessed lighting fixtures.
  - 4. For metal-framed wall cavities where cavity heights exceed 96 inches, support unfaced blankets mechanically and support faced blankets by taping flanges to flanges of metal studs.
- C. Stuff mineral-fiber loose-fill insulation into miscellaneous voids and cavity spaces where shown. Compact to approximately 40 percent of normal maximum volume equaling a density of approximately 2.5 lb/cu. ft.

### 3.6 INSTALLATION OF SPRAY INSULATION

- A. Install spray insulation in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Apply product in required thickness to achieve the required thermal and/or acoustic value indicated.
- C. Use a 'one-pass' application procedure. Do not layer application.
- D. Surface of spray insulation to be board-tamped and oversprayed with manufacturer's recommended adhesive for uniform finish.

### 3.7 INSTALLATION OF SPRAY-APPLIED CELLULOSIC INSULATION

- A. Spray-Applied Cellulosic Insulation: Apply spray-applied insulation according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Do not apply insulation until installation of pipes, ducts, conduits, wiring, and electrical outlets in walls is completed and windows, electrical boxes, and other items not indicated to receive insulation are masked.

2. After insulation is applied, make flush with face of studs by using method recommended by insulation manufacturer.

### 3.8 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed insulation from damage due to harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes. Provide temporary coverings or enclosures where insulation is subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.
- B. Patch and repair or replace insulation damaged during construction.

END OF SECTION 07 21 00

## SECTION 07 26 16 – UNDER-SLAB VAPOR RETARDER

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Vapor retarder and installation accessories for installation under concrete slabs.

## 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site two weeks before start of installation of reinforced vapor retarders.

- 1. Review vapor-retarder installation, protection, and coordination with other work.

## 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: Provide minimum of three, 6 inch by 6 inch samples of each specified product and accessory.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Material Certificate signed by manufacturer.
- B. Summary of test results per paragraph 9.3 of ASTM E 1745.
- C. Manufacturer's installation instructions for placement, seaming and penetration repair instructions.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials in labeled packages. Store and handle in strict compliance with manufacturer's instructions. Protect from damage from weather, excessive temperature and construction operations. Remove and dispose of damaged material in accordance with applicable regulations.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Subject to conformance with requirements, available products include, but are not limited to, products from one of the following manufacturer's:
  - 1. Raven Industries, Inc.; VaporBlock VB15.
  - 2. Stego Industries LLC.; Stego Wrap Vapor Barrier (15 mil).
  - 3. Insulation Solutions Inc.; Viper Vaporcheck II 15-mil.

## 2.2 VAPOR RETARDER

- A. Permeance: 0.01 perms or less in accordance with ASTM E1745.
- B. Strength: 45 lbs/in minimum, ASTM E1745 Class A.
- C. Thickness: 15 mils minimum.
- D. Puncture Resistance: 2200 grams minimum, ASTM D1709, Method B.

## 2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Vapor-Retarder Tape: Pressure-sensitive tape of type recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in vapor retarder.
- B. Adhesives and mastics for Vapor Retarders: Products recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer and has demonstrated capability to bond vapor retarders securely to substrates indicated.
- C. Additional accessories: As recommended or required by vapor-retarder manufacturer for complete installation.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Examine areas to receive vapor retarders. Notify Architect if areas are not acceptable. Do not begin installation until unacceptable conditions have been corrected.
- B. Ensure that subsoil is smooth, level and compacted with no sharp edges.
  - 1. Level and compact base material.
- C. Ensure that there is no moisture entrapment by vapor retarder due to rainfall or ground water intrusion.
- D. Clean substrates of substances that are harmful to vapor retarders, including removing projections capable of puncturing vapor retarders.



### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install vapor retarder in accordance ASTM E 1643 and manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Install vapor retarders continuously at locations under slab. Ensure there are no discontinuities in vapor retarder at seams or penetrations.
  - 2. Unroll vapor retarder with the longest dimension parallel with the direction of the concrete placement and face laps away from the expected direction of the placement whenever possible.
  - 3. Extend vapor retarder over footings and grade beams to a distance acceptable to the structural engineer or stop at impediments such as dowels and waterstops.
  - 4. Seal vapor retarder to foundation wall, grade beam, or slab at an elevation consistent with the top of the slab or terminate at impediments such as waterstops or dowels.
  - 5. Overlap joints 6 inches and seal with manufacturer's tape.
  - 6. Apply tape to a clean and dry vapor barrier.
  - 7. Seal all penetrations with manufactured or field-fabricated boots and with tape according to manufacturer's guidelines. Unsealed penetrations are not allowed.
  - 8. Immediately repair damaged areas by cutting patches of vapor retarder, overlapping damaged area 6 inches and taping all sides with tape.
- B. Bituminous Vapor Retarders: Place, protect, and repair bituminous vapor retarder according to manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.3 PROTECTION

- A. Protect vapor retarders from damage during installation of reinforcing steel and utilities and during placement of concrete slab.

END OF SECTION 07 26 16



## SECTION 07 27 26 - FLUID-APPLIED MEMBRANE AIR BARRIERS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Vapor-permeable, fluid-applied air barriers.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Air-Barrier Material: A primary element that provides a continuous barrier to the movement of air.
- B. Air-Barrier Accessory: A transitional component of the air barrier that provides continuity.
- C. Air-Barrier Assembly: The collection of air-barrier materials and accessories applied to an opaque wall, including joints and junctions to abutting construction, to control air movement through the wall.

## 1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Review air-barrier requirements and installation, special details, mockups, air-leakage and bond testing, air-barrier protection, and work scheduling that covers air barriers.

## 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include manufacturer's written instructions for evaluating, preparing, and treating each substrate; technical data; dry film thickness; and tested physical and performance properties of products.
- B. Shop Drawings: For air-barrier assemblies.
  - 1. Show locations and extent of air-barrier materials, accessories, and assemblies specific to Project conditions.
  - 2. Include details for substrate joints and cracks, counterflashing strips, penetrations, inside and outside corners, terminations, and tie-ins with adjoining construction.
  - 3. Include details of interfaces with other materials that form part of air barrier.

## 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer. Include list of ABAA-certified installers and supervisors employed by Installer, who work on Project.
- B. Product Certificates: From air-barrier manufacturer, certifying compatibility of air barriers and accessory materials with Project materials that connect to or that come in contact with the barrier.
- C. Product Test Reports: For each air-barrier assembly, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- D. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.
  - 1. Installer shall be licensed by ABAA according to ABAA's Quality Assurance Program and shall employ ABAA-certified installers and supervisors on Project.
- B. Mockups: Build mockups to set quality standards for materials and execution and for preconstruction testing.
  - 1. Build integrated mockups of exterior wall assembly as indicated on Drawings, incorporating backup wall construction, external cladding, window, storefront, door frame and sill, insulation, ties and other penetrations, and flashing to demonstrate surface preparation, crack and joint treatment, application of air barriers, and sealing of gaps, terminations, and penetrations of air-barrier assembly.
    - a. Coordinate construction of mockups to permit inspection and testing of air barrier before external insulation and cladding are installed.
    - b. Include junction with roofing membrane, building corner condition.
    - c. If Architect determines mockups do not comply with requirements, reconstruct mockups and apply air barrier until mockups are approved.
  - 2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
  - 3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

## 1.8 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Testing Service: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform preconstruction testing on field mockups.
- B. Mockup Testing: Air-barrier assemblies shall comply with performance requirements indicated, as evidenced by reports based on mockup testing by a qualified testing agency.

1. Air-Leakage-Location Testing: Mockups will be tested for evidence of air leakage according to ASTM E 1186, chamber pressurization or depressurization with smoke tracers.
2. Air-Leakage-Volume Testing: Mockups will be tested for air-leakage rate according to ASTM E 783 or ASTM E 2357.
3. Adhesion Testing: Mockups will be tested for required air-barrier adhesion to substrate according to ASTM D 4541.
4. Notify Architect seven days in advance of the dates and times when mockups will be tested.

## 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Remove and replace liquid materials that cannot be applied within their stated shelf life.
- B. Protect stored materials from direct sunlight.

## 1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Apply air barrier within the range of ambient and substrate temperatures recommended in writing by air-barrier manufacturer.
  1. Protect substrates from environmental conditions that affect air-barrier performance.
  2. Do not apply air barrier to a damp or wet substrate or during snow, rain, fog, or mist.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain primary air-barrier materials and air-barrier accessories from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. VOC Content: 100 g/L or less.
- C. Low-Emitting Materials: Products shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Air-Barrier Performance: Air-barrier assembly and seals with adjacent construction shall be capable of performing as a continuous air barrier and as a liquid-water drainage plane flashed to discharge to the exterior incidental condensation or water penetration. Air-barrier assemblies shall be capable of accommodating substrate movement and of sealing substrate expansion and control joints, construction material changes, penetrations, tie-ins to installed waterproofing, and transitions at perimeter conditions without deterioration and air leakage exceeding specified limits.
- B. Air-Barrier Assembly Air Leakage: Maximum 0.04 cfm/sq. ft. of surface area at 1.57 lbf/sq. ft., when tested according to ASTM E 2357.

## 2.3 VAPOR PERMEABLE AIR BARRIER

- A. Vapor-Permeable Air Barrier: Modified bituminous or synthetic polymer membrane with an installed dry film thickness, according to manufacturer's written instructions, of 35 mils or thicker over smooth, void-free substrates.
1. Synthetic Polymer Type:
    - a. Basis of Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Henry Company; Air-Bloc 31MR.
    - b. Subject to Subject to compliance with requirements, other available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
      - 1) Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing Inc.
      - 2) Meadows, W. R., Inc.
      - 3) Tremco Incorporated, an RPM company.
- B. Physical and Performance Properties:
1. Color: Gray
  2. Watertightness (CAN/CGSB-37.58-M86): Pass
  3. Solids Content:
    - a. By Weight: 60%
  4. Service Temperature:
    - a. Low Temperature: -40 degrees F (-40 degrees C)
    - b. High Temperature: 158 degrees F (70 degrees C)
  5. Tensile Strength (ASTM D412): 137 psi (950 kPa)
  6. Elongation (ASTM D412): 1000%
  7. Nail Sealability (ASTM D1970): Pass
  8. VOC Content: 15 grams/liter max.
  9. Water Vapor Permeance (ASTM E96 B) @ 40 mils nominal dry film: 21 perms
  10. Air Permeability:
    - a. Assembly Air Leakage (ASTM E2357): Pass
    - b. Building Material (ASTM E2178): 0.0001 cfm/ft<sup>2</sup> (0.0002 L/s.m<sup>2</sup>)
  11. Chemical Resistance: Resists salt solutions, mild acids and alkalis. Non-resistant to oils, grease or solvents
  12. Fire Testing (NFPA 285): Complies in various assemblies
  13. Flame Spread/Smoke Development (ASTM E84): 10/60
  14. Resistance to Mold, Mildew, and Fungal Growth (ASTM D5590): No growth.

## 2.4 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. Requirement: Provide primers, transition strips, termination strips, joint reinforcing fabric and strips, joint sealants, counterflashing strips, flashing sheets and metal termination bars, termination mastic, substrate patching materials, adhesives, tapes, foam sealants, lap sealants, and other accessory materials that are recommended in writing by air-barrier manufacturer to

produce a complete air-barrier assembly and that are compatible with primary air-barrier material and adjacent construction to which they may seal.

- B. Primer: Liquid waterborne primer recommended for substrate by air-barrier material manufacturer.
- C. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304, 0.0187-inch-thick, and Series 300 stainless-steel fasteners.
- D. Preformed Silicone Extrusion: Manufacturer's standard system consisting of cured low-modulus silicone extrusion, sized to fit opening widths, with a single-component, neutral-curing, Class 100/50 (low-modulus) silicone sealant for bonding extrusions to substrates.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Dow Corning Corporation.
    - b. GE Construction Sealants; Momentive Performance Materials Inc.
    - c. Pecora Corporation.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Verify that substrates are sound and free of oil, grease, dirt, excess mortar, or other contaminants.
  - 2. Verify that substrates have cured and aged for minimum time recommended in writing by air-barrier manufacturer.
  - 3. Verify that substrates are visibly dry and free of moisture. Test concrete substrates for capillary moisture by plastic sheet method according to ASTM D 4263.
  - 4. Verify that masonry joints are flush and completely filled with mortar.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 SURFACE PREPARATION

- A. Clean, prepare, treat, fill, and seal substrate and joints and cracks in substrate according to manufacturer's written instructions and details. Provide clean, dust-free, and dry substrate for air-barrier application.
- B. Mask off adjoining surfaces not covered by air barrier to prevent spillage and overspray affecting other construction.
- C. Remove grease, oil, bitumen, form-release agents, paints, curing compounds, and other penetrating contaminants or film-forming coatings from concrete.
- D. Remove fins, ridges, mortar, and other projections and fill honeycomb, aggregate pockets, holes, and other voids in concrete with substrate-patching material.

- E. Remove excess mortar from masonry ties, shelf angles, and other obstructions.
- F. At changes in substrate plane, apply sealant or termination mastic beads at sharp corners and edges to form a smooth transition from one plane to another.
- G. Cover gaps in substrate plane and form a smooth transition from one substrate plane to another with stainless-steel sheet mechanically fastened to structural framing to provide continuous support for air barrier.
- H. Bridge isolation joints, expansion joints and discontinuous wall-to-wall, deck-to-wall, and deck-to-deck joints with air-barrier accessory material that accommodates joint movement according to manufacturer's written instructions and details.

### 3.3 ACCESSORIES INSTALLATION

- A. Install accessory materials according to air-barrier manufacturer's written instructions and details to form a seal with adjacent construction and ensure continuity of air and water barrier.
  - 1. Coordinate the installation of air barrier with installation of roofing membrane and base flashing to ensure continuity of air barrier with roofing membrane.
  - 2. Install transition strip on roofing membrane or base flashing so that a minimum of 3 inches of coverage is achieved over each substrate.
  - 3. Unless manufacturer recommends in writing against priming, apply primer to substrates at required rate and allow it to dry.
  - 4. Apply primer to substrates at required rate and allow it to dry. Limit priming to areas that will be covered by air-barrier material on same day. Reprime areas exposed for more than 24 hours.
- B. Connect and seal exterior wall air-barrier material continuously to roofing-membrane air barrier, concrete below-grade structures, floor-to-floor construction, exterior glazing and window systems, glazed curtain-wall systems, storefront systems, exterior louvers, exterior door framing, and other construction used in exterior wall openings, using accessory materials.
- C. At end of each working day, seal top edge of strips and transition strips to substrate with termination mastic.
- D. Apply joint sealants forming part of air-barrier assembly within manufacturer's recommended application temperature ranges. Consult manufacturer when sealant cannot be applied within these temperature ranges.
- E. Wall Openings: Prime concealed, perimeter frame surfaces of windows, curtain walls, storefronts, and doors. Apply transition strip so that a minimum of 3 inches of coverage is achieved over each substrate. Maintain 3 inches of full contact over firm bearing to perimeter frames, with not less than 1 inch of full contact.
  - 1. Transition Strip: Roll firmly to enhance adhesion.
- F. Fill gaps in perimeter frame surfaces of windows, curtain walls, storefronts, and doors, and miscellaneous penetrations of air-barrier material with foam sealant.
- G. Seal strips and transition strips around masonry reinforcing or ties and penetrations with termination mastic.
- H. Seal top of through-wall flashings to air barrier with an additional 6-inch-wide, transition strip.



- I. Seal exposed edges of strips at seams, cuts, penetrations, and terminations not concealed by metal counterflashings or ending in reglets with termination mastic.
- J. Repair punctures, voids, and deficient lapped seams in strips and transition strips. Slit and flatten fishmouths and blisters. Patch with transition strips extending 6 inches beyond repaired areas in strip direction.

### 3.4 PRIMARY AIR-BARRIER MATERIAL INSTALLATION

- A. Apply air-barrier material to form a seal with strips and transition strips and to achieve a continuous air barrier according to air-barrier manufacturer's written instructions and details. Apply air-barrier material within manufacturer's recommended application temperature ranges.
  - 1. Unless manufacturer recommends in writing against priming, apply primer to substrates at required rate and allow it to dry.
  - 2. Limit priming to areas that will be covered by air-barrier material on same day. Reprime areas exposed for more than 24 hours.
  - 3. Where multiple prime coats are needed to achieve required bond, allow adequate drying time between coats.
- B. Air Barriers: Apply continuous unbroken air-barrier material to substrates according to the following thickness. Apply air-barrier material in full contact around protrusions such as masonry ties.
  - 1. Vapor-Permeable, Air Barrier: Total dry film thickness as recommended in writing by manufacturer to comply with performance requirements, but not less than 35 mils, applied in two equal coats.
- C. Do not cover air barrier until it has been tested and inspected by testing agency.
- D. Correct deficiencies in or remove air barrier that does not comply with requirements; repair substrates and reapply air-barrier components.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. ABAA Quality Assurance Program: Perform examinations, preparation, installation, testing, and inspections under ABAA's Quality Assurance Program.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Inspections: Air-barrier materials, accessories, and installation are subject to inspection for compliance with requirements. Inspections may include the following:
  - 1. Continuity of air-barrier system has been achieved throughout the building envelope with no gaps or holes.
  - 2. Air-barrier dry film thickness.
  - 3. Continuous structural support of air-barrier system has been provided.
  - 4. Masonry and concrete surfaces are smooth, clean, and free of cavities, protrusions, and mortar droppings.
  - 5. Site conditions for application temperature and dryness of substrates have been maintained.
  - 6. Maximum exposure time of materials to UV deterioration has not been exceeded.
  - 7. Surfaces have been primed, if applicable.

8. Laps in strips and transition strips have complied with minimum requirements and have been shingled in the correct direction (or mastic has been applied on exposed edges), with no fishmouths.
9. Termination mastic has been applied on cut edges.
10. Strips and transition strips have been firmly adhered to substrate.
11. Compatible materials have been used.
12. Transitions at changes in direction and structural support at gaps have been provided.
13. Connections between assemblies (air-barrier and sealants) have complied with requirements for cleanliness, surface preparation and priming, structural support, integrity, and continuity of seal.
14. All penetrations have been sealed.

D. Tests: As determined by testing agency from among the following tests:

1. Air-Leakage-Location Testing: Air-barrier assemblies will be tested for evidence of air leakage according to ASTM E 1186, chamber pressurization or depressurization with smoke tracers.
2. Air-Leakage-Volume Testing: Air-barrier assemblies will be tested for air-leakage rate according to ASTM E 783 or ASTM E 2357.
3. Adhesion Testing: Air-barrier assemblies will be tested for required adhesion to substrate according to ASTM D 4541 for each 600 sq. ft. of installed air barrier or part thereof.

E. Air barriers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

1. Apply additional air-barrier material, according to manufacturer's written instructions, where inspection results indicate insufficient thickness.
2. Remove and replace deficient air-barrier components for retesting as specified above.

F. Repair damage to air barriers caused by testing; follow manufacturer's written instructions.

G. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Protect air-barrier system from damage during application and remainder of construction period, according to manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Protect air barrier from exposure to UV light and harmful weather exposure as recommended in writing by manufacturer. If exposed to these conditions for longer than recommended, remove and replace air barrier or install additional, full-thickness, air-barrier application after repairing and preparing the overexposed materials according to air-barrier manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Protect air barrier from contact with incompatible materials and sealants not approved by air-barrier manufacturer.

B. Clean spills, stains, and soiling from construction that would be exposed in the completed work using cleaning agents and procedures recommended in writing by manufacturer of affected construction.

C. Remove masking materials after installation.

END OF SECTION 07 27 26

## SECTION 07 42 13.23 - METAL COMPOSITE MATERIAL WALL PANELS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes metal composite material wall panels.

## 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, metal composite material panel Installer, metal composite material panel manufacturer's representative, structural-support Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects metal composite material panels, including installers of doors, windows, and louvers.
  - 2. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
  - 3. Review methods and procedures related to metal composite material panel installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 4. Examine support conditions for compliance with requirements, including alignment between and attachment to structural members.
  - 5. Review flashings, special siding details, wall penetrations, openings, and condition of other construction that affect metal composite material panels.
  - 6. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance, certificates, and tests and inspections if applicable.
  - 7. Review temporary protection requirements for metal composite material panel assembly during and after installation.
  - 8. Review procedures for repair of panels damaged after installation.
  - 9. Document proceedings, including corrective measures and actions required, and furnish copy of record to each participant.

## 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type of panel and accessory.
- B. Shop Drawings
  - 1. Include fabrication and installation layouts of metal composite material panels; details of edge conditions, joints, panel profiles, corners, anchorages, attachment assembly, trim, flashings, closures, and accessories; and special details. Include comprehensive

- engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
2. Accessories: Include details of the flashing, trim and anchorage, at a scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of size indicated below.
1. Metal Composite Material Panels: 12 inches long by actual panel width. Include fasteners, closures, and other metal composite material panel accessories.
- D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For metal wall panel assembly indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
- 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
  - B. Product Test Reports: For each product, tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
  - C. Field quality-control reports.
  - D. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.
- 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS
- A. Maintenance Data: For metal composite material panels to include in maintenance manuals.
- 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.
  - B. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
    1. Build mockup of typical metal composite material panel assembly as shown on Drawings, including corner, soffits, supports, attachments, and accessories.
    2. Water-Spray Test: Conduct water-spray test of mockup of metal composite material panel assembly, testing for water penetration according to AAMA 501.2.
    3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
    4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

## 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver components, metal composite material panels, and other manufactured items so as not to be damaged or deformed. Package metal composite material panels for protection during transportation and handling.
- B. Unload, store, and erect metal composite material panels in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.
- C. Stack metal composite material panels horizontally on platforms or pallets, covered with suitable weathertight and ventilated covering. Store metal composite material panels to ensure dryness, with positive slope for drainage of water. Do not store metal composite material panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.
- D. Retain strippable protective covering on metal composite material panels during installation.

## 1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit assembly of metal composite material panels to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.

## 1.10 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate metal composite material panel installation with rain drainage work, flashing, trim, construction of soffits, and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

## 1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of metal composite material panel systems that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Structural failures including rupturing, cracking, or puncturing.
    - b. Deterioration of metals and other materials beyond normal weathering.
  - 2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Warranty on Panel Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace metal composite material panels that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
    - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
    - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
    - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
  - 2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design metal wall panel assembly, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. Structural Performance: Provide metal composite material panel systems capable of withstanding the effects of the following loads, based on testing according to ASTM E 330:
  - 1. Wind Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Other Design Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
- C. Air Infiltration: Air leakage of not more than 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. when tested according to ASTM E 283 at the following test-pressure difference:
  - 1. Test-Pressure Difference: 6.24 lbf/sq. ft..
- D. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: No water penetration when tested according to ASTM E 331 at the following test-pressure difference:
  - 1. Test-Pressure Difference: 6.24 lbf/sq. ft..
- E. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
  - 1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.
- F. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with ASTM E 119; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Indicate design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another qualified testing agency.
- G. Fire Propagation Characteristics: Metal composite material wall panel system passes NFPA 285 testing.

## 2.2 METAL COMPOSITE MATERIAL WALL PANELS

- A. Metal Composite Material Wall Panel Systems: Provide factory-formed and -assembled, metal composite material wall panels fabricated from two metal facings that are bonded to a solid, extruded thermoplastic core; formed into profile for installation method indicated. Include attachment assembly components, panel stiffeners, and accessories required for weathertight system.
  - 1. Alucobond, 3A Composites USA, Inc.
  - 2. Alpolc Materials, Mitsubishi Plastics Composites America, Inc.
  - 3. Reynobond, Alcoa Architectural Products, Inc.

- B. Aluminum-Faced Composite Wall Panels: Formed with 0.020-inch-thick, coil-coated aluminum sheet facings.
1. Panel Thickness: 4 mm.
  2. Core: Fire-rated core.
  3. Exterior Finishes:
    - a. Clear anodized.
    - b. Wood look fluoropolymer.
  4. Bond Strength: 22.5 in-lb/in. when tested for bond integrity in accordance with ASTM D1781.
  5. Fire Performance: Flame-spread index less than 25 and smoke-developed index less than 450, in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.
- C. Attachment Assembly Components: Formed from extruded aluminum.

### 2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Miscellaneous Metal Subframing and Furring: ASTM C 645, cold-formed, metallic-coated steel sheet ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 coating designation or ASTM A 792/A 792M, Class AZ50 aluminum-zinc-alloy coating designation unless otherwise indicated. Provide manufacturer's standard sections as required for support and alignment of metal composite material panel system.
- B. Panel Accessories: Provide components required for a complete, weathertight panel system including trim, copings, fasciae, mullions, sills, corner units, clips, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of metal composite material panels unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Flashing and Trim: Provide flashing and trim formed from same material as metal composite material panels as required to seal against weather and to provide finished appearance. Locations include, but are not limited to, bases, drips, sills, jambs, corners, endwalls, framed openings, rakes, fasciae, parapet caps, soffits, reveals, and fillers. Finish flashing and trim with same finish system as adjacent metal composite material panels.
- D. Panel Fasteners: Self-tapping screws designed to withstand design loads. Provide exposed fasteners with heads matching color of metal composite material panels by means of plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide EPDM or PVC sealing washers for exposed fasteners.
- E. Panel Sealants: ASTM C 920; elastomeric polyurethane or silicone sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in metal composite material panels and remain weathertight; and as recommended in writing by metal composite material panel manufacturer.
1. Provide sealant and backer rod at all skyward facing joints.

### 2.4 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate and finish metal composite material panels and accessories at the factory, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes, as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements demonstrated by laboratory testing. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.

- B. Fabricate metal composite material panel joints with factory-installed captive gaskets or separator strips that provide a weathertight seal and prevent metal-to-metal contact, and that minimize noise from movements.
- C. Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim: Fabricate flashing and trim to comply with manufacturer's recommendations and recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated.
  - 1. Form exposed sheet metal accessories that are without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that are true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
  - 2. Seams for Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints for additional strength.
  - 3. Seams for Other Than Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams in accessories with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
  - 4. Sealed Joints: Form non-expansion, but movable, joints in metal to accommodate sealant and to comply with SMACNA standards.
  - 5. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces of accessories exposed to view.
  - 6. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
    - a. Size: As recommended by SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" or metal wall panel manufacturer for application but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

## 2.5 FINISHES

- A. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- C. Aluminum Panels and Accessories:
  - 1. Anodized Aluminum Finish: Clear in accordance with AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker
  - 2. High-Performance Organic Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2605 and containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
    - a. Color and Gloss: Custom wood look finish.



## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, metal composite material panel supports, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Examine wall framing to verify that girts, angles, channels, studs, and other structural panel support members and anchorage have been installed within alignment tolerances required by metal composite material wall panel manufacturer.
  - 2. Examine wall sheathing to verify that sheathing joints are supported by framing or blocking and that installation is within flatness tolerances required by metal composite material wall panel manufacturer.
    - a. Verify that air- or water-resistive barriers have been installed over sheathing or backing substrate to prevent air infiltration or water penetration.
- B. Examine roughing-in for components and assemblies penetrating metal composite material panels to verify actual locations of penetrations relative to seam locations of metal composite material panels before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Miscellaneous Supports: Install subframing, furring, and other miscellaneous panel support members and anchorages according to ASTM C 754 and metal composite material panel manufacturer's written recommendations.

## 3.3 METAL COMPOSITE MATERIAL PANEL INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install metal composite material panels according to manufacturer's written instructions in orientation, sizes, and locations indicated on Drawings. Install panels perpendicular to supports unless otherwise indicated. Anchor metal composite material panels and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
  - 1. Shim or otherwise plumb substrates receiving metal composite material panels.
  - 2. Flash and seal metal composite material panels at perimeter of all openings. Fasten with self-tapping screws. Do not begin installation until air- or water-resistive barriers and flashings that will be concealed by metal composite material panels are installed.
  - 3. Install screw fasteners in predrilled holes.
  - 4. Locate and space fastenings in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment.
  - 5. Install flashing and trim as metal composite material panel work proceeds.
  - 6. Locate panel splices over, but not attached to, structural supports. Stagger panel splices and end laps to avoid a four-panel lap splice condition.
  - 7. Align bottoms of metal composite material panels and fasten with blind rivets, bolts, or self-tapping screws. Fasten flashings and trim around openings and similar elements with self-tapping screws.
  - 8. Provide weathertight escutcheons for pipe- and conduit-penetrating panels.

- B. Fasteners:
1. Aluminum Panels: Use aluminum or stainless-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior; use aluminum or galvanized-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.
  2. Copper Panels: Use copper, stainless-steel or hardware-bronze fasteners.
- C. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action as recommended in writing by metal composite material panel manufacturer.
- D. Attachment Assembly, General: Install attachment assembly required to support metal composite material wall panels and to provide a complete weathertight wall system, including subgirts, perimeter extrusions, tracks, drainage channels, panel clips, and anchor channels.
1. Include attachment to supports, panel-to-panel joinery, panel-to-dissimilar-material joinery, and panel-system joint seals.
- E. Installation: Attach metal composite material wall panels to supports at locations, spacings, and with fasteners recommended by manufacturer to achieve performance requirements specified.
1. Dry Seal Systems: Seal horizontal and vertical joints between adjacent metal composite material wall panels with manufacturer's standard gasket system.
  2. Install wall panels to allow individual panels to "free float" and be installed and removed without disturbing adjacent panels.
- F. Accessory Installation: Install accessories with positive anchorage to building and weathertight mounting, and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.
1. Install components required for a complete metal composite material panel assembly including trim, copings, corners, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Provide types indicated by metal composite material panel manufacturer; or, if not indicated, provide types recommended in writing by metal composite material panel manufacturer.
- G. Flashing and Trim: Comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that are permanently watertight.
1. Install exposed flashing and trim that is without buckling and tool marks and that is true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in waterproof performance.
  2. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of 10 feet with no joints allowed within 24 inches of corner or intersection. Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently waterproof, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).

### 3.4 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align metal composite material wall panel units within installed tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet, non-accumulative, on level, plumb, and location lines as indicated, and within 1/8-inch offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform field tests and inspections.
- B. Water-Spray Test: After installation, test area of assembly as directed by Architect for water penetration according to AAMA 501.2.
- C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect completed metal composite material wall panel installation, including accessories.
- D. Metal composite material wall panels will be considered defective if they do not pass test and inspections.
- E. Additional tests and inspections, at Contractor's expense, are performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as metal composite material panels are installed, unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of metal composite material panel installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by metal composite material panel manufacturer. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.
- B. After metal composite material panel installation, clear weep holes and drainage channels of obstructions, dirt, and sealant.
- C. Replace metal composite material panels that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 07 42 13.23



## SECTION 07 54 23 - THERMOPLASTIC POLYOLEFIN (TPO) ROOFING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  1. Thermoplastic polyolefin (TPO) roofing system.
  2. Accessory roofing materials.
  3. Substrate board.
  4. Vapor retarder.
  5. Roof insulation.
  6. Coverboard.
  7. Walkways.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Roofing Terminology: Definitions in ASTM D 1079 and glossary in NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" apply to work of this Section.

## 1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Roofing Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, testing and inspecting agency representative, roofing Installer, roofing system manufacturer's representative, deck Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects roofing, including installers of roof accessories and roof-mounted equipment.
  2. Review methods and procedures related to roofing installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
  3. Review and finalize construction schedule, and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
  4. Examine deck substrate conditions and finishes for compliance with requirements, including flatness and fastening.
  5. Review structural loading limitations of roof deck during and after roofing.
  6. Review base flashings, special roofing details, roof drainage, roof penetrations, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that affects roofing system.
  7. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance and certificates if applicable.
  8. Review temporary protection requirements for roofing system during and after installation.
  9. Review roof observation and repair procedures after roofing installation.

## 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product, including but not limited to the following:
1. Thermoplastic polyolefin (TPO) roofing system.
  2. Accessory roofing materials.
  3. Substrate board.
  4. Vapor retarder.
  5. Roof insulation.
  6. Insulation accessories.
  7. Cover board.
  8. Walkways.
- B. Shop Drawings: For roofing system. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work, including:
1. Layout and thickness of insulation.
  2. Base flashings and membrane termination details.
  3. Flashing details at penetrations.
  4. Tapered insulation layout, thickness, and slopes.
  5. Roof plan showing orientation of steel roof deck and orientation of roof membrane, fastening spacings, and patterns for mechanically fastened roofing system.
  6. Insulation fastening patterns for corner, perimeter, and field-of-roof locations.
  7. Tie-in with adjoining air barrier.
- C. Samples for Verification: For the following products:
1. Roof membrane and flashings, of color required.
  2. Roof insulation.
  3. Walkways, of color required.
- D. Wind Uplift Resistance Submittal: For roofing system, indicating compliance with wind uplift performance requirements.

## 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer and manufacturer.
- B. Manufacturer Certificates:
1. Performance Requirement Certificate: Signed by roof membrane manufacturer, certifying that roofing system complies with requirements specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.
    - a. Submit evidence of compliance with performance requirements.
  2. Special Warranty Certificate: Signed by roof membrane manufacturer, certifying that all materials supplied under this Section are acceptable for special warranty.
- C. Product Test Reports: For roof membrane and insulation, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency, indicating compliance with specified requirements.
- D. Evaluation Reports: For components of roofing system, from ICC-ES.

- E. Field Test Reports:
  - 1. Fastener-pullout test results and manufacturer's revised requirements for fastener patterns.
- F. Field quality-control reports.
- G. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's special warranties.

#### 1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For roofing system to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer that is UL listed for roofing system identical to that used for this Project.
- B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified firm that is approved, authorized, or licensed by roofing system manufacturer to install manufacturer's product and that is eligible to receive manufacturer's special warranty.
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain components for membrane roofing system from same manufacturer as membrane roofing or approved by membrane roofing manufacturer.

#### 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver roofing materials to Project site in original containers with seals unbroken and labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, approval or listing agency markings, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.
- B. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry, protected location and within the temperature range required by roofing system manufacturer. Protect stored liquid material from direct sunlight.
  - 1. Discard and legally dispose of liquid material that cannot be applied within its stated shelf life.
- C. Protect roof insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by sunlight, moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store in a dry location. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
- D. Handle and store roofing materials, and place equipment in a manner to avoid permanent deflection of deck.

#### 1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit roofing system to be installed according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.

## 1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of roofing system that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Special warranty includes roof membrane, base flashings, roof insulation, fasteners, cover boards, substrate board, and other components of roofing system.
  - 2. Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Project Warranty: Submit roofing Installer's warranty, on warranty form at end of this Section, signed by Installer, covering the Work of this Section, including all components of roofing system such as roof membrane, base flashing, roof insulation, fasteners, cover boards, substrate boards, and walkway products, for the following warranty period:
  - 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Installed roofing system and flashings shall withstand specified uplift pressures, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Roof system and flashings shall remain watertight.
  - 1. Accelerated Weathering: Roof membrane shall withstand 2000 hours of exposure when tested according to ASTM G152, ASTM G154, or ASTM G155.
  - 2. Impact Resistance: Roof membrane shall resist impact damage when tested according to ASTM D3746, ASTM D4272, or the "Resistance to Foot Traffic Test" in FM Approvals 4470.
- B. Material Compatibility: Roofing materials shall be compatible with one another and adjacent materials under conditions of service and application required, as demonstrated by roofing manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
- C. Roofing System Design: Provide membrane roofing system that is identical to systems that have been successfully tested by a qualified testing agency to resist the following uplift pressures calculated according to ASCE/SEI 7:
  - 1. Corner Uplift Pressure: As indicated on Structural Drawings.
  - 2. Perimeter Uplift Pressure: As indicated on Structural Drawings.
  - 3. Field-of-Roof Uplift Pressure: As indicated on Structural Drawings.
- D. Energy Performance: Roofing system shall have an initial solar reflectance of not less than 0.70 and an emissivity of not less than 0.75 when tested according to CRRC-1.
- E. Exterior Fire-Test Exposure: ASTM E 108 or UL 790, Class A; for application and roof slopes indicated; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
- F. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with fire-resistance-rated assembly designs indicated. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.



## 2.2 THERMOPLASTIC POLYOLEFIN (TPO) ROOFING

- A. TPO Sheet: ASTM D6878/D6878M, internally fabric- or scrim-reinforced, TPO sheet..
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Carlisle SynTec Incorporated.
    - b. Holcim Elevate (formerly Firestone Building Products).
    - c. GAF Materials Corporation.
    - d. Versico Incorporated.
  2. Source Limitations: Obtain components for roofing system from roof membrane manufacturer or manufacturers approved by roof membrane manufacturer.
  3. Thickness: 60 mils, nominal.
  4. Exposed Face Color: White.

## 2.3 ACCESSORY ROOFING MATERIALS

- A. General: Accessory materials recommended by roofing system manufacturer for intended use and compatible with roofing.
1. Adhesive and Sealants: Comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Sheet Flashing: Manufacturer's standard unreinforced TPO sheet flashing, 55 mils thick, minimum, of same color as TPO sheet.
- C. Prefabricated Pipe Flashings: As recommended by roof membrane manufacturer.
- D. Roof Vents: As recommended by roof membrane manufacturer.
1. Size: Not less than 4-inch diameter.
- E. Bonding Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard.
- F. Slip Sheet: Manufacturer's standard, of thickness required for application.
- G. Metal Termination Bars: Manufacturer's standard, predrilled stainless-steel or aluminum bars, approximately 1 by 1/8 inch thick; with anchors.
- H. Metal Battens: Manufacturer's standard, aluminum-zinc-alloy-coated or zinc-coated steel sheet, approximately 1 inch wide by 0.05 inch thick, prepunched.
- I. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening roofing components to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
- J. Miscellaneous Accessories: Provide pourable sealers, preformed cone and vent sheet flashings, preformed inside and outside corner sheet flashings, T-joint covers, lap sealants, termination reglets, and other accessories.

## 2.4 SUBSTRATE BOARDS

- A. Substrate Board: ASTM C1177/C1177M, glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum board or ASTM C1278/C1278M, fiber-reinforced gypsum board.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Georgia-Pacific Corporation.
    - b. National Gypsum Corporation.
    - c. USG Corporation.
  - 2. Thickness: Type X, 5/8 inch thick.
- B. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening substrate board to roof deck.

## 2.5 VAPOR RETARDER

- A. Rubberized-Asphalt-Sheet Vapor Retarder, Self-Adhering: ASTM D1970/D1970M, polyethylene film laminated to layer of rubberized asphalt adhesive, minimum 40-mil total thickness; maximum permeance rating of 0.1 perm; cold applied, with slip-resisting surface and release paper backing. Provide primer when recommended by vapor retarder manufacturer.

## 2.6 ROOF INSULATION

- A. General: Preformed roof insulation boards manufactured by TPO roof membrane manufacturer.
- B. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, Type II, Class 2, Grade 2, felt or glass-fiber mat facer on both major surfaces.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product by one of the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corporation.
    - b. Holcim Elevate.
    - c. Hunter Panels.
    - d. Johns Manville.
  - 2. Compressive Strength: 20 psi.
  - 3. Size: 48 by 96 inches.
  - 4. Thicknesses: As indicated on Drawings.
- C. Tapered Insulation: Provide factory-tapered insulation boards fabricated to slope of 1/4 inch per 12 inches unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Provide preformed saddles, crickets, tapered edge strips, and other insulation shapes where indicated for sloping to drain. Fabricate to slopes indicated.

## 2.7 INSULATION ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Roof insulation accessories recommended by insulation manufacturer for intended use and compatibility with roofing.

- B. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Global 4470, designed for fastening roof insulation and cover boards to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
- A. Cover Board: ASTM C 1177/C 1177M, glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum substrate, Type X, 1/2 inch thick or greater as required to meet manufacturer's wind uplift and warranty requirements.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Georgia-Pacific Corporation; Dens Deck.

## 2.8 WALKWAYS

- A. Flexible Walkways: Factory-formed, nonporous, heavy-duty, slip-resisting, surface-textured walkway pads, approximately 3/16 inch thick and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
  - 1. Size: Approximately 36 by 60 inches.
  - 2. Color: Contrasting with roof membrane.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work:
  - 1. Verify that roof openings and penetrations are in place, curbs are set and braced, and roof-drain bodies are securely clamped in place.
  - 2. Verify that wood blocking, curbs, and nailers are securely anchored to roof deck at penetrations and terminations and that nailers match thicknesses of insulation.
  - 3. Verify that surface plane flatness and fastening of steel roof deck complies with requirements in Section 05 31 00 "Steel Decking."
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrate of dust, debris, moisture, and other substances detrimental to roofing installation according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Remove sharp projections.
- B. Prevent materials from entering and clogging roof drains and conductors and from spilling or migrating onto surfaces of other construction. Remove roof-drain plugs when no work is taking place or when rain is forecast.
- C. Perform fastener-pullout tests according to roof system manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Submit test result within 24 hours after performing tests.

- a. Include manufacturer's requirements for any revision to previously submitted fastener patterns required to achieve specified wind uplift requirements.

### 3.3 ROOFING INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install roofing system according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions, FM Approvals' RoofNav listed roof assembly requirements, and FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-29.
- B. Complete terminations and base flashings and provide temporary seals to prevent water from entering completed sections of roofing system at end of workday or when rain is forecast. Remove and discard temporary seals before beginning Work on adjoining roofing.
- C. Coordinate installation and transition of roofing system component serving as an air barrier with air barrier specified under Section 07 27 26 "Fluid-Applied Membrane Air Barriers."

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF SUBSTRATE BOARD

- A. Install substrate board with long joints in continuous straight lines, with end joints staggered not less than 24 inches in adjacent rows.
  1. At steel roof decks, install substrate board at right angle to flutes of deck.
    - a. Locate end joints over crests of steel roof deck.
  2. Tightly butt substrate boards together.
  3. Cut substrate board to fit tight around penetrations and projections, and to fit tight to intersecting sloping roof decks.
  4. Fasten substrate board to top flanges of steel deck according to recommendations in FM Approvals' RoofNav listed roof assembly requirements for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification and FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-29.
  5. Fasten substrate board to top flanges of steel deck to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof according to roofing system manufacturers' written instructions.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF VAPOR RETARDER

- A. Self-Adhering-Sheet Vapor Retarder: Prime substrate if required by manufacturer. Install self-adhering-sheet vapor retarder over area to receive vapor retarder, side and end lapping each sheet a minimum of 3-1/2 and 6 inches, respectively.
  1. Extend vertically up parapet walls and projections to a minimum height equal to height of insulation and cover board.
  2. Seal laps by rolling.

### 3.6 INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate installing roofing system components so insulation is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at the end of the workday.

- B. Comply with roofing system and insulation manufacturer's written instructions for installing roof insulation.
- C. Installation Over Substrate Board on Metal Decking:
1. Install base layer of insulation with end joints staggered not less than 12 inches in adjacent rows.
    - a. Trim insulation neatly to fit around penetrations and projections, and to fit tight to intersecting sloping roof decks.
    - b. Make joints between adjacent insulation boards not more than 1/4 inch in width.
    - c. At internal roof drains, slope insulation to create a square drain sump with each side equal to the diameter of the drain bowl plus 24 inches.
      - 1) Trim insulation so that water flow is unrestricted.
    - d. Fill gaps exceeding 1/4 inch with insulation.
    - e. Cut and fit insulation within 1/4 inch of nailers, projections, and penetrations.
    - f. Mechanically attach base layer of insulation and substrate board using mechanical fasteners specifically designed and sized for fastening specified board-type roof insulation to metal decks.
      - 1) Fasten insulation according to requirements in FM Approvals' RoofNav for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
    - g. Fasten insulation to resist specified uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.
  2. Install upper layers of insulation and tapered insulation with joints of each layer offset not less than 12 inches from previous layer of insulation.
    - a. Install with long joints continuous and with end joints staggered not less than 12 inches in adjacent rows.
    - b. Trim insulation neatly to fit around penetrations and projections, and to fit tight to intersecting sloping roof decks.
    - c. Make joints between adjacent insulation boards not more than 1/4 inch in width.
    - d. At internal roof drains, slope insulation to create a square drain sump with each side equal to the diameter of the drain bowl plus 24 inches.
      - 1) Trim insulation so that water flow is unrestricted.
    - e. Fill gaps exceeding 1/4 inch with insulation.
    - f. Cut and fit insulation within 1/4 inch of nailers, projections, and penetrations.
    - g. Adhere each layer of insulation to substrate using adhesive according to FM Approvals' RoofNav listed roof assembly requirements for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification and FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-29, as follows:
      - 1) Set each layer of insulation in a uniform coverage of full-spread insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.

### 3.7 INSTALLATION OF COVER BOARDS

- A. Install cover boards over insulation with long joints in continuous straight lines with end joints staggered between rows. Offset joints of insulation below a minimum of 6 inches in each direction.
  - 1. Trim cover board neatly to fit around penetrations and projections, and to fit tight to intersecting sloping roof decks.
  - 2. At internal roof drains, conform to slope of drain sump.
    - a. Trim cover board so that water flow is unrestricted.
  - 3. Cut and fit cover board tight to nailers, projections, and penetrations.
  - 4. Adhere cover board to substrate using adhesive according to FM Approvals' RoofNav listed roof assembly requirements for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification and FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-29, as follows:
    - a. Set cover board in a uniform coverage of full-spread insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
- B. Place plates on insulation in required fastening patterns to achieve FM rating and secure in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
  - a. Install plates and fasteners tight and flat to substrate with no dimpling, and with fastener extending 1 inch minimum into roof deck; do not overdrive fasteners.

### 3.8 INSTALLATION OF ADHERED ROOF MEMBRANE

- A. Adhere roof membrane over area to receive roofing according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Unroll roof membrane and allow to relax before installing.
- C. Start installation of roofing in presence of roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel.
- D. Accurately align roof membrane, and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required by manufacturer. Stagger end laps.
- E. Bonding Adhesive: Apply to substrate and underside of roof membrane at rate required by manufacturer, and allow to partially dry before installing roof membrane. Do not apply to splice area of roof membrane.
- F. In addition to adhering, mechanically fasten roof membrane securely at terminations, penetrations, and perimeter of roofing.
- G. Apply roof membrane with side laps shingled with slope of roof deck where possible.
- H. Seams: Clean seam areas, overlap roof membrane, and hot-air weld side and end laps of roof membrane and sheet flashings, to ensure a watertight seam installation.
  - 1. Test lap edges with probe to verify seam weld continuity. Apply lap sealant to seal cut edges of roof membrane and sheet flashings.
  - 2. Verify field strength of seams a minimum of twice daily, and repair seam sample areas.

3. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in roof membrane that do not comply with requirements.
  - I. Spread sealant bed over deck-drain flange at roof drains, and securely seal roof membrane in place with clamping ring

### 3.9 INSTALLATION OF BASE FLASHING

- A. Install sheet flashings and preformed flashing accessories, and adhere to substrates according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Apply bonding adhesive to substrate and underside of sheet flashing at required rate, and allow to partially dry. Do not apply to seam area of flashing.
- C. Flash penetrations and field-formed inside and outside corners with cured or uncured sheet flashing.
- D. Clean seam areas, overlap, and firmly roll sheet flashings into the adhesive. Hot-air weld side and end laps to ensure a watertight seam installation.
- E. Terminate and seal top of sheet flashings and mechanically anchor to substrate through termination bars.

### 3.10 INSTALLATION OF WALKWAYS

- A. Flexible Walkways:
  1. Install walkway at the following locations:
    - a. Perimeter of each rooftop unit.
    - b. Between each rooftop unit location, creating a continuous path connecting rooftop unit locations.
    - c. Between each roof hatch and each rooftop unit location or path connecting rooftop unit locations.
    - d. Top and bottom of each roof access ladder.
    - e. Between each roof access ladder and each rooftop unit location or path connecting rooftop unit locations.
    - f. Locations indicated on Drawings.
    - g. As required by roof membrane manufacturer's warranty requirements.
  2. Provide 6-inch clearance between adjoining pads.
  3. Heat weld to substrate or adhere walkway products to substrate with compatible adhesive according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and to inspect substrate conditions, surface preparation, roof membrane application, sheet flashings, protection, and drainage components, and to furnish reports to Architect.
- B. Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform the following tests:

1. Low-Voltage Electrical Conductance Testing: Testing agency shall survey entire roof area and flashings to locate discontinuity in the roof membrane using an exposed metal electrical loop to create an electrical field tested with handheld probes or a scanning platform with integral perimeter electrical loops creating a complete electrical field.
    - a. Perform tests before overlying construction is placed.
    - b. After testing, repair areas of discontinuities, repeat tests, and make further repairs until roofing and flashing installations are contiguous.
      - 1) Cost of retesting is Contractor's responsibility.
    - c. Testing agency shall prepare survey report indicating locations of initial discontinuities, if any.
  - C. Final Roof Inspection: Upon completion of the Work and prior to final payment, the membrane manufacturer's representative, in the presence of the Owner and Architect, shall inspect Work. Discrepancies shall be recorded and immediately rectified. Final payment will not be issued until the manufacturer's representative has given his approval for Work and closeout submittals, including roof maintenance manual and warranties, have been received by the Architect.
    1. Notify Architect or Owner 48 hours in advance of the date and time of inspection.
  - D. Verify field strength of seams a minimum of twice daily, according to manufacturer's written instructions, and repair seam sample areas.
  - E. Repair or remove and replace components of roofing system where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
  - F. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine if replaced or additional work complies with specified requirements.
- 3.12 PROTECTING AND CLEANING
- A. Protect roofing system from damage and wear during remainder of construction period. When remaining construction does not affect or endanger roofing, inspect roofing for deterioration and damage, describing its nature and extent in a written report, with copies to Architect and Owner.
  - B. Correct deficiencies in or remove roofing system that does not comply with requirements, repair substrates, and repair or reinstall roofing system to a condition free of damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion and according to warranty requirements.
  - C. Provide daily cleaning to include, but not limited to: Picking up and storing of all loose items, sweeping clean roof surface and removal and cleaning of all stains and spills prior to stopping of work for the day.
  - D. Clean overspray and spillage from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.
- 3.13 PATCHING LIMITATIONS
- A. Patching Restrictions:



1. No more than five (5) in-field patches and no more than a total of 4 linear feet of seam patching per 100 sq. ft. of roof's total square footage and as determined by Architect.
2. Seam patches shall be minimum 8 inches wide by 24 inches long strip patch.
3. Manufacturer's required circular seam intersection patches shall not be considered when calculating number of patches.
4. Typical patch size shall be minimum 6 inches square with rounded corners or as recommended by the roof membrane manufacturer.
5. The use of large size patches for covering multiple penetrations to avoid exceeding the limits set forth above shall not be permitted.
6. The use of large patches in excess of 24 by 36 inches shall be justification for replacement or for providing overlay membrane.

### 3.14 ROOFING INSTALLER'S WARRANTY

- A. WHEREAS \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_, herein called the "Roofing Installer," has performed roofing and associated work ("work") on the following project:
1. Owner: **<Insert name of Owner>**.
  2. Address: **<Insert address>**.
  3. Building Name/Type: **<Insert information>**.
  4. Address: **<Insert address>**.
  5. Area of Work: **<Insert information>**.
  6. Acceptance Date: \_\_\_\_\_.
  7. Warranty Period: **<Insert time>**.
  8. Expiration Date: \_\_\_\_\_.
- B. AND WHEREAS Roofing Installer has contracted (either directly with Owner or indirectly as a subcontractor) to warrant said work against leaks and faulty or defective materials and workmanship for designated Warranty Period,
- C. NOW THEREFORE Roofing Installer hereby warrants, subject to terms and conditions herein set forth, that during Warranty Period he will, at his own cost and expense, make or cause to be made such repairs to or replacements of said work as are necessary to correct faulty and defective work and as are necessary to maintain said work in a watertight condition.
- D. This Warranty is made subject to the following terms and conditions:
1. Specifically excluded from this Warranty are damages to work and other parts of the building, and to building contents, caused by:
    - a. lightning;
    - b. peak gust wind speed exceeding **<Insert mph>**;
    - c. fire;
    - d. failure of roofing system substrate, including cracking, settlement, excessive deflection, deterioration, and decomposition;
    - e. faulty construction of parapet walls, copings, chimneys, skylights, vents, equipment supports, and other edge conditions and penetrations of the work;
    - f. vapor condensation on bottom of roofing; and
    - g. activity on roofing by others, including construction contractors, maintenance personnel, other persons, and animals, whether authorized or unauthorized by Owner.

2. When work has been damaged by any of foregoing causes, Warranty shall be null and void until such damage has been repaired by Roofing Installer and until cost and expense thereof have been paid by Owner or by another responsible party so designated.
3. Roofing Installer is responsible for damage to work covered by this Warranty but is not liable for consequential damages to building or building contents resulting from leaks or faults or defects of work.
4. During Warranty Period, if Owner allows alteration of work by anyone other than Roofing Installer, including cutting, patching, and maintenance in connection with penetrations, attachment of other work, and positioning of anything on roof, this Warranty shall become null and void on date of said alterations, but only to the extent said alterations affect work covered by this Warranty. If Owner engages Roofing Installer to perform said alterations, Warranty shall not become null and void unless Roofing Installer, before starting said work, shall have notified Owner in writing, showing reasonable cause for claim, that said alterations would likely damage or deteriorate work, thereby reasonably justifying a limitation or termination of this Warranty.
5. During Warranty Period, if original use of roof is changed and it becomes used for, but was not originally specified for, a promenade, work deck, spray-cooled surface, flooded basin, or other use or service more severe than originally specified, this Warranty shall become null and void on date of said change, but only to the extent said change affects work covered by this Warranty.
6. Owner shall promptly notify Roofing Installer of observed, known, or suspected leaks, defects, or deterioration and shall afford reasonable opportunity for Roofing Installer to inspect work and to examine evidence of such leaks, defects, or deterioration.
7. This Warranty is recognized to be the only warranty of Roofing Installer on said work and shall not operate to restrict or cut off Owner from other remedies and resources lawfully available to Owner in cases of roofing failure. Specifically, this Warranty shall not operate to relieve Roofing Installer of responsibility for performance of original work according to requirements of the Contract Documents, regardless of whether Contract was a contract directly with Owner or a subcontract with Owner's General Contractor.

E. IN WITNESS THEREOF, this instrument has been duly executed this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_.

1. Authorized Signature: \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Name: \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Title: \_\_\_\_\_.

END OF SECTION 07 54 23

## SECTION 07 62 00 - SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Manufactured through-wall flashing.
  - 2. Formed overhead-piping safety pans.

## 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sheet metal flashing and trim layout and seams with sizes and locations of penetrations to be flashed, and joints and seams in adjacent materials.
- B. Coordinate sheet metal flashing and trim installation with adjoining roofing and wall materials, joints, and seams to provide leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

## 1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Review construction schedule. Verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
  - 2. Review special roof details, roof drainage, roof-penetration flashing, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that affect sheet metal flashing and trim.
  - 3. Review requirements for insurance and certificates if applicable.
  - 4. Review sheet metal flashing observation and repair procedures after flashing installation.

## 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each manufactured product and accessory.
- B. Shop Drawings: For sheet metal flashing and trim.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
  - 2. Detail fabrication and installation layouts, expansion-joint locations, and keyed details. Distinguish between shop- and field-assembled work.

3. Include identification of material, thickness, weight, and finish for each item and location in Project.
4. Include details for forming, including profiles, shapes, seams, and dimensions.
5. Include details for joining, supporting, and securing, including layout and spacing of fasteners, cleats, clips, and other attachments. Include pattern of seams.
6. Include details of termination points and assemblies.
7. Include details of special conditions.
8. Include details of connections to adjoining work.
9. Detail formed flashing and trim at scale of not less than 3 inches per 12 inches.

C. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish.

1. Sheet Metal Flashing: 12 inches long by actual width of unit, including finished seam and in required profile. Include fasteners, cleats, clips, closures, and other attachments.
2. Unit-Type Accessories and Miscellaneous Materials: Full-size Sample.

## 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For fabricator.
- B. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

## 1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For sheet metal flashing and trim, and its accessories, to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Employs skilled workers who custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim similar to that required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.

## 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not store sheet metal flashing and trim materials in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage. Store sheet metal flashing and trim materials away from uncured concrete and masonry.
- B. Protect strippable protective covering on sheet metal flashing and trim from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to extent necessary for period of sheet metal flashing and trim installation.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Sheet metal flashing and trim assemblies shall withstand wind loads, structural movement, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to

defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Completed sheet metal flashing and trim shall not rattle, leak, or loosen, and shall remain watertight.

- B. Sheet Metal Standard for Flashing and Trim: Comply with SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" requirements for dimensions, profiles and fabrication unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- C. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes to prevent buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
  - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

## 2.2 SHEET METALS

- A. General: Protect mechanical and other finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying strippable, temporary protective film before shipping.
- B. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 240/A 240M or ASTM A 666, Type 304, dead soft, fully annealed; with smooth, flat surface.
  - 1. Finish: 3 (coarse, polished directional satin).

## 2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide materials and types of fasteners, solder, protective coatings, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required for complete sheet metal flashing and trim installation and as recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Fasteners: Wood screws, annular threaded nails, self-tapping screws, self-locking rivets and bolts, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads and recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal.
  - 1. General: Blind fasteners or self-drilling screws, gasketed, with hex-washer head.
  - 2. Fasteners for Stainless-Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel.
- C. Solder:
  - 1. For Stainless Steel: ASTM B 32, Grade Sn60, with acid flux of type recommended by stainless-steel sheet manufacturer.
- D. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion according to ASTM D 1187.

## 2.4 MANUFACTURED SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

- A. Through-Wall, Ribbed, Sheet Metal Flashing: Manufacture through-wall sheet metal flashing for embedment in masonry, with ribs at 3-inch intervals along length of flashing to provide integral mortar bond. Manufacture through-wall flashing.
  - 1. Stainless Steel: 0.016 inch thick.

## 2.5 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. General: Custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with details shown and recommendations in cited sheet metal standard that apply to design, dimensions, geometry, metal thickness, and other characteristics of item required. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in shop to greatest extent possible.
1. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in thickness or weight needed to comply with performance requirements, but not less than that specified for each application and metal.
  2. Obtain field measurements for accurate fit before shop fabrication.
  3. Form sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks; true to line, levels, and slopes; and with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
  4. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Do not use exposed fasteners on faces exposed to view.
- B. Fabrication Tolerances: Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim that is capable of installation to a tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet on slope and location lines indicated on Drawings and within 1/8-inch offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.
- C. Expansion Provisions: Form metal for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim.
1. Form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with butyl sealant concealed within joints.
  2. Use lapped expansion joints only where indicated on Drawings.
- D. Sealant Joints: Where movable, nonexpansion-type joints are required, form metal to provide for proper installation of elastomeric sealant according to cited sheet metal standard.

## 2.6 WALL SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Through-Wall Flashing: Fabricate continuous flashings in minimum 96-inch-long, but not exceeding 12-foot-long, sections, under copings, and at shelf angles. Fabricate discontinuous lintel, sill, and similar flashings to extend 6 inches beyond each side of wall openings; and form with 2-inch-high, end dams. Fabricate from the following materials:
1. Stainless Steel: 0.016 inch thick.

## 2.7 MISCELLANEOUS SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Overhead-Piping Safety Pans: Fabricate from the following materials:
1. Stainless Steel: 0.025 inch thick.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, substrate, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Verify compliance with requirements for installation tolerances of substrates.
  - 2. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, and securely anchored.
  - 3. Verify that air- or water-resistant barriers have been installed over sheathing or backing substrate to prevent air infiltration or water penetration.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. General: Anchor sheet metal flashing and trim and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement. Use fasteners, solder, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete sheet metal flashing and trim system.
- B. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other, or where metal contacts pressure-treated wood or other corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action or corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by sheet metal manufacturer or cited sheet metal standard.
  - 1. Coat concealed side of stainless-steel sheet metal flashing and trim with bituminous coating where flashing and trim contact wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
- C. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible in exposed work and locate to minimize possibility of leakage. Cover and seal fasteners and anchors as required for a tight installation.

## 3.3 WALL FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install sheet metal wall flashing to intercept and exclude penetrating moisture according to cited sheet metal standard unless otherwise indicated. Coordinate installation of wall flashing with installation of wall-opening components such as windows, doors, and louvers.

## 3.4 MISCELLANEOUS FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Overhead-Piping Safety Pans: Suspend pans from structure above, independent of other overhead items such as equipment, piping, and conduit, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings. Pipe and install drain line to plumbing waste or drainage system.

3.5 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align sheet metal flashing and trim within installed tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet on slope and location lines indicated on Drawings and within 1/8-inch offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean exposed metal surfaces of substances that interfere with uniform oxidation and weathering.
- B. Clean off excess sealants.
- C. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as sheet metal flashing and trim are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of sheet metal flashing and trim installation, remove unused materials and clean finished surfaces as recommended by sheet metal flashing and trim manufacturer. Maintain sheet metal flashing and trim in clean condition during construction.
- D. Replace sheet metal flashing and trim that have been damaged or that have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 07 62 00



## SECTION 07 71 00 - ROOF SPECIALTIES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following manufactured roof specialties:
  - 1. Copings.
  - 2. Roof edge flashings.
  - 3. Counterflashings and reglets.

## 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Manufacture and install manufactured roof specialties to resist thermally induced movement and exposure to weather without failing, rattling, leaking, and fastener disengagement.
- B. Thermal Movements: Provide manufactured roof specialties that allow for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures by preventing buckling, opening of joints, hole elongation, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Provide clips that resist rotation and avoid shear stress as a result of thermal movements. Base engineering calculation on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
  - 1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.
- C. Water Infiltration: Provide manufactured roof specialties that do not allow water infiltration to building interior.

## 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show layouts of manufactured roof specialties, including plans and elevations. Identify factory- vs. field-assembled work. Include the following:
  - 1. Details for fastening, joining, supporting, and anchoring manufactured roof specialties including fasteners, clips, cleats, and attachments to adjoining work.
  - 2. Details for expansion and contraction.
- C. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Product Options: Information on Drawings and in Specifications establishes requirements for system's aesthetic effects and performance characteristics. Aesthetic effects are indicated by dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies as they relate to sightlines, to one another, and to adjoining construction. Performance characteristics are indicated by criteria subject to verification by one or more methods including preconstruction testing, field testing, and in-service performance.
1. Do not modify intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If modifications are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.

## 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of manufactured roof specialties with interfacing and adjoining construction to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty on Painted Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace manufactured roof specialties that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
1. Fluoropolymer Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
    - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
    - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
    - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
  2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Final Acceptance.
- B. Provide wind warranty for factory specified systems complying with jurisdictional wind requirements.
- C. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of roofing system that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Warranty includes, but is not limited to, copings, scuppers, gravel stops and other components of roofing system and is to be included under same warranty as roofing system.
  2. Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Final Acceptance.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with specifications, available products include, but are not limited to, products of the manufacturers specified.

## 2.2 EXPOSED METALS

- A. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209, alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for use and finish indicated, finished as follows:
  1. Surface: Smooth, flat finish.
  2. High-Performance Organic Finish: AA-C12C42R1x (Chemical Finish: cleaned with inhibited chemicals; Chemical Finish: acid-chromate-fluoride-phosphate conversion coating; Organic Coating: as specified below). Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
    - a. Fluoropolymer 2-Coat System: Manufacturer's standard 2-coat, thermocured system consisting of specially formulated inhibitive primer and fluoropolymer color topcoat containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride resin by weight; complying with AAMA 2605.

## 2.3 CONCEALED METALS

- A. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209, alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for use and structural performance indicated, mill finished.

## 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide materials and types of fasteners, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items required by manufacturer for a complete installation.
- B. Fasteners: Manufacturer's recommended fasteners, suitable for application and designed to withstand design loads.
  1. Exposed Penetrating Fasteners: Gasketed screws with hex washer heads matching color of sheet metal.
- C. Sealing Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, polyisobutylene compound sealing tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape.
- D. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, elastomeric silicone polymer sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in sheet metal flashing and trim and remain watertight.
- E. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C 1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant, polyisobutylene plasticized, heavy bodied for hooked-type expansion joints with limited movement.
- F. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt mastic, SSPC-Paint 12, compounded for 15-mil dry film thickness per coat. Provide inert-type noncorrosive compound free of asbestos fibers, sulfur components, and other deleterious impurities.
- G. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, asbestos free, of consistency required for application.

H. Felt: ASTM D 226, Type II (No. 30), asphalt-saturated organic felt, nonperforated.

1. Slip Sheet: Rosin-sized paper, minimum 3 lb/100 sq. ft..

## 2.5 COPINGS

A. Copings: Manufactured coping system consisting of formed-metal coping cap in section lengths not exceeding 12 feet, concealed anchorage, concealed splice plates with same finish as coping caps, mitered corner units, and end cap units.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with specifications, available products include, but are not limited to, products of the following manufacturers:
  - a. Hickman, W. P. Company.
  - b. Metal-Era, Inc.
  - c. MM Systems Corporation.
  - d. Approved equal.
2. Coping Caps: Snap-on, fabricated from the following exposed metal:
  - a. Aluminum: 0.040 inch thick with Continuous Clips 0.050.
3. Coping Cap Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
4. Corners: Mechanically clinched and sealed watertight.
5. Snap-on Coping Anchor Plates: Concealed, galvanized steel sheet, width as required, 0.040 inch thick, with integral cleats.
6. Face Leg Cleats: Concealed, continuous galvanized steel sheet.

## 2.6 ROOF EDGE FLASHINGS

A. Roof Edge Fascia: Manufactured, two-piece, roof edge fascia consisting of snap-on metal fascia cover in section lengths not exceeding 12 feet and a continuous formed- or extruded-aluminum anchor bar with integral drip edge cleat to engage fascia cover. Provide matching mitered and welded corner units.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with specifications, available products include, but are not limited to, products of the following manufacturers:
  - a. Hickman, W. P. Company.
  - b. Metal-Era, Inc.
  - c. MM Systems Corporation.
  - d. Approved equal.
2. Fascia Cover: Fabricated from the following exposed metal:
  - a. Formed Aluminum: 0.040 inch thick with Continuous Clips 0.050.
3. Fascia Cover Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
4. Splice Plates: Concealed, of same material, finish, and shape as fascia cover.

B. Gravel Stops: Manufactured, one-piece, formed-metal gravel stop in section lengths not exceeding 12 feet, with a horizontal flange and vertical leg fascia terminating in a drip edge,

continuous hold-down cleat, and concealed splice plates of same material, finish, and shape as gravel stop. Provide mitered and welded or soldered corner units.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with specifications, available products include, but are not limited to, products of the following manufacturers:
  - a. Hickman, W. P. Company.
  - b. Metal-Era, Inc.
  - c. Approved equal.
2. Fabricate from the following exposed metal:
  - a. Aluminum: 0.040 inch thick with Continuous Clips 0.050.
3. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## 2.7 COUNTERFLASHINGS AND REGLETS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with specifications, available products include, but are not limited to, products of the following manufacturers:
  1. Hickman, W. P. Company.
  2. Metal-Era, Inc.
  3. Approved equal.
- B. Counterflashings: Manufactured units in lengths not exceeding 12 feet designed to snap into reglets and compress against base flashings with joints lapped, from the following exposed metal in thickness indicated:
  1. Aluminum: 0.040 inch thick.
- C. Reglets: Manufactured units formed to provide secure interlocking of separate reglet and counterflashing pieces, and compatible with flashings indicated, from the following exposed metal in thickness indicated:
  1. Aluminum: 0.050 inch thick.
  2. Type: For masonry application, with offset top flange for embedment in masonry mortar joint.

## 2.8 FINISHES

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, to verify actual locations, dimensions, and other conditions affecting performance of work.
  - 1. Examine walls, roof edges, and parapets for suitable conditions for manufactured roof specialties.
  - 2. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.
  - 3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install manufactured roof specialties according to manufacturer's written instructions. Anchor manufactured roof specialties securely in place and capable of resisting forces specified in performance requirements. Use fasteners, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete manufactured roof specialty systems.
  - 1. Install manufactured roof specialties with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
  - 2. Torch cutting of manufactured roof specialties is not permitted.
- B. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals will contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer.
  - 1. Coat concealed side of uncoated aluminum manufactured roof specialties with bituminous coating where in contact with wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
  - 2. Underlayment: Where installing exposed-to-view components of manufactured roof specialties directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install a course of felt underlayment and cover with a slip sheet, or install a course of polyethylene underlayment.
  - 3. Bed flanges in thick coat of asphalt roofing cement where required by manufacturers of roof specialties for waterproof performance.
- C. Install manufactured roof specialties level, plumb, true to line and elevation, and without warping, jogs in alignment, excessive oil-canning, buckling, or tool marks.
- D. Install manufactured roof specialties to fit substrates and to result in watertight performance. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered before manufacture.
- E. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed manufactured roof specialties. Space movement joints at a maximum of 12 feet with no unplanned joints within 18 inches of corners or intersections.
- F. Fasteners: Use fasteners of type and size recommended by manufacturer but of sizes that will penetrate substrate not less than 1-1/4 inches for nails and not less than 3/4 inch for wood screws.
- G. Seal joints with elastomeric sealant as required by manufacturer of roofing specialties.

### 3.3 COPING INSTALLATION

- A. Install cleats, anchor plates, and other anchoring and attachment accessories and devices with concealed fasteners.
- B. Anchor copings to resist uplift and outward forces according to performance requirements.
  - 1. Interlock face and back leg drip edges of snap-on coping cap into cleated anchor plates anchored to substrate at manufacturer's recommended spacing.
  - 2. Interlock face leg drip edge into continuous cleat anchored to substrate at manufacturer's recommended spacing. Anchor back leg of coping with screw fasteners and elastomeric washers at manufacturer's recommended spacing.
  - 3. Coping to have under plates and wrap plates at butt joints. Use Dow 795 sealant at both edges, top and bottom.

### 3.4 ROOF EDGE FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Install cleats, cant dams, and other anchoring and attachment accessories and devices with concealed fasteners.
- B. Anchor roof edgings to resist uplift and outward forces according to performance requirements.

### 3.5 ROOF EDGE DRAINAGE SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install gutters, downspouts to produce a complete roof drainage system according to manufacturer's written instructions. Coordinate installation of roof perimeter flashing with installation of roof drainage system.
- B. Gutters: Join and seal gutter lengths. Attach gutters to firmly anchored straps spaced not more than 36 inches apart. Slope gutters to downspouts.
  - 1. Install gutter with expansion joints at locations indicated but not exceeding 50 feet apart. Install expansion joint caps.
  - 2. Install continuous gutter screens on gutters with noncorrosive fasteners, hinged to swing open for cleaning gutters.
- C. Downspouts: Join sections with manufacturer's standard telescoping joints. Provide fasteners designed to hold downspouts securely 1 inch away from walls; locate fasteners at top and bottom and at approximately 60 inches o.c. in between.
  - 1. Provide elbows at base of downspout to direct water away from building.

### 3.6 COUNTERFLASHING AND REGLET INSTALLATION

- A. Counterflashings: Coordinate installation of counterflashings with installation of base flashings. Insert counterflashings in reglets or receivers and fit tightly to base flashings. Extend counterflashings 4 inches over base flashings. Lap counterflashing joints a minimum of 4 inches and bed with elastomeric sealant.
- B. Reglets: Installation of reglets is specified in Division 04 Section " Unit Masonry."

3.7 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean exposed metal surfaces of substances that interfere with uniform oxidation and weathering.
- B. Clean and neutralize flux materials. Clean off excess solder and sealants.
- C. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as manufactured roof specialties are installed. On completion of installation, clean finished surfaces, including removing unused fasteners, metal filings, pop rivet stems, and pieces of flashing. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.
- D. Replace manufactured roof specialties that have been damaged or that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 07 71 00



## SECTION 07 72 00 - ROOF ACCESSORIES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Roof hatches.

## 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of roof accessories with roofing membrane and base flashing and interfacing and adjoining construction to provide a leakproof, weathertight, secure, and noncorrosive installation.
- B. Coordinate dimensions with rough-in information or Shop Drawings of equipment to be supported.

## 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of roof accessory.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For roof accessories.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, keyed details, and attachments to other work. Indicate dimensions, loadings, and special conditions. Distinguish between plant- and field-assembled work.
- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, prepared on Samples of size to adequately show color.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Roof plans, drawn to scale, and coordinating penetrations and roof-mounted items. Show the following:
  - 1. Size and location of roof accessories specified in this Section.
  - 2. Method of attaching roof accessories to roof or building structure.

3. Other roof-mounted items including mechanical and electrical equipment, ductwork, piping, and conduit.
4. Required clearances.

B. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's special warranties.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For roof accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Roof accessories shall withstand exposure to weather and resist thermally induced movement without failure, rattling, leaking, or fastener disengagement due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.

### 2.2 ROOF HATCHES

- A. Roof Hatches: Metal roof-hatch units with lids and insulated single-walled curbs, welded or mechanically fastened and sealed corner joints, continuous lid-to-curb counterflashing and weathertight perimeter gasketing, straight sides, and integrally formed deck-mounting flange at perimeter bottom.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Basis of design: BILCO Company (The).
- b. Activar Construction Products Group, Inc. - JL Industries.
- c. ACUDOR Products, Inc.
- d. Milcor; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- e. Nystrom.

B. Type and Size: Single leaf, 42 by 42 inches for access from service ladder.

C. Hatch Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet.

1. Thickness: Manufacturer's standard thickness for hatch size indicated.
2. Finish: Baked enamel or powder coat.
3. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

D. Construction:

1. Insulation: 2-inch-thick, polyisocyanurate board.
2. Nailer: Factory-installed wood nailer continuous around hatch perimeter.
3. Hatch Lid: Opaque, insulated, and double walled, with manufacturer's standard metal liner of same material and finish as outer metal lid.
4. Curb Liner: Manufacturer's standard, of same material and finish as metal curb.
5. On ribbed or fluted metal roofs, form flange at perimeter bottom to conform to roof profile.

6. Fabricate curbs to minimum height of 12 inches above roofing surface unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Hardware: Spring operators, hold-open arm, stainless steel spring latch with turn handles, stainless steel butt- or pintle-type hinge system, and padlock hasps inside and outside.
- F. Safety Railing System: Roof-hatch manufacturer's standard system including rails, clamps, fasteners, safety barrier at railing opening, and accessories required for a complete installation; attached to roof hatch and complying with 29 CFR 1910.23 requirements and authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Height: 42 inches above finished roof deck.
  2. Posts and Rails: Galvanized-steel pipe, 1-1/4 inches in diameter or galvanized-steel tube, 1-5/8 inches in diameter.
  3. Maximum Opening Size: System constructed to prevent passage of a sphere 21 inches in diameter.
  4. Chain Passway Barrier: Galvanized proof coil chain with quick link on fixed end.
  5. Post and Rail Tops and Ends: Weather resistant, closed or plugged with prefabricated end fittings.
  6. Provide weep holes or another means to drain entrapped water in hollow sections of handrail and railing members.
  7. Fabricate joints exposed to weather to be watertight.
  8. Fasteners: Manufacturer's standard, finished to match railing system.
  9. Finish: Manufacturer's standard.
    - a. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- G. Ladder-Assist Post: Roof-hatch manufacturer's standard device for attachment to roof-access ladder.
1. Operation: Post locks in place on full extension; release mechanism returns post to closed position.
  2. Height: 42 inches above finished roof deck.
  3. Material: Steel tube.
  4. Post: 1-5/8-inch- diameter pipe.
  5. Finish: Manufacturer's standard baked enamel or powder coat.

## 2.3 METAL MATERIALS

- A. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M, G90 coating designation.
1. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: After cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat to a minimum dry film thickness of 2 mils.
  2. Concealed Finish: Pretreat with manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester-backer finish consisting of prime coat and wash coat, with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil.
- B. Stainless Steel Sheet and Shapes: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, Type 304.
- C. Steel Shapes: ASTM A36/A36M, hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A123/A123M unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Steel Tube: ASTM A500/A500M, round tube.

- E. Galvanized-Steel Tube: ASTM A500/A500M, round tube, hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A123/A123M.
- F. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, galvanized.

## 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Provide materials and types of fasteners, protective coatings, sealants, and other miscellaneous items required by manufacturer for a complete installation.
- B. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C1289, thickness and thermal resistivity as indicated.
- C. Wood Nailers: Softwood lumber, pressure treated with waterborne preservatives for aboveground use, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, containing no arsenic or chromium, and complying with AWPA C2; not less than 1-1/2 inches thick.
- D. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D1187/D1187M.
- E. Underlayment:
  - 1. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet: Minimum 30 to 40 mils thick, consisting of slip-resisting polyethylene-film top surface laminated to layer of butyl or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing; cold applied. Provide primer when recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
- F. Fasteners: Roof accessory manufacturer's recommended fasteners suitable for application and metals being fastened. Match finish of exposed fasteners with finish of material being fastened. Provide nonremovable fastener heads to exterior exposed fasteners. Furnish the following unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Fasteners for Zinc-Coated or Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: Series 300 stainless steel or hot-dip zinc-coated steel according to ASTM A153/A153M or ASTM F2329.
  - 2. Fasteners for Stainless Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel.
- G. Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard tubular or fingered design of neoprene, EPDM, PVC, or silicone or a flat design of foam rubber, sponge neoprene, or cork.
- H. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C920, elastomeric polyurethane polymer sealant as recommended by roof accessory manufacturer for installation indicated; low modulus; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints and remain watertight.
- I. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant; polyisobutylene plasticized; heavy bodied for expansion joints with limited movement.
- J. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D4586/D4586M, asbestos free, of consistency required for application.

## 2.5 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, to verify actual locations, dimensions, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.
- C. Verify dimensions of roof openings for roof accessories.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install roof accessories according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Install roof accessories level; plumb; true to line and elevation; and without warping, jogs in alignment, buckling, or tool marks.
  - 2. Anchor roof accessories securely in place so they are capable of resisting indicated loads.
  - 3. Use fasteners, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete installation of roof accessories and fit them to substrates.
  - 4. Install roof accessories to resist exposure to weather without failing, rattling, leaking, or loosening of fasteners and seals.
- B. Metal Protection: Protect metals against galvanic action by separating dissimilar metals from contact with each other or with corrosive substrates by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer.
  - 1. Coat concealed side of uncoated aluminum and stainless steel roof accessories with bituminous coating where in contact with wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
  - 2. Underlayment: Where installing roof accessories directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install a course of underlayment and cover with manufacturer's recommended slip sheet.
  - 3. Bed flanges in thick coat of asphalt roofing cement where required by manufacturers of roof accessories for waterproof performance.
- C. Roof-Hatch Installation:
  - 1. Verify that roof hatch operates properly. Clean, lubricate, and adjust operating mechanism and hardware.
  - 2. Attach safety railing system to roof-hatch curb.
  - 3. Attach ladder-assist post according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 REPAIR AND CLEANING

- A. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing according to ASTM A780/A780M.
- B. Clean exposed surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Clean off excess sealants.
- D. Replace roof accessories that have been damaged or that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 07 72 00

## SECTION 07 84 13 - PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes penetrating firestopping for penetrations through the following fire-resistance-rated assemblies, including both empty openings and openings containing penetrating items:

- 1. Walls and partitions.

## 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: For the following constructions, provide penetrating firestopping that are produced and installed to resist spread of fire according to requirements indicated, resist passage of smoke and other gases, and maintain original fire-resistance rating of assembly penetrated.
  - 1. Fire-resistance-rated load-bearing walls, including partitions, with fire-protection-rated openings.
  - 2. Fire-resistance-rated non-load-bearing walls, including partitions, with fire-protection-rated openings.
  - 3. Fire-resistance-rated floor assemblies.
  - 4. Fire-resistance-rated roof assemblies.
- B. F-Rated Systems: Provide penetrating firestopping with F-ratings indicated, as determined per ASTM E 814, but not less than that equaling or exceeding fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated.
- C. T-Rated Systems: For the following conditions, provide penetrating firestopping with T-ratings indicated, as well as F-ratings, as determined per ASTM E 814, where systems protect penetrating items exposed to potential contact with adjacent materials in occupiable floor areas:
  - 1. Penetrations located outside wall cavities.
  - 2. Penetrations located outside fire-resistive shaft enclosures.
  - 3. Penetrations located in construction containing fire-protection-rated openings.
  - 4. Penetrating items larger than 4-inch- diameter nominal pipe or 16 sq. in. in overall cross-sectional area.
- D. For penetrating firestopping exposed to view, traffic, moisture, and physical damage, provide products that after curing do not deteriorate when exposed to these conditions both during and after construction.
  - 1. For piping penetrations for plumbing and wet-pipe sprinkler systems, provide moisture-resistant through-penetration firestop systems.

2. For floor penetrations with annular spaces exceeding 4 inches in width and exposed to possible loading and traffic, provide firestop systems capable of supporting floor loads involved either by installing floor plates or by other means.
  3. For penetrations involving insulated piping, provide through-penetration firestop systems not requiring removal of insulation.
- E. For penetrating firestopping exposed to view, provide products with flame-spread ratings of less than 25 and smoke-developed ratings of less than 450, as determined per ASTM E 84.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of penetrating firestopping product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each penetrating firestopping, show each kind of construction condition penetrated, relationships to adjoining construction, and kind of penetrating item. Include firestop design designation of testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that evidences compliance with requirements for each condition indicated.
1. Submit documentation, including illustrations, from a qualified testing and inspecting agency that is applicable to each penetrating firestopping configuration for construction and penetrating items.
  2. Where Project conditions require modification of qualified testing and inspecting agency's illustration to suit a particular penetrating firestopping condition, submit illustration, with modifications marked, approved by penetrating firestopping manufacturer's fire-protection engineer.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For firms and persons specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, names and addresses of architects and owners, and other information specified.
- B. Product Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of penetrating firestopping products certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.
- C. Product Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency indicating penetrating firestopping complies with requirements, based on comprehensive testing of current products.

#### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Closeout Records: Signed by installer, provide a detailed listing of actual systems with UL designations and location of each penetrating firestopping product installed.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who specializes in the installation of firestop products and has completed penetrating firestopping similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.



- B. Source Limitations: Obtain penetrating firestopping, for each kind of penetration and construction condition indicated, from a single manufacturer.
- C. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide penetrating firestopping that comply with the following requirements and those specified in "Performance Requirements" Article:
  - 1. Firestopping tests are performed by a qualified testing and inspecting agency. A qualified testing and inspecting agency is UL, or another agency performing testing and follow-up inspection services for firestopping systems acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Penetrating firestopping are identical to those tested per ASTM E 814. Provide rated systems complying with the following requirements:
    - a. Penetrating firestopping products bear classification marking of qualified testing and inspecting agency.
    - b. Penetrating firestopping correspond to those indicated by reference to penetrating firestopping designations listed by the following:
      - 1) UL in "Fire Resistance Directory."
- D. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Meetings."

#### 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver penetrating firestopping products to Project site in original, unopened containers or packages with intact and legible manufacturers' labels identifying product and manufacturer; date of manufacture; lot number; shelf life, if applicable; qualified testing and inspecting agency's classification marking applicable to Project; curing time; and mixing instructions for multicomponent materials.
- B. Store and handle materials for penetrating firestopping to prevent their deterioration or damage due to moisture, temperature changes, contaminants, or other causes.

#### 1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install penetrating firestopping when ambient or substrate temperatures are outside limits permitted by penetrating firestopping manufacturers or when substrates are wet due to rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.
- B. Ventilate through-penetration firestop systems per manufacturer's written instructions by natural means or, where this is inadequate, forced-air circulation.

#### 1.10 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate construction of openings and penetrating items to ensure that penetrating firestopping are installed according to specified requirements.
- B. Coordinate sizing of sleeves, openings, core-drilled holes, or cut openings to accommodate penetrating firestopping.
- C. Notify Owner's inspecting agency at least seven days in advance of penetrating firestopping installations; confirm dates and times on days preceding each series of installations.

- D. Do not cover up penetrating firestopping installations that will become concealed behind other construction until Owner's inspecting agency and building inspector, if required by authorities having jurisdiction, have examined each installation.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Basis of design manufacturer: Hilti, Inc.
  2. 3M Fire Protection Products.
  3. Specified Technologies, Inc.

### 2.2 FIRESTOPPING, GENERAL

- A. Compatibility: Provide penetrating firestopping that are compatible with one another, with the substrates forming openings, and with the items, if any, penetrating firestopping, under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by penetrating firestopping manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
- B. Accessories: Provide components for each penetrating firestopping that are needed to install fill materials and to comply with "Performance Requirements" Article. Use only components specified by penetrating firestopping manufacturer and approved by the qualified testing and inspecting agency for firestopping systems indicated. Accessories include, but are not limited to, the following items:
1. Permanent forming/damming/backing materials, including the following:
    - a. Slag-/rock-wool-fiber insulation.
    - b. Sealants used in combination with other forming/damming/backing materials to prevent leakage of fill materials in liquid state.
    - c. Fire-rated form board.
    - d. Fillers for sealants.
  2. Temporary forming materials.
  3. Substrate primers.
  4. Collars.
  5. Steel sleeves.

### 2.3 FILL MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide penetrating firestopping containing the types of fill materials by the UL design. Fill materials are those referred to in directories of the referenced testing and inspecting agencies as fill, void, or cavity materials.
- B. Cast-in-Place Firestop Devices: Factory-assembled devices for use in cast-in-place concrete floors and consisting of an outer metallic sleeve lined with an intumescent strip, a radial extended flange attached to one end of the sleeve for fastening to concrete formwork, and a neoprene gasket.

- C. Latex Sealants: Single-component latex formulations that after cure do not re-emulsify during exposure to moisture.
- D. Firestop Devices: Factory-assembled collars formed from galvanized steel and lined with intumescent material sized to fit specific diameter of penetrant.
- E. Intumescent Composite Sheets: Rigid panels consisting of aluminum-foil-faced elastomeric sheet bonded to galvanized steel sheet.
- F. Intumescent Putties: Nonhardening dielectric, water-resistant putties containing no solvents, inorganic fibers, or silicone compounds.
- G. Intumescent Wrap Strips: Single-component intumescent elastomeric sheets with aluminum foil on one side.
- H. Mortars: Prepackaged, dry mixes consisting of a blend of inorganic binders, hydraulic cement, fillers, and lightweight aggregate formulated for mixing with water at Project site to form a nonshrinking, homogeneous mortar.
- I. Pillows/Bags: Reusable, heat-expanding pillows/bags consisting of glass-fiber cloth cases filled with a combination of mineral-fiber, water-insoluble expansion agents and fire-retardant additives.
- J. Silicone Foams: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.
- K. Silicone Sealants: Moisture-curing, single-component, silicone-based, neutral-curing elastomeric sealants of grade indicated below:
  - 1. Grade for Horizontal Surfaces: Pourable (self-leveling) formulation for openings in floors and other horizontal surfaces.
  - 2. Grade for Vertical Surfaces: Nonsag formulation for openings in vertical and other surfaces.

## 2.4 MIXING

- A. For those products requiring mixing before application, comply with penetrating firestopping manufacturer's written instructions for accurate proportioning of materials, water (if required), type of mixing equipment, selection of mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other items or procedures needed to produce products of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for application indicated.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for opening configurations, penetrating items, substrates, and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning: Clean out openings immediately before installing penetrating firestopping to comply with written recommendations of firestopping system manufacturer and the following requirements:
  - 1. Remove from surfaces of opening substrates and from penetrating items foreign materials that could interfere with adhesion of penetrating firestopping.
  - 2. Clean opening substrates and penetrating items to produce clean, sound surfaces capable of developing optimum bond with penetrating firestopping. Remove loose particles remaining from cleaning operation.
  - 3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
- B. Priming: Prime substrates where recommended in writing by penetrating firestopping manufacturer using that manufacturer's recommended products and methods. Confine primers to areas of bond; do not allow spillage and migration onto exposed surfaces.
- C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape to prevent penetrating firestopping from contacting adjoining surfaces that will remain exposed on completion of Work and that would otherwise be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods used to remove smears from firestop system materials. Remove tape as soon as possible without disturbing firestop system's seal with substrates.

### 3.3 THROUGH-PENETRATION FIRESTOP SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install penetrating firestopping to comply with "Performance Requirements" Article and firestopping system manufacturer's written installation instructions and published drawings for products and applications indicated.
- B. Install forming/damming/backing materials and other accessories of types required to support fill materials during their application and in the position needed to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths required to achieve fire ratings indicated.
  - 1. After installing fill materials, remove combustible forming materials and other accessories not indicated as permanent components of firestop systems.
- C. Install fill materials for firestopping by proven techniques to produce the following results:
  - 1. Fill voids and cavities formed by openings, forming materials, accessories, and penetrating items as required to achieve fire-resistance ratings indicated.
  - 2. Apply materials so they contact and adhere to substrates formed by openings and penetrating items.
  - 3. For fill materials that will remain exposed after completing Work, finish to produce smooth, uniform surfaces that are flush with adjoining finishes.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspecting Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent inspecting agency to inspect penetrating firestopping and to prepare test reports.
  - 1. Inspecting agency will state in each report whether inspected through-penetration firestop systems comply with or deviate from requirements.
- B. Proceed with enclosing through-penetration firestop systems with other construction only after inspection reports are issued.

- C. Where deficiencies are found, repair or replace penetrating firestopping so they comply with requirements.

### 3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify penetrating firestopping with pressure-sensitive, self-adhesive, preprinted vinyl labels. Attach labels permanently to surfaces of penetrated construction on both sides of each penetrating firestopping installation where labels will be visible to anyone seeking to remove penetrating items or firestop systems. Include the following information on labels:
  - 1. The words: "Warning--Penetrating Firestopping --Do Not Disturb. Notify Building Management of Any Damage."
  - 2. Contractor's name, address, and phone number.
  - 3. Penetrating firestopping designation of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
  - 4. Date of installation.
  - 5. Penetrating firestopping manufacturer's name.
  - 6. Installer's name.

### 3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean off excess fill materials adjacent to openings as Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials that are approved in writing by penetrating firestopping manufacturers and that do not damage materials in which openings occur.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions during and after installation that ensure penetrating firestopping are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated penetrating firestopping immediately and install new materials to produce penetrating firestopping complying with specified requirements.

### 3.7 PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING SCHEDULE (Attached)

END OF SECTION 07 84 13



PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING SCHEDULE													
THIS SCHEDULE INDICATES WHICH SERIES OF UL CLASSIFIED PENETRATING FIRESTOPPING ASSEMBLIES ARE ACCEPTABLE FOR THIS PROJECT BASED ON BARRIER TYPE, BARRIER CONSTRUCTION AND PENETRANT TYPE.													
EACH SYSTEM WITHIN A GIVEN SERIES IS CLASSIFIED FOR SPECIFIC PENETRATION CONDITIONS. CONTRACTOR SHALL SELECT TPF'S ASSEMBLIES THAT ARE CLASSIFIED FOR USE WITH EACH PENETRATION'S CONDITION BASED ON CRITERIA SUCH AS THE FOLLOWING: PENETRATION SIZE, PENETRATION SHAPE, PENETRANT SIZE(S), PENETRANT MATERIAL(S), PENETRANT QUANTITY, LOCATIONS(S) OF PENETRANT(S) WITHIN PENETRATION.													
BARRIER		FIRE STOPPING REQUIREMENTS	PENETRANT TYPE										
TYPE	BASIS OF CONSTRUCTION		NO PENETRANTS	METALLIC, UNINSULATED PIPE, CONDUIT, OR TUBING (EXAMPLES: COPPER, IRON, STEEL)	NONMETALLIC, UNINSULATED PIPE, CONDUIT, OR TUBING (EXAMPLES: PVC, CPVC, GLASS)	ELECTRICAL CABLES	CABLE TRAYS W/ELECTRICAL CABLES	INSULATED PIPES (EXAMPLES: COPPER, GLASS, IRON, PLASTIC, STEEL) IN SYSTEMS OPERATING BETWEEN 32 DEGF (0 DEGC) AND 122 DEGF (50 DEGC) (NOTE 1)	INSULATED PIPES (EXAMPLES: COPPER, GLASS, IRON, PLASTIC, STEEL) IN SYSTEMS OPERATING BETWEEN 32 DEGF (0 DEGC) OR ABOVE 122 DEGF (50 DEGC) (NOTE 2)	MISC ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS (EXAMPLES: BUS DUCTS)	METAL DUCT	UL LISTED ELECTRICAL BOXES	OTHER RECESSED DEVICES (NOTE 3)
WALL	WOOD STUDS & GYPSUM WALLBOARD	SINGLE PENETRANT	W-L-000 SERIES OR NOTE 4	W-L-1000 SERIES	W-L-2000 SERIES	W-L-3000 SERIES	W-L-4000 SERIES	W-L-5000 SERIES	W-L-5000 SERIES	W-L-6000 SERIES	W-L-7000 SERIES	CLIV OR NOTE 8	NOTE 8
		MULTIPLE PENETRANTS		W-L-8000 SERIES NOTE 5				W-L-8000 SERIES NOTE 5	W-L-8000 SERIES NOTE 5	N/A	N/A	N/A	
		F RATING	EQUAL TO BARRIER RATING										
		T RATING	EQUAL TO F RATING (NOTE 9)										
		ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS	NONE	NONE	NONE	NONE	NONE	NONE	NONE	NOTE 6	NONE	NOTE 7	NONE
WALL	METAL STUDS & GYPSUM WALLBOARD	SINGLE PENETRANT	W-L-0000 SERIES OR NOTE 4	W-L-1000 SERIES	W-L-2000 SERIES	W-L-3000 SERIES	W-L-4000 SERIES	W-L-5000 SERIES	W-L-5000 SERIES	W-L-6000 SERIES	W-L-7000 SERIES	CLIV OR NOTE 8	NOTE 8
		MULTIPLE PENETRANTS		W-L-8000 SERIES NOTE 5				W-L-8000 SERIES NOTE 5	W-L-8000 SERIES NOTE 5	N/A	N/A	N/A	
		F RATING	EQUAL TO BARRIER RATING										
		T RATING	EQUAL TO F RATING (NOTE 9)										
		ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS	NONE	NONE	NONE	NONE	NONE	NONE	NONE	NOTE 6	NONE	NOTE 7	NONE
WALL	POURED CONCRETE, CONCRETE BLOCK OR MASONRY	SINGLE PENETRANT	W-J-0000 SERIES OR NOTE 4	C-AJ-1000 OR W-J-1000 SERIES - NOTE 10	C-AJ-2000 OR W-J-2000 SERIES - NOTE 10	C-AJ-3000 OR W-J-3000 SERIES - NOTE 10	C-AJ-4000 OR W-J-4000 SERIES - NOTE 10	C-AJ-5000 OR W-J-5000 SERIES - NOTE 10	C-AJ-5000 OR W-J-5000 SERIES - NOTE 10	C-AJ-6000 SERIES - NOTE 10	C-AJ-7000 OR W-J-7000 SERIES - NOTE	??	NOTE 8
		MULTIPLE PENETRANTS		C-AJ-8000 OR W-J-8000 SERIES -- NOTE 5				C-AJ-8000 OR W-J-8000 SERIES - NOTE 5	C-AJ-8000 OR W-J-8000 SERIES - NOTE 5		N/A	N/A	
		F RATING	EQUAL TO BARRIER RATING										
		T RATING	EQUAL TO F RATING (NOTE 9)										
		ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS	NONE	NONE	NONE	NONE	NONE	NONE	NONE	NOTE 6	NONE	NOTE 7	NONE
WALL	POURED CONCRETE BLOCK OR MASONRY	SINGLE PENETRANT	NOTE 4	C-BK-1000 OR W-K-1000 SERIES	N/A	N/A	W-K-4000 SERIES	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	NOTE 8
		MULTIPLE PENETRANTS		N/A				N/A	N/A				
		F RATING	EQUAL TO BARRIER RATING										
		T RATING	EQUAL TO F RATING (NOTE 9)										
		ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS	NONE										
FLOOR	FRAMED	SINGLE PENETRANT	NOTE 4	F-C-1000 SERIES	F-C-2000 SERIES	F-C-3000 SERIES	N/A	F-C-5000 SERIES	F-C-5000 SERIES	N/A	F-C-7000 SERIES	??	NOTE 8
		MULTIPLE PENETRANTS		F-C-8000 SERIES NOTE 5				F-C-8000 SERIES NOTE 5	F-C-8000 SERIES NOTE 5		N/A	N/A	
		F RATING	EQUAL TO BARRIER RATING										
		T RATING	EQUAL TO F RATING (NOTE 9)										
		ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS	NONE	NONE	NONE	NONE	NONE	NONE	NONE	NOTE 6	NONE	NOTE 7	NONE

FLOOR	POURED CONCRETE	SINGLE		C-AJ-0000 SERIES, F-A-0000 SERIES OR NOTE 4	C-AJ-1000 OR F-A-1000 SERIES	C-AJ-2000 OR F-A-2000 SERIES	C-AJ-3000 OR F-A-3000 SERIES	C-AJ-4000 OR F-A-4000 SERIES	C-AJ-5000 OR F-A-5000 SERIES	C-AJ-5000 OR F-A-5000 SERIES	C-AJ-6000 SERIES	C-AJ-7000 OR F-A-7000 SERIES	??	NOTE 8	
		UL CLASSIFIED SYSTEM	PENETRANT MULTIPLE PENETRANTS												
MAXIMUM THICKNESS OF FIVE INCHES OR LESS				C-AJ-8000 OR F-A-8000 SERIES -- NOTE 5					C-AJ-8000 OR F-A-8000 SERIES - NOTE 5			N/A	N/A		
		F RATING													EQUAL TO BARRIER RATING
		T RATING													EQUAL TO F RATING (NOTE 9)
		ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS		NONE	NONE	NONE	NONE	NONE	NONE	NONE	NOTE 6	NONE	NOTE 7	NONE	NONE
FLOOR	POURED CONCRETE	SINGLE		C-BJ-0000 SERIES OR NOTE 4	C-BJ-1000 OR F-B-1000 SERIES	C-BJ-2000 OR F-B-2000 SERIES	C-BJ-3000 OR F-B-3000 SERIES	C-BJ-4000 OR F-B-4000 SERIES	C-BJ-5000 OR F-B-5000 SERIES	C-AJ-5000 OR F-A-5000 SERIES	C-AJ-6000 SERIES	C-BJ-7000 OR F-B-7000 SERIES	??	NOTE 8	
		UL CLASSIFIED SYSTEM	PENETRANT MULTIPLE PENETRANTS												
MINIMUM THICKNESS GREATER THAN FIVE INCHES				C-BJ-8000 OR F-B-8000 SERIES -- NOTE 5					C-AJ-8000 OR F-A-8000 SERIES - NOTE 5			N/A	N/A		
		F RATING													EQUAL TO BARRIER RATING
		T RATING													EQUAL TO F RATING (NOTE 9)
		ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS		NONE	NONE	NONE	NONE	NONE	NONE	NONE	NOTE 6	NONE	NOTE 7	NONE	NONE

THIS SCHEDULE USES THE IDENTIFICATION SYSTEMS OF UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES, INC. AS DEFINED IN THEIR "FIRE RESISTANCE DIRECTORY" AND AS USED BY MANUFACTURERS ON THEIR UL CLASSIFIED SYSTEM.

INDICATED RATINGS MAY BE EXCEEDED. "N/A" = NOT APPLICABLE

**NOTES**

- EXAMPLES OF SYSTEMS THAT OPERATE BETWEEN 32 DEGF (0DEGC) AND 122 DEGF (50 DEGC):
 

CHILLED WATER SUPPLY & RETURN	DOMESTIC HOT WATER LESS THAN 122 DEGF (50 DEGC)
HEAT PUMP WATER SUPPLY & RETURN	DOMESTIC HOT WATER RECIRCULATION LESS THAN 122 DEGF (50 DEGC)
DOMESTIC COLD WATER	
- EXAMPLES OF SYSTEMS OPERATING BELOW 32 DEGF (0DEGC) OR ABOVE 122 DEGF (50 DEGC):
 

STEAM SUPPLY & RETURN	HEATING HOT WATER SUPPLY & RETURN
STEAM VENT	HOT-CHILLED WATER SUPPLY & RETURN
CONDENSATE PUMP DISCHARGE	GLYCOL HEATING HOT WATER SUPPLY & RETURN
BOILER BLOW DOWN	DOMESTIC HOT WATER SUPPLY 140 DEGF (60 DEGC)
CRYOGENIC VENT	DOMESTIC HOT WATER RECIRCULATION 140 DEGF (60 DEGC)
- EXAMPLES OF OTHER RECESSED DEVICES:
 

MEDICAL GAS ZONE VALVES	UNIT HEATERS
MEDICAL GAS OUTLETS	FIRE FIGHTERS' PHONE
FIRE VALVE CABINETS	FIRE EXTINGUISHER CABINET
FIRE HOSE CABINETS	
- SEAL OPENING USING BARRIER'S ORIGINAL CONSTRUCTION.
- WHERE APPROPRIATE MULTI-PENETRATION CLASSIFICATION IS NOT AVAILABLE; INSTALL PENETRANTS SINGLY, AND PROVIDE SINGLE-PENETRANT SYSTEMS.
- FOR SYSTEMS THAT OPERATE BELOW 32 DEGF (0DEGC) OR ABOVE 122 DEGF (50 DEGC), COMPLY WITH THE FOLLOWING ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS:
  - PROVIDE TPFS SYSTEM USING INTUMESCENT ELASTOMERIC WRAP STRIP AS ITS FILL, VOID, OR CAVITY MATERIAL.
  - DO NOT USE SERIES 8000 PENETRATIONS. PROVIDE ONLY SINGLE PENETRATIONS.
- FOR PENETRATIONS PROTECTED WITH DAMPERS, PROVIDE TPFS SYSTEM APPROVED BY DAMPER MANUFACTURER.
- WHERE UL CLASSIFIED SYSTEMS ARE NOT AVAILABLE FOR OTHER RECESSED DEVICES, MAINTAIN CONTINUITY OF RATED BARRIER CONSTRUCTION AROUND RECESS.
- WHERE PENETRANT EXITS PENETRATION ENTIRELY WITHIN THE CAVITY OF A WALL A T-RATING IS NOT REQUIRED.
- WHERE WALL THICKNESSES ARE LESS THAN 4 1/2 INCHES THICK, SUBMIT UL SYSTEM TO ACCOMMODATE.



## SECTION 07 92 00 - JOINT SEALANTS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Silicone joint sealants.
  - 2. Urethane joint sealants.
  - 3. Latex joint sealants.
  - 4. Butyl joint sealants.

## 1.3 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Field-Adhesion Testing: Before installing sealants, field test their adhesion to Project joint substrates. Test joint sealants according to Method A, Field-Applied Sealant Joint Hand Pull Tab, in Appendix X1 in ASTM C 1193 or Method A, Tail Procedure, in ASTM C 1521.

## 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each joint-sealant product indicated.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
  - 1. Product Data: For sealants, indicating VOC content.
  - 2. Laboratory Test Reports: For sealants, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each kind and color of joint sealant required, provide Samples with joint sealants in 1/2 inch (13 mm) wide joints formed between two 6 inch (152 mm) long strips of material matching the appearance of exposed surfaces adjacent to joint sealants.
- D. Sealant Schedule: Submit schedule of sealant applications listing joint sealants proposed for this Work and materials to which joint sealants are specified to be applied. Obtain Architect's written approval of this sealant schedule before starting Work of this Section.
  - 1. Joint-Sealant Schedule: Include the following information:
    - a. Joint-sealant application, joint location, and designation.
    - b. Joint-sealant manufacturer and product name.
    - c. Joint-sealant formulation.
    - d. Joint-sealant color.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM C 1021 to conduct the testing indicated.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MATERIALS, GENERAL

- A. VOC Content of Interior Sealants: Provide sealants and sealant primers for use inside the weatherproofing system that comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Part 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):
1. Architectural Sealants: 250 g/L.
  2. Sealant Primers for Nonporous Substrates: 250 g/L.
  3. Sealant Primers for Porous Substrates: 775 g/L.
- B. Stain-Test-Response Characteristics: Where sealants are specified to be nonstaining to porous substrates, provide products that have undergone testing according to ASTM C 1248 and have not stained porous joint substrates indicated for Project.
- C. Suitability for Contact with Food: Where sealants are indicated for joints that will come in repeated contact with food, provide products that comply with 21 CFR 177.2600.

## 2.2 SILICONE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Neutral-Curing Silicone Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Dow Corning Corporation; Dow 795
    - b. Momentive Performance Materials; SilPruf NB SCS9000.
    - c. Pecora Corporation; 895.
  2. Type: Single component (S).
  3. Grade Nonsag (NS).
  4. Class: 50.
- B. Mildew-Resistant, Neutral-Curing Silicone Sealant:
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Dow Corning Corporation; 786 Mildew Resistant.
    - b. Pecora Corporation; 898
    - c. Tremco, Tremsil 600.
  2. Type: Single-component (S)
  3. Grade: Nonsag (NS)
  4. Class: 25.

## 2.3 URETHANE JOINT SEALANTS

### A. Urethane Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920.

1. Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
  - a. Sika Corporation; Sikaflex 2c NS EZ Mix.
  - b. Tremco Incorporated; Vulkem 227
  - c. W.R. Meadows; Pourthane NS.
2. Type: Multicomponent (M).
3. Grade: Nonsag (NS).
4. Class: 25.

## 2.4 IMMERSIBLE JOINT SEALANTS

### A. Urethane, Immersible: Immersible, single-component, high-performance, swellable polyurethane based waterstop joint sealant.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
  - a. Sika Corporation; SikaSwell S-2
2. Type: Single-component (S).
3. Grade: Nonsag.
4. Locations: Joints between tilt panels.

## 2.5 BUTYL JOINT SEALANTS

### A. Butyl-Rubber-Based Joint Sealants: ASTM C1311.

1. Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Tremco Inc.; Tremco Butyl Sealant.
  - b. Everkem Diversified Products, Inc.; Rubber Guard NS.
  - c. Pecora Corporation; BC-158.

## 2.6 LATEX JOINT SEALANTS.

### A. Latex Joint Sealant: Acrylic latex or siliconized acrylic latex, ASTM C 834, Type OP, Grade NF.

1. Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - a. Pecora Corporation; AC-20+.
  - b. Master Builders Solutions by BASF; MasterSeal NP 520.
  - c. Tremco Incorporated; Tremflex 834.

## 2.7 ACOUSTICAL JOINT SEALANTS

### A. Acoustical Sealant for Exposed and Concealed Joints: Manufacturer's standard nonsag, paintable, nonstaining latex sealant complying with ASTM C 834 and the following:

1. Product effectively reduces airborne sound transmission through perimeter joints and openings in building construction as demonstrated by testing representative assemblies according to ASTM E 90.
2. Products:
  - a. Pecora Corporation; AC-20 FTR Acoustical and Insulation Sealant.
  - b. United States Gypsum Co.; SHEETROCK Acoustical Sealant.

## 2.8 JOINT SEALANT BACKING

- A. Cylindrical Sealant Backings: ASTM C 1330, Type C (closed-cell material with a surface skin), and of size and density to control sealant depth and otherwise contribute to producing optimum sealant performance.
- B. Bond-Breaker Tape: Polyethylene tape or other plastic tape recommended by sealant manufacturer.

## 2.9 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Primer: Material recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests and field tests.
- B. Cleaners for Nonporous Surfaces: Chemical cleaners acceptable to manufacturers of sealants and sealant backing materials.
- C. Masking Tape: Nonstaining, nonabsorbent material compatible with joint sealants and surfaces adjacent to joints.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions.
  1. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
  2. Clean nonporous joint substrate surfaces with chemical cleaners or other means that do not stain, harm substrates, or leave residues capable of interfering with adhesion of joint sealants.
- B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer or as indicated by preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.
- C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of sealant or primer with adjoining surfaces that otherwise would be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods required to remove sealant smears. Remove tape immediately after tooling without disturbing joint seal.

## 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.
- B. Acoustical Sealant Application Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 919 for use of joint sealants in acoustical applications as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.
- C. Install sealant backings of kind indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
  - 1. Do not leave gaps between ends of sealant backings.
  - 2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear sealant backings.
  - 3. Remove absorbent sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application and replace them with dry materials.
- D. Install bond-breaker tape behind sealants where sealant backings are not used between sealants and backs of joints.
- E. Install sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:
  - 1. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
  - 2. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.
  - 3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
- F. Tooling of Nonsag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to requirements specified in subparagraphs below to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.
  - 1. Remove excess sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.
  - 2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
  - 3. Provide concave joint profile per Figure 8A in ASTM C 1193, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Clean off excess sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

END OF SECTION 07 92 00



## SECTION 08 11 13 - HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Standard hollow metal doors and frames.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Minimum Thickness: Minimum thickness of base metal without coatings.
- B. Standard Hollow Metal Work: Hollow metal work fabricated according to ANSI/SDI A250.8.

## 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, core descriptions, fire-resistance rating, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include the following:
  - 1. Elevations of each door design.
  - 2. Details of doors, including vertical and horizontal edge details and metal thicknesses.
  - 3. Frame details for each frame type, including dimensioned profiles and metal thicknesses.
  - 4. Locations of reinforcement and preparations for hardware.
  - 5. Details of each different wall opening condition.
  - 6. Details of anchorages, joints, field splices, and connections.
  - 7. Details of accessories.
  - 8. Details of moldings, removable stops, and glazing.
  - 9. Details of conduit and preparations for power, signal, and control systems.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain hollow metal work from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing at positive pressure according to NFPA 252.

- C. Fire-Rated, Borrowed-Light Frame Assemblies: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing according to NFPA 257 or UL 9. Label each individual glazed lite.
- D. Smoke-Control Door Assemblies: Comply with NFPA 105 or UL 1784.
- E. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver hollow metal work palletized, wrapped, or crated to provide protection during transit and Project-site storage. Do not use nonvented plastic.
  - 1. Provide additional protection to prevent damage to finish of factory-finished units.
- B. Deliver welded frames with two removable spreader bars across bottom of frames, tack welded to jambs and mullions.
- C. Store hollow metal work under cover at Project site. Place in stacks of five units maximum in a vertical position with heads up, spaced by blocking, on minimum 4-inch- high wood blocking. Do not store in a manner that traps excess humidity.
  - 1. Provide minimum 1/4-inch space between each stacked door to permit air circulation.

## 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of openings by field measurements before fabrication.

## 1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of anchorages for hollow metal frames. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Ceco Door Products; an Assa Abloy Group company.
  - 2. Curries Company; an Assa Abloy Group company.
  - 3. Fleming Door Products Ltd.; an Assa Abloy Group company.
  - 4. Steelcraft; an Ingersoll-Rand company.



## 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; suitable for exposed applications.
- B. Hot-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; free of scale, pitting, or surface defects; pickled and oiled.
- C. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; with minimum G60 or A60 metallic coating.
- D. Frame Anchors: ASTM A 591/A 591M, Commercial Steel (CS), 40Z coating designation; mill phosphatized.
  - 1. For anchors built into exterior walls, steel sheet complying with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M or ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class B.
  - 2. Provide for exterior concrete masonry walls and metal framed wall as required.
- E. Inserts, Bolts, and Fasteners: Hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153/A 153M.
- F. Powder-Actuated Fasteners in Concrete: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with clips or other accessory devices for attaching hollow metal frames of type indicated.
- G. Grout: ASTM C 476, except with a maximum slump of 4 inches, as measured according to ASTM C 143/C 143M.
- H. Mineral-Fiber Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing); consisting of fibers manufactured from slag or rock wool with 6- to 12-lb/cu. ft. density; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-development indexes of 25 and 50, respectively; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics.
- I. Glazing: Comply with requirements in Division 08 Section "Glazing."
- J. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt mastic, SSPC-Paint 12, compounded for 15-mil dry film thickness per coat. Provide inert-type noncorrosive compound free of asbestos fibers, sulfur components, and other deleterious impurities.

## 2.3 STANDARD HOLLOW METAL DOORS

- A. General: Provide doors of design indicated, not less than thickness indicated; fabricated with smooth surfaces, without visible joints or seams on exposed faces unless otherwise indicated. Comply with ANSI/SDI A250.8.
  - 1. Design: Flush panel.
  - 2. Core Construction: Manufacturer's standard kraft-paper honeycomb, polystyrene, polyurethane, polyisocyanurate, mineral-board, or vertical steel-stiffener core.
    - a. Fire Door Core: As required to provide fire-protection ratings indicated.
    - b. Thermal-Rated (Insulated) Doors: Where indicated, provide doors fabricated with thermal-resistance value (R-value) of not less than 6.0 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu when tested according to ASTM C 1363.

- 1) Locations: Exterior doors and interior doors where indicated.
  3. Vertical Edges for Single-Acting Doors: Manufacturer's standard.
    - a. Beveled Edge: 1/8 inch in 2 inches.
  4. Vertical Edges for Double-Acting Doors: Round vertical edges with 2-1/8-inch radius.
  5. Top and Bottom Edges: Closed with flush or inverted 0.042-inch- thick, end closures or channels of same material as face sheets.
  6. Tolerances: Comply with SDI 117, "Manufacturing Tolerances for Standard Steel Doors and Frames."
- B. Exterior Doors: Face sheets fabricated from metallic-coated steel sheet. Provide doors complying with requirements indicated below by referencing ANSI/SDI A250.8 for level and model and ANSI/SDI A250.4 for physical performance level:
1. Level 3 and Physical Performance Level A (Extra Heavy Duty), Model 1 (Full Flush).
  2. Thickness: 1-3/4 inches.
- C. Interior Doors: Face sheets fabricated from cold-rolled steel sheet unless metallic-coated sheet is indicated. Provide doors complying with requirements indicated below by referencing ANSI/SDI A250.8 for level and model and ANSI/SDI A250.4 for physical performance level:
1. Level 3 and Physical Performance Level A (Extra Heavy Duty), Model 1 (Full Flush).
  2. Thickness: 1-3/4 inches.
- D. Hardware Reinforcement: Fabricate according to ANSI/SDI A250.6 with reinforcing plates from same material as door face sheets.
- E. Fabricate concealed stiffeners and hardware reinforcement from either cold- or hot-rolled steel sheet.
- 2.4 STANDARD HOLLOW METAL FRAMES
- A. General: Comply with ANSI/SDI A250.8 and with details indicated for type and profile.
- B. Exterior Frames: Fabricated from metallic-coated steel sheet.
1. Fabricate frames with mitered or coped corners.
  2. Fabricate frames as full profile welded unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Interior Frames: Fabricated from cold-rolled steel sheet unless metallic-coated sheet is indicated.
1. Fabricate frames with mitered or coped corners.
  2. Fabricate frames as full profile welded unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Frames for Level 3 Steel Doors: 0.053-inch- thick steel sheet.
  4. Frames for Wood Doors: 0.053-inch- thick steel sheet.
  5. Frames for Borrowed Lights: 0.053-inch- thick steel sheet.
- D. Hardware Reinforcement: Fabricate according to ANSI/SDI A250.6 with reinforcement plates from same material as frames.

## 2.5 FRAME ANCHORS

- A. Jamb Anchors:
  - 1. Masonry Type: Adjustable strap-and-stirrup or T-shaped anchors to suit frame size, not less than 0.042 inch thick, with corrugated or perforated straps not less than 2 inches wide by 10 inches long; or wire anchors not less than 0.177 inch thick.
  - 2. Stud-Wall Type: Designed to engage stud, welded to back of frames; not less than 0.042 inch thick.
  - 3. Compression Type for Drywall Slip-on Frames: Adjustable compression anchors.
  - 4. Postinstalled Expansion Type for In-Place Concrete or Masonry: Minimum 3/8-inch-diameter bolts with expansion shields or inserts. Provide pipe spacer from frame to wall, with throat reinforcement plate, welded to frame at each anchor location.
- B. Floor Anchors: Formed from same material as frames, not less than 0.042 inch thick, and as follows:
  - 1. Monolithic Concrete Slabs: Clip-type anchors, with two holes to receive fasteners.
  - 2. Separate Topping Concrete Slabs: Adjustable-type anchors with extension clips, allowing not less than 2-inch height adjustment. Terminate bottom of frames at finish floor surface.

## 2.6 STOPS AND MOLDINGS

- A. Moldings for Glazed Lites in Doors: Minimum 0.032 inch thick, fabricated from same material as door face sheet in which they are installed.
- B. Fixed Frame Moldings: Formed integral with hollow metal frames, a minimum of 5/8 inch high unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Loose Stops for Glazed Lites in Frames: Minimum 0.032 inch thick, fabricated from same material as frames in which they are installed.

## 2.7 LOUVERS

- A. Provide louvers for interior doors, where indicated, that comply with SDI 111C, with blades or baffles formed of 0.020-inch-thick, cold-rolled steel sheet set into 0.032-inch-thick steel frame.
  - 1. Sightproof Louver: Stationary louvers constructed with inverted V-shaped or Y-shaped blades.

## 2.8 ACCESSORIES

- A. Mullions and Transom Bars: Join to adjacent members by welding or rigid mechanical anchors.
- B. Ceiling Struts: Minimum 1/4-inch-thick by 1-inch-wide steel.
- C. Grout Guards: Formed from same material as frames, not less than 0.016 inch thick.
- D. Weather Stripping: Manufacturer's standard replaceable components.

- E. Weather Sweeps and Astragals: Manufacturer's standard exterior-door bottom sweep and astragals with concealed fasteners on mounting strip.

## 2.9 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate hollow metal work to be rigid and free of defects, warp, or buckle. Accurately form metal to required sizes and profiles, with minimum radius for thickness of metal. Where practical, fit and assemble units in manufacturer's plant. To ensure proper assembly at Project site, clearly identify work that cannot be permanently factory assembled before shipment.
- B. Tolerances: Fabricate hollow metal work to tolerances indicated in SDI 117.
- C. Door Astragals: Provide overlapping astragal on one leaf of pairs of doors where required by NFPA 80 for fire-performance rating or where indicated. Extend minimum 3/4 inch beyond edge of door on which astragal is mounted or as required to comply with published listing of qualified testing agency.
- D. Hollow Metal Doors:
  - 1. Exterior Doors: Provide weep-hole openings in bottom of exterior doors to permit moisture to escape. Seal joints in top edges of doors against water penetration.
  - 2. Glazed Lites: Factory cut openings in doors.
- E. Hollow Metal Frames: Where frames are fabricated in sections due to shipping or handling limitations, provide alignment plates or angles at each joint, fabricated of same thickness metal as frames.
  - 1. Welded Frames: Weld flush face joints continuously; grind, fill, dress, and make smooth, flush, and invisible.
  - 2. Sidelight and Transom Bar Frames: Provide closed tubular members with no visible face seams or joints, fabricated from same material as door frame. Fasten members at crossings and to jambs by butt welding.
  - 3. Provide countersunk, flat- or oval-head exposed screws and bolts for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4. Grout Guards: Weld guards to frame at back of hardware mortises in frames to be grouted.
  - 5. Floor Anchors: Weld anchors to bottom of jambs and mullions with at least four spot welds per anchor.
  - 6. Jamb Anchors: Provide number and spacing of anchors as follows:
    - a. Masonry Type: Locate anchors not more than 18 inches from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than 32 inches o.c. and as follows:
      - 1) Four anchors per jamb from 90 to 120 inches high.
      - 2) Four anchors per jamb plus 1 additional anchor per jamb for each 24 inches or fraction thereof above 120 inches high.
    - b. Stud-Wall Type: Locate anchors not more than 18 inches from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than 32 inches o.c. and as follows:
      - 1) Five anchors per jamb from 90 to 96 inches high.
      - 2) Five anchors per jamb plus 1 additional anchor per jamb for each 24 inches or fraction thereof above 96 inches high.

- 3) Two anchors per head for frames above 42 inches wide and mounted in metal-stud partitions.
    - c. Compression Type: Not less than two anchors in each jamb.
    - d. Postinstalled Expansion Type: Locate anchors not more than 6 inches from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than 26 inches o.c.
  7. Door Silencers: Except on weather-stripped doors and smoke seals, drill stops to receive door silencers as follows. Keep holes clear during construction.
    - a. Single-Door Frames: Drill stop in strike jamb to receive three door silencers.
    - b. Double-Door Frames: Drill stop in head jamb to receive two door silencers.
  - F. Fabricate concealed stiffeners, edge channels, and hardware reinforcement from either cold- or hot-rolled steel sheet.
  - G. Hardware Preparation: Factory prepare hollow metal work to receive templated mortised hardware; include cutouts, reinforcement, mortising, drilling, and tapping according to the Door Hardware Schedule and templates furnished as specified in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware."
    1. Locate hardware as indicated, or if not indicated, according to ANSI/SDI A250.8.
    2. Reinforce doors and frames to receive nontemplated, mortised and surface-mounted door hardware.
    3. Comply with applicable requirements in ANSI/SDI A250.6 and ANSI/DHI A115 Series specifications for preparation of hollow metal work for hardware.
    4. Coordinate locations of conduit and wiring boxes for electrical connections with Division 26 Sections.
  - H. Stops and Moldings: Provide stops and moldings around glazed lites where indicated. Form corners of stops and moldings with butted or mitered hairline joints.
    1. Single Glazed Lites: Provide fixed stops and moldings welded on secure side of hollow metal work.
    2. Provide fixed frame moldings on outside of exterior and on secure side of interior doors and frames.
    3. Provide loose stops and moldings on inside of hollow metal work.
    4. Coordinate rabbet width between fixed and removable stops with type of glazing and type of installation indicated.
- 2.10 STEEL FINISHES
- A. Prime Finish: Apply manufacturer's standard primer immediately after cleaning and pretreating.
    1. Shop Primer: Manufacturer's standard, fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free primer complying with ANSI/SDI A250.10 acceptance criteria; recommended by primer manufacturer for substrate; compatible with substrate and field-applied coatings despite prolonged exposure.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for embedded and built-in anchors to verify actual locations before frame installation.
- C. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Remove welded-in shipping spreaders installed at factory. Restore exposed finish by grinding, filling, and dressing, as required to make repaired area smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
- B. Prior to installation, adjust and securely brace welded hollow metal frames for squareness, alignment, twist, and plumbness to the following tolerances:
  - 1. Squareness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at door rabbet on a line 90 degrees from jamb perpendicular to frame head.
  - 2. Alignment: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at jambs on a horizontal line parallel to plane of wall.
  - 3. Twist: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at opposite face corners of jambs on parallel lines, and perpendicular to plane of wall.
  - 4. Plumbness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at jambs on a perpendicular line from head to floor.
- C. Drill and tap doors and frames to receive nontemplated, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware.

## 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install hollow metal work plumb, rigid, properly aligned, and securely fastened in place; comply with Drawings and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Hollow Metal Frames: Install hollow metal frames of size and profile indicated. Comply with ANSI/SDI A250.11.
  - 1. Set frames accurately in position, plumbed, aligned, and braced securely until permanent anchors are set. After wall construction is complete, remove temporary braces, leaving surfaces smooth and undamaged.
    - a. At fire-protection-rated openings, install frames according to NFPA 80.
    - b. Where frames are fabricated in sections because of shipping or handling limitations, field splice at approved locations by welding face joint continuously; grind, fill, dress, and make splice smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.

- c. Install frames with removable glazing stops located on secure side of opening.
  - d. Install door silencers in frames before grouting.
  - e. Remove temporary braces necessary for installation only after frames have been properly set and secured.
  - f. Check plumbness, squareness, and twist of frames as walls are constructed. Shim as necessary to comply with installation tolerances.
  - g. Field apply bituminous coating to backs of frames that are filled with grout containing antifreezing agents.
2. Floor Anchors: Provide floor anchors for each jamb and mullion that extends to floor, and secure with postinstalled expansion anchors.
    - a. Floor anchors may be set with powder-actuated fasteners instead of postinstalled expansion anchors if so indicated and approved on Shop Drawings.
  3. Metal-Stud Partitions: Solidly pack mineral-fiber insulation behind frames.
  4. Masonry Walls: Coordinate installation of frames to allow for solidly filling space between frames and masonry with grout.
  5. In-Place Concrete or Masonry Construction: Secure frames in place with postinstalled expansion anchors. Countersink anchors, and fill and make smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
  6. In-Place Gypsum Board Partitions: Secure frames in place with postinstalled expansion anchors through floor anchors at each jamb. Countersink anchors, and fill and make smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
  7. Ceiling Struts: Extend struts vertically from top of frame at each jamb to overhead structural supports or substrates above frame unless frame is anchored to masonry or to other structural support at each jamb. Bend top of struts to provide flush contact for securing to supporting construction. Provide adjustable wedged or bolted anchorage to frame jamb members.
  8. Installation Tolerances: Adjust hollow metal door frames for squareness, alignment, twist, and plumb to the following tolerances:
    - a. Squareness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at door rabbet on a line 90 degrees from jamb perpendicular to frame head.
    - b. Alignment: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at jambs on a horizontal line parallel to plane of wall.
    - c. Twist: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at opposite face corners of jambs on parallel lines, and perpendicular to plane of wall.
    - d. Plumbness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at jambs at floor.
- C. Hollow Metal Doors: Fit hollow metal doors accurately in frames, within clearances specified below. Shim as necessary.
1. Non-Fire-Rated Standard Steel Doors:
    - a. Jambs and Head: 1/8 inch plus or minus 1/16 inch.
    - b. Between Edges of Pairs of Doors: 1/8 inch plus or minus 1/16 inch.
    - c. Between Bottom of Door and Top of Threshold: Maximum 3/8 inch.
    - d. Between Bottom of Door and Top of Finish Floor (No Threshold): Maximum 3/4 inch.
  2. Fire-Rated Doors: Install doors with clearances according to NFPA 80.
  3. Smoke-Control Doors: Install doors according to NFPA 105.

- D. Glazing: Comply with installation requirements in Division 08 Section "Glazing" and with hollow metal manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Secure stops with countersunk flat- or oval-head machine screws spaced uniformly not more than 9 inches o.c. and not more than 2 inches o.c. from each corner.

#### 3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Final Adjustments: Check and readjust operating hardware items immediately before final inspection. Leave work in complete and proper operating condition. Remove and replace defective work, including hollow metal work that is warped, bowed, or otherwise unacceptable.
- B. Remove grout and other bonding material from hollow metal work immediately after installation.
- C. Prime-Coat Touchup: Immediately after erection, sand smooth rusted or damaged areas of prime coat and apply touchup of compatible air-drying, rust-inhibitive primer.
- D. Metallic-Coated Surfaces: Clean abraded areas and repair with galvanizing repair paint according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 08 11 13



## SECTION 08 14 16 - FLUSH WOOD DOORS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Solid-core doors with wood-veneer faces.
2. Factory finishing flush wood doors.
3. Factory fitting flush wood doors to frames and factory machining for hardware.

## 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of door indicated. Include details of core and edge construction, louvers, and trim for openings. Include factory-finishing specifications.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate location, size, and hand of each door; elevation of each kind of door; construction details not covered in Product Data; location and extent of hardware blocking; and other pertinent data.
  1. Indicate dimensions and locations of mortises and holes for hardware.
  2. Indicate dimensions and locations of cutouts.
  3. Indicate requirements for veneer matching.
  4. Indicate doors to be factory finished and finish requirements.
  5. Indicate fire-protection ratings for fire-rated doors.
- C. Samples for Verification:
  1. Factory finishes applied to actual door face materials, approximately full size door, for each material and finish.
  2. Entire door, approximately with door faces and edges representing actual materials to be used.
    - a. Provide samples for each species of veneer and solid lumber required.
    - b. Provide samples for each color, texture, and pattern of plastic laminate required.
    - c. Finish veneer-faced door samples with same materials proposed for factory-finished doors.
  3. Louver blade and frame sections, 6 inches long, for each material and finish specified.
  4. Frames for light openings, 6 inches long, for each material, type, and finish required.
- D. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer that is certified for chain of custody by an FSC-accredited certification body.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain flush wood doors from single manufacturer.
- C. Quality Standard: In addition to requirements specified, comply with WDMA I.S.1-A, "Architectural Wood Flush Doors."
- D. Fire-Rated Wood Doors: Doors complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing at positive pressure according to NFPA 252.
  - 1. Oversize Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: For units exceeding sizes of tested assemblies, provide certification by a qualified testing agency that doors comply with standard construction requirements for tested and labeled fire-rated door assemblies except for size.
- E. Smoke-Control Door Assemblies: Comply with NFPA 105 or UL 1784.
- F. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with requirements of referenced standard and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Package doors individually in cardboard cartons and wrap bundles of doors in plastic sheeting.
- C. Mark each door on top and bottom rail with opening number used on Shop Drawings.

#### 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install doors until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature between 60 and 90 deg F and relative humidity between 25 and 55 percent during the remainder of the construction period.

#### 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace doors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Warping (bow, cup, or twist) more than 1/4 inch in a 42-by-84-inch section.
    - b. Telegraphing of core construction in face veneers exceeding 0.01 inch in a 3-inch span.
  - 2. Warranty shall also include installation and finishing that may be required due to repair or replacement of defective doors.
  - 3. Warranty Period for Solid-Core Interior Doors: Life of installation.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Eggers Industries.
  2. Graham; an Assa Abloy Group company.
  3. Marshfield Door Systems, Inc.
  4. Mohawk Flush Doors, Inc.; a Masonite company.
  5. VT Industries Inc.

## 2.2 DOOR CONSTRUCTION, GENERAL

- A. Low-Emitting Materials: Provide doors made with adhesives and composite wood products that do not contain urea formaldehyde.
- B. WDMA I.S.1-A Performance Grade: Extra Heavy Duty.
- C. Particleboard-Core Doors:
1. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade LD-1, made with binder containing no urea-formaldehyde resin.
  2. Blocking: Provide wood blocking in particleboard-core doors as follows:
    - a. 5-inch top-rail blocking, in doors indicated to have closers.
    - b. 5-inch bottom-rail blocking, in exterior doors and doors indicated to have kick, mop, or armor plates.
    - c. 5-inch midrail blocking, in doors indicated to have exit devices.
  3. Provide doors with either glued-wood-stave or structural-composite-lumber cores instead of particleboard cores for doors indicated to receive exit devices.
- D. Fire-Protection-Rated Doors: Provide core specified or mineral core as needed to provide fire-protection rating indicated.
1. Edge Construction: Provide edge construction with intumescent seals concealed by outer stile. Comply with specified requirements for exposed edges.
  2. Pairs: Provide fire-retardant stiles that are listed and labeled for applications indicated without formed-steel edges and astragals. Provide stiles with concealed intumescent seals. Comply with specified requirements for exposed edges.

## 2.3 VENEERED-FACED DOORS FOR TRANSPARENT FINISH

- A. Interior Solid-Core Doors:
1. Grade: Premium (Grade A faces).
  2. Species: As indicated.
  3. Cut: As indicated.
  4. Match between Veneer Leaves: Book match.
  5. Assembly of Veneer Leaves on Door Faces: Center-balance match.

6. Pair and Set Match: Provide for doors hung in same opening.
7. Exposed Vertical and Top Edges: Same species as faces.
8. Core: Particleboard.
9. Construction: Five or seven plies. Stiles and rails are bonded to core, then entire unit abrasive planed before veneering.
10. WDMA I.S.1-A Performance Grade: Extra Heavy Duty.
11. Thickness: 1-3/4 inches.

## 2.4 LOUVERS AND LIGHT FRAMES

### A. Metal Louvers:

1. Blade Type: Vision-proof, inverted V.
2. Metal and Finish: Hot-dip galvanized steel, 0.040 inch thick, with baked-enamel- or powder-coated finish.
  - a. Color: As selected by Architect.

### B. Louvers for Fire-Rated Doors: Metal louvers with fusible link and closing device, listed and labeled for use in doors with fire-protection rating of 1-1/2 hours and less.

1. Metal and Finish: Hot-dip galvanized steel, 0.040 inch thick, with baked-enamel- or powder-coated finish.
  - a. Color: As selected by Architect.

### C. Metal Frames for Light Openings in Fire-Rated Doors: Manufacturer's standard frame formed of 0.048-inch- thick, cold-rolled steel sheet; with baked-enamel- or powder-coated finish; and approved for use in doors of fire-protection rating indicated.

1. Color: As selected by Architect.

### D. Wood Beads for Light Openings in Wood Doors: Provide manufacturer's standard wood beads unless otherwise indicated.

1. Wood Species: Same species as door faces.
2. Profile: Flush rectangular beads.
3. At wood-core doors with 20-minute fire-protection ratings, provide wood beads and metal glazing clips approved for such use.

## 2.5 FABRICATION

### A. Factory fit doors to suit frame-opening sizes indicated. Comply with clearance requirements of referenced quality standard for fitting unless otherwise indicated.

1. Comply with requirements in NFPA 80 for fire-rated doors.

### B. Factory machine doors for hardware that is not surface applied. Locate hardware to comply with DHI-WDHS-3. Comply with final hardware schedules, door frame Shop Drawings, DHI A115-W series standards, and hardware templates.

1. Coordinate with hardware mortises in metal frames to verify dimensions and alignment before factory machining.

- C. Transom and Side Panels: Fabricate matching panels with same construction, exposed surfaces, and finish as specified for associated doors. Finish bottom edges of transoms and top edges of rabbeted doors same as door stiles.
  - 1. Fabricate door and transom panels with full-width, solid-lumber, rabbeted, meeting rails. Provide factory-installed spring bolts for concealed attachment into jambs of metal door frames.
- D. Openings: Cut and trim openings through doors in factory.
  - 1. Light Openings: Trim openings with moldings of material and profile indicated.
  - 2. Glazing: Factory install glazing in doors indicated to be factory finished. Comply with applicable requirements in Division 08 Section "Glazing."
  - 3. Louvers: Factory install louvers in prepared openings.

## 2.6 FACTORY FINISHING

- A. General: Comply with referenced quality standard for factory finishing. Complete fabrication, including fitting doors for openings and machining for hardware that is not surface applied, before finishing.
  - 1. Finish faces, all four edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises. Stains and fillers may be omitted on top and bottom edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises.
- B. Finish doors at factory.
- C. Transparent Finish:
  - 1. Grade: Premium.
  - 2. Finish: WDMA TR-4 conversion varnish or TR-6 catalyzed polyurethane.
  - 3. Staining: To match Architect's sample approved by Owner.
  - 4. Effect: Open-grain finish.
  - 5. Sheen: Satin.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine doors and installed door frames before hanging doors.
  - 1. Verify that frames comply with indicated requirements for type, size, location, and swing characteristics and have been installed with level heads and plumb jambs.
  - 2. Reject doors with defects.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Hardware: For installation, see Division 08 Section "Door Hardware."
- B. Installation Instructions: Install doors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions and the referenced quality standard, and as indicated.

1. Install fire-rated doors in corresponding fire-rated frames according to NFPA 80.
- C. Job-Fitted Doors: Align and fit doors in frames with uniform clearances and bevels as indicated below; do not trim stiles and rails in excess of limits set by manufacturer or permitted for fire-rated doors. Machine doors for hardware. Seal edges of doors, edges of cutouts, and mortises after fitting and machining.
1. Clearances: Provide 1/8 inch at heads, jambs, and between pairs of doors. Provide 1/8 inch from bottom of door to top of decorative floor finish or covering unless otherwise indicated. Where threshold is shown or scheduled, provide 1/4 inch from bottom of door to top of threshold unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Comply with NFPA 80 for fire-rated doors.
  2. Bevel non-fire-rated doors 1/8 inch in 2 inches at lock and hinge edges.
  3. Bevel fire-rated doors 1/8 inch in 2 inches at lock edge; trim stiles and rails only to extent permitted by labeling agency.
- D. Factory-Fitted Doors: Align in frames for uniform clearance at each edge.
- E. Factory-Finished Doors: Restore finish before installation if fitting or machining is required at Project site.
- F. Verify the flush wood doors matches the furniture provided by Knoll. Replace until woodwork is a match acceptable to Architect.
- 3.3 ADJUSTING
- A. Operation: Rehang or replace doors that do not swing or operate freely.
  - B. Finished Doors: Replace doors that are damaged or that do not comply with requirements. Doors may be repaired or refinished if work complies with requirements and shows no evidence of repair or refinishing.

END OF SECTION 08 14 16

## SECTION 08 31 13 - ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Access doors and frames for walls and ceilings.

## 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of access door and frame indicated. Include construction details, fire ratings, materials, individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details of access doors and frames for each type of substrate. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
- C. Access Door and Frame Schedule: Provide complete access door and frame schedule, including types, locations, sizes, latching or locking provisions, and other data pertinent to installation.
- D. Ceiling Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which ceiling-mounted items including access doors and frames, lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, and special trim are shown and coordinated with each other.

## 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain access door(s) and frame(s) through one source from a single manufacturer.
- B. Size Variations: Obtain Architect's acceptance of manufacturer's standard-size units, which may vary slightly from sizes indicated.

## 1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Verification: Determine specific locations and sizes for access doors needed to gain access to concealed plumbing, mechanical, or other concealed work, and indicate in the schedule specified in "Submittals" Article.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 STEEL MATERIALS

- A. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
  - 1. ASTM A 123/A 123M, for galvanizing steel and iron products.
  - 2. ASTM A 153/A 153M, for galvanizing steel and iron hardware.
- B. Rolled-Steel Floor Plate: ASTM A 786/A 786M, rolled from plate complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M or ASTM A 283/A 283M, Grade C or D.
  - 1. ASTM A 123/A 123M, for galvanizing steel and iron products
  - 2. ASTM A 153/A 153M, for galvanizing steel and iron hardware.
- C. Steel Sheet: Uncoated, cold-rolled steel sheet substrate complying with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), exposed.
- D. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Commercial Steel (CS) with A60 zinc-iron-alloy (galvannealed) coating or G60 mill-phosphatized zinc coating; stretcher-leveled standard of flatness; with minimum thickness indicated representing specified thickness according to ASTM A 924/A 924M.
- E. Steel Finishes: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
  - 1. Surface Preparation for Steel Sheet: Clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 1, "Solvent Cleaning," to remove dirt, oil, grease, or other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, complying with SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1, "White Metal Blast Cleaning," or SSPC-SP 8, "Pickling."
  - 2. Factory-Primed Finish: Apply shop primer immediately after cleaning and pretreating.
- F. Drywall Beads: Edge trim formed from 0.0299-inch zinc-coated steel sheet formed to receive joint compound and in size to suit thickness of gypsum board.

## 2.2 ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES FOR WALLS AND CEILINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. The Bilco Company.
  - 2. J. L. Industries, Inc.
  - 3. Milcor Inc.
  - 4. Nystrom, Inc.
  - 5. Or equal.
- B. Flush Access Doors and Trimless Frames: Fabricated from steel sheet.
  - 1. Locations: Wall and ceiling surfaces.
  - 2. Door: Minimum 0.060-inch- thick sheet metal, set flush with surrounding finish surfaces.
  - 3. Frame: Minimum 0.060-inch- thick sheet metal with drywall or plaster bead flange.
  - 4. Hinges: Spring-loaded, concealed-pin type.
  - 5. Latch: Cam latch operated by screwdriver with interior release.



6. Lock: Cylinder.
7. Finish: Match wall or ceiling.

## 2.3 FABRICATION

- A. General: Provide access door and frame assemblies manufactured as integral units ready for installation.
- B. Metal Surfaces: For metal surfaces exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces without blemishes. Do not use materials with exposed pitting, seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or roughness.
- C. Doors and Frames: Grind exposed welds smooth and flush with adjacent surfaces. Furnish attachment devices and fasteners of type required to secure access panels to types of supports indicated.
  1. Exposed Flanges: As indicated.
  2. For trimless frames with drywall bead, provide edge trim for gypsum board securely attached to perimeter of frames.
  3. Provide mounting holes in frames for attachment of units to metal or wood framing.
  4. Provide mounting holes in frame for attachment of masonry anchors. Furnish adjustable metal masonry anchors.
- D. Recessed Access Doors: Form face of panel to provide recess for application of applied finish. Reinforce panel as required to prevent buckling.
- E. Latching Mechanisms: Furnish number required to hold doors in flush, smooth plane when closed.
  1. For cylinder lock, furnish two keys per lock and key all locks alike.
  2. For recessed panel doors, provide access sleeves for each locking device. Furnish plastic grommets and install in holes cut through finish.
- F. Extruded Aluminum: After fabrication, apply manufacturer's standard protective coating on aluminum that will come in contact with concrete.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing access doors and frames.
- B. Install doors flush with adjacent finish surfaces or recessed to receive finish material.

### 3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Adjust doors and hardware after installation for proper operation.
- B. Remove and replace doors and frames that are warped, bowed, or otherwise damaged.

END OF SECTION 08 31 13

September 15, 2023

Novant ASC Leland  
Construction Documents

1721843900



## SECTION 08 41 13 - ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Exterior storefront framing.
  - 2. Framing for exterior punched windows.
  - 3. Exterior manual-swing entrance doors.

## 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

## 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts. Include plans, elevations, sections, full-size details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Include full-size isometric details of each vertical-to-horizontal intersection of aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts, showing the following:
    - a. Joinery, including concealed welds.
    - b. Anchorage.
    - c. Glazing.
    - d. Wood finish trim.
  - 2. Show connection to and continuity with adjacent thermal, weather, air, and vapor barriers.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, in manufacturer's standard sizes.
- D. Fabrication Sample: Of each vertical-to-horizontal intersection of assemblies, made from 12-inch lengths of full-size components and showing details of the following:
  - 1. Joinery, including concealed welds.

2. Anchorage.
3. Glazing.
4. Wood finish trim.

## 1.5 SUBMITTALS

### A. Preconstruction Laboratory Mockup Testing Submittals:

1. Testing Program: Developed specifically for Project.
2. Test Reports: Prepared by a qualified preconstruction testing agency for each mockup test.
3. Record Drawings: As-built drawings of preconstruction laboratory mockups showing changes made during preconstruction laboratory mockup testing.

### B. Qualification Data: For Installer and field testing agency.

### C. Product Test Reports: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

### D. Energy Performance Certificates: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: NFRC-certified energy performance values for each aluminum-framed entrance and storefront.

### E. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

### A. Maintenance Data: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

### A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.

### B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 699 for testing indicated.

### C. Product Options: Information on Drawings and in Specifications establishes requirements for aesthetic effects and performance characteristics of assemblies. Aesthetic effects are indicated by dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies as they relate to sightlines, to one another, and to adjoining construction.

1. Do not change intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If changes are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.

## 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts that do not comply with requirements or that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Structural failures including, but not limited to, excessive deflection.
    - b. Noise or vibration created by wind and thermal and structural movements.
    - c. Water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas.
    - d. Failure of operating components.
  2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Finish Warranty, Anodized Finishes: Standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finishes or replace aluminum that shows evidence of deterioration of anodized finishes within specified warranty period.
1. Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
    - a. Color fading more than 5 Delta E units when tested in accordance with ASTM D 2244.
    - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested in accordance with ASTM D 4214.
    - c. Cracking, peeling, or chipping.
  2. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 EXTERIOR STOREFRONT FRAMING

- A. Basis of Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Kawneer North America; Trifab 451/451T or comparable products by one of the following:
1. Oldcastle BuildingEnvelope.
  2. YKK AP America Inc.
  3. EFCO.
- B. Framing Members: Manufacturer's extruded- or formed-aluminum framing members of thickness required and reinforced as required to support imposed loads.
1. Construction: Thermally-broken.
  2. Glazing System: Retained mechanically with gaskets on four sides.
  3. Glazing Plane: Front.
  4. Fabrication Method: Field-fabricated stick system.
  5. Frame profile: 2" by 4 -1/2" nominal unless otherwise indicated.
  6. Finish: Clear anodized.
- C. Backer Plates: Manufacturer's standard, continuous backer plates for framing members, if not integral, where framing abuts adjacent construction.

- D. Brackets and Reinforcements: Manufacturer's standard high-strength aluminum with nonstaining, nonferrous shims for aligning system components.
- E. Materials:
1. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated.
    - a. Sheet and Plate: ASTM B 209.
    - b. Extruded Bars, Rods, Profiles, and Tubes: ASTM B 221.
    - c. Extruded Structural Pipe and Tubes: ASTM B 429/B 429M.
    - d. Structural Profiles: ASTM B 308/B 308M.
  2. Steel Reinforcement: Manufacturer's standard zinc-rich, corrosion-resistant primer complying with SSPC-PS Guide No. 12.00; applied immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment. Select surface preparation methods according to recommendations in SSPC-SP COM, and prepare surfaces according to applicable SSPC standard.
    - a. Structural Shapes, Plates, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
    - b. Cold-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M.
    - c. Hot-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M.

## 2.2 ENTRANCE DOOR SYSTEMS

- A. Basis of Design: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Kawneer North America, "500 Standard Entrance" or comparable products by one of the following:
1. Oldcastle BuildingEnvelope.
  2. YKK AP America Inc.
  3. EFCO.
- B. Entrance Doors: Manufacturer's standard glazed entrance doors for manual-swing operation.
1. Door Construction: 1-3/4 inch overall thickness, with minimum 0.188-inch-thick, extruded-aluminum tubular rail and stile members. Mechanically fasten corners with reinforcing brackets that are deeply penetrated and fillet welded or that incorporate concealed tie rods.
  2. Door Design: Wide stile; 5-inch nominal width.
  3. Glazing Stops and Gaskets: Beveled, snap-on, extruded-aluminum stops and preformed gaskets.
    - a. Provide nonremovable glazing stops on outside of door.

## 2.3 DOOR FRAMES

- A. Exterior Door Frames: Manufacturer's standard glazed door frames for manual-swing operation.
1. Door Frame Construction: As indicated on Drawings to receive doors as scheduled.
    - a. Thermal construction.
  2. Door Design: As indicated.

3. Glazing Stops and Gaskets: Beveled, snap-on, extruded-aluminum stops and preformed gaskets.
  - a. Provide nonremovable glazing stops on outside of door.

## 2.4 ENTRANCE DOOR HARDWARE

- A. General: Provide entrance door hardware and entrance door hardware sets indicated in door and frame schedule for each entrance door to comply with requirements in this Section.

## 2.5 GLAZING

- A. Glazing: Comply with Division 08 Section "Glazing."
- B. Glazing Sealants: As recommended by manufacturer.

## 2.6 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding fasteners and accessories compatible with adjacent materials.
  1. Use self-locking devices where fasteners are subject to loosening or turning out from thermal and structural movements, wind loads, or vibration.
  2. Reinforce members as required to receive fastener threads.
  3. Use exposed fasteners with countersunk Phillips screw heads, finished to match framing system.
- B. Anchors: Three-way adjustable anchors with minimum adjustment of 1 inch that accommodate fabrication and installation tolerances in material and finish compatible with adjoining materials and recommended by manufacturer.
  1. Concrete and Masonry Inserts: Hot-dip galvanized cast-iron, malleable-iron, or steel inserts complying with ASTM A 123/A 123M or ASTM A 153/A 153M requirements.
- C. Concealed Flashing: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding flashing compatible with adjacent materials.
- D. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt-mastic paint complying with SSPC-Paint 12 requirements except containing no asbestos, formulated for 30-mil thickness per coat.

## 2.7 FABRICATION

- A. Form or extrude aluminum shapes before finishing.
- B. Weld in concealed locations to greatest extent possible to minimize distortion or discoloration of finish. Remove weld spatter and welding oxides from exposed surfaces by descaling or grinding.
- C. Fabricate components that, when assembled, have the following characteristics:
  1. Profiles that are sharp, straight, and free of defects or deformations.

2. Accurately fitted joints with ends coped or mitered.
  3. Physical and thermal isolation of glazing from framing members.
  4. Accommodations for thermal and mechanical movements of glazing and framing to maintain required glazing edge clearances.
  5. Provisions for field replacement of glazing from exterior.
  6. Fasteners, anchors, and connection devices that are concealed from view to greatest extent possible.
- D. Mechanically Glazed Framing Members: Fabricate for flush glazing without projecting stops.
- E. Entrance Door Frames: Reinforce as required to support loads imposed by door operation and for installing entrance door hardware.
1. At exterior doors, provide compression weather stripping at fixed stops.
- F. Entrance Doors: Reinforce doors as required for installing entrance door hardware.
1. At pairs of exterior doors, provide sliding-type weather stripping retained in adjustable strip and mortised into door edge.
  2. At exterior doors, provide weather sweeps applied to door bottoms.
- G. Entrance Door Hardware Installation: Factory install entrance door hardware to the greatest extent possible. Cut, drill, and tap for factory-installed entrance door hardware before applying finishes.
- H. After fabrication, clearly mark components to identify their locations in Project according to Shop Drawings.

## 2.8 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.

## 2.9 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Structural Sealant: Perform quality-control procedures complying with ASTM C 1401 recommendations including, but not limited to, assembly material qualification procedures, sealant testing, and assembly fabrication reviews and checks.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.



### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare surfaces that are in contact with structural sealant according to sealant manufacturer's written instructions to ensure compatibility and adhesion. Preparation includes, but is not limited to, cleaning and priming surfaces.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

#### A. General:

1. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Do not install damaged components.
3. Fit joints to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion.
4. Rigidly secure nonmovement joints.
5. Install anchors with separators and isolators to prevent metal corrosion and electrolytic deterioration and to prevent impeding movement of moving joints.
6. Seal perimeter and other joints watertight unless otherwise indicated.

#### B. Metal Protection:

1. Where aluminum is in contact with dissimilar metals, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with materials recommended by manufacturer for this purpose or by installing nonconductive spacers.
2. Where aluminum is in contact with concrete or masonry, protect against corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous paint.

- C. Set continuous sill members and flashing in full sealant bed as specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" to produce weathertight installation.

- D. Install components plumb and true in alignment with established lines and grades.

- E. Install operable units level and plumb, securely anchored, and without distortion. Adjust weather-stripping contact and hardware movement to produce proper operation.

- F. Install glazing as specified in Division 08 Section "Glazing."

- G. Entrance Doors: Install doors to produce smooth operation and tight fit at contact points.

1. Field-Installed Entrance Door Hardware: Install surface-mounted entrance door hardware according to entrance door hardware manufacturers' written instructions using concealed fasteners to greatest extent possible.

### 3.4 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Erection Tolerances: Install aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts to comply with the following maximum tolerances:

1. Plumb: 1/8 inch in 10 feet; 1/4 inch in 40 feet.
2. Level: 1/8 inch in 20 feet; 1/4 inch in 40 feet.
3. Alignment:

- a. Where surfaces abut in line or are separated by reveal or protruding element up to 1/2 inch wide, limit offset from true alignment to 1/16 inch.

- b. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element from 1/2 to 1 inch wide, limit offset from true alignment to 1/8 inch.
  - c. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element of 1 inch wide or more, limit offset from true alignment to 1/4 inch.
4. Location: Limit variation from plane to 1/8 inch in 12 feet; 1/2 inch over total length.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- A. Tests and Inspections: Perform the following tests on representative areas of aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts.
  - 1. Water-Spray Test: Before installation of interior finishes has begun, areas designated by Architect shall be tested in accordance with AAMA 501.2 and shall not evidence water penetration.
    - a. Perform a minimum of three tests in areas as directed by Architect.
  - 2. Air Leakage: ASTM E783 at 1.5 times the rate specified for laboratory testing in "Performance Requirements" Article but not more than 0.09 cfm/sq. ft. at a static-air-pressure differential of 1.57 lbf/sq. ft.
    - a. Perform a minimum of three tests in areas as directed by Architect.
  - 3. Water Penetration: ASTM E1105 at a minimum uniform and cyclic static-air-pressure differential of 0.67 times the static-air-pressure differential specified for laboratory testing in "Performance Requirements" Article, but not less than 6.24 lbf/sq. ft., and shall not evidence water penetration.
- B. Aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.6 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Entrance Door Hardware:
  - 1. Maintenance Tools and Instructions: Furnish a complete set of specialized tools and maintenance instructions as needed for Owner's continued adjustment, maintenance, and removal and replacement of entrance door hardware.
  - 2. Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, provide six months' full maintenance by skilled employees of entrance door hardware Installer. Include quarterly preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper entrance door hardware operation at rated speed and capacity. Use parts and supplies that are the same as those used in the manufacture and installation of original equipment.

END OF SECTION 08 41 13

## SECTION 08 42 29.23 - SLIDING AUTOMATIC ENTRANCES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Sliding automatic entrances.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. AAADM: American Association of Automatic Door Manufacturers.
- B. Activation Device: A control that, when actuated, sends an electrical signal to the door operator to open the door.
- C. Safety Device: A control that, to avoid injury, prevents a door from opening or closing.
- D. For automatic door terminology, refer to BHMA A156.10 for definitions of terms.

## 1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of recesses in concrete floors for recessed sliding tracks that control automatic entrances. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified elsewhere.
- B. Templates: Distribute for doors, frames, and other work specified to be factory prepared for installing automatic entrances.
- C. Coordinate hardware with doors, frames, and related work to ensure proper size, thickness, hand, function, and finish. Coordinate hardware for automatic entrances with hardware required for rest of Project.
- D. Electrical System Roughing-in: Coordinate layout and installation of automatic entrances with connections to power supplies and access-control system and remote monitoring systems.
- E. System Integration: Integrate sliding automatic entrances with other systems as required for a complete working installation.
  - 1. Provide electrical interface control capability for activation of sliding automatic entrances by security access system on doors with electric locking.
  - 2. Provide electrical interface to deactivate door operators on activation of fire alarm system.

3. Provide electrical interface to allow for remote monitoring of automatic entrance door panel status.

#### 1.5 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.6 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for automatic entrances.
  2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For sliding automatic entrances.
  1. Include plans, elevations, sections, hardware mounting heights, and attachment details.
  2. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
  4. Indicate locations of activation and safety devices.
  5. Include hardware schedule and indicate hardware types, functions, quantities, and locations.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, in manufacturer's standard sizes.
- D. Delegated Design Submittal: For automatic entrances.

#### 1.7 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of automatic entrance. Include emergency-exit features of automatic entrances serving as a required means of egress.
- C. Product Test Reports: For each type of automatic entrance, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- D. Field quality-control reports.
- E. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's special warranties.

#### 1.8 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For automatic entrances, safety devices, and control systems to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

## 1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A manufacturer with Company Certificate issued by AAADM indicating that manufacturer has a Certified Inspector on staff.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation and maintenance of units required for this Project.
  - 1. Maintenance Proximity: Not more than two hours' normal travel time from Installer's place of business to Project site.
- C. Certified Inspector Qualifications: Certified by AAADM.

## 1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of automatic entrances that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Structural failures including, but not limited to, excessive deflection.
    - b. Faulty operation of operators, controls, and hardware.
    - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering and use.
  - 2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Finish Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components on which finishes fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
    - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested in accordance with ASTM D2244.
    - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested in accordance with ASTM D4214.
    - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
  - 2. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 AUTOMATIC ENTRANCE ASSEMBLIES

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain sliding automatic entrances from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Power-Operated Door Standard: BHMA A156.10.

## 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 01 40 00 "Quality Requirements," to design automatic entrances.
- B. Structural Performance: Automatic entrances shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7.
- C. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.
  - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.
- D. Operating Temperature Range: Automatic entrances shall operate within minus 20 to plus 122 deg F.
- E. Air Infiltration: Maximum air leakage through fixed glazing and framing areas of 1.25 cfm/sq. ft. of fixed entrance-system area when tested in accordance with ASTM E283 at a minimum static-air-pressure difference of 6.24 lbf/sq. ft.
- F. Opening Force:
  - 1. Power-Operated Doors: Not more than 50 lbf required to manually set door in motion if power fails, and not more than 15 lbf required to open door to minimum required width.
  - 2. Breakaway Device for Power-Operated Doors: Not more than 50 lbf required for a breakaway door or panel to open.
- G. Entrapment-Prevention Force:
  - 1. Power-Operated Sliding Doors: Not more than 30 lbf required to prevent stopped door from closing.

## 2.3 SLIDING AUTOMATIC ENTRANCES

- A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard automatic entrances, including doors, sidelites, framing, headers, carrier assemblies, roller tracks, door operators, controls, and accessories required for a complete installation.
- B. Entry Sliding Automatic Entrance:
  - 1. Biparting-Sliding Units:
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - 1) Basis of design: Besam Assa Abloy: SL500 CGL.
      - 2) DormaKaba Group.
      - 3) Horton Automatics; a division of Overhead Door Corporation.
      - 4) Stanley Access Technologies.
  - 2. Configuration, Biparting-Sliding: Biparting-sliding doors with two sliding leaves and sidelites on each side.

- a. Traffic Pattern: Two way.
  - b. Emergency Breakaway Capability: Sliding leaves.
  - c. Mounting: Between jambs.
  - d. Glazing:
    - 1) Exterior Doors and sidelights: 1" insulated glazing units to match storefront and curtain wall glazing.
    - 2) Interior Doors and sidelights: 1/4" thick minimum clear tempered glass.
  - e. Egress hardware: Integral push bars.
3. Operator Features:
- a. Power opening and closing.
  - b. Drive System: Belt.
  - c. Adjustable opening and closing speeds.
  - d. Adjustable hold-open time between zero and 30 seconds.
  - e. Obstruction recycle.
  - f. On-off/hold-open switch to control electric power to operator, key operated.
4. Sliding-Door Carrier Assemblies and Overhead Roller Tracks: Carrier assembly that allows vertical adjustment; consisting of nylon- or delrin-covered, ball-bearing-center steel wheels operating on a continuous roller track, or ball-bearing-center steel wheels operating on a nylon- or delrin-covered, continuous roller track. Support doors from carrier assembly by cantilever and pivot assembly.
- a. Rollers: Minimum of two ball-bearing roller wheels and two antirise rollers for each active leaf.
5. Sliding-Door Threshold: Threshold members and bottom-guide-track system with stainless steel, ball-bearing-center roller wheels.
- a. Configuration, Threshold: Saddle-type threshold across door opening and surface-mounted guide-track system at sidelites.
6. Controls: Activation and safety devices in accordance with BHMA standards.
- a. Activation Device, Motion Sensor: Mounted on each side of door header to detect pedestrians in activating zone and to open door.
  - b. Safety Device, Presence Sensor Under Door Header and Photoelectric Beams: Presence sensor mounted to underside of door header and two photoelectric beams mounted in sidelite jambs on one side of the door to detect pedestrians in presence zone and to prevent door from closing.
  - c. Sidelite Safety Device: Presence sensor, mounted above each sidelite on side of door opening through which doors travel, to detect obstructions and to prevent door from opening.
7. Finish: Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.
- C. Discharge Lobby Sliding Automatic Entrance
1. Biparting-Sliding Units:
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- 1) Basis of design: Horton Automatics, "Profiler Series 2000B, Type 310."
  - 2) Besam Assa Abloy.
  - 3) DormaKaba Group.
  - 4) Stanley Access Technologies.
2. Configuration, Biparting-Sliding: Biparting-sliding doors with two sliding leaves and sidelites on each side.
- a. Traffic Pattern: Two way.
  - b. Emergency Breakaway Capability: Sliding leaves and sidelights.
  - c. Mounting: Between jambs.
  - d. Glazing:
    - 1) Exterior Doors and sidelights: 1" insulated glazing units to match storefront and curtain wall glazing.
    - 2) Interior Doors and sidelights: 1/4" thick minimum clear tempered glass.
  - e. Egress hardware: Integral push bars.
3. Operator Features:
- a. Power opening and closing.
  - b. Drive System: Belt.
  - c. Adjustable opening and closing speeds.
  - d. Adjustable hold-open time between zero and 30 seconds.
  - e. Obstruction recycle.
  - f. On-off/hold-open switch to control electric power to operator, key operated.
4. Sliding-Door Carrier Assemblies and Overhead Roller Tracks: Carrier assembly that allows vertical adjustment; consisting of nylon- or delrin-covered, ball-bearing-center steel wheels operating on a continuous roller track, or ball-bearing-center steel wheels operating on a nylon- or delrin-covered, continuous roller track. Support doors from carrier assembly by cantilever and pivot assembly.
- a. Rollers: Minimum of two ball-bearing roller wheels and two antirise rollers for each active leaf.
5. Sliding-Door Threshold: Threshold members and bottom-guide-track system with stainless steel, ball-bearing-center roller wheels.
- a. Configuration, Threshold: Saddle-type threshold across door opening and surface-mounted guide-track system at sidelites.
6. Controls: Activation and safety devices in accordance with BHMA standards.
- a. Activation Device, Motion Sensor: Mounted on each side of door header to detect pedestrians in activating zone and to open door.
  - b. Safety Device, Presence Sensor Under Door Header and Photoelectric Beams: Presence sensor mounted to underside of door header and two photoelectric beams mounted in sidelite jambs on one side of the door to detect pedestrians in presence zone and to prevent door from closing.
  - c. Sidelite Safety Device: Presence sensor, mounted above each sidelite on side of door opening through which doors travel, to detect obstructions and to prevent door from opening.



7. Finish: Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.

## 2.4 ENTRANCE COMPONENTS

- A. Framing Members: Extruded aluminum, minimum 0.125 inch thick and reinforced as required to support imposed loads.
- B. Stile and Rail Doors: Manufacturer's standard thickness for specified doors, glazed doors with minimum 0.125-inch-thick, extruded-aluminum tubular stile and rail members. Mechanically fasten corners with reinforcing brackets that are welded, or incorporate concealed tie-rods that span full length of top and bottom rails.
  1. Glazing Stops and Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard, snap-on, extruded-aluminum stops and preformed gaskets.
  2. Stile Design: Medium stile, 3-1/2-inch nominal width.
  3. Rail Design: 10-inch nominal height unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Muntin Bars: Horizontal tubular rail member for each door; match stile design and finish.
- C. Sidelite(s): Manufacturer's standard thickness for specified sidelite(s) with minimum 0.125-inch-thick, extruded-aluminum tubular stile and rail members matching door design.
  1. Glazing Stops and Gaskets: Same materials and design as for stile and rail door.
  2. Muntin Bars: Horizontal tubular rail members for each sidelite; match stile design.
- D. Headers: Fabricated from minimum 0.125-inch-thick extruded aluminum and extending full width of automatic entrance units to conceal door operators and controls. Provide hinged or removable access panels for service and adjustment of door operators and controls. Secure panels to prevent unauthorized access.
  1. Mounting: Concealed, with one side of header flush with framing.
  2. Capacity: Capable of supporting doors of up to 175 lb per leaf over spans of up to 14 feet without intermediate supports.
    - a. Provide sag rods for spans exceeding 14 feet.
- E. Brackets and Reinforcements: High-strength aluminum with nonstaining, nonferrous shims for aligning system components.
- F. Signage: As required by cited BHMA standard.
  1. Application Process: Decals.
  2. Provide sign materials with instructions for field application after glazing is installed.

## 2.5 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated.
  1. Extrusions: ASTM B221.
  2. Sheet: ASTM B209.
- B. Steel Reinforcement: Reinforcement with corrosion-resistant primer complying with SSPC-PS Guide No. 12.00 applied immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment. Use surface

preparation methods in accordance with recommendations in SSPC-SP COM and prepare surfaces in accordance with applicable SSPC standard.

- C. Glazing: As specified in Section 08 80 00 "Glazing."
- D. Sealants and Joint Fillers: As specified in Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants."
- E. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: Premixed, nonmetallic, noncorrosive, nonstaining grout; complying with ASTM C1107/C1107M; of consistency suitable for application.
- F. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D1187/D1187M.
- G. Fasteners and Accessories: Corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding fasteners and accessories compatible with adjacent materials.

## 2.6 DOOR OPERATORS AND CONTROLS

- A. General: Provide operators and controls, which include activation and safety devices, in accordance with BHMA standards, for condition of exposure, and for long-term, maintenance-free operation under normal traffic load for type of occupancy indicated.
- B. Door Operators: Provide door operators of size recommended by manufacturer for door size, weight, and movement.
  - 1. Door Operator Performance: Door operators shall open and close doors and maintain them in fully closed position when subjected to Project's design wind loads.
  - 2. Electromechanical Operators: Concealed, self-contained, overhead units powered by fractional-horsepower, permanent-magnet dc motor; with closing speed controlled mechanically by gear train and dynamically by braking action of electric motor; with solid-state microprocessor controller; complying with UL 325; and with manual operation with power off.
- C. Motion Sensors: Self-contained, K-band-frequency, microwave-scanner units; fully enclosed by their plastic housings; adjustable to provide detection-field sizes and functions required by BHMA A156.10.
  - 1. Provide capability for switching between bi- and unidirectional detection.
  - 2. For one-way traffic, sensor on egress side shall not be active when doors are fully closed.
- D. Presence Sensors: Self-contained, active-infrared scanner units; adjustable to provide detection-field sizes and functions required by BHMA A156.10. Sensors shall remain active at all times.
- E. Photoelectric Beams: Pulsed infrared, sender-receiver assembly for recessed mounting. Beams shall not be active when doors are fully closed.
- F. Electrical Interlocks: Unless units are equipped with self-protecting devices or circuits, provide electrical interlocks to prevent activation of operator when door is locked, latched, or bolted.

## 2.7 HARDWARE

- A. General: Provide units in sizes and types recommended by automatic entrance and hardware manufacturers for entrances and uses indicated. Finish exposed parts to match door finish.

- B. Breakaway Device for Power-Operated Doors: Device that allows door to swing out in direction of egress to full 90 degrees from any operating position. Maximum force to open door shall be as stipulated in "Performance Requirements" Article. Interrupt powered operation of door operator while in breakaway mode.
1. Include two adjustable detent devices mounted in each breakaway panel; one top mounted and one bottom mounted to control breakaway force.
    - a. Panel Closer: Factory-installed concealed hydraulic door closer.
    - b. Limit Arms: Limit swing to 90 degrees, spring loaded with adjustable friction damping.
- C. Deadlocks: Deadbolt operated by exterior cylinder and interior thumb turn, with minimum 1-inch-long throw bolt; BHMA A156.5, Grade 1.
1. Cylinders: As specified in Section 08 71 00 "Door Hardware."
    - a. Keying: Integrate into building master key system.
    - b. Keys: Three for each cylinder.
  2. Deadbolts: Laminated-steel hook, mortise type, BHMA A156.5, Grade 1.
  3. Three-Point Locking for Stile and Rail Sliding Doors: Mechanism in stile of active door leaf that automatically extends lockbolts into overhead carrier assembly and threshold.
  4. Armored Strike: Reinforced security strike plate.
- D. Access-Control Locking: Electrically controlled device mounted in header that automatically locks sliding door in closed position, preventing door panels from sliding manually. Provide fail-secure operation if power fails. Coordinate with access control devices.
1. Include concealed, vertical-rod, tamper-proof exit devices, complying with UL 305, with latching into threshold and overhead carrier assembly and released by full-width panic bar, flush mounted and concealed within horizontal muntin bar, prohibiting manual breakout of door(s) from exterior.
  2. Power Interruption: Lock shall be engaged, preventing doors from sliding manually.
  3. Means of Egress: Vertical rod exit device.
  4. Include locking devices for sidelites to prevent manual breakout.
- E. Uninterrupted Power Supply: UL 1778, fully integrated unit mounted within header.
1. Power Interruption: Supply power to operator, controls, activation device, and safety systems of sliding automatic door for up to 1.5 hours of normal operation.
  2. Include low-battery shutdown feature to safely open or close door prior to complete battery discharge.
  3. Include audible battery replacement alarm to indicate that battery will no longer accept a charge and replacement is required.
- F. Weather Stripping: Replaceable components.
1. Sliding Type: AAMA 701/702, made of wool, polypropylene, or nylon woven pile with nylon-fabric or aluminum-strip backing.

## 2.8 FABRICATION

- A. General: Factory fabricate automatic entrance components to designs, sizes, and thicknesses indicated and to comply with indicated standards.
1. Form aluminum shapes before finishing.
  2. Weld in concealed locations to greatest extent possible to minimize distortion or discoloration of finish. Remove weld spatter and welding oxides from exposed surfaces by descaling or grinding.
  3. Use concealed fasteners to greatest extent possible. Where exposed fasteners are required, use countersunk Phillips flat-head machine screws, finished to match framing.
    - a. Where fasteners are subject to loosening or turning out from thermal and structural movements, wind loads, or vibration, use self-locking devices.
    - b. Reinforce members as required to receive fastener threads.
  4. Where aluminum will contact dissimilar metals, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with primer or by applying sealant or tape recommended by manufacturer for this purpose.
- B. Framing: Provide automatic entrances as prefabricated assemblies. Complete fabrication, assembly, finishing, hardware application, and other work before shipment to Project site.
1. Fabricate tubular and channel frame assemblies with welded or mechanical joints. Provide subframes and reinforcement as required for a complete system to support required loads.
  2. Perform fabrication operations in manner that prevents damage to exposed finish surfaces.
  3. Form profiles that are sharp, straight, and free of defects or deformations.
  4. Provide components with concealed fasteners and anchor and connection devices.
  5. Fabricate components with accurately fitted joints, with ends coped or mitered to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion.
  6. Fabricate exterior components to drain water passing joints, condensation occurring within framing members, and moisture migrating within system to exterior. Provide anchorage and alignment brackets for concealed support of assembly from building structure.
  7. Allow for thermal expansion of exterior units.
- C. Doors: Factory fabricated and assembled in profiles indicated. Reinforce as required to support imposed loads and for installing hardware.
- D. Door Operators: Factory fabricated and installed in headers, including adjusting and testing.
- E. Glazing: Fabricate framing with minimum glazing edge clearances for thickness and type of glazing indicated, in accordance with GANA's "Glazing Manual."
- F. Hardware: Factory install hardware to greatest extent possible; remove only as required for final finishing operation and for delivery to and installation at Project site. Cut, drill, and tap for factory-installed hardware before applying finishes.
- G. Controls:
1. General: Factory install activation and safety devices in doors and headers as required by BHMA A156.10 for type of door and direction of travel.

2. Install photoelectric beams in vertical jambs of sidelites, with dimension above finished floor as follows:
  - a. Top Beam: 48 inches.
  - b. Bottom Beam: 24 inches.

## 2.9 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Apply organic and anodic finishes to formed metal after fabrication unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## 2.10 ALUMINUM FINISHES

1. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, header support, and other conditions affecting performance of automatic entrances.
- B. Examine roughing-in for electrical systems to verify actual locations of power connections before automatic entrance installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install automatic entrances according to manufacturer's written instructions and cited BHMA A156.10 for direction of pedestrian travel, including signage, controls, wiring, and connection to the building's power supply.
  1. Do not install damaged components. Fit frame joints to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion. Rigidly secure nonmovement joints. Seal joints watertight.
  2. Where aluminum will contact dissimilar metals, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with primer or by applying sealant or tape recommended by manufacturer for this purpose.
  3. Where aluminum will contact concrete or masonry, protect against corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating.
- B. Entrances: Install automatic entrances plumb and true in alignment with established lines and grades without warp or rack of framing members and doors. Anchor securely in place.

1. Install surface-mounted hardware using concealed fasteners to greatest extent possible.
  2. Set headers, carrier assemblies, tracks, operating brackets, and guides level and true to location with anchorage for permanent support.
  3. Install components to drain water passing joints, condensation occurring within framing members, and moisture migrating within system to exterior.
  4. Level recesses for recessed thresholds using nonshrink grout.
- C. Door Operators: Connect door operators to electrical power distribution system.
- D. Access-Control Devices: Connect access-control devices to access-control system, as specified in Section 28 13 00 "Access Control Software and Database Management."
- E. Controls: Install and adjust activation and safety devices according to manufacturer's written instructions and cited BHMA standard for direction of pedestrian travel. Connect control wiring in accordance with Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- F. Glazing: Install glazing as specified in Section 08 80 00 "Glazing."
- G. Sealants: Comply with requirements specified in Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants" to provide weathertight installation.
1. Set thresholds, framing members and flashings in full sealant bed.
  2. Seal perimeter of framing members with sealant.
- H. Signage: Apply signage on both sides of each door and breakaway sidelite, as required by cited BHMA standard for direction of pedestrian travel.
- I. Wiring within Automatic Entrance Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's written limitations on bending radii. Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Certified Inspector: Engage a Certified Inspector to test and inspect components, assemblies, and installations, including connections.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
1. Test and inspect each automatic entrance, using AAADM inspection forms, to determine compliance of installed systems with applicable BHMA standards.
- C. Automatic entrances will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust hardware, moving parts, door operators, and controls to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer; comply with requirements of applicable BHMA standards.
1. Adjust exterior doors for tight closure.

- B. Readjust door operators and controls after repeated operation of completed installation equivalent to three days' use by normal traffic (100 to 300 cycles).
- C. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

### 3.5 CLEANING

- A. Clean glass and metal surfaces promptly after installation. Remove excess glazing and sealant compounds, dirt, and other substances. Repair damaged finish to match original finish.
  - 1. Comply with requirements in Section 08 80 00 "Glazing" for cleaning and maintaining glass.

### 3.6 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service shall include 12 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of automatic entrance Installer. Include monthly preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper automatic entrance operation. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
  - 1. Engage a Certified Inspector to perform safety inspection after each adjustment or repair and at end of maintenance period. Furnish completed inspection reports to Owner.
  - 2. Perform maintenance, including emergency callback service, during normal working hours.
  - 3. Include 24-hour-per-day, 7-day-per-week emergency callback service.

### 3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain automatic entrances.

END OF SECTION 08 42 29.23





## SECTION 08 44 13 - GLAZED ALUMINUM CURTAIN WALLS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes conventionally glazed aluminum curtain walls installed.

## 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Provide glazed aluminum curtain-wall systems, including anchorage, capable of withstanding, without failure, the effects of the following:
  - 1. Structural loads.
  - 2. Thermal movements.
  - 3. Movements of supporting structure indicated on Drawings including, but not limited to, story drift, twist, column shortening, long-term creep, and deflection from uniformly distributed and concentrated live loads.
  - 4. Dimensional tolerances of building frame and other adjacent construction.
  - 5. Failure includes the following:
    - a. Deflection exceeding specified limits.
    - b. Thermal stresses transferred to building structure.
    - c. Framing members transferring stresses, including those caused by thermal and structural movements, to glazing.
    - d. Noise or vibration created by wind and thermal and structural movements.
    - e. Loosening or weakening of fasteners, attachments, and other components.
    - f. Sealant failure.
- B. Structural Loads:
  - 1. Wind Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Seismic Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 3. Periodic Maintenance-Equipment Loads: Curtain wall parapet to withstand 330 pound vertical load applied to the leading edge of the coping face.
- C. Structural-Test Performance: Provide glazed aluminum curtain-wall systems tested according to ASTM E 330 as follows:
  - 1. When tested at positive and negative wind-load design pressures, systems do not evidence deflection exceeding specified limits.
  - 2. When tested at 150 percent of positive and negative wind-load design pressures, systems, including anchorage, do not evidence material failures, structural distress, and permanent deformation of main framing members exceeding 0.2 percent of span.
  - 3. Test Duration: As required by design wind velocity but not less than 60 seconds.

- D. Deflection of Framing Members:
1. Deflection Normal to Wall Plane: Limited to 1/175 of clear span for spans up to 13 feet 6 inches and to 1/240 of clear span plus 1/4 inch for spans greater than 13 feet 6 inches or an amount that restricts edge deflection of individual glazing lites to 3/4 inch, whichever is less.
  2. Deflection Parallel to Glazing Plane: Limited to amount not exceeding that which reduces glazing bite to less than 75 percent of design dimension and which reduces edge clearance between framing members and glazing or other fixed components to less than 1/8 inch.
- E. Seismic Performance: Conventionally captured-glazing curtain wall systems shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to SEI/ASCE 7.
1. Component Importance Factor as indicated on the drawings.
- F. Story Drift: Provide glazed aluminum curtain-wall systems that accommodate design displacement of adjacent stories indicated.
1. Design Displacement: As indicated on Drawings.
  2. Test Performance: No glass breakage, anchor failures, or structural damage when tested according to AAMA 501.4.
- G. Thermal Movements: Provide glazed aluminum curtain-wall systems that allow for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures. Base engineering calculation on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.
  2. Test Performance: No buckling, stress on glass, glazing-edge seal failure, sealant failure, excess stress on curtain-wall framing, anchors and fasteners, or reduction of performance when tested according to AAMA 501.5.
    - a. Test High Exterior Ambient Air Temperature: That which produces an exterior metal surface temperature of 180 deg F.
    - b. Test Low Exterior Ambient Air Temperature: 0 deg F.
    - c. Test Interior Ambient Air Temperature: 75 deg F.
- H. Air Infiltration: Provide glazed aluminum curtain-wall systems with maximum air leakage of 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. of fixed wall area when tested according to ASTM E 283 at a minimum static-air-pressure differential of 1.57 lbf/sq. ft.. Consistent with results for other openings and exterior skin systems.
- I. Water Penetration Under Static Pressure: Provide aluminum glazed curtain-wall systems that do not evidence water penetration when tested according to ASTM E 331 at a minimum differential static pressure of 20 percent of positive design wind load, but not less than 15 lbf/sq. ft.
1. Maximum Water Leakage: No uncontrolled water penetrating systems or appearing on systems' normally exposed interior surfaces from sources other than condensation. Water controlled by flashing and gutters that is drained to exterior and cannot damage adjacent materials or finishes is not considered water leakage.
- J. Water Penetration under Dynamic Pressure: Provide aluminum-framed systems that do not evidence water leakage through fixed glazing and framing areas when tested according to

AAMA 501.1 under dynamic pressure equal to 20 percent of positive wind-load design pressure, but not less than 15 lbf/sq. ft.

1. Maximum Water Leakage: Water leakage does not include water controlled by flashing and gutters that is drained to exterior and water that cannot damage adjacent materials or finishes.
- K. Condensation Resistance: Provide glazed aluminum curtain-wall systems with condensation-resistance factor (CRF) of not less than 55 when tested according to AAMA 1503.
- L. Average Thermal Conductance: Provide glazed aluminum curtain-wall systems with average U-factor of not more than 0.45 Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F when tested according to AAMA 1503.
- M. Sound Transmission: Provide glazed aluminum curtain-wall systems with minimum STC 31 according to ASTM E 413.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Prepared by or under the supervision of a qualified professional engineer detailing fabrication and assembly of glazed aluminum curtain-wall systems.
  1. Include structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
    - a. Analysis to be part of the shop drawings and dated the same date.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, in manufacturer's standard sizes.
- D. Fabrication Sample: Of each vertical-to-horizontal intersection of systems, made from 12-inch lengths of full-size components and showing details of the following:
  1. Joinery.
  2. Anchorage.
  3. Expansion provisions.
  4. Glazing.
  5. Flashing and drainage.
- E. Welding certificates.
- F. Qualification Data: For Installer and testing agency. Coordinate all tests with Owner. Install no finishes (interior) prior to successful testing.
- G. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for glazed aluminum curtain-wall systems.
- H. Preconstruction Test Reports: For glazed aluminum curtain-wall systems.
- I. Field quality-control test reports.
- J. Warranties: Special warranties specified in this Section.

- K. Manufacturer's Installation: Manufacturer's written installation and maintenance instruction.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Capable of assuming engineering responsibility and performing Work of this Section and who is acceptable to manufacturer.
  - 1. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of data for glazed aluminum curtain-wall systems including the following:
    - a. Shop Drawings based on testing and engineering analysis of manufacturer's standard units in assemblies similar to those indicated for this Project and submission of reports of tests performed on manufacturer's standard assemblies.
    - b. Shop Drawings, Project-specific preconstruction-testing program development, and comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency qualified according to ASTM E 699 for testing indicated.
- C. Product Options: Information on Drawings and in Specifications establishes requirements for systems' aesthetic effects and performance characteristics. Aesthetic effects are indicated by dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies as they relate to sightlines, to one another, and to adjoining construction. Performance characteristics are indicated by criteria subject to verification by one or more methods including preconstruction testing, field testing, and in-service performance.
  - 1. Do not modify intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If modifications are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.
- D. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.2, "Structural Welding Code-Aluminum."
- E. Mockups: Build mockups to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
  - 1. Build mockup of typical wall area as shown on Drawings.
- F. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination." Review methods and procedures related to glazed aluminum curtain-wall systems.

## 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of structural supports for glazed aluminum curtain-wall systems by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.
  - 1. Established Dimensions: Where field measurements cannot be made without delaying the Work, establish dimensions and proceed with fabricating glazed aluminum curtain-wall systems without field measurements. Coordinate construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Assembly Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of glazed aluminum curtain-wall systems that do not comply with requirements or that deteriorate as defined in this Section within specified warranty period.
1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Structural failures including, but not limited to, excessive deflection.
    - b. Noise or vibration caused by thermal movements.
    - c. Water leakage.
    - d. Failure of operating components to function normally.
  2. Warranty Period: Ten years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Finish Warranty, Anodized Finishes: Standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finishes or replace aluminum that shows evidence of deterioration of anodized finishes within specified warranty period.
1. Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
    - a. Color fading more than 5 Delta E units when tested in accordance with ASTM D2244.
    - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested in accordance with ASTM D4214.
    - c. Cracking, peeling, or chipping.
  2. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Basis of Design Manufacturer: Basis of Design is Kawneer. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the named product or a comparable product by one of the following:
1. Basis of design: Kawneer; 2250 IG (Inside Glazed) Curtain Wall System.
  2. Oldcastle BuildingEnvelope.
  3. YKK AP America Inc.
  4. EFCO.
- B. Framing Members: Manufacturer's extruded- or formed-aluminum framing members of thickness required and reinforced as required to support imposed loads.
1. Construction: Thermally improved.
  2. Glazing System: Retained mechanically with gaskets on four sides.
  3. Glazing Plane: Front.
  4. Finish: Clear anodic finish.
  5. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated.
  6. Steel Reinforcement: As required by manufacturer.
- C. Pressure Caps: Manufacturer's standard aluminum components that mechanically retain glazing.

1. Include snap-on aluminum trim that conceals fasteners.
- D. Brackets and Reinforcements: Manufacturer's standard high-strength aluminum with nonstaining, nonferrous shims for aligning system components.
- E. Insulated Spandrel Panels:
1. Laminated, metal-faced flat panels with no deviations in plane exceeding 0.8 percent of panel dimension in width or length.
    - a. Overall Panel Thickness: 1 inch.
    - b. Exterior Skin: Aluminum.
      - 1) Thickness: Manufacturer's standard for finish and texture indicated.
      - 2) Finish: Match framing system.
      - 3) Texture: Smooth.
      - 4) Backing Sheet: Manufacturer's standard.
    - c. Interior Skin: Aluminum.
      - 1) Thickness: Manufacturer's standard for finish and texture indicated.
      - 2) Finish: Matching curtain-wall framing.
      - 3) Texture: Smooth.
      - 4) Backing Sheet: Manufacturer's standard.
    - d. Thermal Insulation Core: Manufacturer's standard rigid, closed-cell, polyisocyanurate board.
    - e. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
      - 1) Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
      - 2) Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.
- F. Venting Windows:
1. Manufacturer's standard units, complying with AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440, with self-flashing mounting fins, and as follows:
    - a. Window Type: As indicated on Drawings.
    - b. Minimum Performance Class: AW.
    - c. Hardware: Manufacturer's standard; of aluminum, stainless steel, or die-cast steel.
    - d. Weather Stripping: Provide full-perimeter weather stripping for each operable sash unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.2 FRAMING SYSTEMS

- A. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated.
1. Sheet and Plate: ASTM B 209.
  2. Extruded Bars, Rods, Shapes, and Tubes: ASTM B 221.
  3. Extruded Structural Pipe and Tubes: ASTM B 429.
  4. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: AWS A5.10/A5.10M.

- B. Steel Reinforcement: With manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant primer complying with SSPC-PS Guide No. 12.00 applied immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment. Select surface preparation methods according to recommendations in SSPC-SP COM and prepare surfaces according to applicable SSPC standard.
  - 1. Structural Shapes, Plates, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
  - 2. Cold-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 611.
  - 3. Hot-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 570/A 570M.
- C. Brackets and Reinforcements: Manufacturer's standard high-strength aluminum with nonstaining, nonferrous shims for aligning system components.
- D. Fasteners and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding fasteners and accessories compatible with adjacent materials.
  - 1. Use self-locking devices throughout.
  - 2. Reinforce members as required to receive fastener threads.
  - 3. At movement joints, use slip-joint linings, spacers, and sleeves of material and type recommended by manufacturer.
- E. Anchors: Three-way adjustable anchors that accommodate fabrication and installation tolerances in material and finish compatible with adjoining materials and recommended by manufacturer.
  - 1. Concrete and Masonry Inserts: Hot-dip galvanized cast-iron, malleable-iron, or steel inserts complying with ASTM A 123/A 123M or ASTM A 153/A 153M requirements.
- F. Concealed Flashing: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding flashing compatible with adjacent materials.
- G. Framing Gaskets: As recommended by manufacturer for joint type.
- H. Framing Sealants: As recommended by manufacturer for joint type.

## 2.3 GLAZING SYSTEMS

- A. Glazing: As specified in Division 08 Section "Glazing."

## 2.4 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt-mastic paint complying with SSPC-Paint 12 requirements except containing no asbestos, formulated for 30-mil thickness per coat.
- B. Miscellaneous Brake Metal Fabrications: Provide miscellaneous brake metal fabrications to match curtain wall framing where indicated.

## 2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Form aluminum shapes before finishing.
- B. Fabricate components that, when assembled, have the following characteristics:

1. Sharp profiles, straight and free of defects or deformations.
  2. Accurately fitted joints with ends coped or mitered.
  3. Internal guttering systems or other means to drain water passing joints, condensation occurring within framing members, and moisture migrating within the system to exterior.
  4. Physical and thermal isolation of glazing from framing members.
  5. Accommodations for thermal and mechanical movements of glazing and framing to prevent glazing-to-glazing contact and to maintain required glazing edge clearances.
  6. Provisions for reglazing from interior.
- C. Weld in concealed locations to greatest extent possible to minimize distortion or discoloration of finish. Remove weld spatter and welding oxides from exposed surfaces by descaling or grinding.
- D. Factory-Assembled Frame Units:
1. Rigidly secure nonmovement joints.
  2. Seal joints watertight, unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Pressure equalize system at its interior face.
  4. Install glazing to comply with requirements in Division 08 Section "Glazing."
- E. After fabrication, clearly mark components to identify their locations in Project according to Shop Drawings.

## 2.6 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. General: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
- C. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of work.
1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General:
1. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
  2. Do not install damaged components.
  3. Fit joints to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion.
  4. Rigidly secure nonmovement joints.
  5. Install anchors with separators and isolators to prevent metal corrosion and electrolytic deterioration and to prevent impeding movement of moving joints.



6. Weld components in concealed locations to minimize distortion or discoloration of finish. Protect glazing surfaces from welding.
7. Seal joints watertight, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Metal Protection:

1. Where aluminum will contact dissimilar metals, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with primer or by applying sealant or tape or installing nonconductive spacers as recommended by manufacturer for this purpose.
2. Where aluminum will contact concrete or masonry, protect against corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous paint.

C. Install components to drain water passing joints, condensation occurring within framing members, and moisture migrating within the system to exterior.

D. Install components plumb and true in alignment with established lines and grades.

E. Install glazing as specified Division 08 Section "Glazing."

F. Install sealants as specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

G. Install insulation materials as specified in Division 07 Section "Thermal Insulation."

H. Erection Tolerances: Install glazed aluminum curtain-wall systems to comply with the following maximum tolerances:

1. Plumb: 1/8 inch in 10 feet; 1/4 inch in 40 feet.
2. Level: 1/8 inch in 20 feet; 1/4 inch in 40 feet.
3. Alignment:
  - a. Where surfaces abut in line or are separated by reveal or protruding element up to 1/2 inch wide, limit offset from true alignment to 1/16 inch.
  - b. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element from 1/2 to 1 inch wide, limit offset from true alignment to 1/8 inch.
  - c. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element of 1 inch wide or greater, limit offset from true alignment to 1/4 inch.
4. Location: Limit variation from plane to 1/8 inch in 12 feet; 1/2 inch over total length.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Owner to engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

B. Testing Services: Testing and inspecting of representative areas to determine compliance of installed system with specified requirements shall take place as follows and in successive stages as indicated on Drawings. Do not proceed with installation of the next area until test results for previously completed areas show compliance with requirements.

1. Air Infiltration: Areas shall be tested for air leakage of 1.5 times the rate specified under Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article, but not more than 0.09 cfm/sq. ft., of fixed wall area when tested according to ASTM E 783 at a minimum static-air-pressure differential of 1.57 lbf/sq. ft..

2. Water Penetration: Areas shall be tested according to ASTM E 1105 at minimum uniform and cyclic static-air-pressure difference of 0.67 times the pressure specified under Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article, but not less than 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. and shall not evidence water penetration.
3. Water Spray Test: Before installation of interior finishes has begun, areas designated by Architect shall be tested according to AAMA 501.2 and shall not evidence water penetration.
  - a. Test Area: A minimum area of 75 feet by two stories of glazed aluminum curtain wall.
  - b. Testing to be performed prior to installing interior finishes.
- C. Repair or remove work where test results and inspections indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.
- D. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

END OF SECTION 08 44 13

## SECTION 08 71 00 - DOOR HARDWARE

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this section.
- B. Installation of all electrified and mechanical door hardware items is described and required to be provided in other related Sections of these Specifications.
- C. Installation of automatic door operators and related components is described and required in this Section of these Specifications, by a factory authorized distributor of this product.

Hardware supplier must be an authorized, direct factory distributor of all door hardware and access control products specified herein to insure compliance and service of these products.

- D. Unless otherwise approved by the Architect / Engineer, furnish all door hardware items as described in the door hardware schedule.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This section includes items known commercially as finish or door hardware that are required for swing, sliding, and folding doors, except special types of unique hardware specified in the same sections as the doors and door frames on which they are installed.
- B. This section includes the following:

- 1. Butt Hinges
- 2. Continuous Geared Hinges
- 3. Aluminum Double Swing Continuous Geared Hinges
- 4. Cylinders and Keys
- 5. Mortise Latchsets and Locksets
- 6. Rescue Strikes
- 7. Exit Devices
- 8. Door Closers
- 9. Automatic Operators with Accessories
- 10. Overhead Door Stops and Holders
- 11. Manual Flush Bolts
- 12. Constant Latching Flush Bolts
- 13. Wall Stops
- 14. Bar Coordinators
- 15. Door Pulls
- 16. Push Plates
- 17. Mop, Kick, and Armor Plates
- 18. Lock Guards
- 19. Thresholds
- 20. Door Sweeps
- 21. Self-Adhesive Gasketing
- 22. Perimeter Gasketing
- 23. Adjustable Perimeter Seals

24. Meeting Stile Gasketing
25. Meeting Stile Astragals
26. Rain Drip Strips
27. Door Silencers
28. Security Equipment

C. Related Sections: The following sections contain requirements that relate to this section:

1. Division 05 - Cold-Formed Metal Framing
2. Division 06 - Rough Carpentry
3. Division 07 - Joint Sealants
4. Division 08 - Metal Doors and Frames
5. Division 08 - Wood Doors
6. Division 08 - Sliding Glass Doors
7. Division 08 - ICU Manual Sliding and Swinging Doors
8. Division 26 - Electrical
9. Division 27 - Communications
10. Division 28 - Electronic Safety
11. Hardware specified under other Sections is excluded from this Section.

### 1.3 REFERENCES

A. Standards of the following as referenced:

1. 2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design
2. American National Standards Institute, Inc. (ANSI)
3. Door and Hardware Institute (DHI)
4. International Building Code (2015 Edition)
5. Intertek Testing Services - Warnock Hersey (ITS-WH)
6. Life Safety Code (NFPA 101, 2015 Edition)
7. National Electrical Code (NFPA 70, 2017 Edition)
8. North Carolina State Building Code (2018 Edition)
9. Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives (NFPA 80, 2013 Edition)
10. Underwriter's Laboratories, Inc. (UL)

B. Regulatory standards of the following as referenced:

1. Department of Justice, Office of the Attorney General, Americans with Disabilities Act, Public Law 101-336 (ADA)
2. ICC/ANSI A117.1: Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities, 2009 Edition.

### 1.4 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Refer to applicable headings for system description for electric hardware products.

### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Do not proceed with any fabrication until all approvals are obtained, including an official stamp signed by an Atrium Health Physical Security Systems Engineer.
- B. General: Submit the following in accordance with Conditions of Contract and Division 01 Specifications for submittal procedures.

- C. Product data including manufacturers' technical product data for each item of door hardware, installation instructions, maintenance of operating parts and finish, and other information necessary to show compliance with requirements. Clearly highlight each submitted item and data applicable to this project on manufacturer's cut sheets. Arrange cut sheets in an order in which each item appears in the hardware sets.
- D. Final hardware / access control systems schedule coordinated with doors, frames, and related work to ensure proper size, thickness, hand, function, and finish of door hardware.
1. Final Hardware Schedule Content: Based on hardware indicated, organize schedule into vertical format "hardware sets" indicating complete designations of every item required for each door or opening. Use specification Set Numbers with any variations suffixed with A, B, etc.. Include the following information:
- a. Type, style, function, size, and finish of each hardware item.
  - b. Name and manufacturer of each item.
  - c. Fastenings and other pertinent information.
  - d. Location of each hardware set cross referenced to indications on drawings both on floor plans and in door and frame schedule.
  - e. Explanation of all abbreviations, symbols, and codes contained in schedule.
  - f. Mounting locations for hardware.
  - g. Door and frame sizes and materials.
  - h. Provide a complete and detailed system of operating and elevation diagrams specifically developed for each opening requiring electrified hardware, except openings where only electromagnetic door holders and/or door position switches are specified. Provide these diagrams with the hardware schedule submittals, for approval. The following shall be included:
    - (1) Point-To-Point wiring diagram.
    - (2) Elevation of each door.
    - (3) Description of each electrified door hardware function, including location, sequence of operation, and interface with other building control systems.
  - i. Cross reference numbers used within schedule deviating from those specified.
    - (1) Column 1: State specified item and manufacturer.
    - (2) Column 2: State prior approved substituted item and its manufacturer.
2. Submittal Sequence: Submit schedule at earliest possible date particularly where acceptance of hardware schedule must precede fabrication of other work (e.g.: hollow metal frames) which is critical in the Project construction schedule. Include with schedule the product data, samples, shop drawings of other work affected by door hardware, and other information essential to the coordinated review of hardware schedule.
- E. Samples of each type of exposed hardware unit in finish indicated and tagged with full discription for coordination with schedule. Submit samples prior to submission of final hardware schedule.
1. Samples will be returned to the supplier. Units that are acceptable and remain undamaged through submittal, review, and field comparison process may, after final check of operation, be incorporated in the work, within limitations of keying coordination requirements.
- F. Templates for doors, frames, and other work specified to be factory prepared for the installation of door hardware. Check shop drawings of other work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing door hardware to comply with indicated requirements.

This is a requirement of the door hardware supplier to furnish all templates of each required door hardware item to the suppliers of the hollow metal doors and frames. No templates shall be sent until all door hardware items have been approved.

G. Electronic Hardware Systems:

1. Wiring Diagrams: Coordinate the installation of all required electronic hardware items with the Project Electrical Engineer and provide all necessary installation and technical data, including wiring diagram drawings, to the Project Electrical Engineer and Electrical Sub-Contractor. Provide a copy of all wiring diagram drawings with each door hardware schedule submitted after approval.
2. Provide complete operational descriptions of electronic components listed by each door opening in the door hardware submittals. Operational descriptions are to detail how each electrical component functions within the door opening, incorporating all conditions of ingress and egress. Provide this information with each door hardware schedule submitted for approval.
3. Provide elevation drawings of electronic hardware items and systems identifying locations of the system's components with respect to their placement in the door opening. Provide a copy of all elevation drawings with each door hardware schedule submitted for approval.
4. Electrical products contained within this specification represent a complete engineered system. If alternate electrical products are submitted, it is the responsibility of the distributor to bear any and all costs of providing a complete and operational system including re-engineering of electrical diagrams and system layout, as well as power supplies, power transfers, and all other required electrical components. Coordinate with the Project Electrical Engineer and Electrical Sub-Contractor to ensure that line voltage and low voltage wiring requirements are coordinated to provide a complete and operational system.
5. Upon completion of the electrical hardware installation, the door hardware supplier shall verify that all electrical components are functioning properly and state in the required guarantee that this inspection has been performed.

H. Contract closeout submittals: At the completion of this Project, furnish to the Owner two (2) copies of an Owner's Operation and Maintenance Manual. This manual shall consist of a labeled, hardcover, three-ring binder with the following technical information.

1. Maintenance instructions for each door hardware item.
2. Manufacturers' catalog cut-sheets for each of their respective products.
3. Parts list for each of the manufacturers' respective products.
4. Final "Approved" Door Hardware Schedule.
5. Warranty: Completed and executed warranty forms.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. General Contractor's Investigation: Prior to Contract Execution, the General Contractor shall have thoroughly investigated the entities such as employees, consultants, sub-contractors, manufacturers, suppliers, etc., and other entities that will be performing work or supplying materials, products, equipment, or systems for this project, to ensure that they comply with all of the qualifications and requirements mentioned or implied in the Contract Documents. If it is later determined that any of the previously mentioned entities do not comply with the qualifications

and requirements specified in the Contract Documents, the General Contractor will be required to replace that entity with a qualified entity at no increase in Contract Sum or Contract Time.

- B. Single Source Responsibility: Obtain each type of hardware (latch and lock sets, hinges, closers, security equipment, etc.) from a single manufacturer, although several may be indicated as offering products complying with requirements.
- C. Qualifications of Supplier: A recognized architectural door hardware supplier, with warehousing facilities, who has been furnishing hardware and installation in the Project's vicinity for a period of not less than 5 years. The supplier shall be, or shall employ, a certified Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC) and Security Consultant who is available, at reasonable times during the course of the work, for consultation about the Project's hardware requirements, to the Owner, Architect, and Contractor. A certified Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC) and Security Consultant shall prepare all hardware and access control schedules. Supplier shall be responsible for proper coordination of all door hardware items and access control items with related sections, to insure compatibility of products.
  - 1. Hardware supplier must be an authorized, direct factory distributor of all door hardware and access control products specified herein to ensure compliance and service of these products.
- D. Qualifications of Installer: The hardware installer shall have no less than five (5) years of documented experience in the installation of hardware of similar quantities and types as required for this project. The installer's qualifications shall be submitted to the architect, in writing, for approval by the architect before any work shall commence.
- E. Fire-Rated Openings: Furnish door hardware for fire-rated openings that complies with NFPA Standard No. 80 and requirements of the Authorities Having Jurisdiction. Furnish only items, of door hardware, that are listed and are identical to products tested by UL, ITS-WH, FM, or other testing and inspecting organization acceptable to the Authorities Having Jurisdiction, for use on types and sizes of doors indicated, in compliance with the requirements of fire-rated door and door frame labels.

Project requires door assemblies and components that are compliant with positive pressure and S Label requirements. Specifications must be cross-referenced and coordinated with door and frame manufacturers to ensure that total door opening engineering is compatible with UL10C Standard for Positive Pressure Fire Tests of Door Assemblies.
- F. Product Qualifications: Manufacturers names and numbers are used to indicate the standards of design and quality. Submittals should include a sheet listing grade of item, duty rating (if applicable) and finish.
- G. Substitutions: All substitution requests are required to be submitted prior to the bid date and complying with the procedures and time frame as outlined in Division 01 - Substitution Procedures. Approval of submitted products is at the discretion of the Architect and his Hardware Consultant.
- H. General Contractor, hardware distributor, and installers shall count, coordinate, and store all door hardware and access control items herein, verifying complete counts of all items scheduled and furnished. The manufacturers' and Owner's representatives will inspect the installation of the door hardware and access control items during that phase of construction. Any deficiencies in installation of all materials included herein shall be corrected before installation continues.
- I. At the Project's Completion, the Owner's Representative shall accompany the Architect and General Contractor during the door hardware and Access Control items punch list phase of the project close-out, insuring the Owner's Representative is familiar with all applications and systems, as installed. Refer to additional requirements under 3.0 EXECUTION.

- J. Pre-Installation Meeting: Prior to door hardware installation, the General Contractor / Construction Manager shall request a hardware installation meeting to be held at the project's location. This meeting shall convene no later than one month prior to the hardware's installation. The types of hardware this meeting shall include are: locksets, exit devices, and door closers. The manufacturer's representatives of the above listed products, in conjunction with the hardware supplier for this project, shall conduct the installation training. All hardware installers shall be required to attend this meeting to receive certificate of authorized training. This meeting shall serve as door openings coordination and review of all shop drawings from related trades prior to the hardware installation.

The hardware supplier shall include any related meeting costs in their proposal.

- K. Electrified Hardware And Security Hardware Systems: Prior to ordering the electrified hardware, the General Contractor shall request a coordination meeting. This meeting shall convene prior to or after the Door Hardware Schedule and the wiring diagrams have been submitted to the General Contractor. All related trades shall be represented at this meeting, which shall also include the architect, the Owner's representative, and the hardware supplier. This meeting shall serve as a review and coordination of all electrified hardware, wiring, connections, location for power supplies, and remote switches, and door functions. All related trades shall make any required changes, and resubmit schedules, diagrams, and any other required data, no later than one (1) week following this meeting.
- L. Pre-Installation Coordination Meetings: The following trades, including but not limited to, shall be present at these meetings:
1. General Contractor's Jobsite Representative.
  2. Novant Health Representative.
  3. Little Diversified Architectural Consulting Representative.
  4. Door Hardware Supplier and Installer(s).
  5. Coiling Counter Shutters Supplier and Installer(s).
  6. Overhead Coiling/Sectional Door Units Supplier and Installer(s).
  7. Overhead Coiling/Folding Grilles Supplier and Installer(s).
  8. Special Function Sliding Barn Door Units Supplier and Installer(s).
  9. Aluminum Swinging/Sliding Door Units Supplier and Installer(s).
  10. All-Glass Swinging/Sliding Door Units Supplier(s) and Installer(s).
  11. Electronic Access Control Integration Installer(s).

## 1.7 PRODUCT HANDLING

- A. Tag each item or package separately with identification related to final hardware schedule, and include basic installation instructions with each item or package.
- B. Packaging of door hardware is the responsibility of the supplier. As material is received by the hardware supplier from various manufacturers, sort and repackage in containers clearly marked with appropriate hardware set numbers to match the set numbers of the approved hardware schedule. Two or more identical sets may be packed in the same container.
- C. Door hardware supplier shall deliver all individually packaged hardware items promptly to the place of installation (Shop or Project Site); direct factory shipments are not acceptable unless agreed upon beforehand. Hardware supplier shall coordinate delivery times and schedules with the Contractor.
- D. Inventory door hardware jointly with the General Contractor, representatives of the hardware supplier, and the hardware installer, until each is satisfied that the count is correct.



- E. At the time of the hardware delivery, the door hardware supplier in conjunction with the Contractor shall verify and check in all hardware items. The Contractor must report all shortages (discrepancies with shipping documents) within five (5) working days.
- F. General Contractor shall provide a secure lock-up for the door hardware and security equipment delivered to the Project, but not yet installed. Control handling and installation of the hardware items that are not immediately replaceable, so that completion of the work will not be delayed by hardware losses, both before and after installation.

## 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. All materials must be warranted against defects in workmanship and materials for a period of one (1) year from date of acceptance of this project, unless otherwise noted. Any evidence of misuse or abuse voids all warranties. These warranties shall be each manufacturer's standard written warranty.
- B. Special Warranties:
  - 1. Continuous Geared Hinges: Limited Lifetime.
  - 2. Aluminum Double Swing Continuous Geared Hinges: Twenty-Five (25) Year Period.
  - 3. Mechanical Mortise Latchsets and Locksets: Ten (10) Year Period.
  - 4. Detex Corporation Exit Devices: 10 years (Mechanical) / 3 years (Electrical).
  - 5. Von Duprin Mechanical Exit Devices: Three (3) Year Period.
  - 6. Door Closers: Thirty (30) Year Period.
  - 7. Automatic Door Operators: Two (2) Year Period.
  - 8. Thresholds, Door Sweeps, Self-Adhesive Gasketing, Perimeter Gasketing, Adjustable Perimeter Gasketing, Meeting Stile Gasketing, Meeting Stile Astragals, and Rain Drip Strips: Three (3) Year Period.
- C. Any manufacturer whose standard written warranty does not equal or exceed the requirements listed above must provide a letter stating that they will extend their warranty to comply with the requirements of this specification.
- D. All of the manufacturer's fasteners and attachments supplied with each hardware item must be installed to maintain the manufacturer's fire listing and/or warranty.
- E. Refer to Division 01 - Closeout Procedures; for additional warranty requirements.

## 1.9 MAINTENANCE

- A. Maintenance Tools and Instructions: The General Contractor shall furnish a complete set of specialized tools and maintenance instructions as needed for the Owner's continued adjustment, maintenance, and removal and replacement of door hardware.
- B. Parts Kits: Furnish manufacturers' standard parts kits for locksets, exit devices, and door closers.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

Substitutions: Where specific manufacturers and their products are listed as "acceptable manufacturers", provide those products from specified manufacturers; subject to compliance with specified requirements stated herein.

Any request for substitutions shall be submitted prior to the bid date and complying with the procedures and time frame as outlined in Division 01 - General Requirements. Approved substitutions will be provided by addendum only.

Substitutions will not be allowed where only one manufacturer and their products are listed.

## 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

### A. Cable and Connectors: Hardwired Electronic Access Control Exit Devices:

1. Data: 24AWG, 4 conductor shielded, Belden 9843, 9841 or comparable.
2. DC Power: 18 AWG, 2 conductor, Belden 8760 or comparable.
3. Provide type of data and DC power cabling required by access control device manufacturer for this installation.
4. Where scheduled in the hardware sets, provide each item of electrified hardware and wire harnesses with sufficient number and wire gauge with standardized Molex plug connectors to accommodate electric function of specified hardware. Provide Molex connectors that plug directly into connectors from harnesses, electric locking and power transfer devices. Provide through-door wire harness for each electrified locking device installed in a door and wire harness for each electrified hinge, electrified continuous hinge, electrified pivot, and electric power transfer for connection to power supplies.

### B. BUTT HINGES

#### 1. Acceptable Manufacturers:

- a. BEST®; A Division of dormakaba Holding, Inc. - FBB168 / FBB179 / FBB191 / FBB199.
- b. Hager Companies - BB1168 / BB1191 / BB1199 / BB1279.
- c. IVES; Division of Allegion, PLC (IVE) - 5BB1 / 5BB1HW.

#### 2. Characteristics:

- a. Tested to be in accordance with ANSI / BHMA A156.1.
- b. Type: Five (5) knuckle, full mortise, ball bearing.
- c. Templates: Furnish only template-produced units.
- d. Fasteners: Furnish Phillips flat-head screws complying with the following requirements.
  - (1) For metal doors and frames, install machine screws into drilled and tapped holes.
  - (2) For wood doors and frames, install threaded-to-the-head wood screws.
  - (3) For fire-rated wood doors, install #12 x 1-1/4 inch, threaded-to-the-head steel wood screws.
  - (4) Finish screw heads to match surface of hinges or pivots.
- e. Hinge Pins: Except as otherwise indicated, furnish hinge pins as follows:
  - (1) Out-Swing Exterior Doors: Non-removable pins.
  - (2) Out-Swing Interior Doors: Non-rising pins and Non-removable pins; as indicated in Door Hardware Sets.
  - (3) In-Swing Exterior / Interior Doors: Non-rising pins.
  - (4) Tips: Flat button and matching plug. Finished to match leaves.

- f. Furnish butt hinges with 1/4" Radius Round Corners ; as indicated in Door Hardware Sets.
- g. Size: Size hinges in accordance with the specified manufacturer's published recommendations.
- h. Quantity: Furnish one pair of hinges for all doors up to 5'-0" high. Furnish one additional hinge for each additional 2-1/2 feet or fraction thereof.

#### C. CONTINUOUS GEARED HINGES

##### 1. Acceptable Manufacturers:

- a. IVES; Division of Allegion, PLC (IVE) - 224XY.
- b. Hager Companies - 780-224HD.
- c. Select Products Limited - SL24 HD.

##### 2. Characteristics:

- a. Tested to be in accordance with ANSI / BHMA A156.26, Grade 1.
- b. Templates: Furnish only template-produced units.
- c. All hinges are to be "Concealed Surface Mount".
- d. Hinges to be manufactured of extruded 6063-T6 aluminum alloy with an anodized finish.
- e. All hinge profiles to be manufactured to template bearing locations at 2 9/16" spacing.
- f. All hinges are to be furnished factory cut for each door size.
- g. Provide split nylon bearings at each hinge knuckle for quiet, smooth, self-lubricating operation.
- h. Provide hinges capable of supporting door weights up to 450 pounds, and successfully tested for 1,500,000 cycles.
- i. Fasteners: Furnish manufacturer's standard fasteners based upon recommendations for each installation.

#### D. ALUMINUM DOUBLE SWING CONTINUOUS GEARED HINGES

##### 1. Acceptable Manufacturers:

- a. Markar Products; An ASSA ABLOY Group company (MAR) - DSH1000.
- b. Pemko Manufacturing Company; An ASSA ABLOY Group company (PEM) - ERS.

##### 2. Characteristics:

- a. Tested to be in accordance with ANSI / BHMA A156.26, Grade 1.
- b. Shall be in compliance with ICC/ANSI A117.1-2009 and ADAAG-2010 for barrier free ADA requirements.
- c. Templates: Furnish only template-produced units.
- d. Hinges shall have the ability to allow a door to swing open in either direction up to 100 degrees.
- e. Hinges to be manufactured of extruded 6063-T6 aluminum alloy with an anodized finish.
- f. All hinges shall have the capacity of supporting all types of doors with weights up to 600 pounds, with a maximum door width of 4'-0".
- g. All hinges are to be furnished factory cut for each door size.
- h. Fasteners: Furnish manufacturer's standard fasteners.

#### E. CYLINDERS AND KEYS

1. Acceptable Manufacturers:
  - a. BEST®; A Division of dormakaba Holding, Inc..
  - b. Sargent Manufacturing Company; An ASSA ABLOY Group company.
  - c. Schlage Lock Company, LLC; Division of Allegion, PLC (SCH).
  
2. Characteristics:
  - a. Tested to be in accordance with ANSI / BHMA A156.28.
  - b. Equip all cylinders and locksets with the manufacturer's standard 6-pin, conventional core, tumbler cylinders.
  - c. New Key System: Furnish all cylinders and locksets "Keyed Alike" to a new key system for the duration of the time of construction. Lockworks, LLC will rekey cylinders and locksets when directed by Novant Health.
  - d. Keying of all cylinders and locksets, and quantities of the various types of permanent keys will be performed and provided by Lockworks, LLC, at Novant Health's instructions.
  - e. Metals: Construct lock cylinder parts from brass or bronze, stainless steel, or nickel silver.
  - f. Key Material: Provide keys of nickel silver only.
  - g. Key Quantities: Furnish the following quantities of keys for the entire project.  
(1) Ten (10) Each - Construction Keys

#### F. MORTISE LATCHSETS AND LOCKSETS

1. Acceptable Manufacturers:
  - a. BEST®; A Division of dormakaba Holding, Inc. - 45H Series x "3H" Trim Design.
  - b. Sargent Manufacturing Company; An ASSA ABLOY Group company - 8200 Series x "LNJ" Trim Design.
  - c. Schlage Lock Company, LLC; Division of Allegion, PLC - L Series x "03A" Trim Design.
  
2. Characteristics:
  - a. Conforms to and/or exceeds all ANSI / BHMA A156.13, Series 1000, Grade 1 Operational, Grade 2 Security. ANSI / ASTM F476-84 Grade 30, U.L. Listed. Conform to and/or exceed 800,000 cycle ANSI Grade 1 requirements.
  - b. Latchsets and locksets shall have all functions available in a one size case, fabricated from heavy wrought steel, zinc dichromate plated for corrosion resistance and lubricity of internal parts. Cases shall be closed on all sides to protect internal parts.
  - c. Handing of all latchsets and locksets shall be reversible without disassembly of lockcase.
  - d. Latchsets and locksets shall have adjustable, beveled and armored fronts, with standard 2-3/4" (70 mm) backsets, with full 3/4" (19 mm) throw two or three-piece mechanical stainless steel anti-friction latchbolts, one-piece stainless steel 1" throw deadbolts, and stainless steel auxiliary bolts.
  - e. All latchsets and locksets with latchbolts, regardless of trim design, shall be listed by Underwriters Laboratories for 3-hour fire rated and lesser classified doors.
  - f. Lock trim (knobs, levers, sectional or escutcheon) shall be throughbolted through the lockcase to assure correct alignment and proper operation.
  - g. Latchsets and locksets shall be furnished with replaceable breakaway spindles, designed to resist excessive force from vandalism, preventing damage to lever trim and internal lock case components.
  - h. Lever handles shall be one-piece, solid, brass, bronze, or stainless steel.

- i. Armor fronts, escutcheons, and roses shall be fabricated from brass, bronze, or stainless steel.
- j. Strikes shall be 16 gauge, curved, brass, bronze or stainless steel, with 1" deep strike boxes, and furnished with lips of sufficient lengths to clear trim and protect clothing.

#### G. RESCUE STRIKES

##### 1. Acceptable Manufacturers:

- a. Accurate Lock and Hardware Company, LLC - ADL-C Series.
- b. Architectural Builders Hardware Manufacturing, Inc. - SDSM4500 Series.
- c. IVES; Division of Allegion, PLC (IVE) - 299RS Series.

##### 2. Characteristics:

- a. Tested to be in accordance with ANSI / BHMA A1882.
- b. Templates: Furnish only template-produced units.
- c. All rescue strikes shall be fabricated from stainless steel material, double lipped, center hung, allowing doors to be opened in both directions without damage to frames.
- d. Latch bolt cutouts shall be 1-1/4" x 11/16" (32 mm x 17.5 mm) ANSI standard for accommodating specified mortise lock latchbolts; as indicated in Door Hardware Sets.
- e. Furnish manufacturer's standard fasteners.

#### H. EXIT DEVICES

##### 1. Acceptable Manufacturers:

- a. Detex Corporation (DET) - Advantex® Series.
- b. Sargent Manufacturing Company; An ASSA ABLOY Group company - PE80 Series.
- c. Von Duprin; Division of Allegion, PLC (VON) - 98 Series.

##### 2. Characteristics:

- a. Tested to be in accordance with ANSI A156.3, 1994, Grade 1. All exit devices to be heavy duty, with one-piece removable covers. The housing shall be manufactured from extruded aluminum without exposed screws or rivets.
- b. Exit devices shall be "UL" listed for Life Safety. All exit devices for fire-rated door openings shall have "UL" labels for "Fire Exit Hardware". All exit devices shall conform to NFPA 80 and NFPA 101 requirements.
- c. All series exit devices shall be "touchpad" (modern) types, incorporating a hydraulic fluid damper, which decelerates the touchpad on its return stroke and eliminates noise associated with the exit device operation. All exit devices shall be non-handed. The touchpad shall extend a minimum of 1/2 of the door width and shall be a minimum of 2-3/16" in height.

Plastic touchpads shall not be acceptable.

- d. Exit devices shall incorporate a deadlatching feature for security and / or for future addition of alarm kits and / or other electrical requirements.
- e. All latchbolts to be the deadlocking type. Latchbolts shall have a self-lubricating coating to reduce wear.

Plated or plastic coated latchbolts shall not be acceptable.

- f. Flush metal end caps shall be standard with all exit devices.
- g. Exit device strikes, where surface applied, shall be a roller type and have an anti-slip mounting plate.
- h. All outside exit device trim shall be forged brass, full escutcheon. Lever trim shall be a "breakaway type" with substantial resistance to rotation when locked but allowing the vandalized lever to drop to a vertical, 90 degrees, position when more than 35 pounds of torque is applied.
- i. Exit device end caps shall be secured with three (3) screws to a truss bracket.
- j. "Touchpad" exit devices shall be patterned punched to designate code requirements; where required.
- k. All exit devices shall be fabricated of brass, bronze, stainless steel, or aluminum material, plated to the standard architectural finishes to match the balance of the door hardware.

Painted or anodized aluminum finishes shall not be acceptable.

## I. DOOR CLOSERS

### 1. Acceptable Manufacturers:

- a. Corbin Russwin Architectural Hardware; An ASSA ABLOY Group company - DC8000 Series.
- b. LCN; Division of Allegion, PLC (LCN) - 4040XP Series.
- c. Sargent Manufacturing Company; An ASSA ABLOY Group company - 281 Series.

### 2. Characteristics:

- a. Door closers shall have fully hydraulic, full rack and pinion action with a high strength cast iron cylinder; which have been tested and certified under ANSI Standard A156.4, Grade 1.
- b. Hydraulic fluid shall be of an all weather type, requiring no seasonal closer adjustment.
- c. Spring power shall be continuously adjustable over the full range of closer sizes, and allowing for reduced opening force for the physically handicapped. Hydraulic regulations shall be by tamper-proof, non-critical valves. Closers shall have separate adjustment for latch speed, general speed and back check.

Pressure Relief Valves (PRV) shall not be acceptable.

- d. All closers shall have solid forged steel main arms (and forearms for parallel arm closers) and where specified shall have a spring loaded stop in the soffit shoe; as indicated in Door Hardware Sets. Where door travel on out-swing doors must be limited, use spring loaded stop in the soffit shoe type closers. Auxiliary stops are not required when spring loaded stop in the soffit shoe type closers are used.
- e. Closers shall have non-metallic full, metal, covers, which provides complete enclosure.
- f. All closers shall be of one manufacturer and shall maintain the manufacturer's thirty (30) year warranty.
- g. Access-Free Manual Closers: Where manual closers are indicated for doors required to be accessible to the physically handicapped, provide adjustable units complying with ADA and ANSI A117.1 provisions for door opening force.
- h. Closers shall be attached utilizing through bolts with wood and machine screws.

- i. Closers to be installed to allow door swing as shown on plans. Doors swinging into exit corridors shall provide for corridor clear width as required by code. Where possible, mount closers inside rooms.
- j. Powder coating finish to be certified to exceed 100 hours salt spray testing by ETL, an independent testing laboratory used by BHMA for ANSI certification.  
  
Lacquer or painted finish on metal components shall not be acceptable.
- k. Where indicated in Door Hardware Sets, door closers shall be furnished with a Special Rust Inhibitor Pre-Treatment.

## J. AUTOMATIC OPERATORS WITH ACCESSORIES

### 1. Acceptable Manufacturers:

- a. B.E.A., Inc..
- b. LCN; Division of Allegion, PLC (LCN) - Senior Swing™ 9500 Series.
- c. Stanley Access Technologies, LLC; Division of Allegion, PLC - M-Force™ Series.

### 2. Characteristics:

- a. Tested to be in accordance with ANSI / BHMA A156.19 - Power Assist And Low Energy Power Operated Doors and / or ETL / UL standards.
- b. Operators: Shall open the door with a 1/8 Horsepower permanent magnet motor through bevel and spur gears with a minimum of a 150/1 gear ratio reduction. This mechanism loads torsion springs during the opening cycle. The motor serves as a dynamic brake to control speed during the closing cycle. A digital encoder continuously supplies the microprocessor control with door velocity and position information. All door functions, such as opening speed, closing speed, check locations, hold open, etc., shall be fully programmable without the use of limit switches. This shall be accomplished by utilizing the microprocessor control.

#### 1. Performance functions are adjustable or selectable as follows:

- a) Opening Time: Adjustable from 2.3 to 5.0 seconds to back check.
  - b) Power Hold Close: Extra closing force for stack pressure problems.
  - c) Closing Time: Adjustable from 2.5 to 5.0 seconds to latch check.
  - d) Open Angle: Adjustable soft stop from 85 to 110 degrees with additional adjustable hard stop.
  - e) Back Check Angle: Adjustable from 65 to 95 degrees.
  - f) Latch Check: Adjustable from 10 to 30 degrees.
  - g) Hold Open Delay: Adjustable from 2 to 30 seconds.
  - h) Delay Before Opening: Adjustable from 0.0 to 3.0 seconds.
  - i) Sensor Masking: Adjustable from 60 to 110 degrees.
  - j) Power Hold Close: An adjustable feature that ensures latching.
  - k) Hold Open: A selectable feature that indefinitely holds the door open until release.
- c. Electrical: 120 VAC, 60 Hz, 15 Amp service provided to the header. Electrical Sub-Contractor shall provide all wiring to operators on a separate circuit breaker routed into headers.
  - d. Actuators shall have a stainless steel touch plate that measures 4-1/2" x 4-1/2" square and features a blue filled handicap symbol and text. Actuators shall be provided with heavy industrial grade components, for vandal resistant mounting and weather resistance.

**K. OVERHEAD DOOR STOPS AND HOLDERS**

1. Acceptable Manufacturers:
  - a. Glynn-Johnson; Division of Allegion, PLC (GLY) - 90 / 410 / 450 Series.
  - b. Norton Rixson; An ASSA ABLOY Group company - 2 / 9 / 10 Series.
  - c. Sargent Manufacturing Company; An ASSA ABLOY Group company - 590 / 1530 / 1540 Series.
2. Characteristics:
  - a. Tested to be in accordance with ANSI / BHMA A156.8, Grade 1.
  - b. Furnish medium and heavy duty door stops, non-handed / reversible, of a, where detailed, carbon steel base substrate material or 300 Series stainless steel substrate material.
  - c. Furnish units with a shock absorbing mechanism for added durability.
  - d. All units are to be installed with the jamb bracket mounted on the stop, unless as indicated in the Door Hardware Sets, "Angle Jamb Brackets" are specified to be utilized. Overhead door stops specified with "Angle Jamb Brackets" are used to convert the installation of the units to hinge side mounting.

**L. MANUAL FLUSH BOLTS**

1. Acceptable Manufacturers:
  - a. Burns Manufacturing, Inc. - 590 / 545.
  - b. IVES; Division of Allegion, PLC (IVE) - FB458 / DP2.
  - c. Triangle Brass Manufacturing Company, Inc. - 3917 / 3910.
2. Characteristics:
  - a. Tested to be in accordance with ANSI / BHMA A156.16, Grade 1.
  - b. Flush bolts shall be 6-3/4" x 1", fabricated from forged brass, with 1/2" diameter bolts.
  - c. Flush bolts shall have a spring loaded snap action lever, which will retract the bolt when moved to the "up" position, and project the bolt into the head frame when moved to the "down" position.
  - d. Flush bolts shall have a 3/4" bolt throw with a 12" rod length.
  - e. Furnish dust proof strikes, for all flush bolts, with a spring loaded plunger which will return to floor or threshold anytime flush bolt is retracted. Dust proof strikes shall be installed in floors or thresholds, as indicated in Door Hardware Sets.

**M. CONSTANT LATCHING FLUSH BOLTS**

1. Acceptable Manufacturers:
  - a. Burns Manufacturing, Inc. - 7845 / 545.
  - b. IVES; Division of Allegion, PLC (IVE) - FB51P / DP2.
  - c. Triangle Brass Manufacturing Company, Inc. - 3820 x 3810 / 3910.
2. Characteristics:
  - a. Tested to be in accordance with ANSI / BHMA A156.3, Type 25.
  - b. Flush bolts shall be semi-automatic. Inactive door remains latched until active door is opened, releasing automatic bottom bolt and then top bolt is able to be manually released. Inactive door will re-latch automatically when closed.



- c. Flush bolts shall have a 3/4" bolt throw.
- d. Flush bolts shall be U.L. Listed for installation on fire-labeled door openings.
- e. Furnish dust proof strikes, for indicated flush bolts, with a spring loaded plunger which will return to floor or threshold anytime flush bolt is retracted. Dust proof strikes shall be installed in floors or thresholds, as indicated in Door Hardware Sets.

#### N. WALL STOPS

- 1. Acceptable Manufacturers:
  - a. Burns Manufacturing, Inc. - 560.
  - b. IVES; Division of Allegion, PLC (IVE) - WS401CVX.
  - c. Triangle Brass Manufacturing Company, Inc. - 1270CX.
- 2. Characteristics:
  - a. Tested to be in accordance with ANSI / BHMA A156.16, Grade 1.
  - b. Wall stops shall have a solid forged brass housing with a concealed, in the convex bumper, attachment. Furnish with wood screw and plastic anchors.

#### O. BAR COORDINATORS

- 1. Acceptable Manufacturers:
  - a. Burns Manufacturing, Inc. - 7600 Series x 72AB / 72C Mounting Brackets.
  - b. IVES; Division of Allegion, PLC (IVE) - COR Series x MB1F / MB2F / MB3F Mounting Brackets.
  - c. Triangle Brass Manufacturing Company, Inc. - 3094 Series x 3095 / 3096 Mounting Brackets.
- 2. Characteristics:
  - a. Tested to be in accordance with ANSI / BHMA A156.3, Type 21.
  - b. Coordinators shall be stop mounted, non-handed, fully automatic, and designed for sequential closing of pairs of doors with or without an astragal.
  - c. Coordinators shall be designed to prevent the "active" door leaf from closing prior to the "inactive" door leaf closing, by means of a lever and trigger mechanism.
  - d. Coordinators shall have a safety release mechanism, which will allow the "active" door leaf to close first, if put under extreme pressure, preventing damage to the door, hinges, or coordinator.
  - e. Coordinator channel shall be 1-5/8" wide x 5/8" high aluminum, with variable lengths suitable to the door opening size.
  - f. Filler bars shall be used in conjunction with coordinators to cover the entire length of the door opening's stop.
  - g. Mounting brackets shall be used in conjunction with coordinators to allow stop mounted hardware to be properly installed without damaging the door coordinators, such as parallel arm door closers or surface mounted vertical rod exit device strikes.
  - h. Coordinators shall be U.L. Listed for installation on fire-labeled door openings.

#### P. DOOR PULLS

- 1. Acceptable Manufacturers:
  - a. Burns Manufacturing, Inc. - 26C x HCP.

- b. IVES; Division of Allegion, PLC (IVE) - 8103EZHD-0.
- c. Triangle Brass Manufacturing Company, Inc. - 1195-2.

2. Characteristics:

- a. Tested to be in accordance with ANSI / BHMA A156.6, Grade 1.
- b. Door pulls shall be fabricated of 1" diameter solid material, 10" center-to-center length, and shall comply with the recommendations of the Americans with Disabilities Act (A.D.A.).
- c. Fasteners: Furnish manufacturer's standard fasteners as indicated in Door Hardware Sets.

Q. PUSH PLATES

1. Acceptable Manufacturers:

- a. Burns Manufacturing, Inc. - 50 Series.
- b. IVES; Division of Allegion, PLC (IVE) - 8200 Series.
- c. Triangle Brass Manufacturing Company, Inc. - 1001 Series.

2. Characteristics:

- a. Tested to be in accordance with ANSI / BHMA A156.6, Grade 1.
- b. Push plates shall be fabricated from .050" wrought, stainless steel, material, with four beveled edges.
- c. Furnish 8" x 16" plate size.
- d. Fasteners: Furnish manufacturer's standard exposed, Phillips oval head, stainless steel, sheet metal screw, mounting fasteners.

R. MOP, KICK, AND ARMOR PLATES

1. Acceptable Manufacturers:

- a. Burns Manufacturing, Inc. - MP50 / KP50 / AP50 Series.
- b. IVES; Division of Allegion, PLC (IVE) - 8400 Series.
- c. Triangle Brass Manufacturing Company, Inc. - KM050 / KO050 / KA050 Series.

2. Characteristics:

- a. Tested to be in accordance with ANSI / BHMA A156.6, Grade 1.
- b. All mop, kick, and armor plates shall be US18 gauge (.050") thick stainless steel material.
- c. Fabricate mop plates not more than 1 inch less than door width on "Pull" side, kick plates not more than 1-1/2 less than door widths on "Push" side, and armor plates not more than 1-1/2 less than door widths on "Push" side; or as indicated in Door Hardware Sets.
- d. Heights:
  - (1) Mop Plates shall be 4 inches in height.
  - (2) Kick Plates shall be 10 inches in height.
  - (3) Armor Plates shall be 34 inches in height.
- e. Bevel all four (4) edges.
- f. Fabricate mop, kick, and armor plates with countersunk screw holes.
- g. Furnish mop, kick, and armor plates with manufacturer's standard flat head, stainless steel, sheet metal screws.

## S. LOCK GUARDS

1. Acceptable Manufacturers:
  - a. Burns Manufacturing, Inc. - 623.
  - b. IVES; Division of Allegion, PLC (IVE) - LG12.
  - c. Triangle Brass Manufacturing Company, Inc. - 5001.
2. Characteristics:
  - a. Tested to be in accordance with ANSI / BHMA A156.6, Grade 1.
  - b. Lock Guards shall be fabricated of 13 gauge, minimum, stainless steel.
  - c. Units shall be non-handed.
  - d. These units shall cover the latchbolt area of the door and lock, thereby providing added protection from burglars, vandals, or normal abuse.
  - e. Furnish lock guards with two (2) carriage bolts and hex nuts or socket head sex nuts fasteners, without any exposed fasteners on the face of the units.

## T. THRESHOLDS

1. Acceptable Manufacturers:
  - a. National Guard Products, Inc..
  - b. Reese Enterprises, Inc..
  - c. Zero International; Division of Allegion, PLC (ZER).
2. Characteristics:
  - a. Thresholds shall be certified by an independent testing laboratory to meet the requirements of ANSI / BHMA A156.21 and in accordance with the requirements of A.D.A.A.G. and ICC / ANSI A117.1.
  - b. Thresholds shall be furnished in an aluminum extrusion that is of alloy 6063 hardness T-5.
  - c. Furnish thresholds with a rugged abrasive "non-skid" finish of a nickel-aluminum composite, which is bonded by a heat-fusion process to the metal surface, by an exothermic reaction, at high temperatures.
  - d. Furnish thresholds with an aluminum composite filler, applied to the underneath full body, containing aluminum oxide and silicone carbide materials.
  - e. Thresholds shall be furnished with 1/4"-20 x 3" stainless steel sleeve anchors.

## U. DOOR SWEEPS

1. Acceptable Manufacturers:
  - a. National Guard Products, Inc..
  - b. Reese Enterprises, Inc..
  - c. Zero International; Division of Allegion, PLC (ZER).
2. Characteristics:
  - a. Tested to be in accordance with ANSI / BHMA A156.22.
  - b. Door sweeps shall be furnished encased in a high quality aluminum extrusion that is of alloy 6063 hardness T-5.
  - c. Furnish all door sweeps with neoprene / vinyl seals, rain drip strips, and with manufacturer's standard stainless steel, pan Phillips head, sheet metal screw fasteners.

## V. SELF-ADHESIVE GASKETING

1. Acceptable Manufacturers:
  - a. National Guard Products, Inc..
  - b. Reese Enterprises, Inc..
  - c. Zero International; Division of Allegion, PLC (ZER).
2. Characteristics:
  - a. Self-adhesive gasketing shall conform to ANSI / BHMA A156.22 for Door Gasketing Systems, as well as, ASTM E283-1984.
  - b. Gasketing shall be furnished extruded from high grade silicone, with pressure sensitive, double backed, self-adhesive.
  - c. Seals shall be classified by UL.

## W. PERIMETER GASKETING

1. Acceptable Manufacturers:
  - a. National Guard Products, Inc..
  - b. Reese Enterprises, Inc..
  - c. Zero International, Inc.; Division of Allegion, PLC (ZER).
2. Characteristics:
  - a. Tested to be in accordance with ANSI / BHMA A156.22.
  - b. Gasketing shall be furnished encased in a high quality aluminum extrusion that is of alloy 6063 hardness T-5.
  - c. Furnish gasketing with neoprene seals and manufacturer's standard stainless steel, pan Phillips head, sheet metal screw fasteners.

## X. ADJUSTABLE PERIMETER GASKETING

1. Acceptable Manufacturers:
  - a. National Guard Products, Inc..
  - b. Reese Enterprises, Inc..
  - c. Zero International; Division of Allegion, PLC (ZER).
2. Characteristics:
  - a. Tested to be in accordance with ANSI / BHMA A156.22.
  - b. Perimeter gasketing shall be an adjustable, surface mounted, type consisting of a tubular, solid neoprene seal. Adjusting screws shall be provided approximately 10 inches on center with an adjusting range of 0.250 inches.
  - c. Perimeter gasketing shall be furnished encased in a high quality aluminum extrusion that is of alloy 6063 hardness T-5, with a minimum thickness of 0.055 inches. Housing dimensions shall not exceed 7/8 inches in depth or 1/2 inch in width.
  - d. Install gasketing with manufacturer's standard stainless steel, pan Phillips head, sheet metal screw fasteners so that the gasketing is compressed against the door face by 1/32".

## Y. MEETING STILE GASKETING

1. Acceptable Manufacturers:
    - a. National Guard Products, Inc..
    - b. Reese Enterprises, Inc..
    - c. Zero International; Division of Allegion, PLC (ZER).
  
  2. Characteristics:
    - a. Meeting stile gasketing shall conform to ANSI / BHMA A156.22 for Door Gasketing Systems, as well as, ASTM E283-1984.
    - b. Gasketing shall be furnished in an aluminum extrusion that is of alloy 6063 hardness T-5.
    - c. Furnish gasketing with neoprene seals and manufacturer's standard stainless steel, pan Phillips head, sheet metal screw fasteners.
- Z. MEETING STILE ASTRAGALS
1. Acceptable Manufacturers:
    - a. National Guard Products, Inc..
    - b. Pemko Manufacturing Company; An ASSA ABLOY Group company.
    - c. Zero International; Division of Allegion, PLC (ZER).
  
  2. Characteristics:
    - a. Meeting stile astragals shall conform to ANSI / BHMA A156.22 for Door Gasketing Systems, as well as, ASTM E283-1984.
    - b. Gasketing shall be furnished in an aluminum extrusion that is of alloy 6063 hardness T-5.
    - c. Furnish astragals with neoprene seals and manufacturer's standard stainless steel, pan Phillips head, sheet metal screw fasteners.
- AA. RAIN DRIP STRIPS
1. Acceptable Manufacturers:
    - a. National Guard Products, Inc..
    - b. Reese Enterprises, Inc..
    - c. Zero International; Division of Allegion, PLC (ZER).
  
  2. Characteristics:
    - a. Rain drip strips shall be furnished in an aluminum extrusion that is of alloy 6063 hardness T-5.
    - b. Furnish all rain drip strips with manufacturer's standard stainless steel, pan Phillips head, sheet metal screw fasteners.
- BB. DOOR SILENCERS
1. Acceptable Manufacturers:
    - a. Burns Manufacturing, Inc. - 500.
    - b. IVES; Division of Allegion, PLC (IVE) - SR64.
    - c. Triangle Brass Manufacturing Company, Inc. - 1229A.
  
  2. Characteristics:

- a. Tested to be in accordance with ANSI / BHMA A156.16, Grade 1.
- b. Silencers shall be fabricated from a gray, opaque, rubber material, and featuring a pneumatic design that, once installed, forms an air pocket to absorb shock, reduce noise of door closing, eliminate door rattle, and provide constant tension for door latches or locks.
- c. Silencers shall be installed into pre-drilled hollow metal door frames, which if installed properly, shall become Tamper-Proof.
- d. Silencers shall be installed into pre-drilled wood door frames. To prevent removal, a small brad shall be driven into the stop strips of the wood frames and through the stems of the silencers.
- e. Furnish three (3) for each single door, four (4) for each single "Dutch" door, and two (2) for each pair of doors.

## CC. SECURITY EQUIPMENT

1. Acceptable Manufacturers:
  - a. Logic Controllers and Power Supplies:
    1. Detex Corporation (DET) - 800 Series.
2. Characteristics:
  - a. Furnish all items as indicated in Door Hardware Sets.
3. Coordinate all required security equipment items with Division 26 - Electrical, Division 27 - Communications, Division 28 - Electronic Safety And Security, the Project Electrical Engineer, the Electrical Sub-Contractor, and the System Integrator.

## 2.2 MATERIALS AND FABRICATION

- A. Manufacturer's Name Plate: Do not use manufacturers' products that have manufacturer's name or trade name displayed in a visible location (omit removable nameplates) except in conjunction with required fire-rated labels and as otherwise acceptable to Architect.
  1. Manufacturer's identification will be permitted on rim of lock cylinders only.
- B. Base Metals: Produce hardware units of basic metal and forming method indicated, using manufacturer's standard metal alloy, composition, temper, and hardness, but in no case of lesser (commercially recognized) quality than specified for applicable hardware units by applicable ANSI / BHMA A156 series standards for each type of hardware item and with ANSI / BHMA A156.18 for finish designations indicated. Do not furnish "optional" materials or forming methods for those indicated, except as otherwise specified.
- C. Fasteners: Furnish hardware manufactured to conform to published templates, generally prepared for machine screw installation.
  1. Do not furnish hardware that has been prepared for self-tapping sheet metal screws, except as specifically indicated.
  2. Furnish screws for installation with each hardware item. Furnish Phillips flat-head screws except as otherwise indicated. Finish exposed (exposed under any condition) screws to match hardware finish or, if exposed in surfaces of other work, to match finish of this other work as closely as possible, including "prepared for paint" surfaces to receive painted finish.

3. Furnish concealed fasteners for hardware units that are exposed when door is closed except to the extent no standard units of type specified are available with concealed fasteners. Do not use thru-bolts for installation where bolt head or nut on opposite face is exposed in other work unless their use is the only means of adequately fastening the hardware. Coordinate with wood doors and metal doors and frames where thru-bolts are used as a means of reinforcing the work, furnish sleeves for each thru-bolt or use sex screw fasteners.

### 2.3 HARDWARE FINISHES

- A. Match items to the manufacturer's standard color and texture finish for the latch and lock sets (or push-pull units if no latch or lock sets).
- B. Furnish finishes that match those established by ANSI or, if none established, match the Architect's sample.
- C. Furnish quality of finish, including thickness of plating or coating (if any), composition, hardness, and other qualities complying with the manufacturer's standards, but in no case less than specified by the referenced standards, for the applicable units of hardware.
- D. The designations used to indicate hardware finishes are those listed in ANSI / BHMA A156.18, "Materials and Finishes", including coordination with the traditional U.S. finishes, shown by certain manufacturers for their products.

1.	Butt Hinges	US26D (652) Satin Chromium US32D (630) Satin Stainless Steel
2.	Continuous Geared Hinges	US28 (628) Satin Aluminum, Clear Anodized
3.	Aluminum Double Swing Continuous Hinges	US28 (628) Satin Aluminum, Clear Anodized
4.	Emergency Release Stops	CLEAR Satin Aluminum, Clear Anodized
5.	Mortise Cylinders and Rim Cylinders	US26D (626) Satin Chromium
6.	Mortise Latchsets and Locksets	US26D (626) Satin Chromium
7.	Rescue Strikes	US32D (630) Satin Stainless Steel
8.	Exit Devices	US26D (626) Satin Chromium US32D (630) Satin Stainless Steel
9.	Dummy Push Bars	US26D (626) Satin Chromium
10.	Door Closers	US28 (689) Powder Coated Aluminum
11.	Automatic Door Operators	ANCLR (US28 / 628) Satin Aluminum, Clear Anodized
12.	Touchless Actuators	US32D (630) Satin Stainless Steel
13.	Overhead Door Stops and Holders	SP28 (689) Powder Coated Aluminum US32D (630) Satin Stainless Steel
14.	Manual Flush Bolts	US26D (626) Satin Chromium
15.	Constant Latching Flush Bolts	US26D (626) Satin Chromium
16.	Dust Proof Stikes	US26D (626) Satin Chromium

17.	Wall Stops	US32D (630) Satin Stainless Steel
18.	Bar Coordinators	US28 (628) Satin Aluminum, Clear Anodized
19.	Bar Coordinator Mounting Brackets	SP28 (689) Lacquer Sprayed Aluminum
20.	Door Pulls	US32D (630) Satin Stainless Steel
21.	Push Plates	US32D (630) Satin Stainless Steel
22.	Mop, Kick, and Armor Plates	US32D (630) Satin Stainless Steel
23.	Lock Guards	US32D (630) Satin Stainless Steel
24.	Thresholds	US27 (719) Mill Finish Aluminum, Uncoated
25.	Door Sweeps	US28 (628) Satin Aluminum, Clear Anodized
26.	Self-Adhesive Gasketing	BLACK (Silicone)
27.	Perimeter Gasketing	US28 (628) Satin Aluminum, Clear Anodized
28.	Adjustable Perimeter Gasketing	US28 (628) Satin Aluminum, Clear Anodized
29.	Meeting Stile Gasketing	US28 (628) Satin Aluminum, Clear Anodized
30.	Meeting Stile Astragals	US28 (628) Satin Aluminum, Clear Anodized
31.	Door Silencers	GREY (Rubber)
32.	Logic Controllers / Power Supplies	Beige

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Mount hardware units at heights indicated in the following applicable publications, except as specifically indicated or required to comply with governing regulations and, except as otherwise indicated, by the Architect.
  1. "Recommended Locations for Builders Hardware for Standard Steel Doors and Frames" by the Door and Hardware Institute.
- B. Install each hardware item in compliance with the manufacturer's instructions and recommendations. Where cutting and fitting is required to install hardware onto or into surfaces that are later to be painted or finished in another way, coordinate removal, storage, and reinstallation or application of surface protection with finishing work specified in the Division 09 Sections. Do not install surface-mounted items until finishes have been completed on the substrates involved.
- C. Sets units level, plumb, and true to line and location. Adjust and reinforce the attachment substrate as necessary for proper installation and operation.
- D. Where scheduled, door pulls shall be through-bolted with bolt heads concealed behind push plates.
- E. Drill and countersink units that are not factory prepared for anchorage fasteners. Space fasteners and anchors in accordance with industry standards.



- F. Set thresholds, for exterior and interior doors, in a full bed of butyl-rubber or polyisobutylene mastic sealant complying with requirements specified in Division 07 - Joint Sealants.
- G. Gasketing and Seals: Comply with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations to the extent installation requirements are not otherwise indicated.
- H. Hardware Sets:
1. Include the CON suffix on each item of hardware as required.
  2. Include wire harnesses from power transfer device to electrified locking device and wire harness\* from power transfer device to power supply as required.  
\* Recommend a harness terminated with Molex on one end and flying leads on the other for maximum flexibility when connecting to power supplies and access control.
- I. Hardware installer shall be responsible for installation of all mechanical and electromechanical hardware items contained within this specification, in accordance with the manufacturer's technical installation guidance, and in addition to all applicable code requirements.
- J. Electrical Sub-Contractor, under Division 26 - Electrical, shall be responsible for providing and installing all (120 VAC) power source wiring as required for the electrified locking and access control hardware, equipment, accessories, and power supplies. This includes quad outlets as required on a dedicated circuit in designated IT / Telecommunication Room(s) and the related conduit, stud-ins, junction boxes, and connectors required for the power source delivery and connections. Provide cabling, conduit, stub-ins, patch cords, fire stop systems, data connectors, junction boxes, and back boxes for both the electrified locking hardware and access control equipment at each of the access controlled or monitored openings per plan drawings and specifications. Provide and install conduit between each of the aforementioned devices and between junction boxes, power supplies, and access control equipment located on or above each door opening.
1. At wall mounted remote card readers, provide conduit on the secured side of each door opening, at 48" from above the finished floor and 6" from the edge of each door frame, to the related power supplies and access control equipment; unless otherwise instructed by Architect.
  2. At all electrical hardware power transfer items provide conduit on the secured side of each door opening, from the power transfer items, through-wire hinges, or serviceable panel locations, inside of frame's jambs, to the related power supplies and access control equipment.

Installation of power supplies and interfacing of security system with fire alarm system as required, and coordination of complete security system shall be provided by the Electrical Sub-Contractor, under Division 26 - Electrical. Electrical Sub-Contractor shall be responsible for providing and installing all 120 VAC cabling connections and terminations from the electrical junction boxes to these electrical devices.

- K. Low-voltage sub-contractor shall be responsible for providing all low-voltage (12 / 24 VDC) wiring and communication cabling (RS-232 / RS-485) installation from network control processors to reader controllers, I / O monitor / control interface panels, electrified and integrated locking hardware, remote card readers, keypads, or display terminals, monitoring and signaling switches, and power supplies, identification, and termination in accordance with the manufacturer's technical installation guidance, in addition to all applicable code requirements. Installation of all card readers, controllers, software packages, door position switches, and run low voltage wiring from the power supplies / controllers to the electrified hardware items at each opening where specified. Low-voltage sub-contractor shall also be responsible for connectors, final wire terminations, final hook-ups, testing, system set-up, warranty, and Owner Turnover. Owner Training shall be provided under this Section.

- L. Upon completion of the final installation of the door hardware and access control system, and burn in of the security system, the contract hardware distributor and the access control system's supplier shall jointly make final adjustments to the electrified hardware and access control system's openings to ensure proper adjustment and function of the opening is in compliance with the system's functionality requirements.

### 3.2 ADJUSTING, CLEANING, AND DEMONSTRATING

- A. Adjust and check each operating item of hardware and each door to ensure proper operation or function of every unit. Replace units that cannot be adjusted to operate freely and smoothly or as intended for the application made.

- 1. Where door hardware is installed more than one month prior to acceptance or occupancy of a space or area, the hardware installers shall return to the installation during the week prior to acceptance or occupancy and make final check and adjustment of all hardware items in such space or area. Clean operating items as necessary to restore proper function and finish of hardware and doors. Adjust door control devices to compensate for final operation of heating and ventilating equipment.

- B. Adjust door control devices to compensate for final operation of heating and ventilating equipment and to comply with accessibility requirements.

- 1. Door Closers Adjustments:

- a. Adjust sweep period so that from an open position of 70 degrees, the door will take at least three seconds to move to a point 3 inches from the latch, measured to the leading edge of the door.
- b. Adjust back-check to slow the door opening at about 75 degrees, when door is forcibly opened beyond its pre-adjusted limits.
- c. All doors closers mounted in wood doors must use manufacture provided through bolts.
- d. All door closers should be mounted to allow full swing to stop bumper location (wall, floor, overhead stop, etc.). The closer arm must not act as the door stop.
- e. Adjust closer spring strength functions to complete with ADA requirements. Some exceptions may apply for exterior doors.
- f. Adjust closer functions for swing / latch speed for approximately 7 seconds fully open to latch position.
- g. Closing speed or spring strength should not be used to compensate for a deficient door assembly.
- h. Use the following standards:
  - 1. Correct the door / frame / hinge function first.
  - 2. Once door is swinging and closing smoothly, adjust the closer to control the door.
  - 3. Contractor will notify the architect (in writing) if existing conditions interfere with this.
  - 4. Engage and adjust backcheck function so the door has a smooth cushion prior to reaching the door stop device.

- C. Clean adjacent surfaces soiled by hardware installation.

- D. Door Hardware Supplier's Field Service:

- 1. Instruct Owner's Personnel in proper adjustment and maintenance of hardware and hardware finishes, during the final adjustment of hardware.

- E. Architect's Hardware Consultant's Field Service:
1. Inspect door hardware items for correct installation and adjustment after complete installation of the door hardware.
  2. File a written report of this inspection directly to the Architect.
- F. Continued Maintenance Service: Approximately six (6) months after the acceptance of hardware in each area, the Installer shall return to the project and re-adjust every item of hardware to restore proper function of doors and hardware. Consult with and instruct Owner's personnel in recommended additions to the maintenance procedures. Replace hardware items which have deteriorated or failed due to faulty design, materials or installation of hardware units. Prepare a written report of any current or predictable problems (of substantial nature) in the performance of the hardware and furnish copy to the Owner's Agent / Representative.

### 3.3 HARDWARE SCHEDULE

98368 OPT0338013 Version 1

#### HARDWARE GROUP NO. 1

FOR USE ON DOOR #(S):

100                    101                    119B

ALL REQUIRED DOOR HARDWARE ITEMS SHALL BE PROVIDED BY MANUFACTURER / SUPPLIER OF ALL GLASS AUTOMATIC SLIDING DOOR UNIT.

#### HARDWARE GROUP NO. 2

FOR USE ON DOOR #(S):

148

PROVIDE EACH SGL DOOR(S) WITH THE FOLLOWING:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
1	EA	CONTINUOUS HINGE	224XY	US28	IVE
1	EA	STOREROOM LOCKSET	L9080P6 03A	626	SCH
1	EA	LOCK GUARD	LG12	US32D	IVE
1	EA	DOOR CLOSER	4040XP SRI SPRING H-CUSH-N-STOP TBWMS	689	LCN
1	EA	RAIN DRIP STRIP	142AA	628	ZER
1	SET	PERIMETER GASKETING	429AA	628	ZER
1	EA	DOOR SWEEP	8197AA	628	ZER
1	EA	THRESHOLD	655A - EV3 X 226 ANCHORS	719	ZER

DO NOT CUT GASKETING. DOOR CLOSER'S SHOE BRACKET SHALL BE ATTACHED TO FRAME THROUGH GASKETING SECTION.

## HARDWARE GROUP NO. 3

FOR USE ON DOOR #(S):

145B

PROVIDE EACH SGL DOOR(S) WITH THE FOLLOWING:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
1	EA	CONTINUOUS HINGE	224XY	US28	IVE
1	EA	ELECTRIFIED LOCKSET	L9092P6EU 03A X RX X CON	626	SCH
1	EA	WIRING HARNESS	CON X LENGTH AS REQUIRED		SCH
1	EA	WIRING HARNESS	CON-6W		SCH
1	EA	LOCK GUARD	LG12	US32D	IVE
1	EA	DOOR CLOSER	4040XP SRI SPRING H-CUSH-N-STOP TBWMS	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	US32D	IVE
1	EA	RAIN DRIP STRIP	142AA	628	ZER
1	SET	PERIMETER GASKETING	429AA	628	ZER
1	EA	DOOR SWEEP	8197AA	628	ZER
1	EA	THRESHOLD	655A - EV3 X 226 ANCHORS	719	ZER
1	SET	WIRING DIAGRAMS	DOOR ELEVATION AND POINT-TO-POINT		SCE

DO NOT CUT GASKETING. DOOR CLOSER'S SHOE BRACKET SHALL BE ATTACHED TO FRAME THROUGH GASKETING SECTION.

## DESCRIPTION OF OPERATION:

DOOR NORMALLY IN CLOSED AND SECURED POSITION.

FREE EGRESS PERMITTED AT ALL TIMES.

AUTHORIZED ENTRY ACHIEVED BY KEY IN CYLINDER OR PRESENTING A VALID CREDENTIAL TO ACCESS CONTROL READER, MOMENTARILY UNLOCKING LOCKSET.

AFTER A PREDETERMINED PERIOD OF TIME, LOCKSET WILL RE-LOCK, SECURING DOOR OPENING.

UPON LOSS OF POWER, LOCKSET REMAINS SECURE, REQUIRING A KEY IN CYLINDER TO MECHANICALLY OPEN DOOR FROM SECURE SIDE (FAIL-SECURE).

ALL HEAD END EQUIPMENT, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO, ACCESS CONTROL READER, READER CONTROLLER, READER INTERFACE, CREDENTIALS, POWER SUPPLY, WIRE, AND ALL OTHER COMPONENTS NECESSARY FOR A COMPLETE AND FUNCTIONING ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEM SHALL BE PROVIDED IN DIVISION 28, BY SECURITY SUB-CONTRACTOR.

SUPPLIER SHALL COORDINATE ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS WITH ELECTRICAL ENGINEERS, ALARM SYSTEM'S ENGINEERS, AND ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEM'S INTEGRATORS.

## HARDWARE GROUP NO. 4

FOR USE ON DOOR #(S):

152B

PROVIDE EACH SGL DOOR(S) WITH THE FOLLOWING:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
1	EA	ELECTRIFIED CONTINUOUS HINGE	224XY TWP CON	US28	IVE
1	EA	ELECTRIFIED EXIT DEVICE	RX-QEL-98L-NL X 996L-NL X #03 LEVER X CON X SNB	US26D	VON
1	EA	CONSTRUCTION RIM CYLINDER	20-022	626	SCH
1	EA	WIRING HARNESS	CON X LENGTH AS REQUIRED		VON
1	EA	WIRING HARNESS	CON-6W		VON
1	EA	DOOR CLOSER	4040XP SRI SPRING H-CUSH-N-STOP TBWMS	689	LCN
1	EA	RAIN DRIP STRIP	142AA	628	ZER
1	SET	PERIMETER GASKETING	429AA	628	ZER
1	EA	DOOR SWEEP	8197AA	628	ZER
1	EA	THRESHOLD	655A - EV3 X 226 ANCHORS	719	ZER
1	SET	WIRING DIAGRAMS	DOOR ELEVATION AND POINT-TO-POINT		SCE

DO NOT CUT GASKETING. EXIT DEVICE'S STRIKE AND DOOR CLOSER'S SHOE BRACKET SHALL BE ATTACHED TO FRAME THROUGH GASKETING SECTIONS.

## DESCRIPTION OF OPERATION:

DOOR NORMALLY IN CLOSED AND SECURED POSITION.

FREE EGRESS PERMITTED AT ALL TIMES.

AUTHORIZED ENTRY ACHIEVED BY KEY IN CYLINDER OR PRESENTING A VALID CREDENTIAL TO ACCESS CONTROL READER, MOMENTARILY RETRACTING EXIT DEVICE'S LATCHBOLT.

AFTER A PREDETERMINED PERIOD OF TIME, EXIT DEVICE'S LATCHBOLT WILL PROJECT, SECURING DOOR OPENING.

UPON LOSS OF POWER, EXIT DEVICE REMAINS SECURE, REQUIRING A KEY IN CYLINDER TO MECHANICALLY OPEN DOOR FROM SECURE SIDE (FAIL-SECURE).

ALL HEAD END EQUIPMENT, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO, ACCESS CONTROL READER, READER CONTROLLER, READER INTERFACE, CREDENTIALS, POWER SUPPLY, WIRE, AND ALL OTHER COMPONENTS NECESSARY FOR A COMPLETE AND FUNCTIONING ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEM SHALL BE PROVIDED IN DIVISION 28, BY SECURITY SUB-CONTRACTOR.

SUPPLIER SHALL COORDINATE ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS WITH ELECTRICAL ENGINEERS, ALARM SYSTEM'S ENGINEERS, AND ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEM'S INTEGRATORS.

## HARDWARE GROUP NO. 5

FOR USE ON DOOR #(S):

155B

PROVIDE EACH SGL DOOR(S) WITH THE FOLLOWING:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
1	EA	ELECTRIFIED CONTINUOUS HINGE	224XY TWP CON	US28	IVE
1	EA	ELECTRIFIED EXIT DEVICE	RX-QEL-98L-NL X 996L-NL X #03 LEVER X CON X SNB	US26D	VON
1	EA	CONSTRUCTION RIM CYLINDER	20-022	626	SCH
1	EA	WIRING HARNESS	CON X LENGTH AS REQUIRED		VON
1	EA	WIRING HARNESS	CON-6W		VON
1	EA	DOOR CLOSER	4040XP SRI SPRING H-CUSH-N-STOP TBWMS	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	US32D	IVE
1	EA	RAIN DRIP STRIP	142AA	628	ZER
1	SET	PERIMETER GASKETING	429AA	628	ZER
1	EA	DOOR SWEEP	8197AA	628	ZER
1	EA	THRESHOLD	655A - EV3 X 226 ANCHORS	719	ZER
1	SET	WIRING DIAGRAMS	DOOR ELEVATION AND POINT-TO-POINT		SCE

DO NOT CUT GASKETING. EXIT DEVICE'S STRIKE AND DOOR CLOSER'S SHOE BRACKET SHALL BE ATTACHED TO FRAME THROUGH GASKETING SECTIONS.

## DESCRIPTION OF OPERATION:

DOOR NORMALLY IN CLOSED AND SECURED POSITION.

FREE EGRESS PERMITTED AT ALL TIMES.

AUTHORIZED ENTRY ACHIEVED BY KEY IN CYLINDER OR PRESENTING A VALID CREDENTIAL TO ACCESS CONTROL READER, MOMENTARILY RETRACTING EXIT DEVICE'S LATCHBOLT.

AFTER A PREDETERMINED PERIOD OF TIME, EXIT DEVICE'S LATCHBOLT WILL PROJECT, SECURING DOOR OPENING.

UPON LOSS OF POWER, EXIT DEVICE REMAINS SECURE, REQUIRING A KEY IN CYLINDER TO MECHANICALLY OPEN DOOR FROM SECURE SIDE (FAIL-SECURE).

ALL HEAD END EQUIPMENT, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO, ACCESS CONTROL READER, READER CONTROLLER, READER INTERFACE, CREDENTIALS, POWER SUPPLY, WIRE, AND ALL OTHER COMPONENTS NECESSARY FOR A COMPLETE AND FUNCTIONING ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEM SHALL BE PROVIDED IN DIVISION 28, BY SECURITY SUB-CONTRACTOR.

SUPPLIER SHALL COORDINATE ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS WITH ELECTRICAL ENGINEERS, ALARM SYSTEM'S ENGINEERS, AND ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEM'S INTEGRATORS.

## HARDWARE GROUP NO. 6

FOR USE ON DOOR #(S):

146

PROVIDE EACH PR DOOR(S) WITH THE FOLLOWING:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
2	EA	CONTINUOUS HINGE	224XY	US28	IVE
2	EA	MANUAL FLUSH BOLT	FB458	US26D	IVE
1	EA	DUST PROOF STRIKE	DP2	US26D	IVE
1	EA	HALF DUMMY TRIM	L0170 03A	626	SCH
1	EA	STOREROOM LOCKSET	L9080P6 03A	626	SCH
1	EA	OVERHEAD STOP & HOLDER	90H	US32D	GLY
1	EA	DOOR CLOSER	4040XP SRI SPRING H-CUSH-N-STOP TBWMS	689	LCN
1	EA	RAIN DRIP STRIP	142AA	628	ZER
1	SET	PERIMETER GASKETING	429AA	628	ZER
1	EA	MEETING STILE ASTRAGAL	383AA	628	ZER
2	EA	DOOR SWEEP	8197AA	628	ZER
1	EA	THRESHOLD	655A - EV3 X 226 ANCHORS	719	ZER

DO NOT CUT GASKETING. DOOR CLOSER'S SHOE BRACKET AND OVERHEAD STOP & HOLDER'S JAMB BRACKET SHALL BE ATTACHED TO FRAME THROUGH GASKETING SECTIONS.

## HARDWARE GROUP NO. 7

FOR USE ON DOOR #(S):

154B

161

PROVIDE EACH SGL DOOR(S) WITH THE FOLLOWING:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
3	EA	BUTT HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	DOOR PULL	8103EZHD - 0 X TYPE "STANDARD" MOUNTING	US32D- 316	IVE
1	EA	PUSH PLATE	8200 8" X 16"	US32D	IVE
1	EA	DOOR CLOSER	4040XP REGULAR TBWMS	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 1-1/2" LDW B-CS	US32D	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS401CVX	US26D	IVE
3	EA	SILENCER	SR64	GREY	IVE

## HARDWARE GROUP NO. 8

FOR USE ON DOOR #(S):

150A            150B            153A            153B

PROVIDE EACH SGL DOOR(S) WITH THE FOLLOWING:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
3	EA	BUTT HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5	630	IVE
1	EA	DOOR PULL	8103EZHD - 0 X TYPE "STANDARD" MOUNTING	US32D-316	IVE
1	EA	PUSH PLATE	8200 8" X 16"	US32D	IVE
1	EA	DOOR CLOSER	4040XP REGULAR TBWMS	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 1-1/2" LDW B-CS	US32D	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS401CVX	US26D	IVE
3	EA	SILENCER	SR64	GREY	IVE

## HARDWARE GROUP NO. 9

FOR USE ON DOOR #(S):

106A            149

PROVIDE EACH SGL DOOR(S) WITH THE FOLLOWING:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
3	EA	BUTT HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	PASSAGE LATCHSET	L9010 03A	626	SCH
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS401CVX	US26D	IVE
3	EA	SILENCER	SR64	GREY	IVE

## HARDWARE GROUP NO. 10

FOR USE ON DOOR #(S):

141

PROVIDE EACH SGL DOOR(S) WITH THE FOLLOWING:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
3	EA	BUTT HINGE	5BB1HW 5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	PASSAGE LATCHSET	L9010 03A	626	SCH
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS401CVX	US26D	IVE
3	EA	SILENCER	SR64	GREY	IVE



## HARDWARE GROUP NO. 11

FOR USE ON DOOR #(S):

177A                    177B

PROVIDE EACH SGL DOOR(S) WITH THE FOLLOWING:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
3	EA	BUTT HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	PASSAGE LATCHSET	L9010 03A	626	SCH
1	EA	DOOR CLOSER	4040XP REGULAR TBWMS	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 1-1/2" LDW B-CS	US32D	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS401CVX	US26D	IVE
3	EA	SILENCER	SR64	GREY	IVE

## HARDWARE GROUP NO. 12

FOR USE ON DOOR #(S):

180A                    180B

PROVIDE EACH SGL DOOR(S) WITH THE FOLLOWING:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
3	EA	BUTT HINGE	5BB1HW 5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	PASSAGE LATCHSET	L9010 03A	626	SCH
1	EA	DOOR CLOSER	4040XP REGULAR TBWMS	689	LCN
1	EA	ARMOR PLATE	8402 34" X 1-1/2" LDW B-CS	US32D	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS401CVX	US26D	IVE
1	EA	SELF-ADHESIVE GASKETING	488S-BK	BLACK	ZER

## HARDWARE GROUP NO. 13

FOR USE ON DOOR #(S):

140                    144

PROVIDE EACH SGL DOOR(S) WITH THE FOLLOWING:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
3	EA	BUTT HINGE	5BB1HW 5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	PASSAGE LATCHSET	L9010 03A	626	SCH
1	EA	DOOR CLOSER	4040XP REGULAR TBWMS	689	LCN
1	EA	ARMOR PLATE	8402 34" X 2" LDW B-CS	US32D	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS401CVX	US26D	IVE
1	SET	ADJUSTABLE PERIMETER GASKETING	870AA	628	ZER

## HARDWARE GROUP NO. 14

FOR USE ON DOOR #(S):

162

PROVIDE EACH SGL DOOR(S) WITH THE FOLLOWING:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
3	EA	BUTT HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	PRIVACY LOCKSET W/OCCUPANCY INDICATOR	L9040 03A X L583-363 X L283-722	626	SCH
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS401CVX	US26D	IVE
3	EA	SILENCER	SR64	GREY	IVE

## HARDWARE GROUP NO. 15

FOR USE ON DOOR #(S):

107                    118

PROVIDE EACH SGL DOOR(S) WITH THE FOLLOWING:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
3	EA	BUTT HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	630	IVE
1	EA	PRIVACY LOCKSET W/OCCUPANCY INDICATOR	L9040 03A X L583-363 X L283-722	626	SCH
1	EA	DOOR CLOSER	4040XP REGULAR TBWMS	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 1-1/2" LDW B-CS	US32D	IVE
1	EA	MOP PLATE	8400 4" X 1" LDW B-CS	US32D	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS401CVX	US26D	IVE
3	EA	SILENCER	SR64	GREY	IVE

## HARDWARE GROUP NO. 16

FOR USE ON DOOR #(S):

183

PROVIDE EACH SGL DOOR(S) WITH THE FOLLOWING:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
3	EA	BUTT HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	630	IVE
1	EA	PRIVACY LOCKSET W/OCCUPANCY INDICATOR	L9040 03A X L583-363 X L283-722	626	SCH
1	EA	OVERHEAD STOP	450S	SP28	GLY
1	EA	DOOR CLOSER	4040XP REGULAR TBWMS	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 1-1/2" LDW B-CS	US32D	IVE
1	EA	MOP PLATE	8400 4" X 1" LDW B-CS	US32D	IVE
3	EA	SILENCER	SR64	GREY	IVE

## HARDWARE GROUP NO. 17

FOR USE ON DOOR #(S):

108                    117

PROVIDE EACH SGL DOOR(S) WITH THE FOLLOWING:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
1	EA	DOUBLE SWING CONTINUOUS HINGE	DSH1000	US28	MAR
1	EA	EMERGENCY RELEASE STOP	ERS	CLEAR	PEM
1	EA	PRIVACY LOCKSET W/OCCUPANCY INDICATOR	L9040 03A X L583-363 X L283-722	626	SCH
1	EA	RESCUE STRIKE	299RS	US32D	IVE
1	EA	OVERHEAD STOP	410S	SP28	GLY
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X L.A.R. B-CS	US32D	IVE
1	EA	MOP PLATE	8400 4" X L.A.R. B-CS	US32D	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS401CVX	US26D	IVE

## HARDWARE GROUP NO. 18

FOR USE ON DOOR #(S):

123                    163                    164

PROVIDE EACH SGL DOOR(S) WITH THE FOLLOWING:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
3	EA	BUTT HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	ENTRANCE/OFFICE LOCKSET	L9050P6 03A X L583-363	626	SCH
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS401CVX	US26D	IVE
3	EA	SILENCER	SR64	GREY	IVE

## HARDWARE GROUP NO. 19

FOR USE ON DOOR #(S):

151

PROVIDE EACH SGL DOOR(S) WITH THE FOLLOWING:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
3	EA	BUTT HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	STOREROOM LOCKSET	L9080P6 03A	626	SCH
1	EA	OVERHEAD STOP	450S	SP28	GLY
1	EA	DOOR CLOSER	4040XP REGULAR TBWMS	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 1-1/2" LDW B-CS	US32D	IVE
3	EA	SILENCER	SR64	GREY	IVE

## HARDWARE GROUP NO. 20

FOR USE ON DOOR #(S):

157

PROVIDE EACH SGL DOOR(S) WITH THE FOLLOWING:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
3	EA	BUTT HINGE	5BB1HW 5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	STOREROOM LOCKSET	L9080P6 03A	626	SCH
1	EA	DOOR CLOSER	4040XP REGULAR TBWMS	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 1-1/2" LDW B-CS	US32D	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS401CVX	US26D	IVE
3	EA	SILENCER	SR64	GREY	IVE

## HARDWARE GROUP NO. 21

FOR USE ON DOOR #(S):

116                      125

PROVIDE EACH SGL DOOR(S) WITH THE FOLLOWING:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
3	EA	BUTT HINGE	5BB1HW 5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	STOREROOM LOCKSET	L9080P6 03A	626	SCH
1	EA	DOOR CLOSER	4040XP REGULAR TBWMS	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 1-1/2" LDW B-CS	US32D	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS401CVX	US26D	IVE
1	EA	SELF-ADHESIVE GASKETING	488S-BK	BLACK	ZER

## HARDWARE GROUP NO. 22

FOR USE ON DOOR #(S):

127                      156

PROVIDE EACH SGL DOOR(S) WITH THE FOLLOWING:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
3	EA	BUTT HINGE	5BB1HW 5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	STOREROOM LOCKSET	L9080P6 03A	626	SCH
1	EA	DOOR CLOSER	4040XP REGULAR TBWMS	689	LCN
1	EA	ARMOR PLATE	8402 34" X 1-1/2" LDW B-CS	US32D	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS401CVX	US26D	IVE
1	EA	SELF-ADHESIVE GASKETING	488S-BK	BLACK	ZER

## HARDWARE GROUP NO. 23

FOR USE ON DOOR #(S):

119A

PROVIDE EACH SGL DOOR(S) WITH THE FOLLOWING:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
3	EA	BUTT HINGE	5BB1HW 5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	DUMMY PUSH BAR	350	US26D	VON
1	EA	DOOR CLOSER	4040XP REGULAR TBWMS	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 1-1/2" LDW B-CS	US32D	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS401CVX	US26D	IVE
3	EA	SILENCER	SR64	GREY	IVE

## HARDWARE GROUP NO. 24

FOR USE ON DOOR #(S):

152A

PROVIDE EACH SGL DOOR(S) WITH THE FOLLOWING:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
3	EA	BUTT HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	EXIT DEVICE	LD-98L-BE X 996L-BE X #03 LEVER X SNB	US26D	VON
1	EA	DOOR CLOSER	4040XP H-CUSH-N-STOP TBWMS	689	LCN
3	EA	SILENCER	SR64	GREY	IVE

## HARDWARE GROUP NO. 25

## FOR USE ON DOOR #(S):

103	120	143	159	160	179B
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	------

## PROVIDE EACH SGL DOOR(S) WITH THE FOLLOWING:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
2	EA	BUTT HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	ELECTRIFIED BUTT HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 TW8 CON	652	IVE
1	EA	ELECTRIFIED LOCKSET	L9092P6EU 03A X RX X CON	626	SCH
1	EA	WIRING HARNESS	CON X LENGTH AS REQUIRED		SCH
1	EA	WIRING HARNESS	CON-6W		SCH
1	EA	DOOR CLOSER	4040XP REGULAR TBWMS	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 1-1/2" LDW B-CS	US32D	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS401CVX	US26D	IVE
3	EA	SILENCER	SR64	GREY	IVE
1	SET	WIRING DIAGRAMS	DOOR ELEVATION AND POINT-TO-POINT		SCE

## DESCRIPTION OF OPERATION:

DOOR NORMALLY IN CLOSED AND SECURED POSITION.

FREE EGRESS PERMITTED AT ALL TIMES.

AUTHORIZED ENTRY ACHIEVED BY KEY IN CYLINDER OR PRESENTING A VALID CREDENTIAL TO ACCESS CONTROL READER, MOMENTARILY UNLOCKING LOCKSET.

AFTER A PREDETERMINED PERIOD OF TIME, LOCKSET WILL RE-LOCK, SECURING DOOR OPENING.

UPON LOSS OF POWER, LOCKSET REMAINS SECURE, REQUIRING A KEY IN CYLINDER TO MECHANICALLY OPEN DOOR FROM SECURE SIDE (FAIL-SECURE).

ALL HEAD END EQUIPMENT, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO, ACCESS CONTROL READER, READER CONTROLLER, READER INTERFACE, CREDENTIALS, POWER SUPPLY, WIRE, AND ALL OTHER COMPONENTS NECESSARY FOR A COMPLETE AND FUNCTIONING ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEM SHALL BE PROVIDED IN DIVISION 28, BY SECURITY SUB-CONTRACTOR.

SUPPLIER SHALL COORDINATE ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS WITH ELECTRICAL ENGINEERS, ALARM SYSTEM'S ENGINEERS, AND ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEM'S INTEGRATORS.

## HARDWARE GROUP NO. 26

FOR USE ON DOOR #(S):

106B

PROVIDE EACH SGL DOOR(S) WITH THE FOLLOWING:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
2	EA	BUTT HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	652	IVE
1	EA	ELECTRIFIED BUTT HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 TW8 CON	652	IVE
1	EA	ELECTRIFIED LOCKSET	L9092P6EU 03A X RX X CON	626	SCH
1	EA	WIRING HARNESS	CON X LENGTH AS REQUIRED		SCH
1	EA	WIRING HARNESS	CON-6W		SCH
1	EA	DOOR CLOSER	4040XP REGULAR TBWMS	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 1-1/2" LDW B-CS	US32D	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS401CVX	US26D	IVE
3	EA	SILENCER	SR64	GREY	IVE
1	SET	WIRING DIAGRAMS	DOOR ELEVATION AND POINT-TO-POINT		SCE

## DESCRIPTION OF OPERATION:

DOOR NORMALLY IN CLOSED AND SECURED POSITION.

FREE EGRESS PERMITTED AT ALL TIMES.

AUTHORIZED ENTRY ACHIEVED BY KEY IN CYLINDER OR PRESENTING A VALID CREDENTIAL TO ACCESS CONTROL READER, MOMENTARILY UNLOCKING LOCKSET.

AFTER A PREDETERMINED PERIOD OF TIME, LOCKSET WILL RE-LOCK, SECURING DOOR OPENING.

UPON LOSS OF POWER, LOCKSET REMAINS SECURE, REQUIRING A KEY IN CYLINDER TO MECHANICALLY OPEN DOOR FROM SECURE SIDE (FAIL-SECURE).

ALL HEAD END EQUIPMENT, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO, ACCESS CONTROL READER, READER CONTROLLER, READER INTERFACE, CREDENTIALS, POWER SUPPLY, WIRE, AND ALL OTHER COMPONENTS NECESSARY FOR A COMPLETE AND FUNCTIONING ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEM SHALL BE PROVIDED IN DIVISION 28, BY SECURITY SUB-CONTRACTOR.

SUPPLIER SHALL COORDINATE ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS WITH ELECTRICAL ENGINEERS, ALARM SYSTEM'S ENGINEERS, AND ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEM'S INTEGRATORS.

## HARDWARE GROUP NO. 27

FOR USE ON DOOR #(S):

154A

PROVIDE EACH SGL DOOR(S) WITH THE FOLLOWING:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
2	EA	BUTT HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	ELECTRIFIED BUTT HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 TW8 CON	652	IVE
1	EA	ELECTRIFIED LOCKSET	L9092P6EU 03A X RX X CON	626	SCH
1	EA	WIRING HARNESS	CON X LENGTH AS REQUIRED		SCH
1	EA	WIRING HARNESS	CON-6W		SCH
1	EA	DOOR CLOSER	4040XP REGULAR TBWMS	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 1-1/2" LDW B-CS	US32D	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS401CVX	US26D	IVE
1	EA	SELF-ADHESIVE GASKETING	488S-BK	BLACK	ZER
1	SET	WIRING DIAGRAMS	DOOR ELEVATION AND POINT-TO-POINT		SCE

## DESCRIPTION OF OPERATION:

DOOR NORMALLY IN CLOSED AND SECURED POSITION.

FREE EGRESS PERMITTED AT ALL TIMES.

AUTHORIZED ENTRY ACHIEVED BY KEY IN CYLINDER OR PRESENTING A VALID CREDENTIAL TO ACCESS CONTROL READER, MOMENTARILY UNLOCKING LOCKSET.

AFTER A PREDETERMINED PERIOD OF TIME, LOCKSET WILL RE-LOCK, SECURING DOOR OPENING.

UPON LOSS OF POWER, LOCKSET REMAINS SECURE, REQUIRING A KEY IN CYLINDER TO MECHANICALLY OPEN DOOR FROM SECURE SIDE (FAIL-SECURE).

ALL HEAD END EQUIPMENT, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO, ACCESS CONTROL READER, READER CONTROLLER, READER INTERFACE, CREDENTIALS, POWER SUPPLY, WIRE, AND ALL OTHER COMPONENTS NECESSARY FOR A COMPLETE AND FUNCTIONING ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEM SHALL BE PROVIDED IN DIVISION 28, BY SECURITY SUB-CONTRACTOR.

SUPPLIER SHALL COORDINATE ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS WITH ELECTRICAL ENGINEERS, ALARM SYSTEM'S ENGINEERS, AND ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEM'S INTEGRATORS.



## HARDWARE GROUP NO. 28

FOR USE ON DOOR #(S):

179A

PROVIDE EACH SGL DOOR(S) WITH THE FOLLOWING:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
2	EA	BUTT HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	ELECTRIFIED BUTT HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 TW8 CON	652	IVE
1	EA	ELECTRIFIED LOCKSET	L9092P6EU 03A X RX X CON	626	SCH
1	EA	WIRING HARNESS	CON X LENGTH AS REQUIRED		SCH
1	EA	WIRING HARNESS	CON-6W		SCH
1	EA	OVERHEAD STOP	90S	SP28	GLY
1	EA	DOOR CLOSER	4040XP REGULAR TBWMS	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 1-1/2" LDW B-CS	US32D	IVE
3	EA	SILENCER	SR64	GREY	IVE
1	SET	WIRING DIAGRAMS	DOOR ELEVATION AND POINT-TO-POINT		SCE

## DESCRIPTION OF OPERATION:

DOOR NORMALLY IN CLOSED AND SECURED POSITION.

FREE EGRESS PERMITTED AT ALL TIMES.

AUTHORIZED ENTRY ACHIEVED BY KEY IN CYLINDER OR PRESENTING A VALID CREDENTIAL TO ACCESS CONTROL READER, MOMENTARILY UNLOCKING LOCKSET.

AFTER A PREDETERMINED PERIOD OF TIME, LOCKSET WILL RE-LOCK, SECURING DOOR OPENING.

UPON LOSS OF POWER, LOCKSET REMAINS SECURE, REQUIRING A KEY IN CYLINDER TO MECHANICALLY OPEN DOOR FROM SECURE SIDE (FAIL-SECURE).

ALL HEAD END EQUIPMENT, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO, ACCESS CONTROL READER, READER CONTROLLER, READER INTERFACE, CREDENTIALS, POWER SUPPLY, WIRE, AND ALL OTHER COMPONENTS NECESSARY FOR A COMPLETE AND FUNCTIONING ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEM SHALL BE PROVIDED IN DIVISION 28, BY SECURITY SUB-CONTRACTOR.

SUPPLIER SHALL COORDINATE ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS WITH ELECTRICAL ENGINEERS, ALARM SYSTEM'S ENGINEERS, AND ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEM'S INTEGRATORS.

## HARDWARE GROUP NO. 29

FOR USE ON DOOR #(S):

178

PROVIDE EACH SGL DOOR(S) WITH THE FOLLOWING:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
2	EA	BUTT HINGE	5BB1HW 5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	ELECTRIFIED BUTT HINGE	5BB1HW 5 X 4.5 TW8 CON	652	IVE
1	EA	ELECTRIFIED LOCKSET	L9092P6EU 03A X RX X CON	626	SCH
1	EA	WIRING HARNESS	CON X LENGTH AS REQUIRED		SCH
1	EA	WIRING HARNESS	CON-6W		SCH
1	EA	DOOR CLOSER	4040XP REGULAR TBWMS	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 1-1/2" LDW B-CS	US32D	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS401CVX	US26D	IVE
1	EA	SELF-ADHESIVE GASKETING	488S-BK	BLACK	ZER
1	SET	WIRING DIAGRAMS	DOOR ELEVATION AND POINT-TO-POINT		SCE

## DESCRIPTION OF OPERATION:

DOOR NORMALLY IN CLOSED AND SECURED POSITION.

FREE EGRESS PERMITTED AT ALL TIMES.

AUTHORIZED ENTRY ACHIEVED BY KEY IN CYLINDER OR PRESENTING A VALID CREDENTIAL TO ACCESS CONTROL READER, MOMENTARILY UNLOCKING LOCKSET.

AFTER A PREDETERMINED PERIOD OF TIME, LOCKSET WILL RE-LOCK, SECURING DOOR OPENING.

UPON LOSS OF POWER, LOCKSET REMAINS SECURE, REQUIRING A KEY IN CYLINDER TO MECHANICALLY OPEN DOOR FROM SECURE SIDE (FAIL-SECURE).

ALL HEAD END EQUIPMENT, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO, ACCESS CONTROL READER, READER CONTROLLER, READER INTERFACE, CREDENTIALS, POWER SUPPLY, WIRE, AND ALL OTHER COMPONENTS NECESSARY FOR A COMPLETE AND FUNCTIONING ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEM SHALL BE PROVIDED IN DIVISION 28, BY SECURITY SUB-CONTRACTOR.

SUPPLIER SHALL COORDINATE ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS WITH ELECTRICAL ENGINEERS, ALARM SYSTEM'S ENGINEERS, AND ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEM'S INTEGRATORS.

## HARDWARE GROUP NO. 30

FOR USE ON DOOR #(S):

102

PROVIDE EACH SGL DOOR(S) WITH THE FOLLOWING:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
2	EA	BUTT HINGE	5BB1HW 5 X 4.5 NRP	652	IVE
1	EA	ELECTRIFIED BUTT HINGE	5BB1HW 5 X 4.5 TW8 CON	652	IVE
1	EA	ELECTRIFIED LOCKSET	L9092P6EU 03A X RX X CON	626	SCH
1	EA	WIRING HARNESS	CON X LENGTH AS REQUIRED		SCH
1	EA	WIRING HARNESS	CON-6W		SCH
1	EA	DOOR CLOSER	4040XP EDA TBWMS	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 1-1/2" LDW B-CS	US32D	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS401CVX	US26D	IVE
3	EA	SILENCER	SR64	GREY	IVE
1	SET	WIRING DIAGRAMS	DOOR ELEVATION AND POINT-TO-POINT		SCE

## DESCRIPTION OF OPERATION:

DOOR NORMALLY IN CLOSED AND SECURED POSITION.

FREE EGRESS PERMITTED AT ALL TIMES.

AUTHORIZED ENTRY ACHIEVED BY KEY IN CYLINDER OR PRESENTING A VALID CREDENTIAL TO ACCESS CONTROL READER, MOMENTARILY UNLOCKING LOCKSET.

AFTER A PREDETERMINED PERIOD OF TIME, LOCKSET WILL RE-LOCK, SECURING DOOR OPENING.

UPON LOSS OF POWER, LOCKSET REMAINS SECURE, REQUIRING A KEY IN CYLINDER TO MECHANICALLY OPEN DOOR FROM SECURE SIDE (FAIL-SECURE).

ALL HEAD END EQUIPMENT, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO, ACCESS CONTROL READER, READER CONTROLLER, READER INTERFACE, CREDENTIALS, POWER SUPPLY, WIRE, AND ALL OTHER COMPONENTS NECESSARY FOR A COMPLETE AND FUNCTIONING ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEM SHALL BE PROVIDED IN DIVISION 28, BY SECURITY SUB-CONTRACTOR.

SUPPLIER SHALL COORDINATE ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS WITH ELECTRICAL ENGINEERS, ALARM SYSTEM'S ENGINEERS, AND ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEM'S INTEGRATORS.

## HARDWARE GROUP NO. 31

FOR USE ON DOOR #(S):

145A

PROVIDE EACH SGL DOOR(S) WITH THE FOLLOWING:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
2	EA	BUTT HINGE	5BB1HW 5 X 4.5 NRP	652	IVE
1	EA	ELECTRIFIED BUTT HINGE	5BB1HW 5 X 4.5 TW8 CON	652	IVE
1	EA	ELECTRIFIED LOCKSET	L9095P6EU 03A X RX X CON	626	SCH
1	EA	WIRING HARNESS	CON X LENGTH AS REQUIRED		SCH
1	EA	WIRING HARNESS	CON-6W		SCH
1	EA	DOOR CLOSER	4040XP REGULAR TBWMS	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 1-1/2" LDW B-CS	US32D	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS401CVX	US26D	IVE
1	EA	SELF-ADHESIVE GASKETING	488S-BK	BLACK	ZER
1	SET	WIRING DIAGRAMS	DOOR ELEVATION AND POINT-TO-POINT		SCE

## DESCRIPTION OF OPERATION:

DOOR NORMALLY IN CLOSED AND SECURED POSITION.

AUTHORIZED ENTRY AND EGRESS ACHIEVED BY KEY IN CYLINDER OR PRESENTING A VALID CREDENTIAL TO ACCESS CONTROL READER, MOMENTARILY UNLOCKING LOCKSET.

AFTER A PREDETERMINED PERIOD OF TIME, LOCKSET WILL RE-LOCK, SECURING DOOR OPENING.

UPON LOSS OF POWER, LOCKSET REMAINS SECURE, REQUIRING A KEY IN CYLINDER TO MECHANICALLY OPEN DOOR FROM EITHER SIDE (FAIL-SECURE).

ALL HEAD END EQUIPMENT, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO, ACCESS CONTROL READERS, READER CONTROLLER, READER INTERFACES, CREDENTIALS, POWER SUPPLY, WIRE, AND ALL OTHER COMPONENTS NECESSARY FOR A COMPLETE AND FUNCTIONING ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEM SHALL BE PROVIDED IN DIVISION 28, BY SECURITY SUB-CONTRACTOR.

SUPPLIER SHALL COORDINATE ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS WITH ELECTRICAL ENGINEERS, ALARM SYSTEM'S ENGINEERS, AND ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEM'S INTEGRATORS.

## HARDWARE GROUP NO. 32

FOR USE ON DOOR #(S):

155A

PROVIDE EACH SGL DOOR(S) WITH THE FOLLOWING:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
2	EA	BUTT HINGE	5BB1HW 5 X 4.5 NRP	652	IVE
1	EA	ELECTRIFIED BUTT HINGE	5BB1HW 5 X 4.5 TW8 CON	652	IVE
1	EA	ELECTRIFIED EXIT DEVICE	RX-QEL-98L-NL X 996L-NL X #03 LEVER X CON X SNB	US26D	VON
1	EA	CONSTRUCTION RIM CYLINDER	20-022	626	SCH
1	EA	WIRING HARNESS	CON X LENGTH AS REQUIRED		VON
1	EA	WIRING HARNESS	CON-6W		VON
1	EA	DOOR CLOSER	4040XP REGULAR TBWMS	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 1-1/2" LDW B-CS	US32D	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS401CVX	US26D	IVE
3	EA	SILENCER	SR64	GREY	IVE
1	SET	WIRING DIAGRAMS	DOOR ELEVATION AND POINT-TO-POINT		SCE

## DESCRIPTION OF OPERATION:

DOOR NORMALLY IN CLOSED AND SECURED POSITION.

FREE EGRESS PERMITTED AT ALL TIMES.

AUTHORIZED ENTRY ACHIEVED BY KEY IN CYLINDER OR PRESENTING A VALID CREDENTIAL TO ACCESS CONTROL READER, MOMENTARILY RETRACTING EXIT DEVICE'S LATCHBOLT.

AFTER A PREDETERMINED PERIOD OF TIME, EXIT DEVICE'S LATCHBOLT WILL PROJECT, SECURING DOOR OPENING.

UPON LOSS OF POWER, EXIT DEVICE REMAINS SECURE, REQUIRING A KEY IN CYLINDER TO MECHANICALLY OPEN DOOR FROM SECURE SIDE (FAIL-SECURE).

ALL HEAD END EQUIPMENT, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO, ACCESS CONTROL READER, READER CONTROLLER, READER INTERFACE, CREDENTIALS, POWER SUPPLY, WIRE, AND ALL OTHER COMPONENTS NECESSARY FOR A COMPLETE AND FUNCTIONING ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEM SHALL BE PROVIDED IN DIVISION 28, BY SECURITY SUB-CONTRACTOR.

SUPPLIER SHALL COORDINATE ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS WITH ELECTRICAL ENGINEERS, ALARM SYSTEM'S ENGINEERS, AND ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEM'S INTEGRATORS.

## HARDWARE GROUP NO. 33

FOR USE ON DOOR #(S):

128                    131                    132                    135

PROVIDE EACH UEP DOOR(S) WITH THE FOLLOWING:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
6	EA	BUTT HINGE	5BB1HW 5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	TOP MANUAL FLUSH BOLT	FB458	US26D	IVE
1	EA	PASSAGE LATCHSET	L9010 03A	626	SCH
1	EA	OVERHEAD STOP	450S - J	SP28	GLY
2	EA	ARMOR PLATE	8400 34" X 1-1/2" LDW B-CS	US32D	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS401CVX	US26D	IVE
1	SET	ADJUSTABLE PERIMETER GASKETING	870AA	628	ZER
1	EA	MEETING STILE ASTRAGAL	383AA	628	ZER

INSTALL OVERHEAD STOP ON "INACTIVE / PULL SIDE" OF DOOR.

## HARDWARE GROUP NO. 34

FOR USE ON DOOR #(S):

126                    139

PROVIDE EACH UEP DOOR(S) WITH THE FOLLOWING:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
6	EA	BUTT HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	CONSTANT LATCHING FLUSH BOLT	FB51P	US32D	IVE
1	EA	DUST PROOF STRIKE	DP2	US26D	IVE
1	EA	STOREROOM LOCKSET	L9080P6 03A	626	SCH
1	EA	BAR COORDINATOR	COR X FL	US28	IVE
2	EA	MOUNTING BRACKET	MB1F / MB2F / MB3F	SP28	IVE
2	EA	OVERHEAD STOP	90S	SP28	GLY
2	EA	DOOR CLOSER	4040XP REGULAR TBWMS	689	LCN
2	EA	ARMOR PLATE	8402 34" X 1" LDW B-CS	US32D	IVE
1	EA	SELF-ADHESIVE GASKETING	488S-BK	BLACK	ZER
1	EA	MEETING STILE ASTRAGAL	383AA	628	ZER

## HARDWARE GROUP NO. 35

FOR USE ON DOOR #(S):

124

PROVIDE EACH UEP DOOR(S) WITH THE FOLLOWING:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
2	EA	ELECTRIFIED CONTINUOUS HINGE	224XY TWP CON	US28	IVE
1	EA	ELECTRIFIED EXIT DEVICE	RX-QEL-9827EO-F-LBR X CON X SNB X 499F STRIKE	US26D	VON
1	EA	ELECTRIFIED EXIT DEVICE	RX-QEL-9827L-NL-F-LBRAFL X 996L-NL X #03 LEVER X CON X SNB X 499F STRIKE	US26D	VON
1	EA	CONSTRUCTION RIM CYLINDER	20-022	626	SCH
2	EA	WIRING HARNESS	CON X LENGTH AS REQUIRED		VON
2	EA	WIRING HARNESS	CON-6W		VON
1	EA	AUTOMATIC OPERATOR	9553 REG2 HL/D MS	ANCLR	LCN
1	EA	TOUCHLESS ACTUATOR	8310-810D	630	LCN
1	EA	TRANSMITTER	8310-886		LCN
1	EA	SAFETY SENSOR PACKAGE	8310-879		LCN
1	EA	WIRELESS RECEIVER	8310-880		LCN
2	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 1" LDW B-CS	US32D	IVE
2	EA	WALL STOP	WS401CVX	US26D	IVE
1	EA	SELF-ADHESIVE GASKETING	488S-BK	BLACK	ZER
2	EA	MEETING STILE GASKETING	8195AA	628	ZER
1	SET	WIRING DIAGRAMS	DOOR ELEVATION AND POINT-TO-POINT		SCE

## DESCRIPTION OF OPERATION:

DOORS NORMALLY IN CLOSED AND SECURED POSITIONS.

FREE EGRESS PERMITTED AT ALL TIMES.

AUTHORIZED ENTRY ACHIEVED BY KEY IN CYLINDER OR PRESENTING A VALID CREDENTIAL TO ACCESS CONTROL READER, MOMENTARILY RETRACTING EXIT DEVICES' LATCHBOLTS, AND ACTIVATING AUTOMATIC DOOR OPERATOR.

AUTOMATIC DOOR OPERATOR ACTIVATED BY ACCESS CONTROL READER AND INTERIOR ACTUATOR.

DOORS ARE ALWAYS OPERABLE MANUALLY FROM EITHER SIDE. AUTOMATIC DOOR OPERATOR ACTS AS A STANDARD DOOR CLOSER.

AFTER A PREDETERMINED PERIOD OF TIME, AUTOMATIC DOOR OPERATOR WILL CLOSE DOORS AND EXIT DEVICES' LATCHBOLTS WILL PROJECT, SECURING DOOR OPENING.

UPON LOSS OF POWER, EXIT DEVICES REMAIN SECURE, REQUIRING A KEY IN CYLINDER TO MECHANICALLY OPEN DOOR FROM SECURE SIDE (FAIL-SECURE).

INSTALL ACTUATOR IN AN AREA DESIGNATED BY ARCHITECT / OWNER.

ALL HEAD END EQUIPMENT, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO, ACCESS CONTROL READER, READER CONTROLLER, READER INTERFACE, CREDENTIALS, POWER SUPPLY, WIRE, AND ALL OTHER COMPONENTS NECESSARY FOR A COMPLETE AND FUNCTIONING ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEM SHALL BE PROVIDED IN DIVISION 28, BY SECURITY SUB-CONTRACTOR.

POWER PROVIDED BY ELECTRICAL SUB-CONTRACTOR.

SUPPLIER SHALL COORDINATE ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS WITH ELECTRICAL ENGINEERS, ALARM SYSTEM'S ENGINEERS, AND ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEM'S INTEGRATORS.



## HARDWARE GROUP NO. 36

FOR USE ON DOOR #(S):

182

PROVIDE EACH UEP DOOR(S) WITH THE FOLLOWING:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
2	EA	ELECTRIFIED CONTINUOUS HINGE	224XY TWP CON	US28	IVE
1	EA	DELAYED EGRESS EXIT DEVICE	F 21 EE ER SLR GB4 SN1	630	DET
1	EA	DELAYED EGRESS EXIT DEVICE	F 2114DT EE ER SLR GB4 SN1	630	DET
1	EA	CONSTRUCTION MORTISE CYLINDER	20-001	626	SCH
4	EA	WIRING HARNESS	CON-6W		VON
1	EA	AUTOMATIC OPERATOR	9553 REG2 HL/D MS	ANCLR	LCN
1	EA	TOUCHLESS ACTUATOR	8310-810D	630	LCN
1	EA	TRANSMITTER	8310-886		LCN
1	EA	SAFETY SENSOR PACKAGE	8310-879		LCN
1	EA	WIRELESS RECEIVER	8310-880		LCN
2	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 1" LDW B-CS	US32D	IVE
2	EA	WALL STOP	WS401CVX	US26D	IVE
1	EA	SELF-ADHESIVE GASKETING	488S-BK	BLACK	ZER
2	EA	MEETING STILE GASKETING	8195AA	628	ZER
1	EA	LOGIC CONTROLLER / POWER SUPPLY	85-800 SA	BEIGE	DET
1	SET	WIRING DIAGRAMS	DOOR ELEVATION AND POINT-TO-POINT		DET

## DESCRIPTION OF OPERATION:

DOORS NORMALLY IN CLOSED AND SECURED POSITIONS.

AUTHORIZED ENTRY ACHIEVED BY EXIT DEVICE LEVER TRIM OR DEPRESSING ACTUATOR, ACTIVATING AUTOMATIC DOOR OPERATOR.

AUTHORIZED EGRESS ACHIEVED BY PRESENTING A VALID CREDENTIAL TO ACCESS CONTROL READER, MOMENTARILY DEACTIVATING DELAYED EGRESS EXIT DEVICES, RETRACTING EXIT DEVICES' LATCHBOLTS, AND ACTIVATING AUTOMATIC DOOR OPERATOR.

AUTOMATIC DOOR OPERATOR ACTIVATED BY ACCESS CONTROL READER AND INTERIOR ACTUATOR.

DOORS ARE ALWAYS OPERABLE MANUALLY FROM EITHER SIDE. AUTOMATIC DOOR OPERATOR ACTS AS A STANDARD DOOR CLOSER.

AFTER A PREDETERMINED PERIOD OF TIME, AUTOMATIC DOOR OPERATOR WILL CLOSE DOORS AND EXIT DEVICES' LATCHBOLTS WILL PROJECT, SECURING DOOR OPENING.

UNAUTHORIZED EGRESS IS DELAYED FOR 15 SECONDS, PROVIDING A LOCAL LED INDICATION ALONG WITH AN AUDIBLE ALERT.

AFTER ACTIVATION OF DELAYED EGRESS FUNCTION, DELAYED EGRESS EXIT DEVICES SHALL BE MANUALLY KEY RE-ARMED AND EXIT DEVICES' LATCHBOLTS SHALL PROJECT, SECURING DOOR OPENING.

DELAYED EGRESS EXIT DEVICES SHALL BE INTERFACED WITH FACILITY'S FIRE ALARM SYSTEM.

UPON LOSS OF POWER OR FIRE ALARM ACTIVATION, DELAYED EGRESS EXIT DEVICES SHALL DEACTIVATE, ALLOWING IMMEDIATE EGRESS (FAIL-SAFE).

KEY-OPERATED MORTISE CYLINDER PROVIDED FOR OPERATION OF REMOTE INTERFACE UNIT (RIU).

INSTALL ACTUATOR IN AN AREA DESIGNATED BY ARCHITECT / OWNER.

ALL HEAD END EQUIPMENT, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO, ACCESS CONTROL READER, READER CONTROLLER, READER INTERFACE, CREDENTIALS, POWER SUPPLY, WIRE, AND ALL OTHER COMPONENTS NECESSARY FOR A COMPLETE AND FUNCTIONING ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEM SHALL BE PROVIDED IN DIVISION 28, BY SECURITY SUB-CONTRACTOR.

POWER PROVIDED BY ELECTRICAL SUB-CONTRACTOR.

SUPPLIER SHALL COORDINATE ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS WITH ELECTRICAL ENGINEERS, ALARM SYSTEM'S ENGINEERS, AND ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEM'S INTEGRATORS.

## HARDWARE GROUP NO. 37

FOR USE ON DOOR #(S):

109	110	111	112	113	114
115	167	168			

ALL REQUIRED DOOR HARDWARE ITEMS SHALL BE PROVIDED BY THE MANUFACTURER / SUPPLIER OF ICU SLIDER DOOR UNITS.

END OF SECTION 08 71 00

## SECTION 08 80 00 - GLAZING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes glazing for the following products and applications, including those specified in other Sections where glazing requirements are specified by reference to this Section:
  - 1. Aluminum storefronts.
  - 2. Glazed Aluminum Curtain Walls.
  - 3. Windows.
  - 4. Doors.
- B. Section includes glass film.

## 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each glass product and glazing material indicated.
- B. Glazing Schedule: List glass types and thicknesses for each size opening and location. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
- C. Delegated Design Submittal: For glass indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

## 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Glazing Publications: Comply with published recommendations of glass product manufacturers and organizations below, unless more stringent requirements are indicated. Refer to these publications for glazing terms not otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.
  - 1. IGMA Publication for Insulating Glass: SIGMA TM-3000, "North American Glazing Guidelines for Sealed Insulating Glass Units for Commercial and Residential Use."
- B. Safety Glazing Labeling: Where safety glazing labeling is indicated, permanently mark glazing with certification label of the SGCC. Label shall indicate manufacturer's name, type of glass, thickness, and safety glazing standard with which glass complies.

## 1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Coated-Glass Products: Manufacturer's standard form in which coated-glass manufacturer agrees to replace coated-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of coated glass is defined as defects developed from normal use that are not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning coated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include peeling, cracking, and other indications of deterioration in coating.
1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Final Acceptance.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 GLASS PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Thickness: Where glass thickness is indicated, it is a minimum. Provide glass lites in thicknesses as needed to comply with requirements indicated.
- B. Strength: Where fully tempered glass is indicated, provide Kind FT heat-treated float glass, unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.2 GLASS PRODUCTS

- A. Fully Tempered Float Glass: ASTM C 1048, Kind FT (fully tempered), Condition A (uncoated) unless otherwise indicated, Type I, Class 1 (clear) or Class 2 (tinted) as indicated, Quality-Q3.
1. Fabrication Process: By horizontal (roller-hearth) process with roll-wave distortion parallel to bottom edge of glass as installed unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Ceramic-Coated Vision Glass: ASTM C 1048, Condition C, Type I, Class 1 (clear) or Class 2 (tinted) as indicated, Quality-Q3; and complying with Specification No. 95-1-31 in GANA's "Engineering Standards Manual."
- C. Ultraclear Float Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type I, Class I (clear), Quality-Q3; and with visible light transmission of not less than 91 percent.
- D. Reflective-Coated Vision Glass: ASTM C 1376.

## 2.3 INSULATING GLASS

- A. Basis of Design Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Guardian Glass products as indicated on the drawings or comparable by one of the following:
1. Oldcastle Building Envelope.
  2. Viracon.
- B. Insulating-Glass Units: Factory-assembled units consisting of sealed lites of glass separated by a dehydrated interspace, qualified according to ASTM E 2190, and complying with other requirements specified.
1. Sealing System: Dual seal.

2. Spacer: Manufacturer's standard spacer material and construction.

## 2.4 GLAZING GASKETS

- A. Dense Compression Gaskets: Molded or extruded gaskets of profile and hardness required to maintain watertight seal, made from one of the following:
  1. Neoprene complying with ASTM C 864.
  2. EPDM complying with ASTM C 864.
  3. Silicone complying with ASTM C 1115.
  4. Thermoplastic polyolefin rubber complying with ASTM C 1115.
- B. Soft Compression Gaskets: Extruded or molded, closed-cell, integral-skinned neoprene or silicone gaskets complying with ASTM C 509, Type II, black; of profile and hardness required to maintain watertight seal.
  1. Application: Use where soft compression gaskets will be compressed by inserting dense compression gaskets on opposite side of glazing or pressure applied by means of pressure-glazing stops on opposite side of glazing.

## 2.5 GLAZING SEALANTS

- A. General:
  1. Compatibility: Provide glazing sealants that are compatible with one another and with other materials they will contact, including glass products, seals of insulating-glass units, and glazing channel substrates, under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by sealant manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
  2. Suitability: Comply with sealant and glass manufacturers' written instructions for selecting glazing sealants suitable for applications indicated and for conditions existing at time of installation.
  3. Colors of Exposed Glazing Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- B. Glazing Sealant: Neutral-curing silicone glazing sealant complying with ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Use NT.

## 2.6 GLAZING TAPES

- A. Back-Bedding Mastic Glazing Tapes: Preformed, butyl-based, 100 percent solids elastomeric tape; nonstaining and nonmigrating in contact with nonporous surfaces; with or without spacer rod as recommended in writing by tape and glass manufacturers for application indicated; and complying with ASTM C 1281 and AAMA 800 for products indicated below:
  1. AAMA 804.3 tape, where indicated.

## 2.7 MISCELLANEOUS GLAZING MATERIALS

- A. Cleaners, Primers, and Sealers: Types recommended by sealant or gasket manufacturer.

- B. Setting Blocks: Elastomeric material with a Shore, Type A durometer hardness of 85, plus or minus 5.
- C. Spacers: Elastomeric blocks or continuous extrusions of hardness required by glass manufacturer to maintain glass lites in place for installation indicated.
- D. Edge Blocks: Elastomeric material of hardness needed to limit glass lateral movement (side walking).
- E. Cylindrical Glazing Sealant Backing: ASTM C 1330, Type O (open-cell material), of size and density to control glazing sealant depth and otherwise produce optimum glazing sealant performance.

## 2.8 MONOLITHIC-GLASS TYPES

- A. Glass Type: Clear fully tempered float glass, as indicated.
  - 1. Thickness: 6.0 mm minimum but not less than required for structural requirements.
  - 2. Provide minimum 12.0 mm thickness at full height glass partitions but not less than required for structural requirements.
  - 3. Provide safety glazing labeling.

## 2.9 INSULATING GLASS TYPES

- A. Glass Type G1: Low-e-coated, insulating vision glass.
  - 1. Basis of Design Product: Guardian SNR 35.
  - 2. Overall Unit Thickness: 1 inch.
  - 3. Thickness of Each Glass Lite: 6.0 mm.
  - 4. Outdoor Lite: Heat-strengthened float glass, Green tinted.
  - 5. Interspace Content: Air.
  - 6. Indoor Lite: Tempered float glass.
  - 7. Low-E Coating: Sputtered on second surface.
  - 8. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: 0.29 maximum.
  - 9. Visible Light Transmittance: 28 percent minimum.
  - 10. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: 0.17 maximum.
  - 11. Provide safety glazing labeling.
- B. Glass Type G1A: Low-e-coated, insulating spandrel glass.
  - 1. Basis of Design Product: Guardian SNR 35.
  - 2. Overall Unit Thickness: 1 inch.
  - 3. Thickness of Each Glass Lite: 6.0 mm.
  - 4. Outdoor Lite: Heat-strengthened float glass, Green tinted.
  - 5. Interspace Content: Air.
  - 6. Indoor Lite: Tempered float glass.
  - 7. Low-E Coating: Sputtered on second surface.
  - 8. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: 0.29 maximum.
  - 9. Visible Light Transmittance: 28 percent minimum.
  - 10. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: 0.17 maximum.
  - 11. Coating Location: Fourth surface, custom color.
  - 12. Provide safety glazing labeling.

## 2.10 GLAZING FILM

- A. Basis of design: 3M Sun Control Window Film Ceramic Series.
- B. Apply to glazing in locations as indicated on drawings.
- C. Apply on surface No. 4 of insulated glass units where indicated.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 GLAZING, GENERAL

- A. Comply with combined written instructions of manufacturers of glass, sealants, gaskets, and other glazing materials, unless more stringent requirements are indicated, including those in referenced glazing publications.
- B. Adjust glazing channel dimensions as required by Project conditions during installation to provide necessary bite on glass, minimum edge and face clearances, and adequate sealant thicknesses, with reasonable tolerances.
- C. Protect glass edges from damage during handling and installation. Remove damaged glass from Project site and legally dispose of off Project site. Damaged glass is glass with edge damage or other imperfections that, when installed, could weaken glass and impair performance and appearance.
- D. Apply primers to joint surfaces where required for adhesion of sealants, as determined by preconstruction testing.
- E. Install setting blocks in sill rabbets, sized and located to comply with referenced glazing publications, unless otherwise required by glass manufacturer. Set blocks in thin course of compatible sealant suitable for heel bead.
- F. Do not exceed edge pressures stipulated by glass manufacturers for installing glass lites.
- G. Provide spacers for glass lites where length plus width is larger than 50 inches.
- H. Provide edge blocking where indicated or needed to prevent glass lites from moving sideways in glazing channel, as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer and according to requirements in referenced glazing publications.
- I. Safety Glazing Film: Install according to manufacturer's installation instructions.

## 3.2 TAPE GLAZING

- A. Position tapes on fixed stops so that, when compressed by glass, their exposed edges are flush with or protrude slightly above sightline of stops.
- B. Install tapes continuously, but not necessarily in one continuous length. Do not stretch tapes to make them fit opening.
- C. Cover vertical framing joints by applying tapes to heads and sills first and then to jambs. Cover horizontal framing joints by applying tapes to jambs and then to heads and sills.

- D. Place joints in tapes at corners of opening with adjoining lengths butted together, not lapped. Seal joints in tapes with compatible sealant approved by tape manufacturer.
- E. Apply heel bead of elastomeric sealant.
- F. Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks and press firmly against tape by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings.
- G. Apply cap bead of elastomeric sealant over exposed edge of tape.

### 3.3 GASKET GLAZING (DRY)

- A. Cut compression gaskets to lengths recommended by gasket manufacturer to fit openings exactly, with allowance for stretch during installation.
- B. Insert soft compression gasket between glass and frame or fixed stop so it is securely in place with joints miter cut and bonded together at corners.
- C. Installation with Drive-in Wedge Gaskets: Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks and press firmly against soft compression gasket by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.
- D. Installation with Pressure-Glazing Stops: Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks and press firmly against soft compression gasket. Install dense compression gaskets and pressure-glazing stops, applying pressure uniformly to compression gaskets. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.
- E. Install gaskets so they protrude past face of glazing stops.

### 3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Protect exterior glass from damage immediately after installation by attaching crossed streamers to framing held away from glass. Do not apply markers to glass surface. Remove nonpermanent labels and clean surfaces.
- B. Protect glass from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations. If, despite such protection, contaminating substances do come into contact with glass, remove substances immediately as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer.
- C. Examine glass surfaces adjacent to or below exterior concrete and other masonry surfaces at frequent intervals during construction, but not less than once a month, for buildup of dirt, scum, alkaline deposits, or stains; remove as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer.
- D. Remove and replace glass that is broken, chipped, cracked, or abraded or that is damaged from natural causes, accidents, and vandalism, during construction period.

END OF SECTION 08 80 00



## SECTION 08 91 19 - FIXED LOUVERS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Fixed, extruded-aluminum louvers.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Louver Terminology: Definitions of terms for metal louvers contained in AMCA 501 apply to this Section unless otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.
- B. Horizontal Louver: Louver with horizontal blades (i.e., the axes of the blades are horizontal).
- C. Vertical Louver: Louver with vertical blades (i.e., the axes of the blades are vertical).
- D. Drainable-Blade Louver: Louver with blades having gutters that collect water and drain it to channels in jambs and mullions, which carry it to bottom of unit and away from opening.

## 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. For louvers specified to bear AMCA seal, include printed catalog pages showing specified models with appropriate AMCA Certified Ratings Seals.
- B. Shop Drawings: For louvers and accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work. Show frame profiles and blade profiles, angles, and spacing.
  - 1. Show weep paths, gaskets, flashing, sealant, and other means of preventing water intrusion.
  - 2. Show mullion profiles and locations.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed according to AMCA 500-L by a qualified testing agency or by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, for each type of louver and showing compliance with performance requirements specified.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
  - 1. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."

## 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of openings by field measurements before fabrication.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain louvers from single source from a single manufacturer where indicated to be of same type, design, or factory-applied color finish.

## 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design louvers, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using structural performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. Louver Performance Ratings: Provide louvers complying with requirements specified, as demonstrated by testing manufacturer's stock units identical to those provided, except for length and width according to AMCA 500-L.
- C. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.
  - 1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.
- D. SMACNA Standard: Comply with recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" for fabrication, construction details, and installation procedures.

## 2.3 FIXED EXTRUDED-ALUMINUM LOUVERS

- A. Horizontal, Wind-Driven-Rain-Resistant Louver:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Basis of design: Ruskin Company, EME720.
    - b. Air Balance; a division of MESTEK, Inc.
    - c. Airolite Company, LLC (The).
    - d. Construction Specialties, Inc.
    - e. United Enertech.

2. Louver Depth: 7 inches.
3. Frame and Blade Nominal Thickness: Not less than 0.080 inch for blades and 0.094 inch for frames.
4. Louver Performance Ratings:
  - a. Free Area: Not less than 50% based on 48 inch wide by 48 inch high size.
  - b. Size: As indicated on drawings.
5. AMCA Seal: Mark units with AMCA Certified Ratings Seal.

## 2.4 LOUVER SCREENS

- A. General: Provide screen at each exterior louver.
  1. Screen Location for Fixed Louvers: Interior face.
  2. Screening Type: Insect screening.
- B. Secure screen frames to louver frames with stainless-steel machine screws, spaced a maximum of 6 inches from each corner and at 12 inches o.c.
- C. Louver Screen Frames: Fabricate with mitered corners to louver sizes indicated.
  1. Metal: Same type and form of metal as indicated for louver to which screens are attached. Reinforce extruded-aluminum screen frames at corners with clips.
  2. Finish: Same finish as louver frames to which louver screens are attached.
  3. Type: Non-rewirable, U-shaped frames.
- D. Louver Screening for Aluminum Louvers:
  1. Insect Screening: Aluminum, 1/2-inch-square mesh, 0.063-inch wire.

## 2.5 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063-T5, T-52, or T6.
- B. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003 or 5005 with temper as required for forming, or as otherwise recommended by metal producer for required finish.
- C. Fasteners: Use types and sizes to suit unit installation conditions.
  1. Use tamper-resistant screws for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
  2. For fastening aluminum, use aluminum or 300 series stainless-steel fasteners.
  3. For color-finished louvers, use fasteners with heads that match color of louvers.
- D. Postinstalled Fasteners for Concrete and Masonry: Torque-controlled expansion anchors, made from stainless-steel components, with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 4 times the loads imposed, for concrete, or 6 times the load imposed for masonry, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
- E. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.

## 2.6 FABRICATION

- A. Factory assemble louvers to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
- B. Maintain equal louver blade spacing, including separation between blades and frames at head and sill, to produce uniform appearance.
- C. Fabricate frames, including integral sills, to fit in openings of sizes indicated, with allowances made for fabrication and installation tolerances, adjoining material tolerances, and perimeter sealant joints.
- D. Include supports, anchorages, and accessories required for complete assembly.
- E. Provide vertical mullions of type and at spacings indicated, but not more than is recommended by manufacturer, or 72 inches o.c., whichever is less.
  - 1. Fully Recessed Mullions: Where indicated, provide mullions fully recessed behind louver blades. Where length of louver exceeds fabrication and handling limitations, fabricate with close-fitting blade splices designed to permit expansion and contraction.
  - 2. Exterior Corners: Prefabricated corner units with mitered and welded blades and with fully recessed mullions at corners.
- F. Provide subsills made of same material as louvers for recessed louvers.
- G. Join frame members to each other and to fixed louver blades with fillet welds concealed from view, unless otherwise indicated or size of louver assembly makes bolted connections between frame members necessary.

## 2.7 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Finish louvers after assembly.
- B. High-Performance Organic Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2605 and containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
  - 1. Color and Gloss: As indicated, or if not indicated, as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and openings, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Coordinate setting drawings, diagrams, templates, instructions, and directions for installation of anchorages that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry construction. Coordinate delivery of such items to Project site.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Locate and place louvers level, plumb, and at indicated alignment with adjacent work.
- B. Use concealed anchorages where possible. Provide brass or lead washers fitted to screws where required to protect metal surfaces and to make a weathertight connection.
- C. Form closely fitted joints with exposed connections accurately located and secured.
- D. Provide perimeter reveals and openings of uniform width for sealants and joint fillers, as indicated.
- E. Protect unpainted galvanized- and nonferrous-metal surfaces that are in contact with concrete, masonry, or dissimilar metals from corrosion and galvanic action by applying a heavy coating of bituminous paint or by separating surfaces with waterproof gaskets or nonmetallic flashing.
- F. Install concealed gaskets, flashings, joint fillers, and insulation as louver installation progresses, where weathertight louver joints are required. Comply with Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants" for sealants applied during louver installation.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Clean exposed louver surfaces that are not protected by temporary covering, to remove fingerprints and soil during construction period. Do not let soil accumulate during construction period.
- B. Before final inspection, clean exposed surfaces with water and a mild soap or detergent not harmful to finishes. Thoroughly rinse surfaces and dry.
- C. Restore louvers damaged during installation and construction so no evidence remains of corrective work. If results of restoration are unsuccessful, as determined by Architect, remove damaged units and replace with new units.
  - 1. Touch up minor abrasions in finishes with air-dried coating that matches color and gloss of, and is compatible with, factory-applied finish coating.

END OF SECTION 08 91 19



## SECTION 09 05 61.13 - MOISTURE VAPOR EMISSION CONTROL

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Fluid-applied, resin-based, membrane-forming systems that control the moisture-vapor-emission rate of high-moisture, interior concrete to prepare it for floor covering installation.

## 1.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. A one- or two-coat, fast-curing, 100% or high solids moisture vapor emission control system formulated to suppress excessive vapor emissions in new or existing concrete prior to installing floor finishing products.
- B. Work includes preconstruction testing, preparation of concrete slab, application of moisture vapor emission control products, and field quality control.
- C. MVE Control System described in the Section is not included in the Contract, but is only to be used in the event that results of preconstruction testing performed on concrete floor slabs scheduled to receive adhered floor coverings determine that moisture content, vapor emission levels, or pH levels of concrete floor slabs exceeds adhesive and floor covering manufacturer's recommended maximum levels. Contract sum shall be adjusted by Change Order based on unit prices in Agreement.

## 1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. MVE: Moisture vapor emission.
- B. MVER: Moisture vapor emission rate.

## 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

## 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer and manufacturer.

- B. Product Test Reports: For each MVE-control system, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.
- C. Preinstallation testing reports.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Employs factory-trained personnel who are available for consultation and Project-site inspection.
- B. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.

## 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials in original packages and containers, with seals unbroken, bearing manufacturer's labels indicating directions for storage and mixing with other components.

## 1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with MVE-control system manufacturer's written instructions for substrate and ambient temperatures, humidity, ventilation, and other conditions affecting system installation.
  - 1. Store system components in a temperature-controlled environment and protected from weather and at ambient temperature of not less than 65 deg F and not more than 85 deg F at least 48 hours before use.
  - 2. Maintain ambient temperature and relative humidity in installation areas within range recommended in writing by MVE-control system manufacturer, but not less than 65 deg F or more than 85 deg F and not less than 40 or more than 60 percent relative humidity, for 48 hours before installation, during installation, and for 48 hours after installation unless longer period is recommended in writing by manufacturer.
  - 3. Install MVE-control systems where concrete surface temperatures will remain a minimum of 5 deg F higher than the dew point for ambient temperature and relative humidity conditions in installation areas for 48 hours before installation, during installation, and for 48 hours after installation unless longer period is recommended in writing by manufacturer.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. MVE-Control System Capabilities: Capable of suppressing MVE without failure where installed on concrete that exhibits the following conditions:
  - 1. MVER: Maximum 15 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. when tested according to ASTM F1869.
  - 2. Relative Humidity: Maximum 100 percent when tested according to ASTM F2170 using in situ probes.



- B. Water-Vapor Transmission: Through MVE-control system, maximum 0.06 perm when tested according to ASTM E96/E96M.
- C. Tensile Bond Strength: For MVE-control system, greater than 200 psi with failure in the concrete according to ASTM D7234.

## 2.2 MVE-CONTROL SYSTEM

- A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - 1. ARDEX Americas; MC Rapid One-Coat Moisture Control System.
  - 2. Koster American Corporation; VAP 1-2000.
  - 3. MAPEI Corporation; Planiseal EMB.
- B. MVE-Control System: ASTM F3010-qualified, fluid-applied, two-component, epoxy-resin, membrane-forming system; formulated for application on concrete substrates to reduce MVER to level required for installation of floor coverings indicated and acceptable to manufacturers of floor covering products indicated, including adhesives.
  - 1. Substrate Primer: Provide MVE-control system manufacturer's concrete-substrate primer if required for system indicated by substrate conditions.
  - 2. Cementitious Underlayment Primer: If required for subsequent installation of cementitious underlayment products, provide MVE-control system manufacturer's primer to ensure adhesion of products to MVE-control system.

## 2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Patching and Leveling Material: Moisture-, mildew-, and alkali-resistant product recommended in writing by MVE-control system manufacturer and with minimum of 3000-psi compressive strength after 28 days when tested according to ASTM C109/C109M.
- B. Crack-Filling Material: Resin-based material recommended in writing by MVE-control system manufacturer for sealing concrete substrate crack repair.
- C. Cementitious Underlayment: If required to maintain manufacturer's warranty, provide MVE-control system manufacturer's hydraulic cement-based underlayment.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
  - 1. Installation of system indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

#### A. Preinstallation Testing:

1. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests.
2. Alkalinity Testing: Perform pH testing according to ASTM F710. Install MVE-control system in areas where pH readings are less than 7.0 and in areas where pH readings are greater than 8.5.
3. Moisture Testing: Perform tests so that each test area does not exceed 200 sq. ft., and perform no fewer than three tests in each installation area and with test areas evenly spaced in installation areas.
  - a. Internal Relative Humidity Test: Using in situ probes, ASTM F2170. Install MVE-control system in locations where concrete substrates exhibit relative humidity level greater than 75 percent.
4. Tensile-Bond-Strength Testing: For typical locations indicated to receive installation of MVE-control system, install minimum 100-sq. ft. area of MVE-control system to prepared concrete substrate and test according to ASTM D7234.
  - a. Proceed with installation only where tensile bond strength is greater than 200 psi with failure in the concrete.

#### B. Concrete Substrates: Prepare and clean substrates according to MVE-control system manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of system to concrete.

1. Remove coatings and other substances that are incompatible with MVE-control system and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, using mechanical methods recommended in writing by MVE-control system manufacturer. Do not use solvents.
2. Provide concrete surface profile complying with ICRI 310.2R CSP 3 by shot blasting using apparatus that abrades the concrete surface with shot, contains the dispensed shot within the apparatus, and recirculates the shot by vacuum pickup.
3. After shot blasting, repair damaged and deteriorated concrete according to MVE-control system manufacturer's written instructions.
4. Protect substrate voids and joints to prevent resins from flowing into or leaking through them.
5. Fill surface depressions and irregularities with patching and leveling material.
6. Fill surface cracks, grooves, control joints, and other nonmoving joints with crack-filling material.
7. Allow concrete to dry, undisturbed, for period recommended in writing by MVE-control system manufacturer after surface preparation, but not less than 24 hours.
8. Before installing MVE-control systems, broom sweep and vacuum prepared concrete.

#### C. Protect walls, floor openings, electrical openings, door frames, and other obstructions during installation.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

#### A. Install MVE-control system according to ASTM F3010 and manufacturer's written instructions to produce a uniform, monolithic surface free of surface deficiencies such as pin holes, fish eyes, and voids.

1. Install primers as required to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

- B. Do not apply MVE-control system across substrate expansion, isolation, and other moving joints.
- C. Apply system, including component coats if any, in thickness recommended in writing by MVE-control system manufacturer for MVER indicated by preinstallation testing.
- D. Cure MVE-control system components according to manufacturer's written instructions. Prevent contamination or other damage during installation and curing processes.
- E. After curing, examine MVE-control system for surface deficiencies. Repair surface deficiencies according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Install cementitious underlayment over cured membrane if required to maintain manufacturer's warranty and in thickness required to maintain the warranty.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform installation inspections.
- B. Installation Inspections: Inspect substrate preparation and installation of system components to ensure compliance with manufacturer's written instructions and to ensure that a complete MVE-control system is installed without deficiencies.
  - 1. Verify that surface preparation meets requirements.
  - 2. Verify that component coats and complete MVE-control-system film thicknesses comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 3. Verify that MVE-control-system components and installation areas that evidence deficiencies are repaired according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. MVE-control system will be considered defective if it does not pass inspections.

### 3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect MVE-control system from damage, wear, dirt, dust, and other contaminants before floor covering installation. Use protective methods and materials, including temporary coverings, recommended in writing by MVE-control system manufacturer.
- B. Do not allow subsequent preinstallation examination and testing for floor covering installation to damage, puncture, or otherwise compromise the MVE-control system membrane.

END OF SECTION 09 05 61.13



## SECTION 09 22 16 - NON-STRUCTURAL METAL FRAMING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Non-load-bearing steel framing systems for interior partitions.
  - 2. Suspension systems for interior ceilings and soffits.

## 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For partitions requiring seismic bracing, submit coordinated set of partition anchorage drawings prior to installation to include the following:
  - 1. Description, layout, and location of items to be anchored or braced with anchorage or braced points noted and dimensioned.
  - 2. Details of anchorage or bracing at large scale with all members, parts brackets shown, together with all connections, bolts, and welds clearly identified.
  - 3. Numerical value of design seismic brace loads.

## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of code-compliance certification for studs and tracks.
- B. Evaluation Reports: For embossed steel studs and tracks or equivalent gauge steel studs and tracks, firestop tracks, post-installed anchors, and power-actuated fasteners, from ICC-ES or other qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Code-Compliance Certification of Studs and Tracks: Provide documentation that framing members are certified according to the product-certification program of the Steel Framing Industry Association and Steel Stud Manufacturers Association (SSMA).

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies that incorporate non-load-bearing steel framing, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated, according to ASTM E 119 by an independent testing agency.
- B. STC-Rated Assemblies: For STC-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated on Drawings, according to ASTM E 90 and classified according to ASTM E 413 by an independent testing agency.
- C. Horizontal Deflection: For wall assemblies, limited to 1/240 of the wall height based on horizontal loading of 5 lbf/sq. ft..

## 2.2 FRAMING SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. CEMCO; California Expanded Metals Products, Inc.
  - 2. ClarkDietrich Building Systems, LLC
  - 3. Marino\WARE.
  - 4. Steel Network, Inc. (The).
  - 5. Telling Industries.
- B. Framing Members, General: Comply with ASTM C 754 for conditions indicated.
  - 1. Steel Sheet Components: Comply with ASTM C 645 requirements for metal unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Protective Coating: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G40, hot-dip galvanized unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Studs and Tracks: ASTM C 645. Use one of the following:
  - 1. Steel Studs and Tracks:
    - a. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: As required by performance requirements for horizontal deflection.
    - b. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Embossed Steel Studs and Tracks: Roll-formed and embossed with surface deformations to stiffen the framing members so that they are structurally equivalent to conventional ASTM C 645 steel studs and tracks.
    - a. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: As required by horizontal deflection performance requirements.
    - b. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 3. Exception: Members that can show certified third party testing with gypsum board in accordance with ICC ES AC86 (Approved May 2012) need not meet the minimum thickness limitation or minimum section properties set forth in ASTM C 645. The submission of an evaluation report is acceptable to show conformance to this requirement. Use ASTM C 645 steel, in thickness of minimum 0.019 inch.

- D. Slip-Type Head Joints: Where indicated, provide one of the following:
1. Single Long-Leg Track System: ASTM C 645 top track with 2-inch-deep flanges in thickness not less than indicated for studs, installed with studs friction fit into top track and with continuous bridging located within 12 inches of the top of studs to provide lateral bracing.
  2. Deflection Track: Steel sheet top track manufactured to prevent cracking of finishes applied to interior partition framing resulting from deflection of structure above; in thickness not less than indicated for studs and in width to accommodate depth of studs.
    - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      - 1) CEMCO; California Expanded Metal Products Co.; SLP-TRK Slotted Deflection Track.
      - 2) ClarkDietrich Building Systems; MaxTrak Slotted Deflection Track.
      - 3) MarinoWARE.
      - 4) The Steel Network, Inc.; VertiTrack VTD.
- E. Firestop Tracks: Top track manufactured to allow partition heads to expand and contract with movement of structure while maintaining continuity of fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated; in thickness not less than indicated for studs and in width to accommodate depth of studs.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. CEMCO; California Expanded Metal Products Co.; FAS Track.
    - b. ClarkDietrich Building Systems; BlazeFrame.
    - c. Fire Trak Corp; Fire Trak System attached to studs with Fire Trak Posi Klip.
    - d. MarinoWARE; FAS Track 1000.
    - e. Metal-Lite; The System.
- F. Flat Strap and Backing Plate: Steel sheet for blocking and bracing in length and width indicated.
1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.018 inch.
- G. Cold-Rolled Channel Bridging: Steel, 0.0538-inch minimum base-metal thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch-wide flanges.
1. Depth: 1-1/2 inches.
  2. Clip Angle: Not less than 1-1/2 by 1-1/2 inches, 0.068-inch-thick, galvanized steel.
- H. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels: ASTM C 645.
1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0179 inch.
  2. Depth: 7/8 inch unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
- I. Resilient Furring Channels: 1/2-inch-deep, steel sheet members designed to reduce sound transmission.
1. Configuration: Asymmetrical or hat shaped.
- J. Cold-Rolled Furring Channels: 0.053-inch uncoated-steel thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch-wide flanges.

1. Depth: 3/4 inch.
  2. Furring Brackets: Adjustable, corrugated-edge-type steel sheet with minimum uncoated-steel thickness of 0.0329 inch.
  3. Tie Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.062-inch-diameter wire, or double strand of 0.048-inch-diameter wire.
- K. Z-Shaped Furring: With slotted or nonslotted web, face flange of 1-1/4 inches, wall attachment flange of 7/8 inch, minimum uncoated-metal thickness of 0.0179 inch, and depth required to fit insulation thickness indicated.

## 2.3 SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

- A. Tie Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.062-inch-diameter wire, or double strand of 0.048-inch-diameter wire.
- B. Wire Hangers: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.16 inch in diameter.
- C. Flat Hangers: Steel sheet, 1 by 3/16 inch by length indicated.
- D. Carrying Channels (Main Runners): Cold-rolled, commercial-steel sheet with a base-metal thickness of 0.0538 inch and minimum 1/2-inch-wide flanges.
1. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.
- E. Furring Channels (Furring Members):
1. Cold-Rolled Channels: 0.0538-inch uncoated-steel thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch-wide flanges, 3/4 inch deep.
  2. Steel Studs and Tracks: ASTM C 645.
    - a. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0179 inch.
    - b. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.
  3. Embossed Steel Studs and Tracks: ASTM C 645.
    - a. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0190 inch.
    - b. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.
  4. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels: ASTM C 645, 7/8 inch deep.
    - a. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0179 inch.
  5. Resilient Furring Channels: 1/2-inch-deep members designed to reduce sound transmission.
    - a. Configuration: Asymmetrical or hat shaped.
- F. Grid Suspension System for Gypsum Board Ceilings: ASTM C 645, direct-hung system composed of main beams and cross-furring members that interlock.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:



- a. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.: Drywall Grid Systems.
- b. Chicago Metallic Corporation: Drywall Grid System.
- c. USG Corporation: Drywall Suspension System.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and substrates, with Installer present, and including welded hollow-metal frames, cast-in anchors, and structural framing, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Suspended Assemblies: Coordinate installation of suspension systems with installation of overhead structure to ensure that inserts and other provisions for anchorages to building structure have been installed to receive hangers at spacing required to support the Work and that hangers will develop their full strength.
  1. Furnish concrete inserts and other devices indicated to other trades for installation in advance of time needed for coordination and construction.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Installation Standard: ASTM C 754.
  1. Gypsum Board Assemblies: Also comply with requirements in ASTM C 840 that apply to framing installation.
- B. Install framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, with connections securely fastened.
- C. Install supplementary framing, and blocking to support fixtures, equipment services, heavy trim, grab bars, toilet accessories, furnishings, or similar construction.
- D. Install bracing at terminations in assemblies.
- E. Do not bridge building control and expansion joints with non-load-bearing steel framing members. Frame both sides of joints independently.

### 3.4 INSTALLING FRAMED ASSEMBLIES

- A. Install framing system components according to spacings indicated, but not greater than spacings required by referenced installation standards for assembly types.
  1. Single-Layer Application: 16 inches o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Multilayer Application: 16 inches o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Tile Backing Panels: 16 inches o.c. unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Where studs are installed directly against exterior masonry walls or dissimilar metals at exterior walls, install isolation strip between studs and exterior wall.
- C. Install studs so flanges within framing system point in same direction.
- D. Install tracks at floors and overhead supports. Extend framing full height to structural supports or substrates above suspended ceilings except where partitions are indicated to terminate at suspended ceilings. Continue framing around ducts that penetrate partitions above ceiling.
  - 1. Slip-Type Head Joints: Where framing extends to overhead structural supports, install to produce joints at tops of framing systems that prevent axial loading of finished assemblies.
  - 2. Door Openings: Screw vertical studs at jambs to jamb anchor clips on door frames; install track section (for cripple studs) at head and secure to jamb studs.
    - a. Install two studs at each jamb unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Install cripple studs at head adjacent to each jamb stud, with a minimum 1/2-inch clearance from jamb stud to allow for installation of control joint in finished assembly.
    - c. Extend jamb studs through suspended ceilings and attach to underside of overhead structure.
  - 3. Other Framed Openings: Frame openings other than door openings the same as required for door openings unless otherwise indicated. Install framing below sills of openings to match framing required above door heads.
- E. Z-Shaped Furring Members:
  - 1. Erect insulation, specified in Section 07 21 00 "Thermal Insulation," vertically and hold in place with Z-shaped furring members spaced 24 inches o.c.
  - 2. Except at exterior corners, securely attach narrow flanges of furring members to wall with concrete stub nails, screws designed for masonry attachment, or powder-driven fasteners spaced 24 inches o.c.
  - 3. At exterior corners, attach wide flange of furring members to wall with short flange extending beyond corner; on adjacent wall surface, screw-attach short flange of furring channel to web of attached channel. At interior corners, space second member no more than 12 inches from corner and cut insulation to fit.
- F. Installation Tolerance: Install each framing member so fastening surfaces vary not more than 1/8 inch from the plane formed by faces of adjacent framing.

### 3.5 INSTALLING CEILING SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

- A. Install suspension system components according to spacings indicated, but not greater than spacings required by referenced installation standards for assembly types.
  - 1. Hangers: 48 inches o.c.
  - 2. Carrying Channels (Main Runners): 48 inches o.c.
  - 3. Furring Channels (Furring Members): 24 inches o.c.
- B. Isolate suspension systems from building structure where they abut or are penetrated by building structure to prevent transfer of loading imposed by structural movement.
- C. Suspend hangers from building structure as follows:

1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structural or suspension system.
    - a. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions and offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
  2. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with locations of hangers required to support standard suspension system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in the form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
    - a. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced installation standards.
  3. Wire Hangers: Secure by looping and wire tying, either directly to structures or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices and fasteners that are secure and appropriate for substrate, and in a manner that will not cause hangers to deteriorate or otherwise fail.
  4. Flat Hangers: Secure to structure, including intermediate framing members, by attaching to inserts, eye screws, or other devices and fasteners that are secure and appropriate for structure and hanger, and in a manner that will not cause hangers to deteriorate or otherwise fail.
  5. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck.
  6. Do not attach hangers to permanent metal forms. Furnish cast-in-place hanger inserts that extend through forms.
  7. Do not attach hangers to rolled-in hanger tabs of composite steel floor deck.
  8. Do not connect or suspend steel framing from ducts, pipes, or conduit.
- D. Grid Suspension Systems: Attach perimeter wall track or angle where grid suspension systems meet vertical surfaces. Mechanically join main beam and cross-furring members to each other and butt-cut to fit into wall track.
- E. Installation Tolerances: Install suspension systems that are level to within 1/8 inch in 12 feet measured lengthwise on each member that will receive finishes and transversely between parallel members that will receive finishes.

END OF SECTION 09 22 16



## SECTION 09 29 00 - GYPSUM BOARD

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Interior gypsum board.
- 2. Tile backing panels.

## 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For the following products:
  - 1. Trim Accessories: Full-size Sample in 12-inch- long length for each trim accessory indicated.

## 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials inside under cover and keep them dry and protected against weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction traffic, and other potential causes of damage. Stack panels flat and supported on risers on a flat platform to prevent sagging.

## 1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with ASTM C 840 requirements or gypsum board manufacturer's written recommendations, whichever are more stringent.
- B. Do not install paper-faced gypsum panels until installation areas are enclosed and conditioned.
- C. Do not install panels that are wet, those that are moisture damaged, and those that are mold damaged.
  - 1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
  - 2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 119 by an independent testing agency.
- B. STC-Rated Assemblies: For STC-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 90 and classified according to ASTM E 413 by an independent testing agency.

## 2.2 GYPSUM BOARD, GENERAL

- A. Size: Provide maximum lengths and widths available that will minimize joints in each area and that correspond with support system indicated.

## 2.3 INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
  - 2. National Gypsum Company.
  - 3. USG Corporation.
- B. Gypsum Ceiling Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M.
  - 1. Thickness: 1/2 inch.
  - 2. Long Edges: Tapered.
- C. Mold-Resistant Gypsum Board: ASTM C1396/C1396M. With moisture- and mold-resistant core and paper surfaces.
  - 1. Core: 5/8 inch, Type X.
  - 2. Long Edges: Tapered.
  - 3. Mold Resistance: ASTM D3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D3274.
  - 4. Location: Typical all locations unless indicated otherwise.

## 2.4 TILE BACKING PANELS

- A. Glass-Mat, Water-Resistant Backing Board: ASTM C1178/C1178M, with manufacturer's standard edges.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC; DensShield Tile Backer.
    - b. National Gypsum Company; eXP Tile Backer.
    - c. USG Corporation; USG Durock Glass-Mat Tile Backerboard.
  - 2. Core: 5/8 inch, Type X.
  - 3. Mold Resistance: ASTM D3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D3274.

- B. Cementitious Backer Units (at showers): ANSI A118.9 and ASTM C1288 or ASTM C1325, with manufacturer's standard edges.
  - 1. Thickness: 5/8 inch.
  - 2. Mold Resistance: ASTM D3273, score of 10 as rated in accordance with ASTM D3274.

## 2.5 TRIM ACCESSORIES

- A. Interior Trim: ASTM C 1047.
  - 1. Material: Galvanized or aluminum-coated steel sheet, rolled zinc, plastic, or paper-faced galvanized steel sheet.
  - 2. Shapes:
    - a. Cornerbead.
    - b. LC-Bead: J-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
    - c. L-Bead: L-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
    - d. Expansion (control) joint.
    - e. Curved-Edge Cornerbead: With notched or flexible flanges.
- B. Aluminum Trim: Extruded accessories of profiles and dimensions indicated.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Fry Reglet Corp.
    - b. Gordon, Inc.
    - c. Pittcon Industries.
  - 2. Aluminum: Alloy and temper with not less than the strength and durability properties of ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063-T5.
  - 3. Finish: Painted to match gypsum board.
  - 4. Drywall Reveal Molding: Where indicated provide Fry Reglet Drywall Reveal as manufactured by Fry Reglet Corporation or comparable product by one of approved manufacturers indicated.
    - a. Size: 1/2 inch depth by 1/4 inch width unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Adjustable Partition Closures: Factory-formed, spring-loaded partition transition between window mullions, window glass, and partition walls. Provide end cap.
  - 1. Product: Gordon Interior Specialties Division, Gordon, Inc.
    - a. Mullion Mate - Series 40
    - b. Mullion Mate - Series 60.
  - 2. Finish: As selected by Architect.
  - 3. STC: Match partition up to 56 STC.
  - 4. Provide units with capability to accommodate variations in adjacent surfaces.
  - 5. Length: As indicated or required.
  - 6. Furnish units in lengths of sufficient additional length to allow for field trimming to required length to match variations in construction tolerances of adjacent systems.

## 2.6 JOINT TREATMENT MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with ASTM C 475/C 475M.
- B. Joint Tape:
  - 1. Interior Gypsum Board: Paper.
  - 2. Tile Backing Panels: As recommended by panel manufacturer.
- C. Joint Compound for Interior Gypsum Board: For each coat use formulation that is compatible with other compounds applied on previous or for successive coats.
  - 1. Embedding and First Coat: For embedding tape and first coat on joints, fasteners, and trim flanges, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
  - 2. Fill Coat: For second coat, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
  - 3. Finish Coat: For third coat, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
  - 4. Skim Coat: For final coat of Level 5 finish, use high-build interior coating product designed for application by airless sprayer and to be used instead of skim coat to produce Level 5 finish.
- D. Joint Compound for Tile Backing Panels:
  - 1. Glass-Mat, Water-Resistant Backing Panel: As recommended by backing panel manufacturer.

## 2.7 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards and manufacturer's written recommendations.
- B. Laminating Adhesive: Adhesive or joint compound recommended for directly adhering gypsum panels to continuous substrate.
  - 1. Laminating adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- C. Steel Drill Screws: ASTM C 1002, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Use screws complying with ASTM C 954 for fastening panels to steel members from 0.033 to 0.112 inch thick.
- D. Sound Attenuation Blankets: ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing) produced by combining thermosetting resins with mineral fibers manufactured from glass, slag wool, or rock wool.
  - 1. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Comply with mineral-fiber requirements of assembly.
- E. Acoustical Joint Sealant: Manufacturer's standard nonsag, paintable, nonstaining latex sealant complying with ASTM C 834. Product effectively reduces airborne sound transmission through perimeter joints and openings in building construction as demonstrated by testing representative assemblies according to ASTM E 90.
  - 1. Acoustical joint sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).



- F. Thermal Insulation: As specified in Division 07 Section "Thermal Insulation."

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and substrates including welded hollow-metal frames and framing, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Examine panels before installation. Reject panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 APPLYING AND FINISHING PANELS, GENERAL

- A. Comply with ASTM C 840.
- B. Install ceiling panels across framing to minimize the number of abutting end joints and to avoid abutting end joints in central area of each ceiling. Stagger abutting end joints of adjacent panels not less than one framing member.
- C. Install panels with face side out. Butt panels together for a light contact at edges and ends with not more than 1/16 inch of open space between panels. Do not force into place.
- D. Locate edge and end joints over supports, except in ceiling applications where intermediate supports or gypsum board back-blocking is provided behind end joints. Do not place tapered edges against cut edges or ends. Stagger vertical joints on opposite sides of partitions. Do not make joints other than control joints at corners of framed openings.
- E. Form control and expansion joints with space between edges of adjoining gypsum panels.
- F. Cover both faces of support framing with gypsum panels in concealed spaces (above ceilings, etc.), except in chases braced internally.
  - 1. Unless concealed application is indicated or required for sound, fire, air, or smoke ratings, coverage may be accomplished with scraps of not less than 8 sq. ft. in area.
  - 2. Fit gypsum panels around ducts, pipes, and conduits.
  - 3. Where partitions intersect structural members projecting below underside of floor/roof slabs and decks, cut gypsum panels to fit profile formed by structural members; allow 1/4- to 3/8-inch- wide joints to install sealant.
- G. Isolate perimeter of gypsum board applied to non-load-bearing partitions at structural abutments, except floors. Provide 1/4- to 1/2-inch- wide spaces at these locations and trim edges with edge trim where edges of panels are exposed. Seal joints between edges and abutting structural surfaces with acoustical sealant.
- H. Attachment to Steel Framing: Attach panels so leading edge or end of each panel is attached to open (unsupported) edges of stud flanges first.
- I. Install sound attenuation blankets before installing gypsum panels unless blankets are readily installed after panels have been installed on one side.

### 3.3 APPLYING INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

#### A. Single-Layer Application:

1. On ceilings, apply gypsum panels before wall/partition board application to greatest extent possible and at right angles to framing unless otherwise indicated.
2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum panels vertically (parallel to framing) unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly, and minimize end joints.
  - a. Stagger abutting end joints not less than one framing member in alternate courses of panels.
  - b. At stairwells and other high walls, install panels horizontally unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly.
3. On Z-furring members, apply gypsum panels vertically (parallel to framing) with no end joints. Locate edge joints over furring members.
4. Fastening Methods: Apply gypsum panels to supports with steel drill screws.

#### B. Multilayer Application:

1. On ceilings, apply gypsum board indicated for base layers before applying base layers on walls/partitions; apply face layers in same sequence. Apply base layers at right angles to framing members and offset face-layer joints one framing member, 16 inches minimum, from parallel base-layer joints, unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly.
2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum board indicated for base layers and face layers vertically (parallel to framing) with joints of base layers located over stud or furring member and face-layer joints offset at least one stud or furring member with base-layer joints, unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly. Stagger joints on opposite sides of partitions.
3. On Z-furring members, apply base layer vertically (parallel to framing) and face layer either vertically (parallel to framing) or horizontally (perpendicular to framing) with vertical joints offset at least one furring member. Locate edge joints of base layer over furring members.
4. Fastening Methods: Fasten base layers and face layers separately to supports with screws.

### 3.4 APPLYING TILE BACKING PANELS

- A. Glass-Mat, Water-Resistant Backing Panels: Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions and install at locations indicated to receive tile. Install with 1/4-inch gap where panels abut other construction or penetrations.
- B. Where tile backing panels abut other types of panels in same plane, shim surfaces to produce a uniform plane across panel surfaces.

### 3.5 INSTALLING TRIM ACCESSORIES

- A. General: For trim with back flanges intended for fasteners, attach to framing with same fasteners used for panels. Otherwise, attach trim according to manufacturer's written instructions.

- B. Control Joints: Install control joints according to ASTM C 840 and in specific locations approved by Architect for visual effect.
- C. Interior Trim: Install in the following locations:
  - 1. Cornerbead: Use at outside corners unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. LC-Bead: Use at exposed panel edges.
  - 3. L-Bead: Use where indicated.
  - 4. Curved-Edge Cornerbead: Use at curved openings.
  - 5. Reveals: Where indicated.
- D. Aluminum Trim: Install in locations indicated on Drawings.

### 3.6 FINISHING GYPSUM BOARD

- A. General: Treat gypsum board joints, interior angles, edge trim, control joints, penetrations, fastener heads, surface defects, and elsewhere as required to prepare gypsum board surfaces for decoration. Promptly remove residual joint compound from adjacent surfaces.
- B. Prefill open joints, rounded or beveled edges, and damaged surface areas.
- C. Apply joint tape over gypsum board joints, except for trim products specifically indicated as not intended to receive tape.
- D. Gypsum Board Finish Levels: Finish panels to levels indicated below and according to ASTM C 840:
  - 1. Level 1: Ceiling plenum areas, concealed areas, and where indicated.
  - 2. Level 2: Panels that are substrate for tile.
  - 3. Level 4: At panel surfaces that will be exposed to view except where Level 5 finish is indicated.
  - 4. Level 5: Provide in the following locations and other locations as indicated:
    - a. Lobbies.
    - b. Elevator Lobbies.
    - c. Corridors.
- E. Glass-Mat Faced Panels: Finish according to manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect adjacent surfaces from drywall compound and promptly remove from floors and other non-drywall surfaces. Repair surfaces stained, marred, or otherwise damaged during drywall application.
- B. Protect installed products from damage from weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction, and other causes during remainder of the construction period.
- C. Remove and replace panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
  - 1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.

2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

END OF SECTION 09 29 00

## SECTION 09 30 13 – TILING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Porcelain tile.
  - 2. Wall tile.
  - 3. Mosaic tile.
  - 4. Tile backing panels.
  - 5. Waterproof membrane.
  - 6. Crack isolation membrane.
  - 7. Metal edge strips.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. General: Definitions in the ANSI A108 series of tile installation standards and in ANSI A137.1 and ANSI A137.3 apply to Work of this Section unless otherwise specified.
- B. ANSI A108 Series: ANSI A108.01, ANSI A108.02, ANSI A108.1A, ANSI A108.1B, ANSI A108.1C, ANSI A108.4, ANSI A108.5, ANSI A108.6, ANSI A108.8, ANSI A108.9, ANSI A108.10, ANSI A108.11, ANSI A108.12, ANSI A108.13, ANSI A108.14, ANSI A108.15, ANSI A108.16, and ANSI A108.17 and ANSI A108.19, which are contained in its "Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile."
- C. Module Size: Actual tile size plus joint width indicated.
- D. Face Size: Actual tile size, excluding spacer lugs.

## 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show locations of each type of tile and tile pattern. Show widths, details, and locations of expansion, contraction, control, and isolation joints in tile substrates and finished tile surfaces.
- C. Samples for Verification:
  - 1. Full-size units of each type and composition of tile and for each color and finish required.
  - 2. Assembled samples mounted on a rigid panel, with grouted joints, for each type and composition of tile and for each color and finish required. Make samples at least 12

inches square, but not fewer than four tiles. Use grout of type and in color or colors approved for completed Work.

3. Full-size units of each type of trim and accessory for each color and finish required.
4. Stone thresholds in 6-inch lengths.
5. Metal edge strips in 6-inch lengths.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of product.
- C. Product Test Reports: For tile-setting and -grouting products and certified porcelain tile.

#### 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match and are from same production runs as products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  1. Tile and Trim Units: Furnish quantity of full-size units equal to 3 percent of amount installed for each type, composition, color, pattern, and size indicated.
  2. Grout: Furnish quantity of grout equal to 3 percent of amount installed for each type, composition, and color indicated.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Experienced firm with a record of at least five projects within the last three years successful in-service application similar in design and extent for that proposed for this project.
- B. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution, including grouted joints, composition, pattern and custom blending of tile for each type, color, and finish required. Mockups shall be minimum 36 inches square or in sizes as directed by Architect.
  1. Build mockup of floor tile installation.
  2. Build mockup of wall tile installation.
  3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

#### 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver and store packaged materials in original containers with seals unbroken and labels intact until time of use. Comply with requirements in ANSI A137.1 or ANSI A137.3 for labeling tile packages.
- B. Store tile and cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location.
- C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination can be avoided.

- D. Store liquid materials in unopened containers and protected from freezing.

## 1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install tile until construction in spaces is complete and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated in referenced standards and manufacturer's written instructions.

## 1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's System Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace tile installation that fail(s) in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: 10 years year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Dynamic Coefficient of Friction: For tile installed on walkway surfaces, provide products that meet the requirements of ANSI A 137.1-2012 testing method, the DCOF AcuTest.
  - 1. Minimum Threshold: 0.42 for level interior spaces expected to be walked upon when wet.

### 2.2 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations for Tile: Obtain tile of each color or finish from single source or producer.
  - 1. Obtain tile of each type and color or finish from same production run and of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties for each contiguous area.
- B. Source Limitations for Setting and Grouting Materials: Obtain ingredients of a uniform quality for each mortar, adhesive, and grout component from single manufacturer and each aggregate from single source or producer.
  - 1. Obtain setting and grouting materials, except for unmodified Portland cement and aggregate, from single manufacturer.
  - 2. Obtain waterproof membrane and crack isolation membrane, except for sheet products, from manufacturer of setting and grouting materials.
- C. Source Limitations for Other Products: Obtain each of the following products specified in this Section from a single manufacturer:
  - 1. Crack isolation membrane.
  - 2. Waterproof membrane.
  - 3. Cementitious backer units.
  - 4. Metal edge strips.

## 2.3 PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. ANSI Ceramic Tile Standard: Provide tile that complies with ANSI A137.1 for types, compositions, and other characteristics indicated.
  - 1. Provide tile complying with Standard grade requirements unless otherwise indicated.
- B. ANSI Standards for Tile Installation Materials: Provide materials complying with ANSI A108.02, ANSI standards referenced in other Part 2 articles, ANSI standards referenced by TCNA installation methods specified in tile installation schedules, and other requirements specified.
- C. Factory Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations within ranges, blend tile in factory and package so tile units taken from one package show same range in colors as those taken from other packages and match approved Samples.

## 2.4 TILE PRODUCTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Basis-of-Design products as indicated on drawings or a comparable product by one of the following manufacturers:
  - 1. American Olean.
  - 2. Crossville Inc.
  - 3. Dal-Tile.
- B. Tile Type: Wall tile.
  - 1. Face Size: As indicated on finish schedule.
  - 2. Face: Plain with square edges.
  - 3. Tile Color, Glaze, and Pattern: As indicated.
  - 4. Grout Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  - 5. Trim Units: Coordinated with sizes and coursing of adjoining flat tile where applicable and matching characteristics of adjoining flat tile.
- C. Tile Type: Porcelain floor tile.
  - 1. Face Size: As indicated on finish schedule.
  - 2. Face: Plain with square edges.
  - 3. Dynamic Coefficient of Friction: Not less than 0.42.
  - 4. Tile Color, Glaze, and Pattern: As indicated
  - 5. Grout Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  - 6. Trim Units: Coordinated with sizes and coursing of adjoining flat tile where applicable and matching characteristics of adjoining flat tile.
- D. Tile Type: Mosaic Ceramic Tile.
  - 1. Module Size: As indicated.
  - 2. Thickness: 1/4 inch.
  - 3. Face: Plain.
  - 4. Surface: Smooth, without abrasive admixture.
  - 5. Dynamic Coefficient of Friction: Not less than 0.42.
  - 6. Finish: As indicated.
  - 7. Tile Color and Pattern: As indicated.
  - 8. Grout Color: As indicated.



9. Trim Units: Coordinated with sizes and coursing of adjoining flat tile where applicable and matching characteristics of adjoining flat tile. Provide shapes as indicated and as required, selected from manufacturer's standard shapes.

## 2.5 THRESHOLDS

- A. General: Fabricate to sizes and profiles indicated or required to provide transition between adjacent floor finishes.
  1. Bevel edges at 1:2 slope, with lower edge of bevel aligned with or up to 1/16 inch above adjacent floor surface. Finish bevel to match top surface of threshold. Limit height of threshold to 1/2 inch or less above adjacent floor surface.

## 2.6 TILE BACKING PANELS

- A. Cementitious Backer Units (at showers): ANSI A118.9 and ASTM C1288 or ASTM C1325, with manufacturer's standard edges in maximum lengths available to minimize end-to-end butt joints.
  1. Thickness: 5/8 inch.
  2. Mold Resistance: ASTM D3273, score of 10 as rated in accordance with ASTM D3274.
- B. Glass-Mat, Water-Resistant Gypsum Panel: ASTM C1658/C1658M, with fiberglass mat partially or completely embedded into the core.
  1. Core: 5/8 inch, Type X.
  2. Long Edges: Tapered.
  3. Mold Resistance: ASTM D3273, score of 10 as rated in accordance with ASTM D3274.

## 2.7 CRACK ISOLATION MEMBRANES

- A. General: Manufacturer's standard product, selected from the following, that complies with ANSI A118.10/ANSI A118.12 and is recommended by the manufacturer for the application indicated. Include reinforcement and accessories recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Fabric-Reinforced, Fluid-Applied Product: System consisting of liquid-latex rubber.
  1. Product:
    - a. LATICRETE International Inc.; Laticrete Blue 92 Anti-Fracture Membrane.

## 2.8 WATERPROOF MEMBRANE

- A. General: Manufacturer's standard product that complies with ANSI A118.10 and is recommended by the manufacturer for the application indicated. Include reinforcement and accessories recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Fabric-Reinforced, Fluid-Applied Membrane: System consisting of liquid-latex rubber or elastomeric polymer and continuous fabric reinforcement.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

- a. Custom Building Products; 9240 Waterproofing and Anti-Fracture Membrane.
- b. LATICRETE SUPERCAP, LLC; Laticrete 9235 Waterproof Membrane.
- c. MAPEI Corporation; Mapelastic™ 400.

## 2.9 SETTING MATERIALS

- A. Improved Modified Dry-Set Mortar (Thinset): ANSI A118.15.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Custom Building Products; Porcelain Tile Fortified.
    - b. Laticrete International Inc.; 254 Platinum.
    - c. MAPEI Corporation; Ultraflex 3.
    - d. TEC: H.B. Fuller Construction Products, Inc.; 3N1 Performance Mortar .
  2. Provide prepackaged, dry-mortar mix containing dry, redispersible, vinyl acetate or acrylic additive to which only water must be added at Project site.
  3. For wall applications, provide mortar that complies with requirements for nonsagging mortar in addition to the other requirements in ANSI A118.15.
- B. Large Format Tile Mortar (Thin-set or Medium-bed): ANSI A118.4, ANSI A118.15, ANSI A118.11.
  1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Basis-of-Design or comparable by one of the following:
    - a. Basis-of-Design: Laticrete International, Inc.; LHT.
    - b. Custom Building Products.
    - c. MAPEI Corporation.
  2. Provide premium, prepackaged, polymer-enriched, dry-mortar mix combined with water at Project site.
  3. For floor applications, provide mortar that complies with requirements for nonslump formula in addition to other requirements in ANSI A118.4.
  4. For wall applications, provide mortar that complies with requirements for nonsagging mortar in addition to the other requirements in ANSI A118.4.
  5. Provide where individual tile size has a dimensional length greater than 15 inches on any side of the tile.
- C. Water-Cleanable, Tile-Setting Epoxy: ANSI A118.3.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Custom Building Products; CEG Lite.
    - b. Laticrete International Inc.; SpectraLock Pro Premium.
    - c. MAPEI Corporation; Kerapoxy.
    - d. TEC: H.B. Fuller Construction Products Inc. ; Accucolor EFX mortar.
  2. Provide product capable of withstanding continuous and intermittent exposure to temperatures of up to 140 and 212 deg F, respectively, and certified by manufacturer for intended use.

## 2.10 GROUT MATERIALS

- A. Sand-Portland Cement Grout: ANSI A108.10, consisting of white or gray cement and white or colored aggregate as required to produce color indicated.
- B. Water-Cleanable Epoxy Grout: ANSI A118.3.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products as indicated on finish schedules or by one of the following:
    - a. Bostik, Inc.; EzPoxy.
    - b. Custom Building Products; CEG Lite.
    - c. Laticrete International, Inc.; Spectralock Pro Premium.
    - d. MAPEI Corporation; Kerapoxy.
    - e. Summitville Tiles, Inc.
    - f. TEC: H.B. Fuller Construction Products Inc.; Accucolor EFX.
  - 2. Provide product capable of withstanding continuous and intermittent exposure to temperatures of up to 140 and 212 deg F, respectively, and certified by manufacturer for intended use.

## 2.11 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Underlayments and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland cement-based formulation provided or approved by manufacturer of tile-setting materials for installations indicated.
- B. Metal Edge Strips: Angle or L-shaped, height to match tile and setting-bed thickness, metallic, designed specifically for flooring applications; stainless-steel, ASTM A 666, 300 Series exposed-edge material.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Blanke Corporation.
    - b. Ceramic Tool Company, Inc.
    - c. Schluter Systems L.P.
- C. Tile Cleaner: A neutral cleaner capable of removing soil and residue without harming tile and grout surfaces, specifically approved for materials and installations indicated by tile and grout manufacturers.

## 2.12 MIXING MORTARS AND GROUT

- A. Mix mortars and grouts to comply with referenced standards and mortar and grout manufacturers' written instructions.
- B. Add materials, water, and additives in accurate proportions.
- C. Obtain and use type of mixing equipment, mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other procedures to produce mortars and grouts of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for installations indicated.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions where tile will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
1. Verify that substrates for setting tile are firm; dry; clean; free of coatings that are incompatible with tile-setting materials, including curing compounds and other substances that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone.
  2. Verify substrates comply with the flatness tolerances required by ANSI A108.01 and the following:
    - a. Tile with no edge larger than 15 inches; 1/4-inch in 10 feet.
  3. Verify that concrete substrates for tile floors installed with or thinset mortar comply with surface finish requirements in ANSI A108.01 for installations indicated.
    - a. Verify that surfaces that received a steel trowel finish have been mechanically scarified.
    - b. Verify that protrusions, bumps, and ridges have been removed by sanding or grinding.
  4. Verify that installation of grounds, anchors, recessed frames, electrical and mechanical units of work, and similar items located in or behind tile has been completed.
  5. Verify that joints and cracks in tile substrates are coordinated with tile joint locations; if not coordinated, adjust joint locations in consultation with Architect.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in concrete substrates for tile floors installed with thinset mortar with trowelable leveling and patching compound specifically recommended by tile-setting material manufacturer.
- B. Where indicated, prepare substrates to receive waterproofing by applying a reinforced mortar bed that complies with ANSI A108.1A and is sloped 1/8 inch per foot toward drains
- C. Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations, verify that tile has been factory blended and packaged so tile units taken from one package show same range of colors as those taken from other packages and match approved Samples. If not factory blended, either return to manufacturer or blend tiles at Project site before installing.

## 3.3 TILE BACKING PANEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install panels and treat joints according to ANSI A108.11 and manufacturer's written instructions for type of application indicated. Use modified dry-set mortar for bonding material unless otherwise directed in manufacturer's written instructions.

## 3.4 CERAMIC TILE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with TCNA's "Handbook for Ceramic, Glass, and Stone Tile Installation" for TCNA installation methods specified in tile installation schedules. Comply with parts of the ANSI A108 series "Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile" that are referenced in TCNA installation methods, specified in tile installation schedules, and apply to types of setting and grouting materials used.
1. For the following installations, follow procedures in the ANSI A108 series of tile installation standards for providing 95 percent mortar coverage:
    - a. Tile floors consisting of tiles 8 by 8 inches or larger.
    - b. Tile floors consisting of rib-backed tiles.
- B. Extend tile work into recesses and under or behind equipment and fixtures to form complete covering without interruptions unless otherwise indicated. Terminate work neatly at obstructions, edges, and corners without disrupting pattern or joint alignments.
- C. Accurately form intersections and returns. Perform cutting and drilling of tile without marring visible surfaces. Carefully grind cut edges of tile abutting trim, finish, or built-in items for straight aligned joints. Fit tile closely to electrical outlets, piping, fixtures, and other penetrations so plates, collars, or covers overlap tile.

Provide manufacturer's standard trim shapes where necessary to eliminate exposed tile edges. .D

- E. Where accent tile differs in thickness from field tile, vary setting-bed thickness so that tiles are flush.
- F. Jointing Pattern: Lay tile in grid pattern unless otherwise indicated. Lay out tile work and center tile fields in both directions in each space or on each wall area. Lay out tile work to minimize the use of pieces that are less than half of a tile. Provide uniform joint widths unless otherwise indicated.
1. Where adjoining tiles on floor, base, walls, or trim are specified or indicated to be same size, align joints.
  2. Where tiles are specified or indicated to be whole integer multiples of adjoining tiles on floor, base, walls, or trim, align joints unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Joint Widths: Unless otherwise indicated, install tile with the joint widths the narrowest joint recommended in writing by tile manufacturer.
- H. Lay out tile wainscots to dimensions indicated or to next full tile beyond dimensions indicated.
- I. Expansion Joints: Provide expansion joints and other sealant-filled joints, including control, contraction, and isolation joints, where indicated on approved Shop Drawings. Form full depth joints during installation of setting materials, mortar beds, and tile. Do not saw-cut joints after installing tiles. Provide expansion joints as follows:
1. Where joints occur in concrete substrates, locate joints in tile surfaces directly above them and of equal or greater widths.
  2. Where tilework abuts restraining surfaces such as perimeter walls, curbs, columns, and ceilings.
  3. Where there is a change in substrate material.
  4. Interior Tilework: 20 to 25 feet in each direction.
  5. Above ground concrete substrates: 8 to 12 feet in each direction.

6. Interior tilework exposed to direct sunlight: 8 to 12 feet in each direction.
  7. Interior tilework exposed to moisture: 8 to 12 feet in each direction.
- J. Stone Thresholds: Install stone thresholds in same type of setting bed as adjacent floor unless otherwise indicated.
1. At locations where mortar bed (thickset) would otherwise be exposed above adjacent floor finishes, set thresholds in modified dry-set mortar (thinset).
  2. Do not extend waterproofing or crack isolation membrane under thresholds set in improved modified dry-set mortar. Fill joints between such thresholds and adjoining tile set on waterproofing or crack isolation membrane with elastomeric sealant.
- K. Metal Edge Strips: Install where exposed edge of tile flooring meets carpet, wood, or other flooring that finishes flush with top of tile and where exposed edge of tile flooring meets carpet, wood, or other flooring that finishes flush with or below top of tile and no threshold is indicated.
- L. Floor Sealer: Apply floor sealer to cementitious grout joints in tile floors according to floor-sealer manufacturer's written instructions. As soon as floor sealer has penetrated grout joints, remove excess sealer and sealer from tile faces by wiping with soft cloth.

### 3.5 CRACK ISOLATION MEMBRANE INSTALLATION

- A. Install crack isolation membrane to comply with ANSI A108.17 and manufacturer's written instructions to produce membrane of uniform thickness that is bonded securely to substrate.
- B. Allow crack isolation membrane to cure before installing tile or setting materials over it.

### 3.6 INSTALLATION OF WATERPROOF MEMBRANE

- A. Install waterproof membrane to comply with ANSI A108.13 and manufacturer's written instructions to produce waterproof membrane of uniform thickness that is bonded securely to substrate.
- B. Allow waterproof membrane to cure and verify by testing that it is watertight before installing tile or setting materials over it.

### 3.7 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace tile that is damaged or that does not match adjoining tile. Provide new matching units, installed as specified and in a manner to eliminate evidence of replacement.
- B. Relocated Movement Joints: Where tile joints do not align with substrate joints or existing in-plane substrate cracks, offset soft joints over crack isolation membrane in accordance with TCNA Method F125-Partial-15.
  1. Minimum width of crack suppression membrane: Three times the width of tile adjacent to substrate crack or joint, such that tile on either side of joint is fully supported on membrane.
- C. Cleaning: On completion of placement and grouting, clean all ceramic tile surfaces so they are free of foreign matter.

1. Remove grout residue from tile as soon as possible.
2. Clean grout smears and haze from tile according to tile and grout manufacturer's written instructions but no sooner than 10 days after installation. Use only cleaners recommended by tile and grout manufacturers and only after determining that cleaners are safe to use by testing on samples of tile and other surfaces to be cleaned. Protect metal surfaces and plumbing fixtures from effects of cleaning. Flush surfaces with clean water before and after cleaning.

### 3.8 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed tile work with kraft paper or other heavy covering during construction period to prevent staining, damage, and wear. If recommended by tile manufacturer, apply coat of neutral protective cleaner to completed tile walls and floors.
- B. Prohibit foot and wheel traffic from tiled floors for at least seven days after grouting is completed.
- C. Before final inspection, remove protective coverings and rinse neutral protective cleaner from tile surfaces.

### 3.9 INTERIOR CERAMIC TILE INSTALLATION SCHEDULE

#### A. Interior Floor Installations, Concrete Subfloor:

1. Ceramic Tile Installation: TCNA F125-Full, except where partial coverage is indicated; thinset mortar on crack isolation membrane.
  - a. Ceramic Tile Type: Porcelain floor tile.
  - b. Thinset Mortar: Improved modified dry-set mortar.
  - c. Grout: Water-cleanable epoxy grout.
2. Large Format Tile Installation TCNA F121: Cement mortar bed on waterproof membrane.
  - a. Tile Type: As indicated on Drawings.
  - b. Thin-Set Mortar: Medium-bed, modified dry-set.
  - c. Grout: Water-cleanable epoxy grout.

#### B. Interior Wall Installations, Metal Studs:

1. Ceramic Tile Installation: TCNA W245 or TCNA W248; thinset mortar on glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum backer board.
  - a. Ceramic Tile Type: Porcelain wall tile.
  - b. Thinset Mortar: Improved modified dry-set mortar.
  - c. Grout: Water-cleanable epoxy grout.

END OF SECTION 09 30 13





## SECTION 09 51 13 - ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILINGS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Acoustical panels and exposed suspension systems for interior ceilings.
  - 2. Supplementary components and accessories normally furnished or otherwise necessary for a complete installation.
- B. Products furnished, but not installed under this Specification Section, include anchors, clips, and other ceiling attachment devices to be cast in concrete at ceilings.

## 1.3 REFERENCES

- A. Definitions:
  - 1. Manufacturer: Means the acoustical panel and suspension system manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.

## 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Action Submittals:
  - 1. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 2. Samples: For each component indicated and for each exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of sizes indicated below:
    - a. Acoustical Panels: Set of 6-inch-square Samples of each type, color, pattern, and texture.
    - b. Exposed Suspension-System Members, Moldings, and Trim: Set of 6-inch-long Samples of each type, finish, and color.
- B. Informational Submittals:
  - 1. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
    - a. Ceiling suspension-system members.
    - b. Structural members to which suspension systems will be attached.
    - c. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.

- 1) Furnish layouts for cast-in-place anchors, clips, and other ceiling attachment devices whose installation is specified in other Sections.
  2. Carrying channels or other supplemental support for hanger-wire attachment where conditions do not permit installation of hanger wires at required spacing.
  3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical panels.
  4. Items penetrating finished ceiling and ceiling-mounted items including the following:
    - a. Lighting fixtures.
    - b. Diffusers.
    - c. Grilles.
    - d. Speakers.
    - e. Sprinklers.
    - f. Access panels.
    - g. Perimeter moldings.
  5. Show operation of hinged and sliding components covered by or adjacent to acoustical panels.
  6. Minimum Drawing Scale: 1/4 inch = 1 foot.
- C. Closeout Submittals:
1. Maintenance Data: For finishes to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver acoustical panels, suspension system components, and accessories to Project site in original, unopened packages and store them in a fully enclosed, conditioned space where they will be protected against damage from moisture, humidity, temperature extremes, direct sunlight, surface contamination, and other causes.
- B. Before installing acoustical panels, permit them to reach room temperature and a stabilized moisture content.
- C. Handle acoustical panels carefully to avoid chipping edges or damaging units in any way.

#### 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install acoustical panel ceilings until spaces are enclosed and weatherproof, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.
  1. Pressurized Plenums: Operate ventilation system for not less than 48 hours before beginning acoustical panel ceiling installation.

#### 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of acoustical panels and suspension system with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system, and partition assemblies.

## 1.8 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
1. Acoustical Ceiling Panels: Full-size panels equal to 2.0 percent of quantity installed.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
1. Flame-Spread Index: Class A according to ASTM E 1264.
  2. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.
- B. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with ASTM E 119; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
1. Indicate design designations from UL or from the listings of another qualified testing agency.

## 2.2 ACOUSTICAL PANELS

- A. Acoustical Panel Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard panels according to ASTM E 1264 and designated by type, form, pattern, acoustical rating, and light reflectance unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Basis of Design Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide named products by Armstrong World Industries as indicated on Finish Schedule or comparable by one of the following:
1. CertainTeed Corporation.
  2. United States Gypsum Company.
- C. Acoustical Ceiling Panels: Fire-resistance rated: ASTM E 1264.
1. Basis of Design: As indicated.
  2. Thickness: As indicated.
  3. Modular Size: As indicated.
  4. Suspension System: 15/16 inch grid unless otherwise indicated.
  5. Color: White unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.3 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

- A. Metal Suspension System Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard direct-hung metal suspension systems of types, structural classifications, and finishes indicated that comply with applicable requirements in ASTM C 635.
- B. Products: As indicated in the Finish Schedule on the Drawings.

## 2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Attachment Devices: Size for 5 times the design load indicated in ASTM C 635/C635M, Table 1, "Direct Hung," unless otherwise indicated. Comply with seismic design requirements.
  - 1. Power-Actuated Fasteners in Concrete: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with clips or other accessory devices for attaching hangers of type indicated and with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 10 times that imposed by ceiling construction, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 1190, conducted by a qualified testing and inspecting agency.
- B. Wire Hangers, Braces, and Ties: Provide wires as follows:
  - 1. Zinc-Coated, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A641/A641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper.
  - 2. Size: Wire diameter sufficient for its stress at 3 times hanger design load (ASTM C 635/C635M, Table 1, "Direct Hung") will be less than yield stress of wire, but not less than 0.106-inch-diameter wire.

## 2.5 METAL EDGE MOLDINGS AND TRIM

- A. Roll-Formed, Sheet-Metal Edge Moldings and Trim: Type and profile indicated or, if not indicated, manufacturer's standard moldings for edges and penetrations that comply with seismic design requirements; formed from sheet metal of same material, finish, and color as that used for exposed flanges of suspension-system runners.
  - 1. Edge moldings shall fit acoustical panel edge details and suspension systems indicated and match width and configuration of exposed runners unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. For circular penetrations of ceiling, provide edge moldings fabricated to diameter required to fit penetration exactly.
- B. Extruded-Aluminum Edge Moldings and Trim: Where indicated, provide manufacturer's extruded-aluminum edge moldings and trim of profile indicated or referenced by manufacturer's designations, including splice plates, corner pieces, and attachment and other clips, complying with seismic design requirements.
  - 1. Products: As indicated on the Drawings.

## 2.6 ACOUSTICAL SEALANT

- A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - 1. Acoustical Sealant for Exposed and Concealed Joints:
    - a. Pecora Corporation; AC-20 FTR Acoustical and Insulation Sealant.
    - b. USG Corporation; SHEETROCK Acoustical Sealant.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, including structural framing to which acoustical panel ceilings attach or abut, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements specified in this and other Specification Sections that affect ceiling installation and anchorage and with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of acoustical panel ceilings.
- B. Examine acoustical panels before installation. Reject acoustical panels that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- C. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
  - 1. Installation of acoustical panel ceilings indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Measure each ceiling area and establish layout of acoustical panels to balance border widths at opposite edges of each ceiling. Avoid using less-than-half-width panels at borders, and comply with layout shown on reflected ceiling plans.

## 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install acoustical panel ceilings according to ASTM C 636/C636M, seismic design requirements, and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Suspend ceiling hangers from building's structural members and as follows:
  - 1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structure or of ceiling suspension system.
  - 2. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions; offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
  - 3. Splay hangers only where required and, if permitted with fire-resistance-rated ceilings, to miss obstructions; offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
  - 4. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with location of hangers at spacings required to support standard suspension system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
  - 5. Secure wire hangers to ceiling suspension members and to supports above with a minimum of three tight turns. Connect hangers directly either to structures or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for substrate and that will not deteriorate or otherwise fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.
  - 6. Secure flat, angle, channel, and rod hangers to structure, including intermediate framing members, by attaching to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for both structure to which hangers are attached and type of hanger involved. Install hangers in a manner that will not cause them to deteriorate or fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.
  - 7. When steel framing does not permit installation of hanger wires at spacing required, install carrying channels or other supplemental support for attachment of hanger wires.

8. Do not attach hangers to steel deck tabs.
  9. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck. Attach hangers to structural members.
  10. Space hangers not more than 48 inches o.c. along each member supported directly from hangers, unless otherwise indicated; provide hangers not more than 8 inches from ends of each member.
  11. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced standards and publications.
- C. Install edge moldings and trim of type indicated at perimeter of acoustical ceiling area and where necessary to conceal edges of acoustical panels.
1. Apply acoustical sealant in a continuous ribbon concealed on back of vertical legs of moldings before they are installed.
  2. Screw attach moldings to substrate at intervals not more than 16 inches on center and not more than 3 inches from ends, leveling with ceiling suspension system to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 12 feet. Miter corners accurately and connect securely.
  3. Do not use exposed fasteners, including pop rivets, on moldings and trim.
- D. Install suspension system runners so they are square and securely interlocked with one another. Remove and replace dented, bent, or kinked members.
- E. Install acoustical panels with undamaged edges and fit accurately into suspension system runners and edge moldings. Scribe and cut panels at borders and penetrations to provide a neat, precise fit.
1. Arrange directionally patterned acoustical panels as follows:
    - a. As indicated on reflected ceiling plans.
  2. For square-edged panels, install panels with edges fully hidden from view by flanges of suspension system runners and moldings.
  3. Paint cut edges of panel remaining exposed after installation; match color of exposed panel surfaces using coating recommended in writing for this purpose by acoustical panel manufacturer.

### 3.4 CLEANING

- A. Clean exposed surfaces of acoustical panel ceilings, including trim, edge moldings, and suspension system members. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and touchup of minor finish damage. Remove and replace ceiling components that cannot be successfully cleaned and repaired to permanently eliminate evidence of damage.

END OF SECTION 09 51 13

## SECTION 09 65 13 - RESILIENT BASE AND ACCESSORIES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Resilient base.
  - 2. Rubber molding accessories.

## 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Samples for Verification: For each type of product indicated, in manufacturer's standard-size Samples but not less than 12 inches long, of each resilient product color, texture, and pattern required.
- C. Product Schedule: For resilient products. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

## 1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Furnish not less than 10 linear feet for every 500 linear feet or fraction thereof, of each type, color, pattern, and size of resilient product installed.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 648 or NFPA 253 by a qualified testing agency.
  - 1. Critical Radiant Flux Classification: Class I, not less than 0.45 W/sq. cm.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store resilient products and installation materials in dry spaces protected from the weather, with ambient temperatures maintained within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 50 deg F or more than 90 deg F.

## 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 70 deg F or more than 95 deg F, in spaces to receive resilient products during the following time periods:
  - 1. 48 hours before installation.
  - 2. During installation.
  - 3. 48 hours after installation.
- B. Until Substantial Completion, maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 55 deg F or more than 95 deg F.
- C. Install resilient products after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 THERMOPLASTIC-RUBBER BASE

- A. Resilient Base:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide basis of design products indicated or comparable products by one of the following:
    - a. Johnsonite.
    - b. Flexco.
    - c. Roppe Corporation.
- B. Resilient Base Standard: ASTM F 1861.
  - 1. Material Requirement: Type TP (rubber, thermoplastic).
  - 2. Manufacturing Method: Group I (solid, homogeneous).
  - 3. Style: Straight and Cove, where indicated on Drawings.
- C. Minimum Thickness: 0.125 inch.
- D. Height: As indicated on drawings.
- E. Lengths: Coils in manufacturer's standard length.
- F. Outside Corners: Job formed.
- G. Inside Corners: Job formed.
- H. Colors: As indicated by manufacturer's designations.

## 2.2 MILLWORK PROFILE RUBBER BASE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:



1. Basis of design: Johnsonite Tarkett Millwork Wall Finishing System, profile as indicated on drawings.
  2. Flexco.
  3. Roppe Corporation.
- B. Product Standard: ASTM F1861, Type TS (rubber, vulcanized thermoset), Group I (solid, homogeneous).
1. Style and Location:
    - a. Style A, Straight: Provide as indicated on drawings.
- C. Product Standard: Meets performance requirements for ASTM F 1861 Standard Specification for Resilient Wall Base, Type TP, Group 1.
- D. Height: 6 inches unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Length: Manufacturer's standard.
- F. Colors and Patterns: As indicated.
- G. Test Data:
1. Resistance to light, ASTM F1515: Passes
  2. Resistance to chemicals, ASTM F925: Passes
  3. ASTM E 648, Standard Test Method for Critical Radiant Flux of 0.45 watts/cm<sup>2</sup> or greater, Class 1.
- H. Miter corners on Millwork Profile Rubber Bases.

## 2.3 RESILIENT MOLDING ACCESSORY

- A. Resilient Molding Accessory:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. Products: As indicated on Finish Schedule.
- B. Description: Transition strips.
- C. Material: Rubber.
- D. Profile and Dimensions: As indicated.
- E. Colors and Patterns: As selected by Architect from full range of industry colors.

## 2.4 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland cement based or blended hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or approved by manufacturer for applications indicated.

- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by manufacturer to suit resilient products and substrate conditions indicated.
  - 1. Adhesives shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Verify that finishes of substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections and that substrates are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits that might interfere with adhesion of resilient products.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowelable leveling and patching compound and remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.
- C. Do not install resilient products until they are same temperature as the space where they are to be installed.
  - 1. Move resilient products and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed at least 48 hours in advance of installation.
- D. Sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient products immediately before installation.

#### 3.3 RESILIENT BASE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient base.
- B. Apply resilient base to walls, columns, pilasters, casework and cabinets in toe spaces, and other permanent fixtures in rooms and areas where base is required.
- C. Install resilient base in lengths as long as practicable without gaps at seams and with tops of adjacent pieces aligned.
- D. Tightly adhere resilient base to substrate throughout length of each piece, with base in continuous contact with horizontal and vertical substrates.
- E. Do not stretch resilient base during installation.
- F. Job-Formed Corners:

1. Outside Corners: Use straight pieces of maximum lengths possible. Form without producing discoloration (whitening) at bends.
2. Inside Corners: Use straight pieces of maximum lengths possible.

### 3.4 RESILIENT ACCESSORY INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient accessories.
- B. Resilient Molding Accessories: Butt to adjacent materials and tightly adhere to substrates throughout length of each piece. Install reducer strips at edges of carpet and resilient floor covering that would otherwise be exposed.

### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and protection of resilient products.
- B. Perform the following operations immediately after completing resilient product installation:
  1. Remove adhesive and other blemishes from exposed surfaces.
  2. Sweep and vacuum surfaces thoroughly.
  3. Damp-mop surfaces to remove marks and soil.
- C. Protect resilient products from mars, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period.
- D. Cover resilient products until Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 09 65 13



## SECTION 09 65 16 - RESILIENT SHEET FLOORING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Unbacked vinyl sheet flooring.

## 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each type of resilient sheet flooring.
  - 1. Include sheet flooring layouts, locations of seams, edges, columns, doorways, enclosing partitions, built-in furniture, cabinets, and cutouts.
  - 2. Show details of special patterns.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of resilient sheet flooring, in manufacturer's standard size, but not less than 6-by-9-inch sections of each color, texture, and pattern required.
  - 1. For heat-welding bead, manufacturer's standard-size Samples, but not less than 9 inches long, of each color required.
- D. Welded-Seam Samples: For seamless-installation technique indicated and for each resilient sheet flooring product, color, and pattern required; with seam running lengthwise and in center of 6-by-9-inch Sample applied to a rigid backing and prepared by Installer for this Project.
- E. Product Schedule: For resilient sheet flooring. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

## 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For each type of resilient sheet flooring to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Resilient Sheet Flooring: Furnish not less than 10 linear feet for every 500 linear feet or fraction thereof, in roll form and in full roll width for each type, color, and pattern of flooring installed.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are competent in techniques required by manufacturer for resilient sheet flooring installation and seaming method indicated.
  - 1. Engage an installer who employs workers for this Project who are trained or certified by resilient sheet flooring manufacturer for installation techniques required.
- B. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for materials and execution.
  - 1. Coordinate mockups in this Section with mockups specified in other Sections.
    - a. Size: Minimum 100 sq. ft. for each type, color, and pattern in locations directed by Architect.
  - 2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
  - 3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

## 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store resilient sheet flooring and installation materials in dry spaces protected from the weather, with ambient temperatures maintained within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 50 deg F or more than 90 deg F. Store rolls upright.

## 1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 70 deg F or more than 85 deg F, in spaces to receive resilient sheet flooring during the following periods:
  - 1. 48 hours before installation.
  - 2. During installation.
  - 3. 48 hours after installation.
- B. After installation and until Substantial Completion, maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 55 deg F or more than 95 deg F.
- C. Close spaces to traffic during resilient sheet flooring installation.

- D. Close spaces to traffic for 48 hours after resilient sheet flooring installation.
- E. Install resilient sheet flooring after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: For resilient sheet flooring, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E648 or NFPA 253 by a qualified testing agency.
  - 1. Critical Radiant Flux Classification: Class I, not less than 0.45 W/sq. cm.

### 2.2 UNBACKED VINYL SHEET FLOORING

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Basis-of-Design product or a comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. Basis of design: Mannington Mills, Inc., "BioSpec MD."
  - 2. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
  - 3. Gerflor.
- B. Product Standard: ASTM F1913.
- C. Thickness: 0.080 inch.
- D. Wearing Surface: Smooth.
- E. Sheet Width: As standard with manufacturer.
- F. Seamless-Installation Method: Heat welded.
- G. Colors and Patterns: As indicated by manufacturer's designations.

### 2.3 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland-cement-based or blended hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or approved by resilient sheet flooring manufacturer for applications indicated.
- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by flooring and adhesive manufacturers to suit resilient sheet flooring and substrate conditions indicated.
  - 1. Adhesives shall have a VOC content of 60 g/L or less.
- C. Seamless-Installation Accessories:
  - 1. Heat-Welding Bead: Manufacturer's solid-strand product for heat welding seams.

- a. Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range to contrast with flooring.
- D. Integral-Flash-Cove-Base Accessories:
- 1. Cove Strip: 1-inch radius provided or approved by resilient sheet flooring manufacturer.
  - 2. Cap Strip: Square metal, vinyl, or rubber cap provided or approved by resilient sheet flooring manufacturer.
  - 3. Corners: Metal inside and outside corners and end stops provided or approved by resilient sheet flooring manufacturer.
- E. Floor Polish: Provide protective, liquid floor-polish products recommended by resilient sheet flooring manufacturer.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- 1. Verify that finishes of substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections and that substrates are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits that might interfere with adhesion of resilient sheet flooring.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare substrates according to resilient sheet flooring manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of resilient sheet flooring.
- B. Concrete Substrates: Prepare according to ASTM F710.
- 1. Verify that substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, and hardeners.
  - 2. Remove substrate coatings and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, using mechanical methods recommended by resilient sheet flooring manufacturer. Do not use solvents.
  - 3. Alkalinity and Adhesion Testing: Perform tests recommended by resilient sheet flooring manufacturer. Proceed with installation only after substrate alkalinity falls within range on pH scale recommended by manufacturer in writing, but not less than 5 or more than 9 pH.
  - 4. Moisture Testing: Perform tests so that each test area does not exceed 200 sq. ft., and perform no fewer than three tests in each installation area and with test areas evenly spaced in installation areas.
    - a. Relative Humidity Test: Using in-situ probes, ASTM F2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have a maximum 75 percent relative humidity level measurement.
- C. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowelable leveling and patching compound; remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.



- D. Do not install resilient sheet flooring until materials are the same temperature as space where they are to be installed.
  - 1. At least 48 hours in advance of installation, move flooring and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed.
- E. Immediately before installation, sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient sheet flooring.

### 3.3 RESILIENT SHEET FLOORING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient sheet flooring.
- B. Unroll resilient sheet flooring and allow it to stabilize before cutting and fitting.
- C. Lay out resilient sheet flooring as follows:
  - 1. Maintain uniformity of flooring direction.
  - 2. Minimize number of seams; place seams in inconspicuous and low-traffic areas, at least 6 inches away from parallel joints in flooring substrates.
  - 3. Match edges of flooring for color shading at seams.
  - 4. Avoid cross seams.
- D. Scribe and cut resilient sheet flooring to butt neatly and tightly to vertical surfaces and permanent fixtures including built-in furniture, cabinets, pipes, outlets, and door frames.
- E. Extend resilient sheet flooring into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, and similar openings.
- F. Maintain reference markers, holes, and openings that are in place or marked for future cutting by repeating on resilient sheet flooring as marked on substrates. Use chalk or other nonpermanent marking device.
- G. Install resilient sheet flooring on covers for telephone and electrical ducts and similar items in installation areas. Maintain overall continuity of color and pattern between pieces of flooring installed on covers and adjoining flooring. Tightly adhere flooring edges to substrates that abut covers and to cover perimeters.
- H. Adhere resilient sheet flooring to substrates using a full spread of adhesive applied to substrate to produce a completed installation without open cracks, voids, raising and puckering at joints, telegraphing of adhesive spreader marks, and other surface imperfections.
- I. Seamless Installation:
  - 1. Heat-Welded Seams: Comply with ASTM F1516. Rout joints and heat weld with welding bead to fuse sections permanently into a seamless flooring installation. Prepare, weld, and finish seams to produce surfaces flush with adjoining flooring surfaces.
- J. Integral-Flash-Cove Base: Cove resilient sheet flooring to dimension indicated up vertical surfaces. Support flooring at horizontal and vertical junction with cove strip. Butt at top against cap strip.
  - 1. Install metal corners at inside and outside corners.

## 3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and protecting resilient sheet flooring.
- B. Perform the following operations immediately after completing resilient sheet flooring installation:
  - 1. Remove adhesive and other blemishes from surfaces.
  - 2. Sweep and vacuum surfaces thoroughly.
  - 3. Damp-mop surfaces to remove marks and soil.
- C. Protect resilient sheet flooring from mars, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period.
- D. Floor Polish: Remove soil, adhesive, and blemishes from flooring surfaces before applying liquid floor polish.
  - 1. Apply two coat(s).
- E. Cover resilient sheet flooring until Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 09 65 16

## SECTION 09 65 19 - RESILIENT TILE FLOORING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Luxury vinyl floor tile.

## 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each type of floor tile. Include floor tile layouts, edges, columns, doorways, enclosing partitions, built-in furniture, cabinets, and cutouts.
  - 1. Show details of special patterns.
- C. Product Schedule: For floor tile.
- D. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- E. Maintenance Data: For each type of floor tile to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs workers for this Project who are competent in techniques required by manufacturer for floor tile installation indicated.
  - 1. Engage an installer who employs workers for this Project who are trained or certified by manufacturer for installation techniques required.
- B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 648 or NFPA 253 by a qualified testing agency.
  - 1. Critical Radiant Flux Classification: Class I, not less than 0.45 W/sq. cm.

## 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store floor tile and installation materials in dry spaces protected from the weather, with ambient temperatures maintained within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 50 deg F or more than 90 deg F. Store floor tiles on flat surfaces.

## 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 70 deg F or more than 95 deg F, in spaces to receive floor tile during the following time periods:
  - 1. 48 hours before installation.
  - 2. During installation.
  - 3. 48 hours after installation.
- B. Until Substantial Completion, maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 55 deg F or more than 95 deg F.
- C. Close spaces to traffic during floor tile installation.
- D. Close spaces to traffic for 48 hours after floor tile installation.
- E. Install floor tile after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 LUXURY VINYL FLOOR TILE

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Basis-of-Design products as indicated on the finish schedule or comparable products from one of the following:
  - 1. Tarkett.
  - 2. Mohawk
  - 3. Mannington Mills, Inc.
  - 4. Shaw Contract Group.
  - 5. Patcraft.
- B. Tile Standard: ASTM F 1700.
  - 1. Class: Class III, Printed Film Vinyl Tile.
  - 2. Type: B, Embossed Surface.
- C. Thickness: As indicated.
- D. Size: As indicated.
- E. Colors and Patterns: As indicated by manufacturer's designations.

## 2.2 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland cement based or blended hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or approved by manufacturer for applications indicated.
- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by manufacturer to suit floor tile and substrate conditions indicated.

1. Use adhesives that comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):
  - a. Vinyl Composition Floor Tile Adhesives: Not more than 50 g/L.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Verify that finishes of substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections and that substrates are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits that might interfere with adhesion of floor tile.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Concrete Substrates: Prepare according to ASTM F 710.
  1. Verify that substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, and hardeners.
  2. Remove substrate coatings and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, using mechanical methods recommended by floor tile manufacturer. Do not use solvents.
  3. Alkalinity and Adhesion Testing: Perform tests recommended by floor tile manufacturer. Proceed with installation only after substrate alkalinity falls within range on pH scale recommended by manufacturer in writing, but not less than 5 or more than 10 pH.
  4. Moisture Testing: Proceed with installation only after substrates pass testing according to floor tile manufacturer's written recommendations, but not less stringent than the following:
    - a. Perform anhydrous calcium chloride test according to ASTM F 1869. Proceed with installation only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 3 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. in 24 hours.
    - b. Perform relative humidity test using in situ probes according to ASTM F 2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have a maximum 75 percent relative humidity level.
- C. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowelable leveling and patching compound and remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.
- D. Do not install floor tiles until they are same temperature as space where they are to be installed.
  1. Move resilient products and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed at least 48 hours in advance of installation.

- E. Sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient products immediately before installation.

### 3.3 FLOOR TILE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing floor tile.
- B. Lay out floor tiles from center marks established with principal walls, discounting minor offsets, so tiles at opposite edges of room are of equal width. Adjust as necessary to avoid using cut widths that equal less than one-half tile at perimeter.
  - 1. Lay tiles in pattern indicated.
- C. Match floor tiles for color and pattern by selecting tiles from cartons in the same sequence as manufactured and packaged, if so numbered. Discard broken, cracked, chipped, or deformed tiles.
  - 1. Lay tiles in pattern of colors and sizes indicated.
- D. Scribe, cut, and fit floor tiles to butt neatly and tightly to vertical surfaces and permanent fixtures including built-in furniture, cabinets, pipes, outlets, and door frames.
- E. Extend floor tiles into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, and similar openings. Extend floor tiles to center of door openings.
- F. Maintain reference markers, holes, and openings that are in place or marked for future cutting by repeating on floor tiles as marked on substrates. Use chalk or other nonpermanent, nonstaining marking device.
- G. Install floor tiles on covers for telephone and electrical ducts, building expansion-joint covers, and similar items in finished floor areas. Maintain overall continuity of color and pattern between pieces of tile installed on covers and adjoining tiles. Tightly adhere tile edges to substrates that abut covers and to cover perimeters.
- H. Adhere floor tiles to flooring substrates using a full spread of adhesive applied to substrate to produce a completed installation without open cracks, voids, raising and puckering at joints, telegraphing of adhesive spreader marks, and other surface imperfections.

### 3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and protection of floor tile.
- B. Perform the following operations immediately after completing floor tile installation:
  - 1. Remove adhesive and other blemishes from exposed surfaces.
  - 2. Sweep and vacuum surfaces thoroughly.
  - 3. Damp-mop surfaces to remove marks and soil.
- C. Protect floor tile products from mars, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period.
- D. Cover floor tile until Substantial Completion.

September 15, 2023

Novant ASC Leland  
Construction Documents

1721843900

END OF SECTION 09 65 19





## SECTION 09 68 13 - TILE CARPETING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes:

- 1. Walk off carpet tile.

## 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Show the following:

- 1. Columns, doorways, enclosing walls or partitions, built-in cabinets, and locations where cutouts are required in carpet tiles.
- 2. Carpet tile type, color, and dye lot.
- 3. Type of subfloor.
- 4. Type of installation.
- 5. Pattern of installation.
- 6. Pattern type, location, and direction.
- 7. Pile direction.
- 8. Type, color, and location of insets and borders.
- 9. Type, color, and location of edge, transition, and other accessory strips.
- 10. Transition details to other flooring materials.

- B. Samples: For each of the following products and for each color and texture required. Label each Sample with manufacturer's name, material description, color, pattern, and designation indicated on Drawings and in schedules.

- 1. Carpet Tile: Full-size Sample.
- 2. Exposed Edge, Transition, and other Accessory Stripping: 12-inch- long Samples.

- C. Product Schedule: For carpet tile. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

- D. Qualification Data: For Installer.

- E. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

- F. Maintenance Data: For carpet tiles to include in maintenance manuals. Include the following:

- 1. Methods for maintaining carpet tile, including cleaning and stain-removal products and procedures and manufacturer's recommended maintenance schedule.
- 2. Precautions for cleaning materials and methods that could be detrimental to carpet tile.

- G. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who is certified by the International Certified Floorcovering Installers Association at the Commercial II certification level.
- B. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
  - 1. Build mockups at locations and in sizes shown on Drawings.
  - 2. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.
- C. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide products with the critical radiant flux classification indicated in Part 2, as determined by testing identical products per ASTM E 648 by an independent testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with the Carpet and Rug Institute's CRI 104.

#### 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Comply with the Carpet and Rug Institute's CRI 104 for temperature, humidity, and ventilation limitations.
- B. Environmental Limitations: Do not install carpet tiles until wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.
- C. Do not install carpet tiles over concrete slabs until slabs have cured and are sufficiently dry to bond with adhesive and concrete slabs have pH range recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.
- D. Where demountable partitions or other items are indicated for installation on top of carpet tiles, install carpet tiles before installing these items.

#### 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty for Carpet Tiles: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of carpet tile installation that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty does not include deterioration or failure of carpet tile due to unusual traffic, failure of substrate, vandalism, or abuse.
  - 2. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. More than 10 percent edge raveling, snags, and runs.

- b. Dimensional instability.
  - c. Excess static discharge.
  - d. Loss of tuft-bind strength.
  - e. Loss of face fiber.
  - f. Delamination.
3. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## 1.8 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below, before installation begins, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
1. Carpet Tile: Full-size units equal to 5 percent of amount installed for each type indicated, but not less than 10 sq. yd.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 WALK-OFF CARPET TILE

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Basis-of-Design product as indicated on finish schedule or comparable products by from one of the following:
1. Mannington Commercial.
  2. Interface.
  3. Tandus.
  4. Shaw.
- B. Fiber Face Weight: As indicated.
- C. Pile Characteristic: Manufacturer's standard.
- D. Thickness: Manufacturer's standard.
- E. Primary Backing/Backcoating: Manufacturer's standard.
- F. Size: As indicated.
- G. Applied Soil-Resistance Treatment: Manufacturer's standard material.
- H. Antimicrobial Treatment: Manufacturer's standard material.

### 2.2 INSTALLATION ACCESSORIES

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.
- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant, mildew-resistant, nonstaining, pressure-sensitive type to suit products and subfloor conditions indicated, that complies with flammability requirements for installed carpet tile and is recommended by carpet tile manufacturer for releasable installation.

1. Adhesives shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content, alkalinity range, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting carpet tile performance. Examine carpet tile for type, color, pattern, and potential defects.
- B. Concrete Subfloors: Verify that concrete slabs comply with ASTM F 710 and the following:
  1. Moisture Testing: Perform tests so that each test area does not exceed 1000 sq. ft., and perform no fewer than three tests in each installation area and with test areas evenly spaced in installation areas.
    - a. Relative Humidity Test: Using in situ probes, ASTM F2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have a maximum 75 percent relative humidity level measurement.
    - b. Perform additional moisture tests recommended in writing by adhesive and carpet tile manufacturers. Proceed with installation only after substrates pass testing.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. General: Comply with the Carpet and Rug Institute's CRI 104 and with carpet tile manufacturer's written installation instructions for preparing substrates indicated to receive carpet tile.
- B. Use trowelable leveling and patching compounds, according to manufacturer's written instructions, to fill cracks, holes, depressions, and protrusions in substrates. Fill or level cracks, holes and depressions 1/8 inch wide or wider and protrusions more than 1/32 inch, unless more stringent requirements are required by manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Remove coatings, including curing compounds, and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, without using solvents. Use mechanical methods recommended in writing by carpet tile manufacturer.
- D. Broom and vacuum clean substrates to be covered immediately before installing carpet tile.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with the Carpet and Rug Institute's CRI 104, Section 10, "Carpet Tile," and with carpet tile manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. Installation Method: As recommended in writing by carpet tile manufacturer.
- C. Installation Pattern: As indicated on Drawings.
- D. Maintain dye lot integrity. Do not mix dye lots in same area.

- E. Cut and fit carpet tile to butt tightly to vertical surfaces, permanent fixtures, and built-in furniture including cabinets, pipes, outlets, edgings, thresholds, and nosings. Bind or seal cut edges as recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.
- F. Extend carpet tile into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, open-bottomed obstructions, removable flanges, alcoves, and similar openings.
- G. Maintain reference markers, holes, and openings that are in place or marked for future cutting by repeating on finish flooring as marked on subfloor. Use nonpermanent, nonstaining marking device.

#### 3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Perform the following operations immediately after installing carpet tile:
  - 1. Remove excess adhesive, seam sealer, and other surface blemishes using cleaner recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.
  - 2. Remove yarns that protrude from carpet tile surface.
  - 3. Vacuum carpet tile using commercial machine with face-beater element.
- B. Protect installed carpet tile to comply with the Carpet and Rug Institute's CRI 104, Section 13.7.
- C. Protect carpet tile against damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during the remainder of construction period. Use protection methods indicated or recommended in writing by carpet tile manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 09 68 13



## SECTION 09 91 13 - EXTERIOR PAINTING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Surface preparation and the application of paint systems on exterior substrates.
  - 2. Surface preparation, priming, and finish coats specified in this Section are in addition to shop priming and surface treatment specified in other Sections.
- B. Paint exposed surfaces, except where these Specifications indicate that the surface or material is not to be painted. If an item or a surface is not specifically mentioned, paint the item or surface the same as similar adjacent materials or surfaces. If a color of finish is not indicated, Architect will select from standard colors and finishes available.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Gloss ranges used in this Section include the following:
  - 1. Satin or Low Luster: 20 to 35 units at 60 degrees and not less than 35 units at 85 degrees.
  - 2. Semigloss: 35 to 70 units at 60 degrees.
- B. Exterior Surfaces: Exterior surfaces to be painted are defined as those surfaces which are indicated in areas exposed to conditions which are not controlled by building heating and cooling systems.

## 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
- B. Samples for Verification: For each type of paint system and each color and gloss of topcoat.
  - 1. Submit Samples on rigid backing, 8 inches square.
  - 2. Step coats on Samples to show each coat required for system.
  - 3. Label each coat of each Sample.
  - 4. Label each Sample for location and application area.
- C. Product List: For each product indicated, include the following:
  - 1. Cross-reference to paint system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules.
  - 2. VOC content.

## 1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Paint: 5 percent, but not less than 1 gal. of each material and color applied.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Applicator Qualifications: Engage an experienced applicator who has completed painting system applications similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in applications with a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Mockups: Apply mockups of each paint system indicated and each color and finish selected to verify preliminary selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
  - 1. Architect will select one surface to represent surfaces and conditions for application of each paint system specified in Part 3.
    - a. Vertical and Horizontal Surfaces: Provide samples of at least 100 sq. ft.
    - b. Other Items: Architect will designate items or areas required.
  - 2. Final approval of color selections will be based on mockups.
    - a. If preliminary color selections are not approved, apply additional mockups of additional colors selected by Architect at no added cost to Owner.
  - 3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
  - 4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials to Project site in manufacturer's original, unopened packages and containers bearing manufacturer's name and label and other identifying information.
- B. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F.
  - 1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
  - 2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

## 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F.
- B. Do not apply paints in snow, rain, fog, or mist; when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.



## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following approved manufactures. Manufacturers' shortened names shown within parentheses shall be used in identifying available products in Part 2 of this section:

1. Benjamin Moore & Co. (Benjamin Moore).
2. PPG Paints (PPG Paints).
3. Sherwin-Williams Co. (Sherwin-Williams).
4. Rustoleum Modern Masters.

## 2.2 PAINT, GENERAL

- A. Material Compatibility: Provide primers, and finish-coat materials that are compatible with one another and with the substrates indicated under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by manufacturer based on testing and field experience.

1. For each coat in a paint system, provide products recommended in writing by manufacturers of topcoat for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.

- B. Material Quality: Provide manufacturer's best-quality paint material of the various coating types specified that are factory formulated and recommended by manufacturer for application indicated. Paint-material containers not displaying manufacturer's product identification will not be acceptable.

1. Proprietary Names: Use of manufacturer's proprietary product names to designate colors or materials is not intended to imply that products named are required to be used to the exclusion of equivalent products of other manufacturers. Furnish manufacturer's material data and certificates of performance for proposed substitutions.

- C. Colors: Provide custom colors of the finished paint systems to match the Architect's samples.

## 2.3 EXTERIOR PRIMERS

- A. Exterior Ferrous-Metal Primer: Factory-formulated rust-inhibitive metal primer for exterior application.
- B. Exterior Galvanized Metal Primer: Factory-formulated galvanized metal primer for exterior application.
- C. Exterior Aluminum Primer: Factory-formulated acrylic-based metal primer for exterior application.
- D. Exterior Primer for Metallic Paints: Metallic paint manufacturer's recommended primer for exterior application.

## 2.4 EXTERIOR FINISH COATS

- A. Exterior Satin Acrylic Paint: Factory-formulated low-sheen acrylic-latex paint exterior application.
1. Benjamin Moore: Refer to "Finish Schedule" located on drawings for indicated locations where the following products are used.

- a. Super Spec 100% Acrylic Latex Low Lustre House Paint - No. N185: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 1.3 mils.
  - b. Ultra Spec EXT 100% Acrylic Exterior Satin Finish Paint - No. N448: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 1.5 mils.
2. PPG Paints; Speedhide Exterior 100% Acrylic Latex Satin – No. 6-2000XI Series: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 1.4 mils.
  3. Sherwin-Williams; A-100 Exterior Latex Satin A82 Series: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 1.5 mils.
- B. Exterior Semigloss Acrylic Enamel: Factory-formulated semigloss acrylic-latex enamel for exterior application.
1. Benjamin Moore; Ultra Spec EXT 100% Acrylic Gloss Paint - No. N449: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 1.5 mils.
  2. PPG Paints; Speedhide Exterior House and Trim Semi-Gloss Acrylic Latex – No. 6-900 Series: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 1.1 mils.
  3. Sherwin-Williams; A-100 Exterior Gloss Latex A8 Series: Applied at a dry film thickness of not less than 1.3 mils.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
1. Comply with the Painting and Decorating Contractors of America for procedures specified in PDCA P4 - Responsibility for Inspection and Acceptance of Surfaces Prior to Painting and Decorating.”
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:
1. Concrete: 12 percent.
  2. Masonry (Clay and CMU): 12 percent.
  3. Wood: 15 percent.
  4. Portland Cement Plaster: 12 percent.
  5. Gypsum Board: 12 percent.
- C. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility with existing finishes and primers.
- D. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. General: Remove hardware and hardware accessories, covers, plates, machined surfaces, lighting fixtures, and similar items already installed that are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.

1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection.
- B. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
  1. Schedule cleaning and painting so dust and other contaminants from the cleaning process will not fall on wet, newly painted surfaces.
  2. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce paint systems indicated.
- C. Concrete Substrates: Remove release agents, curing compounds, efflorescence, and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be painted exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Masonry Substrates: Remove efflorescence and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces or mortar joints exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Steel Substrates: Remove rust, loose mill scale, and shop primer if any. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer but not less than the following:
  1. SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
- F. Shop-Primed Steel Substrates: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop priming to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-primed surfaces.
- G. Galvanized-Metal Substrates: Remove grease and oil residue from galvanized sheet metal by mechanical methods to produce clean, lightly etched surfaces that promote adhesion of subsequently applied paints.
- H. Aluminum Substrates: Remove loose surface oxidation.
- I. Material Preparation: Mix and prepare paint materials according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  1. Maintain containers used in mixing and applying paint in a clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
  2. Stir material before application to produce a mixture of uniform density. Stir as required during application. Do not stir surface film into material. If necessary, remove surface film and strain material before using.
  3. Use only thinners approved by paint manufacturer and only within recommended limits.

### 3.3 APPLICATION

#### A. Application, General:

1. Application Procedures: Apply paints and coatings by brush, roller, spray, or other applicators according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - a. Brushes: Use brushes best suited for type of material applied. Use brush of appropriate size for surface or item being painted.
  - b. Rollers: Use rollers of carpet, velvet-back, or high-pile sheep's wool as recommended by manufacturer for material and texture required.

- c. **Spray Equipment:** Use airless spray equipment with orifice size as recommended by manufacturer for material and texture required.
  2. **Scheduling Painting:** Apply first coat to surfaces that have been cleaned, pretreated, or otherwise prepared for painting as soon as practicable after preparation and before subsequent surface deterioration.
    - a. The number of coats and film thickness required are the same regardless of application method. Do not apply succeeding coats until previous coat has cured as recommended by manufacturer. If sanding is required to produce a smooth, even surface according to manufacturer's written instructions, sand between applications.
    - b. Allow sufficient time between successive coats to permit proper drying. Do not recoat surfaces until paint has dried to where it feels firm, and does not deform or feel sticky under moderate thumb pressure, and until application of another coat of paint does not cause undercoat to lift or lose adhesion.
  3. **Minimum Coating Thickness:** Apply paint materials no thinner than manufacturer's recommended spreading rate to achieve dry film thickness indicated. Provide total dry film thickness of the entire system as recommended by manufacturer.
  4. **Completed Work:** Match approved samples for color, texture, and coverage. Remove, refinish, or repaint work not complying with requirements.
- B. **Apply paint according to manufacturer's written instructions. Use applicators and techniques best suited for substrate and type of material being applied.**
  1. The term "exposed surfaces" includes areas visible when permanent or built-in fixtures, and similar components are in place. Extend coatings in these areas, as required, to maintain system integrity and provide desired protection.
  2. Provide finish coats that are compatible with primers used.
  3. Paint surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only.
  4. Paint exterior doors on tops, bottoms, and side edges and entire exposed surface of exterior door frames.
  5. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
  6. Do not paint over dirt, rust, scale, grease, moisture, scuffed surfaces, or conditions detrimental to formation of a durable paint film.
  7. Primers specified in painting schedules may be omitted on items that are factory primed or factory finished if acceptable to topcoat manufacturers.
  8. Paint colors, surface treatments, and finishes are indicated in the paint schedules.
  9. Sand lightly between each succeeding enamel or varnish coat.
- C. **Prime Coats:** Before applying finish coats, apply a prime coat, as recommended by manufacturer, to material that is required to be painted or finished and that has not been prime coated by others. Recoat primed and sealed surfaces where evidence of suction spots or unsealed areas in first coat appears, to ensure a finish coat with no burn-through or other defects due to insufficient sealing.
- D. **Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of same material are to be applied. Tint undercoats to match color of topcoat, but provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.**
- E. **If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.**

1. Ensure that edges, corners, crevices, welds, and exposed fasteners receive a dry film thickness equivalent to that of flat surfaces.
- F. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.
1. Pigmented (Opaque) Finishes: Completely cover surfaces as necessary to provide a smooth, opaque surface of uniform finish, color, appearance, and coverage.
    - a. Cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections will not be acceptable.
  2. Stipple Enamel Finish: Roll and redistribute paint to an even and fine texture.
    - a. Leave no evidence of rolling, such as laps, irregularity in texture, skid marks, or other surface imperfections.
- G. Painting Fire Suppression, Plumbing, HVAC, Electrical, Communication, and Electronic Safety and Security Work:
1. Paint the following work where exposed to view:
    - a. Equipment, including panelboards.
    - b. Uninsulated metal piping.
    - c. Uninsulated plastic piping.
    - d. Pipe hangers and supports.
    - e. Metal conduit.
    - f. Plastic conduit.
    - g. Tanks that do not have factory-applied final finishes.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Dry Film Thickness Testing: Owner may engage the services of a qualified testing and inspecting agency to inspect and test paint for dry film thickness.
1. Contractor shall touch up and restore painted surfaces damaged by testing.
  2. If test results show that dry film thickness of applied paint does not comply with paint manufacturer's written recommendations, Contractor shall pay for testing and apply additional coats as needed to provide dry film thickness that complies with paint manufacturer's written recommendations.

### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
- B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.

- D. Provide "Wet Paint" signs to protect newly painted finishes. After completing painting operations, remove temporary protective wrappings provided by others to protect their work.
  - 1. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces. Comply with procedures specified in PDCA P1.

### 3.6 EXTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE

- A. Ferrous Metal: Provide the following finish systems over exterior ferrous metal. Primer is not required on shop-primed items.
  - 1. Semi-Gloss Acrylic-Enamel Finish: Two finish coats over a rust-inhibitive primer.
    - a. Primer: Exterior ferrous-metal primer.
    - b. Finish Coats: Exterior semi-gloss acrylic enamel.
- B. Aluminum: Provide the following finish systems over exterior aluminum surfaces:
  - 1. Semi-Gloss Acrylic-Enamel Finish: Two finish coats over a primer.
    - a. Primer: Exterior aluminum primer.
    - b. Finish Coats: Exterior semi-gloss acrylic enamel.

END OF SECTION 09 91 13

## SECTION 09 91 23 - INTERIOR PAINTING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes surface preparation and the application of paint systems on interior substrates.
  - 1. Steel.
  - 2. Gypsum board.
  - 3. CMU.

## 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
- B. Samples for Verification: For each type of paint system and in each color and gloss of topcoat.
  - 1. Submit Samples on rigid backing, 8 inches square.
  - 2. Step coats on Samples to show each coat required for system.
  - 3. Label each coat of each Sample.
  - 4. Label each Sample for location and application area.

## 1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Paint: 5 percent, but not less than 1 gal. of each material and color applied.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Apply mockups of each paint system indicated and each color and finish selected to verify preliminary selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
  - 1. Architect will select one surface to represent surfaces and conditions for application of each paint system specified in Part 3.
    - a. Vertical and Horizontal Surfaces: Provide samples of at least 100 sq. ft.
    - b. Other Items: Architect will designate items or areas required.

2. Final approval of color selections will be based on mockups.
  - a. If preliminary color selections are not approved, apply additional mockups of additional colors selected by Architect at no added cost to Owner.
3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F.
  1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
  2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

#### 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F.
- B. Do not apply paints when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturer: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  1. Benjamin Moore & Co.
  2. PPG Paints.
  3. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).
- B. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product listed in other Part 2 articles for the paint category indicated.
- C. Colors: As indicated on Finishes Schedule on Drawings.

#### 2.2 PAINT, GENERAL

- A. MPI Standards: Provide products that comply with MPI standards indicated and that are listed in its "MPI Approved Products List."
- B. Material Compatibility:



1. Provide materials for use within each paint system that are compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
  2. For each coat in a paint system, provide products recommended in writing by manufacturers of topcoat for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.
- C. VOC Content: Products shall comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction and, for interior paints and coatings applied at Project site, the following VOC limits, exclusive of colorants added to a tint base, when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
1. Flat Paints and Coatings: 50 g/L.
  2. Nonflat Paints and Coatings: 150 g/L.
  3. Primers, Sealers, and Undercoaters: 200 g/L.
  4. Anticorrosive and Antirust Paints Applied to Ferrous Metals: 250 g/L.
- D. Colors: As indicated on Finish Schedule.

### 2.3 PRIMERS

- A. Interior/Exterior Latex Block Filler: Water-based, high-solids, emulsion coating formulated to bridge and fill porous surfaces of exterior concrete masonry units in preparation for specified subsequent coatings.
- B. Interior, Institutional Low-Odor/VOC Primer Sealer: Water-based primer sealer with low-odor characteristics and a VOC of less than 10 grams per liter for use on new interior plaster, concrete, and gypsum wallboard surfaces that are subsequently to be painted with latex finish coats.
- C. Water-Based Rust-Inhibitive Primer: Corrosion-resistant, water-based-emulsion primer formulated for resistance to flash rusting when applied to cleaned, interior ferrous metals subject to mildly corrosive environments.
- D. Water-Based Galvanized-Metal Primer: Corrosion-resistant, acrylic primer; formulated for use on cleaned/etched, galvanized metal to prepare it for subsequent water-based coatings.

### 2.4 FINISH COATS

- A. Interior, Latex, Institutional Low Odor/VOC, Flat: White or colored latex paint with low-odor characteristics and a VOC of less than 10 grams per liter, for use in areas, such as hospitals and other occupied buildings, where the odor and VOC levels of conventional latex products would preclude their use.
  1. Gloss and Sheen Level: Manufacturer's standard flat finish.
- B. Interior, Latex, Institutional Low Odor/VOC, Eggshell: White or colored latex paint with low-odor characteristics and a VOC of less than 10 grams per liter, for use in areas, such as hospitals and other occupied buildings, where the odor and VOC levels of conventional latex products would preclude their use.
  1. Gloss and Sheen Level: Manufacturer's standard eggshell finish.

- C. Interior, Latex, Institutional Low Odor/VOC, Semigloss: White or colored latex paint with low-odor characteristics and a VOC of less than 10 grams per liter, for use in areas, such as hospitals and other occupied buildings, where the odor and VOC levels of conventional latex products would preclude their use.
  - 1. Gloss Level: Manufacturer's standard semigloss finish.
- D. Interior, Latex, Institutional Low-Odor/VOC, Gloss: White or colored latex paint with low-odor characteristics and a VOC of less than 10 grams per liter, for use in areas, such as hospitals and other occupied buildings, where the odor and VOC levels of conventional latex products would preclude their use.
  - 1. Gloss Level: Manufacturer's standard gloss finish.
- E. Interior, Latex, High-Performance Architectural Coating, Eggshell: High-performance architectural latex coating providing a significantly higher level of performance than conventional latex paints in the areas of scrub resistance, burnish resistance, and ease of stain removal.
  - 1. Gloss and Sheen Level: Manufacturer's standard eggshell finish.
- F. Interior, Latex, High-Performance Architectural Coating, Semigloss: High-performance architectural latex coating providing a significantly higher level of performance than conventional latex paints in the areas of scrub resistance, burnish resistance, and ease of stain removal.
  - 1. Gloss Level: Manufacturer's standard semigloss finish.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:
  - 1. Gypsum Board: 12 percent.
- C. Gypsum Board Substrates: Verify that finishing compound is sanded smooth.
- D. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility with existing finishes and primers.
- E. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
  - 1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Manual" applicable to substrates indicated.

- B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
  - 1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection if any.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
  - 1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce paint systems indicated.
- D. Steel Substrates: Remove rust, loose mill scale, and shop primer, if any. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer but not less than the following:
  - 1. SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning."
  - 2. SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
  - 3. SSPC-SP 7/NACE No. 4, "Brush-off Blast Cleaning."
- E. Shop-Primed Steel Substrates: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop priming to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-primed surfaces.

### 3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply paints according to manufacturer's written instructions and to recommendations in "MPI Manual."
  - 1. Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.
  - 2. Paint surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only.
  - 3. Paint front and backsides of access panels, removable or hinged covers, and similar hinged items to match exposed surfaces.
  - 4. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
  - 5. Primers specified in painting schedules may be omitted on items that are factory primed or factory finished if acceptable to topcoat manufacturers.
- B. Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of same material are to be applied. Tint undercoats to match color of topcoat, but provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.
- C. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.
- D. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.
- E. Painting Fire Suppression, Plumbing, HVAC, Electrical, Communication, and Electronic Safety and Security Work:

1. Paint the following work where exposed in equipment rooms:
  - a. Equipment, including panelboards and switch gear.
  - b. Uninsulated metal piping.
  - c. Uninsulated plastic piping.
  - d. Pipe hangers and supports.
  - e. Metal conduit.
  - f. Tanks that do not have factory-applied final finishes.
  - g. Duct, equipment, and pipe insulation having cotton or canvas insulation covering or other paintable jacket material.
  
2. Paint the following work where exposed in occupied spaces:
  - a. Equipment, including panelboards.
  - b. Uninsulated metal piping.
  - c. Uninsulated plastic piping.
  - d. Pipe hangers and supports.
  - e. Metal conduit.
  - f. Duct, equipment, and pipe insulation having cotton or canvas insulation covering or other paintable jacket material.
  - g. Other items as directed by Architect.
  
3. Paint portions of internal surfaces of metal ducts, without liner, behind air inlets and outlets that are visible from occupied spaces.

#### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Dry Film Thickness Testing: Owner may engage the services of a qualified testing and inspecting agency to inspect and test paint for dry film thickness.
  1. Contractor shall touch up and restore painted surfaces damaged by testing.
  2. If test results show that dry film thickness of applied paint does not comply with paint manufacturer's written recommendations, Contractor shall pay for testing and apply additional coats as needed to provide dry film thickness that complies with paint manufacturer's written recommendations.

#### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
- B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

## 3.6 INTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE

## A. CMU Substrates:

1. Institutional Low-Odor/VOC Latex System:
  - a. Block Filler: Interior/exterior latex block filler.
  - b. Intermediate Coat: Matching topcoat.
  - c. Topcoat: Interior, latex, institutional low odor/VOC, eggshell.

## B. Metal Substrates (Steel and Iron):

1. Institutional Low-Odor/VOC Latex System:
  - a. Prime Coat: Primer, rust inhibitive, water based.
    - 1) Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      - a) Benjamin Moore; Ultra Spec HP Acrylic Metal Primer, HP04. Applied at a wet film thickness of minimum 4.0 mils.
      - b) PPG Paints; Seal Grip Interior/Exterior Acrylic Universal Primer, 17-921XI Series. Applied at a wet film thickness of minimum 4.0 mils.
      - c) Sherwin-Williams; Pro Industrial Pro-Cryl Universal Primer, B66-310 Series. Applied at a wet film thickness of minimum 5.0 mils.
  - b. Intermediate Coat: Water-based acrylic, interior, matching topcoat.
  - c. Topcoat: Latex, interior, institutional low odor/VOC, semi-gloss (Gloss Level 5).
    - 1) Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      - a) Benjamin Moore; Ultra Spec 500 Interior Latex Semi Gloss Finish, 539. Applied at a wet film thickness of minimum 3.8 mils.
      - b) PPG Paints; Speedhide Zero Interior Zero-VOC Latex Semi Gloss, 6-4510XI. Applied at a wet film thickness of minimum 4.0 mils.
      - c) Sherwin-Williams; ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Semi-Gloss, B31-2600 Series. Applied at a wet film thickness of minimum 4.0 mils.

## C. Gypsum Board Substrates:

1. Institutional Low-Odor/VOC Latex System:
  - a. Prime Coat: Primer sealer, interior, institutional low odor/VOC.
    - 1) Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      - a) Benjamin Moore; Ultra Spec 500 Interior Latex Primer, 534. Applied at wet film thickness of 4.0 mils.
      - b) PPG Paints; Speedhide Interior Latex Sealer Quick Drying, 6-2. Applied at a wet film thickness of minimum 4.0 mils.
      - c) Sherwin-Williams; ProMar 200 Latex Primer, B28W02600. Applied at a wet film thickness of minimum 4 mils.

- b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, institutional low odor/VOC, matching topcoat.
- c. Topcoat: Latex, interior, institutional low odor/VOC, flat (Gloss Level 1).
  - 1) Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a) Benjamin Moore; Ultra Spec 500 Interior Latex Flat Finish, 536. Applied at a wet film thickness of minimum 3.8 mils.
    - b) PPG Paints; Speedhide Zero Interior Zero-VOC Flat, 6-4110XI. Applied at a wet film thickness of minimum 4.0 mils.
    - c) Sherwin-Williams; ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Flat, B30-2600 Series. Applied at a wet film thickness of minimum 4.0 mils.
  - d. Topcoat: Latex, interior, institutional low odor/VOC, eggshell (Gloss Level 3).
    - 1) Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      - a) Benjamin Moore; Ultra Spec 500 Interior Latex Eggshell Finish, 538. Applied at a wet film thickness of minimum 3.8 mils.
      - b) PPG Paints; Speedhide Zero Interior Zero-VOC Eggshell, 6-4310XI. Applied at a wet film thickness of minimum 4.0 mils.
      - c) Sherwin-Williams; ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Eg-Shel Latex, B20-2600 Series. Applied at a wet film thickness of minimum 4.0 mils.
  - e. Topcoat: Latex, interior, institutional low odor/VOC, semi-gloss (Gloss Level 5).
    - 1) Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      - a) Benjamin Moore; Ultra Spec 500 Interior Latex Semi Gloss Finish, 539. Applied at a wet film thickness of minimum 3.8 mils.
      - b) PPG Paints; Speedhide Zero Interior Zero-VOC Latex Semi Gloss, 6-4510XI. Applied at a wet film thickness of minimum 4.0 mils.
      - c) Sherwin-Williams; ProMar 200 Zero VOC Interior Latex Semi-Gloss, B31-2600 Series. Applied at a wet film thickness of minimum 4.0 mils.
- 2. Epoxy System:
  - a. Prime Coat: Primer sealer, interior, institutional low odor/VOC.
    - 1) Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      - a) Benjamin Moore; Eco Spec WB Interior Latex Primer, N372. Applied at wet film thickness of 4.0 mils or 1.2 mils dry.
      - b) PPG Paints; Speedhide Interior Latex Sealer Quick Drying, 6-2. Applied at a wet film thickness of minimum 4.0 mils or 1.0 mils dry.
      - c) Sherwin-Williams; ProMar 200 Latex Primer, B25W2600. Applied at a wet film thickness of minimum 4 mils or 1.0 mils dry.
  - b. Topcoat; Interior Pre-Catalyzed Epoxy, gloss, (Gloss Level 6):
    - 1) Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

- a) Benjamin Moore; Corotech Pre Catalyzed Waterborne Epoxy Eggshell, V342. Applied at a wet film thickness of minimum 4.0 mils or 1.5 mils dry.
- b) PPG Paints; Pitt-Glaze WB1 Interior Eggshell Pre-Catalyzed Waterborne Epoxy, 16-310 Series. Applied at a wet film thickness of minimum 4.0 mils or 1.5 mils dry.
- c) Sherwin-Williams; Pro Industrial Pre-Catalyzed Waterbased Epoxy Eg-Shel, K45-150 Series. Applied at a wet film thickness of 4.0 mils or 1.5 mils dry.

END OF SECTION 09 91 23





## SECTION 09 96 00 - HIGH-PERFORMANCE COATINGS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes surface preparation and application of high-performance coating systems on the following substrates:
  - 1. Exterior Substrates:
    - a. Galvanized metal.
    - b. CMU.
    - c. Tilt-up concrete panels.

## 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Samples for Verification: For each type of coating system and in each color and gloss of finish coat indicated.
  - 1. Submit Samples on rigid backing, 8 inches square.
  - 2. Step coats on Samples to show each coat required for system.
  - 3. Label each coat of each Sample.
  - 4. Label each Sample for location and application area.
- C. Product List: For each product indicated. Cross-reference products to coating system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules.

## 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F.
  - 1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
  - 2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

## 1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Apply coatings only when temperature of surfaces to be coated and surrounding air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F.

- B. Do not apply coatings in snow, rain, fog, or mist; when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 HIGH-PERFORMANCE COATINGS, GENERAL

A. Material Compatibility:

1. Provide materials for use within each coating system that are compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.

B. VOC Content: Products shall comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction and, for interior coatings applied at Project site, the following VOC limits, exclusive of colorants added to a tint base:

1. Flat Paints and Coatings: 50 g/L.
2. Nonflat Paints and Coatings: 150 g/L.
3. Primers, Sealers, and Undercoaters: 200 g/L.
4. Anti-Corrosive and Anti-Rust Paints Applied to Ferrous Metals: 250 g/L.
5. Zinc-Rich Industrial Maintenance Primers: 340 g/L.
6. Pretreatment Wash Primers: 420 g/L.
7. Floor Coatings: 100 g/L.
8. Shellacs, Clear: 730 g/L.
9. Shellacs, Pigmented: 550 g/L.

### 2.2 METAL PRIMERS

A. Waterborne Galvanized-Metal Primer:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - a. Benjamin Moore & Co.; Acrylic Metal Primer, M04.
  - b. PPG Paints; Pitt-Tech, DTM High Performance Primer/Finish, 90-712.
  - c. Sherwin-Williams Company (The); Industrial & Marine, DTM Acrylic Primer/Finish, B66W1.
  - d. Tnemec; Typoxy, 27WB.

### 2.3 EXTERIOR HIGH-PERFORMANCE ARCHITECTURAL LATEX COATINGS

A. High-Performance Architectural Latex, Semigloss Finish for Metals:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - a. Benjamin Moore & Co.; DTM Acrylic Semi-Gloss, HP29.
  - b. PPG Paints; Speedhide, Exterior Semi-Gloss Latex, 6-900 Series.
  - c. Sherwin-Williams Company (The); Pro-Industrial DTM Acrylic Semi-Gloss, B66W01151.
2. Colors:

- a. As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- B. High-Build Epoxy System for CMU and Tilt-up concrete panels:
  - 1. Basis of Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the named product or comparable products by an available manufacturer:
    - a. Textured Coatings of America, Inc.; TexCote Coolwall.
      - 1) Finish: Super-Cote.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of work.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" applicable to substrates indicated.
- B. Remove plates, machined surfaces, and similar items already in place that are not to be coated. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and coating.
  - 1. After completing coating operations, reinstall items that were removed; use workers skilled in the trades involved.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of coatings, including dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
  - 1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers as required to produce coating systems indicated.
- D. Galvanized-Metal Substrates: Remove grease and oil residue from galvanized sheet metal fabricated from coil stock by mechanical methods to produce clean, lightly etched surfaces that promote adhesion of subsequently applied coatings.

#### 3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply high-performance coatings according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Use applicators and techniques suited for coating and substrate indicated.
  - 2. Coat surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, coat surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only.
  - 3. Coat back sides of access panels, removable or hinged covers, and similar hinged items to match exposed surfaces.

- B. Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of the same material are to be applied. Tint undercoats to match color of finish coat, but provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.
- C. If undercoats or other conditions show through final coat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform coating finish, color, and appearance.
- D. Apply coatings to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Produce sharp glass lines and color breaks.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Owner reserves the right to invoke the following procedure at any time and as often as Owner deems necessary during the period when coatings are being applied:
  - 1. Owner will engage the services of a qualified testing agency to sample coating material being used. Samples of material delivered to Project site will be taken, identified, sealed, and certified in presence of Contractor.
  - 2. Testing agency will perform tests for compliance with specified requirements.
  - 3. Owner may direct Contractor to stop applying coatings if test results show materials being used do not comply with specified requirements. Contractor shall remove noncomplying coating materials from Project site, pay for testing, and recoat surfaces coated with rejected materials. Contractor will be required to remove rejected materials from previously coated surfaces if, on recoating with complying materials, the two coatings are incompatible.

### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
- B. After completing coating application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered coatings by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from coating operation. Correct damage by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and recoating, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced coated surfaces.

### 3.6 EXTERIOR HIGH-PERFORMANCE COATING SCHEDULE

- A. Steel Substrates:
  - 1. High-Performance Architectural Latex Coating System:
    - a. Prime Coat: Galvanized metal primer.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: High-performance architectural latex, semigloss finish.
    - c. Topcoat: High-performance architectural latex, semigloss finish.
- B. CMU Substrates:
  - 1. High-Build Epoxy System:

- a. Prime Coat: As recommended by manufacturer.
- b. Intermediate and Topcoats: High-build epoxy textured coating.

C. Tilt-up Concrete Panel Substrates:

1. High-Build Epoxy System:

- a. Prime Coat: As recommended by manufacturer.
- b. Intermediate and Topcoats: High-build epoxy textured coating.

END OF SECTION 09 96 00



## SECTION 09 97 23 — PENETRATING CONCRETE SEALER

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Surface preparation and the application of penetrating sealer for interior horizontal concrete substrates as indicated.
  - 2. Supplementary components and accessories normally furnished or otherwise necessary for a complete application.

## 1.3 REFERENCES

- A. Definitions:
  - 1. Manufacturer: Means the penetrating concrete sealer manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.

## 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each product specified.

## 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F.
  - 1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
  - 2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

## 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Apply coatings only when temperatures of surfaces indicated to be coated, relative humidity, and ambient air temperatures are within range recommended in writing by the manufacturer.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Penetrating Concrete Floor Sealer: Deep penetrating product that chemically reacts with concrete to permanently seal, densify, and harden surfaces, and make them water resistant.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. "Euco Diamond Hard" manufactured by The Euclid Chemical Company.
    - b. "L&M Seal Hard" manufactured by LATICRETE International, Inc.
    - c. "LIQUI-HARD" manufactured by W.R. Meadows, Inc.
- B. Protectant and Densifier Finish Coat: Clear, water-borne polymeric protectant with UV absorbers to be used with penetrating concrete floor sealer and provide gloss finish.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. "Ultraguard" manufactured by The Euclid Chemical Company.
    - b. "L&M Lion Hard" manufactured by LATICRETE International, Inc.
    - c. "BELLATRIX" manufactured by W.R. Meadows, Inc.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Prepare new or existing slab surface to be sealed in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:
1. Surface to be dry, free from dark alkali spots, and clean from paint, plaster, grease, oil, soap, curing compounds, glue, and foreign matter which would prevent necessary penetration and subsequent reaction.
  2. New concrete slabs to be cured a minimum of 28 days prior to application of architectural sealed concrete.

#### 3.2 APPLICATION

- A. General: Apply architectural sealed concrete finish according to manufacturer's written instructions. Use applicators and techniques best suited for substrate conditions and to achieve desired aesthetic effects.
1. Protect adjacent surfaces from overspray and spills until application is completed and fully cured.
- B. Concrete Sealer: Apply, directly from container, using bristle broom unless otherwise instructed by manufacturer.
1. Do not allow sealer to puddle.
  2. Apply at least 2 coats of sealer allowing each coat to cure thoroughly before applying subsequent coats.
  3. Apply finish coat in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

#### 3.3 REPAIRS, PROTECTION, AND CLEANING



- A. Correction: Dried excess sealer may cause a white residue to form on concrete. Remove residue by grinding or sanding, as recommended or required in writing by the manufacturer, and reapply.

END OF SECTION 09 97 23



## SECTION 10 14 23.16 - ROOM-IDENTIFICATION PANEL SIGNAGE

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes room-identification signs that are directly attached to the building.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Accessible: In accordance with the accessibility standard.

## 1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Furnish templates for placement of sign-anchorage devices embedded in permanent construction by other installers.

## 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For room-identification signs.
  - 1. Include fabrication and installation details and attachments to other work.
  - 2. Show sign mounting heights, locations of supplementary supports to be provided by other installers, and accessories.
  - 3. Show message list, typestyles, graphic elements, including raised characters and Braille, and layout for each sign at least half size.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of sign assembly showing all components and with the required finish(es), in manufacturer's standard size unless otherwise indicated and as follows:
  - 1. Room-Identification Signs: Full-size Sample.
  - 2. Variable Component Materials: Full-size sample of each base material, character (letter, number, and graphic element) in each exposed color and finish not included in Samples above.
  - 3. Exposed Accessories: Full-size Sample of each accessory type.
  - 4. Full-size Samples, if approved, will be returned to Contractor for use in Project.
- D. Product Schedule: For room-identification signs. Use same designations indicated on Drawings or specified.

## 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

## 1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For signs to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.8 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Variable Component Materials: 12 replaceable text inserts and interchangeable characters (letters, numbers, and graphic elements) of each type.
  - 2. Tools: One set(s) of specialty tools for assembling signs and replacing variable sign components.

## 1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.

## 1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify locations of anchorage devices embedded in permanent construction by other installers by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

## 1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of signs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Deterioration of finishes beyond normal weathering.
    - b. Deterioration of embedded graphic image.
    - c. Separation or delamination of sheet materials and components.
  - 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Accessibility Standard: Comply with applicable provisions in the USDOJ's "2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design" and ICC A117.1.

## 2.2 ROOM-IDENTIFICATION SIGNS

- A. Room-Identification Sign: Sign system with smooth, uniform surfaces; with message and characters having uniform faces, sharp corners, and precisely formed lines and profiles; and as follows:
1. Laminated-Sheet Sign: Photopolymer face sheet with raised graphics laminated over subsurface graphics to acrylic backing sheet to produce composite sheet.
    - a. Composite-Sheet Thickness: As indicated on Drawings.
    - b. Subsurface Graphics: Slide-in changeable insert.
    - c. Color(s): As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  2. Sign-Panel Perimeter: Finish edges smooth.
    - a. Edge Condition: As selected.
    - b. Corner Condition in Elevation: As selected.
  3. Frame: As selected to hold changeable sign panel.
    - a. Material: Aluminum.
    - b. Frame Depth: As selected.
    - c. Profile: As selected.
    - d. Corner Condition in Elevation: As selected.
    - e. Finish and Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  4. Mounting: As selected.
  5. Text and Typeface: Accessible raised characters and Braille typeface, as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range and variable content as scheduled. Finish raised characters to contrast with background color, and finish Braille to match background color.

## 2.3 SIGN MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Sheet and Plate: ASTM B209, alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated.
- B. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B221, alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated.
- C. Paints and Coatings for Sheet Materials: Inks, dyes, and paints that are recommended by manufacturer for optimum adherence to surface and are UV and water resistant for colors and exposure indicated.

## 2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners and Anchors: Manufacturer's standard as required for secure anchorage of signs, noncorrosive and compatible with each material joined, and complying with the following:
1. Use concealed fasteners and anchors unless indicated to be exposed.
- B. Two-Face Tape: Manufacturer's standard high-bond, foam-core tape, 0.045 inch thick, with adhesive on both sides.

## 2.5 FABRICATION

- A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard sign assemblies according to requirements indicated.
  - 1. Preassemble signs and assemblies in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble signs and assemblies only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and installation; apply markings in locations concealed from view after final assembly.
  - 2. Mill joints to a tight, hairline fit. Form assemblies and joints exposed to weather to resist water penetration and retention.
  - 3. Conceal connections if possible; otherwise, locate connections where they are inconspicuous.
  - 4. Provide rabbets, lugs, and tabs necessary to assemble components and to attach to existing work. Drill and tap for required fasteners. Use concealed fasteners where possible; use exposed fasteners that match sign finish.
- B. Subsurface-Applied Graphics: Apply graphics to back face of clear face-sheet material to produce precisely formed image. Image shall be free of rough edges.
- C. Subsurface-Etched Graphics: Reverse etch back face of clear face-sheet material. Fill resulting copy with manufacturer's standard enamel. Apply opaque manufacturer's standard background color coating over enamel-filled copy.
- D. Signs with Changeable Message Capability: Fabricate signs to allow insertion of changeable messages as follows:
  - 1. For snap-in changeable inserts beneath removable face sheet, furnish one suction or other device to assist in removing face sheet. Furnish initial changeable insert. Subsequent changeable inserts are by Owner.
  - 2. For slide-in changeable inserts, fabricate slot without burrs or constrictions that inhibit function. Furnish initial changeable insert. Subsequent changeable inserts are by Owner.
  - 3. For frame to hold changeable sign panel, fabricate frame without burrs or constrictions that inhibit function. Furnish initial sign panel. Subsequent changeable sign panels are by Owner.

## 2.6 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## 2.7 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install signs using mounting methods indicated and according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Install signs level, plumb, true to line, and at locations and heights indicated, with sign surfaces free of distortion and other defects in appearance.
  - 2. Install signs so they do not protrude or obstruct according to the accessibility standard.
  - 3. Before installation, verify that sign surfaces are clean and free of materials or debris that would impair installation.
- B. Accessibility: Install signs in locations on walls as indicated on Drawings and according to the accessibility standard.
- C. Mounting Methods:
  - 1. Two-Face Tape: Clean bond-breaking materials from substrate surface and remove loose debris. Apply tape strips symmetrically to back of sign and of suitable quantity to support weight of sign without slippage. Keep strips away from edges to prevent visibility at sign edges. Place sign in position, and push to engage tape adhesive.

## 3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace damaged or deformed signs and signs that do not comply with specified requirements. Replace signs with damaged or deteriorated finishes or components that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.
- B. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as signs are installed.
- C. On completion of installation, clean exposed surfaces of signs according to manufacturer's written instructions, and touch up minor nicks and abrasions in finish. Maintain signs in a clean condition during construction and protect from damage until acceptance by Owner.

## 3.3 SITE SUSTAINABILITY

- A. Construction Waste Management: Comply with requirements of Division 01 Section "Sustainability Design Requirements"..
  - 1. Waste Disposal: Dispose of product waste, including accessories and used items, by recycling or reusing waste materials.

## 3.4 SCHEDULE

- A. Provide one sign for each door and door opening.

END OF SECTION 10 14 23.16





## SECTION 10 21 13.16 - PLASTIC-LAMINATE-CLAD TOILET COMPARTMENTS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Plastic-laminate-clad toilet compartments configured as toilet enclosures and urinal screens.

## 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for toilet compartments.

- B. Shop Drawings: For toilet compartments.

- 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachment details.
  - 2. Show locations of cutouts for compartment-mounted toilet accessories.
  - 3. Show locations of centerlines of toilet fixtures.
  - 4. Show locations of floor drains.
  - 5. Show overhead support or bracing locations.

- C. Samples for Verification: For the following products, in manufacturer's standard sizes unless otherwise indicated:

- 1. Each type of material, color, and finish required for toilet compartments, prepared on 6-inch-square Samples of same thickness and material indicated for Work.
  - 2. Each type of hardware and accessory.

- D. Product Schedule: For toilet compartments, prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, detailing location and selected colors for toilet compartment material.

## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of toilet compartment.

## 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For toilet compartments to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of toilet fixtures, walls, columns, ceilings, and other construction contiguous with toilet compartments by field measurements before fabrication.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
  2. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.
- B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities and ICC A117.1 for toilet compartments designated as accessible.

## 2.2 PLASTIC-LAMINATE-CLAD TOILET COMPARTMENTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Accurate Partitions Corp., an ASI Group Company.
  2. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
  3. Bradley Corporation.
  4. Global Partitions Corp., an ASI Group Company.
- B. Toilet-Enclosure Style: Overhead braced, Floor anchored.
- C. Urinal-Screen Style: Wall hung, Floor anchored.
- D. Door, Panel, Screen, and Pilaster Construction: One-piece, plastic-laminate facing sheets pressure laminated to core material without splices or joints in facings or cores; with laminate applied to edges before faces to seal edges and prevent laminate from being pried loose. Seal exposed core material at cutouts to protect core from moisture. Provide with no-sightline system.
1. Core Material: Particleboard.
  2. Doors and Panels: Finished to not less than 7/8 inch thick.
  3. Pilasters: Provide construction to comply with one of the following:
    - a. Finished to not less than 1-1/4 inches thick and with internal, nominal 0.134-inch-thick, steel-sheet reinforcement.
    - b. Finished to not less than 1 inch thick and with internal, nominal 0.120-inch-thick, steel-sheet reinforcement.
- E. Pilaster Shoes and Sleeves (Caps): Formed from stainless steel sheet, not less than 0.031-inch nominal thickness and 3 inches high, finished to match hardware.

- F. Urinal-Screen Post: Manufacturer's standard post design of material matching the thickness and construction of pilasters or 1-1/4-inch-square, stainless steel tube 0.050 inch thick with satin finish; with shoe and sleeve (cap) matching that on the pilaster.
- G. Brackets (Fittings):
  - 1. Full-Height (Continuous) Type: Manufacturer's standard design; stainless steel.
- H. Plastic-Laminate Finish: One color and pattern in each room.
  - 1. Color and Pattern: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## 2.3 HARDWARE AND ACCESSORIES

- A. Hardware and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard operating hardware and accessories.
  - 1. Material: Stainless steel.
  - 2. Hinges: Manufacturer's standard nm continuous, cam type that swings to a closed or partially open position, allowing emergency access by lifting door.
  - 3. Latch and Keeper: Manufacturer's standard surface-mounted latch unit designed for emergency access and with combination rubber-faced door strike and keeper. Provide units that comply with regulatory requirements for accessibility at compartments designated as accessible.
  - 4. Coat Hook: Manufacturer's standard combination hook and rubber-tipped bumper, sized to prevent in-swinging door from hitting compartment-mounted accessories.
  - 5. Door Bumper: Manufacturer's standard rubber-tipped bumper at out-swinging doors.
  - 6. Door Pull: Manufacturer's standard unit at out-swinging doors that complies with regulatory requirements for accessibility. Provide units on both sides of doors at compartments designated as accessible.
- B. Overhead Bracing: Manufacturer's standard continuous, extruded-aluminum head rail with antigrip profile and in manufacturer's standard finish.
- C. Anchorages and Fasteners: Manufacturer's standard exposed fasteners of stainless steel, finished to match the items they are securing, with theft-resistant-type heads. Provide sex-type bolts for through-bolt applications. For concealed anchors, use stainless steel, hot-dip galvanized-steel, or other rust-resistant, protective-coated steel anchors compatible with related materials.

## 2.4 MATERIALS

- A. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2.
- B. Plastic Laminate: NEMA LD 3, general-purpose HGS grade, 0.048-inch nominal thickness.
- C. Stainless Steel Sheet: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, Type 304, stretcher-leveled standard of flatness.
- D. Stainless Steel Castings: ASTM A743/A743M.

## 2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Fabrication, General: Fabricate toilet compartment components to sizes indicated. Coordinate requirements and provide cutouts for through-partition toilet accessories where required for attachment of toilet accessories.
- B. Overhead-Braced Units: Provide manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant supports, leveling mechanism, and anchors at pilasters to suit floor conditions. Provide shoes at pilasters to conceal supports and leveling mechanism.
- C. Floor-Anchored Units: Provide manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant anchoring assemblies with leveling adjustment nuts at pilasters for structural connection to floor. Provide shoes at pilasters to conceal anchorage.
- D. Urinal-Screen Posts: Provide manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant anchoring assemblies with leveling adjustment nuts at tops and bottoms of posts. Provide shoes and sleeves (caps) at posts to conceal anchorage.
- E. Door Size and Swings: Unless otherwise indicated, provide 24-inch-wide in-swinging doors for standard toilet compartments and 36-inch-wide out-swinging doors with a minimum 32-inch-wide clear opening for compartments designated as accessible.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for fastening, support, alignment, operating clearances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Confirm location and adequacy of blocking and supports required for installation.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions. Install units rigid, straight, level, and plumb. Secure units in position with manufacturer's recommended anchoring devices.
  - 1. Maximum Clearances:
    - a. Pilasters and Panels: 1/2 inch.
    - b. Panels and Walls: 1 inch.
  - 2. Full-Height (Continuous) Brackets: Secure panels to walls and to pilasters with full-height brackets.
    - a. Locate bracket fasteners so holes for wall anchors occur in masonry or tile joints.
    - b. Align brackets at pilasters with brackets at walls.

- B. Overhead-Braced Units: Secure pilasters to floor and level, plumb, and tighten. Set pilasters with anchors penetrating not less than 1-3/4 inches into structural floor unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written instructions. Secure continuous head rail to each pilaster with no fewer than two fasteners. Hang doors to align tops of doors with tops of panels, and adjust so tops of doors are parallel with overhead brace when doors are in closed position.
- C. Floor-Anchored Units: Set pilasters with anchors penetrating not less than 2 inches into structural floor unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written instructions. Level, plumb, and tighten pilasters. Hang doors and adjust so tops of doors are level with tops of pilasters when doors are in closed position.
- D. Urinal Screens: Attach with anchoring devices to suit supporting structure. Set units level and plumb, rigid, and secured to resist lateral impact.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Hardware Adjustment: Adjust and lubricate hardware according to hardware manufacturer's written instructions for proper operation. Set hinges on in-swinging doors to hold doors open approximately 30 degrees from closed position when unlatched. Set hinges on out-swinging doors to return doors to fully closed position.

END OF SECTION 10 21 13.16



## SECTION 10 21 23 - CUBICLE CURTAINS AND TRACKS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Curtain tracks and carriers.
  - 2. Curtains

## 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include data for each type of track.
  - 2. For each type of curtain fabric indicated, include durability, laundry temperature limits, fade resistance, applied curtain treatments, and fire-test-response characteristics.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Show layout and types of cubicles, sizes of curtains, number of carriers, anchorage details, and conditions requiring accessories. Indicate dimensions taken from field measurements.
  - 2. Include details on blocking above ceiling and in walls.
  - 3. Indicate required radii and angles for configurations shown on drawings.
- A. Samples for Verification: For each type of product required, prepared on Samples of size indicated below:
  - 1. Curtain Fabric: Not less than 10 inches square and showing complete pattern repeat, from dye lot used for the Work, with specified treatments applied. Mark top and face of material.
  - 2. Mesh Top: Not less than 10 inches square.
- B. Curtain and Track Schedule: Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

## 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For track and hardware to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

## 1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below, before installation begins, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
1. Curtain Carriers and Track End Caps: Full-size units equal to 5 percent of amount installed for each size indicated, but no fewer than 10 units.
  2. Curtains: Full-size units equal to 10 percent of amount installed for each size indicated, but no fewer than two units.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Cubicle Curtains: Provide curtain fabrics with the following characteristics:
1. Flame Resistance: Provide fabrics identical to those that have passed NFPA 701 when tested by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
    - a. Identify fabrics with appropriate markings of a qualified testing agency.

## 2.2 CURTAIN SUPPORT SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. InPro.
- B. Extruded-Aluminum Curtain Track: Not less than 1-1/4 inches wide by 3/4 inch high; with 0.058-inch minimum wall thickness.
1. Cubicle Curtain Track CCT-1: Inpro "Formatrac" Bendable Track.
    - a. Provide with removable end caps.
    - b. Finish: White.
    - c. Configurations: Provide curved and angled configurations required as indicated on drawings.
    - d. Location: Med Surg Patient Rooms and other locations as indicated
  2. Cubicle Curtain Track CCT-2: Inpro "Optitrac" Curtain Track.
    - a. Provide with removable end caps.
    - b. Finish: White.
    - c. Location: ICU Patient Rooms and other locations as indicated.
- C. Curtain Track Accessories: Fabricate splices, end caps, connectors, end stops, coupling and joining sleeves, wall flanges, brackets, ceiling clips, and other accessories from same material and with same finish as track.
1. Suspended-Track Support: Not less than 5/8-inch-square tube.
  2. End Stop: Removable with carrier hook.



3. Switch Unit: Shuttle and coupling device for rerouting and securing cubicle curtain, with pull chain for switching track.
- D. Curtain Carriers: Two nylon rollers and nylon axle with chrome-plated steel hook.
- E. Breakaway Curtain Carriers: One-piece nylon breakaway curtain carriers designed to allow curtains to detach from tracks with a pulling force of no more than 5 lbf.
- F. Exposed Fasteners: Stainless steel.
- G. Concealed Fasteners: Stainless steel.

## 2.3 CURTAINS

- A. Products: Provide Clickeze Privacy Curtains as manufactured by Inpro
- B. Fabric: Curtain manufacturer's standard, 100 percent polyester; inherently and permanently flame resistant, stain resistant, and antimicrobial.
  1. Provide Fabric Indicated on Finish Schedule
- C. Curtain Grommets: Two-piece, rolled-edge, rustproof, nickel-plated brass; spaced not more than 6 inches o.c.; machined into top hem.
- D. Mesh Top: Not less than 18 inches high mesh top.
  1. Mesh: 100% nylon mesh.

## 2.4 CURTAIN FABRICATION

- A. Continuous Curtain Panels:
  1. Width: Equal to track length from which curtain is hung plus 10 percent of added fullness, but not less than 12 inches of added fullness.
  2. Length: Equal to floor-to-ceiling height, minus depth of track and carrier at top, and minus clearance above the finished floor of 12 - 15 inches.
  3. Top Hem: Not less than 1 inch and not more than 1-1/2 inches wide, triple thickness, reinforced with integral web, and double lockstitched.
  4. Mesh Top: Top hem of mesh not less than 1 inch and not more than 1-1/2 inches wide, triple thickness, reinforced with integral web, and double lockstitched. Double lockstitch bottom of mesh directly to 1/2-inch triple thickness, top hem of curtain fabric.
  5. Bottom Hem: Not less than 1 inch and not more than 1-1/2 inches wide, double thickness and double lockstitched.
  6. Side Hems: Not less than 1/2 inch and not more than 1-1/4 inches wide, with double turned edges, and single lockstitched.
  7. Vertical Seams: Not less than 1/2 inch wide, double turned and double stitched.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install tracks level and plumb, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Up to 20 feet in length, provide track fabricated from single, continuous length.
  - 1. Curtain Track Mounting: Surface.
- C. Surface-Track Mounting: Fasten tracks to ceilings at intervals recommended by manufacturer. Fasten tracks to structure at each splice and tangent point of each corner. Center fasteners in track to ensure unencumbered carrier operation. Attach track to ceiling as follows:
  - 1. Attach track to suspended ceiling grid with manufacturer's proprietary clip.
- D. Suspended-Track Mounting: Install track with manufacturer's standard tubular aluminum suspended supports at intervals and with fasteners recommended by manufacturer. Fasten supports to structure. Provide supports at each splice and tangent point of each corner. Secure ends of track to wall with flanged fittings or brackets.
- E. Track Accessories: Install splices, end caps, connectors, end stops, coupling and joining sleeves, and other accessories as required for a secure and operational installation.
  - 1. Provide one locking switch unit for each pair of beds.
  - 2. Provide one hinged loading unit for each bed.
- F. Curtain Carriers: Provide curtain carriers adequate for 6-inch spacing along full length of curtain plus an additional carrier.
- G. Cubicle Curtains: Hang curtains on each curtain track.

END OF SECTION 10 21 23

## SECTION 10 26 00 - WALL AND DOOR PROTECTION

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Abuse-resistant wall coverings.
  - 2. Corner guards.
  - 3. End-wall guards.

## 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, impact strength, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
  - 2. Include fire ratings of units recessed in fire-rated walls and listings for door-protection items attached to fire-rated doors.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each type of wall and door protection showing locations and extent.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish on the following products, prepared on Samples of size indicated below:
  - 1. Abuse-Resistant Wall Covering: 6 by 6 inches square.
  - 2. Corner Guards: 12 inches long. Including example top caps.

## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Material Certificates: For each type of exposed plastic material.
- B. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

## 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For each type of wall and door protection product to include in maintenance manuals.

1. Include recommended methods and frequency of maintenance for maintaining best condition of plastic covers under anticipated traffic and use conditions. Include precautions against using cleaning materials and methods that may be detrimental to finishes and performance.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store wall and door protection in original undamaged packages and containers inside well-ventilated area protected from weather, moisture, soiling, extreme temperatures, and humidity.
  1. Maintain room temperature within storage area at not less than 70 deg F during the period plastic materials are stored.
  2. Keep plastic materials out of direct sunlight.
  3. Store corner guard covers in a vertical position.
  4. Store plastic wall- and door-protection components for a minimum of 72 hours, or until plastic material attains a minimum room temperature of 70 deg F.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of wall- and door-protection units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Structural failures including detachment of components from each other or from the substrates, delamination, and permanent deformation beyond normal use.
    - b. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, plastics, and other materials beyond normal use.
  2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain wall- and door-protection products of each type from single source from single manufacturer.

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84 or UL 723; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
  2. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.
- B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities.

## 2.3 ABUSE-RESISTANT WALL COVERINGS

- A. Abuse-Resistant Sheet Wall Covering: Fabricated from semirigid, plastic sheet wall-covering material.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. Construction Specialties, Inc.; CS Acrovyn Wall Covering.
  2. Size: 48 inches wide; length as required to minimize joints.
  3. Sheet Thickness: 0.060 inch.
  4. Color and Texture: As indicated.
  5. Height: As indicated.
  6. Trim and Joint Moldings: Extruded rigid plastic that matches wall-covering color.
  7. Sealant: Color-match.
  8. Mounting: Adhesive.

## 2.4 CORNER GUARDS

- A. Surface-Mounted, Plastic-Cover Corner Guards: Manufacturer's standard, PVC-free assembly consisting of snap-on, resilient plastic cover installed over retainer; including mounting hardware; fabricated with 90- or 135-degree turn to match wall condition.
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Basis-of-Design product indicated or a comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Basis-of-Design: Construction Specialties, Inc.; Acrovyn.
    - b. Inpro Corporation.
    - c. Korogard Wall Protection Systems; a division of RJF International Corporation.
  2. Cover: Extruded rigid plastic, minimum 0.078-inch wall thickness:
    - a. Profile: Nominal 3-inch long legs and 1/4-inch corner radius.
    - b. Height: As indicated on Drawings.
    - c. Color and Texture: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
    - d. Angles: Provide 90-degree and custom angle corner guards as indicated.
  3. Continuous Retainer: Minimum 0.060-inch- thick, one-piece, extruded aluminum.
  4. Retainer Clips: Manufacturer's standard impact-absorbing clips.
  5. Top and Bottom Caps: Prefabricated, injection-molded plastic; color matching cover; field adjustable for close alignment with snap-on cover.

## 2.5 END-WALL GUARDS

- A. Surface-Mounted, Plastic-Cover, End-Wall Guard: Manufacturer's standard, PVC-free assembly consisting of snap-on, resilient plastic cover installed over continuous retainer; including mounting hardware.
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Basis-of-Design product indicated or a comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Basis-of-Design: Construction Specialties, Inc.; Acrovyn.
    - b. Inpro Corporation.

- c. Korogard Wall Protection Systems; a division of RJF International Corporation.
2. Cover: Extruded rigid plastic, minimum 0.078-inch wall thickness; as follows:
  - a. Profile: Nominal 2-inch-long leg and 1/4-inch corner radius.
  - b. Height: 8 feet unless otherwise indicated.
  - c. Color and Texture: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
3. Retainer: Minimum 0.060-inch-thick, one-piece, extruded aluminum.
4. Top and Bottom Caps: Prefabricated, injection-molded plastic; color matching cover; field adjustable for close alignment with snap-on cover.

## 2.6 IMPACT-RESISTANT HANDRAILS

- A. Structural Performance: Handrails, including attachment to building construction, shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated:
  1. Uniform load of 50 lbf/ft. applied in any direction.
  2. Concentrated load of 200 lbf applied in any direction.
  3. Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
- B. Plastic, Impact-Resistant Handrails: Manufacturer's standard, PVC-free assembly consisting of snap-on plastic cover installed over continuous retainer.
  1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Basis-of-Design product indicated or a comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Basis-of-Design: Construction Specialties, Inc.; Acrovyn.
    - b. Inpro Corporation.
    - c. Korogard Wall Protection Systems; a division of RJF International Corporation.
  2. Cover: Minimum 0.078-inch-thick, extruded rigid plastic; as follows:
    - a. Bumper Rail: Cover with flat front side; with 1-1/2-inch-diameter gripping surface and finger recess on back side; supported by concealed, continuous retainer and extended mounting brackets.
      - 1) Bumper-Rail Dimensions: As indicated.
      - 2) Bumper Surface: Smooth.
    - b. Color and Texture: As indicated.
  3. Retainer: Minimum 0.080-inch-thick, one-piece, extruded aluminum.
  4. Mounting Bracket: Extended mounting on injection-molded plastic mounting brackets.
  5. End Caps and Corners: Prefabricated, injection-molded plastic; matching color cover; field adjustable for close alignment with snap-on cover.
  6. Accessories: Concealed splices, cushions, and mounting hardware.

## 2.7 MATERIALS

- A. Plastic Materials: Chemical- and stain-resistant, high-impact-resistant plastic with integral color throughout; extruded and sheet material as required, thickness as indicated.

- B. Polycarbonate Plastic Sheet: ASTM D 6098, S-PC01, Class 1 or Class 2, abrasion resistant; with a minimum impact-resistance rating of 15 ft.-lbf/in. of notch when tested according to ASTM D 256, Test Method A.
- C. Fasteners: Aluminum, nonmagnetic stainless-steel, or other noncorrosive metal screws, bolts, and other fasteners compatible with items being fastened. Use security-type fasteners where exposed to view.
- D. Adhesive: As recommended by protection product manufacturer to suit substrate conditions indicated.
  - 1. Adhesives shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less.

## 2.8 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate wall and door protection according to requirements indicated for design, performance, dimensions, and member sizes, including thicknesses of components.
- B. Factory Assembly: Assemble components in factory to greatest extent possible to minimize field assembly. Disassemble only as necessary for shipping and handling.
- C. Quality: Fabricate components with uniformly tight seams and joints and with exposed edges rolled. Provide surfaces free of wrinkles, chips, dents, uneven coloration, and other imperfections. Fabricate members and fittings to produce flush, smooth, and rigid hairline joints.

## 2.9 FINISHES

- A. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and wall areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine walls to which wall and door protection will be attached for blocking, grounds, and other solid backing that have been installed in the locations required for secure attachment of support fasteners.
  - 1. For wall and door protection attached with adhesive, verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Complete finishing operations, including painting, before installing wall and door protection.
- B. Before installation, clean substrate to remove dust, debris, and loose particles.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. **Installation Quality:** Install wall and door protection according to manufacturer's written instructions, level, plumb, and true to line without distortions. Do not use materials with chips, cracks, voids, stains, or other defects that might be visible in the finished Work.
- B. **Mounting Heights:** Install wall and door protection in locations and at mounting heights indicated on Drawings.
- C. **Accessories:** Provide splices, mounting hardware, anchors, trim, joint moldings, and other accessories required for a complete installation.
  - 1. Provide anchoring devices and suitable locations to withstand imposed loads.
  - 2. Where splices occur in horizontal runs of more than 20 feet, splice aluminum retainers and plastic covers at different locations along the run, but no closer than 12 inches apart.
- D. **Abuse-Resistant Wall Covering:** Install top and edge moldings, corners, and divider bars as required for a complete installation.

### 3.4 CLEANING

- A. Immediately after completion of installation, clean plastic covers and accessories using a standard ammonia-based household cleaning agent.
- B. Remove excess adhesive using methods and materials recommended in writing by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 10 26 00



## SECTION 10 28 00 – TOILET AND BATH ACCESSORIES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Public-use washroom accessories.

## 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include the following:
  - 1. Construction details and dimensions.
  - 2. Anchoring and mounting requirements, including requirements for cutouts in other work and substrate preparation.
  - 3. Material and finish descriptions.
  - 4. Features that will be included for Project.
  - 5. Manufacturer's warranty.

## 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: For products listed together in the same articles in Part 2, provide products of same manufacturer unless otherwise approved by Architect.

## 1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate accessory locations with other work to prevent interference with clearances required for access by people with disabilities, and for proper installation, adjustment, operation, cleaning, and servicing of accessories.
- B. Deliver inserts and anchoring devices set into concrete or masonry as required to prevent delaying the Work.

## 1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Mirror Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to replace mirrors that develop visible silver spoilage defects and that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 666, Type 304, 0.031-inch minimum nominal thickness unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Designation CS (cold rolled, commercial steel), 0.036-inch minimum nominal thickness.
- C. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, with G60 hot-dip zinc coating.
- D. Galvanized-Steel Mounting Devices: ASTM A 153/A 153M, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication.
- E. Fasteners: Screws, bolts, and other devices of same material as accessory unit and tamper-and-theft resistant where exposed, and of galvanized steel where concealed.
- F. Chrome Plating: ASTM B 456, Service Condition Number SC 2 (moderate service).
- G. Mirrors: ASTM C 1503, Mirror Glazing Quality, clear-glass mirrors, nominal 6.0 mm thick.
- H. ABS Plastic: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene resin formulation.

## 2.2 PUBLIC-USE WASHROOM ACCESSORIES

- A. Acceptable Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide basis of design products indicated on drawings or comparable products by one of the following manufacturers.
  - 1. American Specialties Inc.
  - 2. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
  - 3. Bradley Corporation.
  - 4. Georgia Pacific.
  - 5. Trubro.
  - 6. Brocar.
- B. Products: As indicated on drawings.

## 2.3 UNDERLAVATORY GUARDS

- A. Underlavatory Guard:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Plumberex Specialty Products, Inc.
    - b. Proflo.
    - c. Trubro Brand, IPS Corporation.
  - 2. Description: Rigid, molded high-impact PVC piping, valve and trap protection that prevents direct contact with and burns from piping; allow service access without removing coverings.

3. Material and Finish: Antimicrobial, molded plastic, white.

## 2.4 CUSTODIAL ACCESSORIES

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain custodial accessories from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Mop and Broom Holder:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. American Specialties, Inc.
    - b. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
    - c. Bradley Corporation.
  2. Description: Unit with shelf, hooks, holders, and rod suspended beneath shelf.
  3. Length: 36 inches.
  4. Mop/Broom Holders: Three, spring-loaded, rubber hat, cam type.
  5. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, No. 4 finish (satin).
    - a. Shelf: Not less than nominal 0.05-inch-thick stainless steel.
- C. Rod: Approximately 1/4-inch-diameter stainless steel

## 2.5 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate units with tight seams and joints, and exposed edges rolled. Hang doors and access panels with full-length, continuous hinges. Equip units for concealed anchorage and with corrosion-resistant backing plates.
- B. Keys: Provide universal keys for internal access to accessories for servicing and resupplying. Provide minimum of six keys to Owner's representative.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install accessories according to manufacturers' written instructions, using fasteners appropriate to substrate indicated and recommended by unit manufacturer. Install units level, plumb, and firmly anchored in locations and at heights indicated.
- B. Grab Bars: Install to withstand a downward load of at least 250 lbf, when tested according to method in ASTM F 446.

### 3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Adjust accessories for unencumbered, smooth operation. Replace damaged or defective items.
- B. Remove temporary labels and protective coatings.

- C. Clean and polish exposed surfaces according to manufacturer's written recommendations.

END OF SECTION 10 28 00

## SECTION 10 41 16 – EMERGENCY KEY VAULTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Commercial key vaults.

#### 1.3 REFERENCES

- A. Definitions:
  - 1. Manufacturer: Means the commercial key vault manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

#### 1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Recessed Mounting: Coordinate sizes and locations of key vault with wall depths.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 COMMERCIAL KEY VAULT

- A. Description: Hinged-door, high-security vault-like key box for allowing fire department rapid access to properties when responding to emergencies.
- B. Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Knox Company; Electronic KnoxVault KLS-4400 Dual Lock Model. Tracks when open date and time
  - 1. Model: UL-listed, Knox RainGuard, Knox-Coat finish, Knox eLock Core powered by Knox eKey, Knox Tamper Alert connected to building alarm system.
  - 2. Capacity: Up to 50 keys.

3. Mounting: Recessed, unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings.
4. Exterior Dimensions:
  - a. Recessed Mount: 9-1/2 high by 9-1/2 wide, inches.
  - b. Rough-in Dimensions: 8-1/2 high by 8-1/2 wide by 7 deep, inches.
5. Construction: 1/4-inch welded steel plate housing; 5/8-inch steel plate door with interior gasket seal and stainless steel door hinge.
6. Finish and Color: Powder Coated; Color as selected by the Architect from the manufacturer's standard selections.
7. Mounting Height: As indicated on the Drawings.
8. Keyed:
  - a. Top Lock: Fire Department.
  - b. Bottom Lock: Owner.

## 2.2 ACCESSORIES

- A. Recessed Mounting Kit (RMK): Includes shell housing and mounting hardware for recessed models to cast-in-place within new concrete or masonry construction.

## 2.3 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with the NAAMM publication "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces of fire protection cabinets from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine walls and partitions for suitable depth where recessed key vaults will be installed.
- B. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
  1. Installation of key vaults indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install key vaults in accordance with the manufacturer's written instructions and in locations and at mounting heights indicated or, if not indicated, at heights acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.

- B. Fasten boxes securely in place, square and plumb; Make necessary connections to building services.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as vaults are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. Adjust doors to operate easily without binding. Verify that integral locking devices operate properly.
- C. On completion of installation, clean interior and exterior surfaces as recommended by manufacturer.
- D. Touch up marred finishes, or replace key vaults that cannot be restored to factory-finished appearance. Use only materials and procedures recommended or furnished by the manufacturer.
- E. Replace key vaults that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 10 44 13





## SECTION 10 43 13 - DEFIBRILLATOR CABINETS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Defibrillator cabinets.
  - 2. Automatic External Defibrillator devices.
  - 3. Accessories

## 1.3 PREINSTALLATION CONFERENCE

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Review methods and procedures related to defibrillator cabinets, including, but not limited to, the following:
    - a. Schedules and coordination requirements.

## 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Cabinets: Materials description for defibrillator cabinets include roughing-in dimensions, details showing mounting methods, relationships to surrounding construction, door hardware, cabinet type and materials, trim style and door construction, door style and materials.
  - 2. Installation instructions for each product specified.
- B. Shop Drawings: For defibrillator cabinets.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
    - a. Small-scale plans showing locations of defibrillator cabinets.
    - b. Schedules showing each type of cabinet to ensure proper fit and function.
    - c. Indicate installation procedures and accessories required for a complete installation
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on samples 6 by 6 inches square.

## 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For defibrillator cabinets to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of defibrillator cabinets with wall depths.

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, and protect defibrillator cabinets and related materials using means and methods that will prevent damage, deterioration, or loss.
  - 1. Deliver components in manufacturer's original packaging, properly labeled for identification.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain defibrillator cabinets and accessories from single source from single manufacturer.

## 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Rated Defibrillator Cabinets: Listed and labeled to comply with requirements in ASTM E 814 for fire-resistance rating of walls where they are installed.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

## 2.3 DEFIBRILLATOR CABINET

- A. Manufacturers
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. JL Industries, Inc.; a division of the Activar Construction Products Group.
    - b. Modern Metal Products, Division of Technico Inc.
    - c. DeFibtech, LLC.
    - d. Zoll, a Heart Smart Company.
- B. Cabinet Construction: Nonrated unless otherwise required or indicated.
  - 1. Fire-Rated Cabinets: Construct fire-rated cabinets with double walls fabricated from 0.043-inch-thick cold-rolled steel sheet lined with minimum 5/8-inch-thick fire-barrier material. Provide factory-drilled mounting holes.

- C. Inner Tub dimensions: 14"H x 14"W x 7"D, nominal.
- D. Cabinet Material: Cold-rolled steel sheet.
- E. Door and Trim Construction: Cold-rolled steel; flush doors with 5/8 inch door stop attached by continuous hinge and equipped with zinc-plated roller catch.
- F. Semirecessed Cabinet: One-piece combination trim and perimeter door frame overlapping surrounding wall surface, with exposed trim face and wall return at outer edge (backbend).
- G. Door Style: Fully glazed panel with frame.
- H. Door Glazing: Acrylic sheet.
  - 1. Acrylic Sheet Color: Clear transparent acrylic sheet.
- I. Door Hardware: Manufacturer's standard door-operating hardware of proper type for cabinet type, trim style, and door material and style indicated.
- J. Accessories:
  - 1. Identification: Lettering and signage complying with authorities having jurisdiction for letter style, size, spacing, and location.
    - a. Location: Applied to cabinet glazing.
    - b. Application Process: Manufacturer's standard.
    - c. Lettering Color: Red.
  - 2. Alarm: Manufacturer's standard, battery-powered, audible alarm; 85 db; keyed on/off switch.
  - 3. Wall signs: As required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- K. Materials:
  - 1. Cold-Rolled Steel: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B.
    - a. Finish: Baked enamel, TGIC polyester powder coat, HAA polyester powder coat, epoxy powder coat, or polyester/epoxy hybrid powder coat, complying with AAMA 2603.
    - b. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
    - c. Color: White.
  - 2. Transparent Acrylic Sheet: ASTM D 4802, Category A-1 (cell-cast sheet), 6 mm thick, with Finish 1 (smooth or polished).

## 2.4 AUTOMATIC EXTERNAL DEFIBRILLATOR DEVICES

- A. Device indicated as basis of design is to establish the general qualities related to type, function, in-service performance and physical properties, weight, dimension, durability, visual characteristics, and other special features and requirements of the automatic external defibrillator devices required. Coordinate final selection of type and manufacturer of automatic external defibrillator device with Owner and Owner's safety equipment personnel.

## B. Manufacturers

1. Basis of design: Subject to compliance with requirements provide "Philips HeartStart OnSite Defibrillator" with carrying case as manufactured by Philips Healthcare. Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Allied Medical Products.
  - b. Cardiac Science.
  - c. DeFibtech, LLC.
  - d. Zoll, a Heart Smart Company.

## 2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Defibrillator Cabinets: Provide manufacturer's standard box (tub) with trim, frame, door, and hardware to suit cabinet type, trim style, and door style indicated.
  1. Weld joints and grind smooth.
  2. Miter corners and grind smooth.
- B. Cabinet Doors: Fabricate doors according to manufacturer's standards, from materials indicated and coordinated with cabinet types and trim styles.

## 2.6 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's AMP 500, "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products," for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces of defibrillator cabinets from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine walls and partitions for suitable framing depth and blocking where recessed and semirecessed cabinets will be installed.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare recesses for recessed and semirecessed defibrillator cabinets as required by type and size of cabinet and trim style.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install defibrillator cabinets in locations and at mounting heights indicated or, if not indicated, at heights acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Defibrillator Cabinets: Unless otherwise indicated, mount cabinets so height is 44 inches above finished floor to top of handle of automatic defibrillator unit.
- B. Defibrillator Cabinets: Fasten cabinets to structure, square and plumb.
  - 1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide semi-recessed defibrillator cabinets.
- C. Identification:
  - 1. Apply decals at locations recommended by manufacturer.
  - 2. Apply wall signs in accordance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as defibrillator cabinets are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. Adjust defibrillator cabinet doors to operate easily without binding.
- C. On completion of defibrillator cabinet installation, clean interior and exterior surfaces as recommended by manufacturer.
- D. Touch up marred finishes, or replace defibrillator cabinets that cannot be restored to factory-finished appearance. Use only materials and procedures recommended or furnished by defibrillator manufacturer.
- E. Replace defibrillator cabinets that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 10 43 13



## SECTION 10 44 13 - FIRE PROTECTION CABINETS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Fire-protection cabinets for the following:
    - a. Portable fire extinguishers.

## 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Show door hardware, cabinet type, trim style, and panel style. Include roughing-in dimensions and details showing recessed- or semirecessed-mounting method and relationships of box and trim to surrounding construction.
  - 1. Show location of knockouts for hose valves.
- B. Shop Drawings: For fire-protection cabinets. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
- C. Product Schedule: For fire-protection cabinets. Indicate whether recessed or semirecessed mounted. Coordinate final fire-protection cabinet schedule with fire-extinguisher schedule to ensure proper fit and function. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

## 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For fire-protection cabinets to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size of fire-protection cabinets to ensure that type and capacity of fire extinguishers indicated are accommodated.
- B. Coordinate sizes and locations of fire-protection cabinets with wall depths.

## 1.6 SEQUENCING

- A. Apply decals on field-painted fire-protection cabinets after painting is complete.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Rated Fire-Protection Cabinets: Listed and labeled to comply with requirements in ASTM E 814 for fire-resistance rating of walls where they are installed.

## 2.2 FIRE-PROTECTION CABINET

- A. Cabinet Type: Suitable for fire extinguisher.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. JL Industries, Inc.; a division of the Activar Construction Products Group.
    - b. Larsens Manufacturing Company.
    - c. Potter Roemer LLC.
- B. Cabinet Construction: To match rating of wall system.
  - 1. Fire-Rated Cabinets: Construct fire-rated cabinets with double walls fabricated from 0.043-inch- thick cold-rolled steel sheet lined with minimum 5/8-inch- thick fire-barrier material. Provide factory-drilled mounting holes.
- C. Cabinet Material: Stainless steel.
  - 1. Shelf: Same metal and finish as cabinet.
- A. Recessed Cabinet:
  - 1. Trimless with Concealed Flange: Surface of surrounding wall finishes flush with exterior finished surface of cabinet frame and door, without overlapping trim attached to cabinet. Provide recessed flange, of same material as box, attached to box, to act as drywall bead.
  - 2. Provide fire-rated recessed cabinets where indicated or required.
- B. Semirecessed Cabinet: One-piece combination trim and perimeter door frame overlapping surrounding wall surface, with exposed trim face and wall return at outer edge (backbend).
  - 1. Rolled-Edge Trim: 2-1/2-inch backbend depth.
  - 2. Provide fire-rated semi-recessed cabinets where indicated or required.
- C. Cabinet Trim Material: Stainless-steel sheet.
- D. Door Material: Stainless-steel sheet.
- E. Door Style: Center glass panel with frame.
- F. Door Glazing: Tempered float glass (clear).
- G. Door Hardware: Manufacturer's standard door-operating hardware of proper type for cabinet type, trim style, and door material and style indicated.
  - 1. Provide manufacturer's standard hinge permitting door to open 180 degrees.



## H. Accessories:

1. Mounting Bracket: Manufacturer's standard steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to fire-protection cabinet, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or baked-enamel finish.
2. Door Lock: Cam lock that allows door to be opened during emergency by pulling sharply on door handle.
3. Identification: Lettering complying with authorities having jurisdiction for letter style, size, spacing, and location.
  - a. Identify fire extinguisher in fire-protection cabinet with the words "FIRE EXTINGUISHER."
    - 1) Location: Applied to cabinet door.
    - 2) Application Process: Decals.
    - 3) Lettering Color: White.
    - 4) Orientation: Vertical.
4. Alarm: Manufacturer's standard alarm that actuates when fire-protection cabinet door is opened and that is powered by low voltage, complete with transformer.

## I. Materials:

1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 666, Type 304.
  - a. Finish: No. 4 directional satin finish,
2. Tempered Float Glass: ASTM C 1048, Kind FT, Condition A, Type I, Quality q3, 3 mm thick, Class 1 (clear).

## 2.3 FABRICATION

- A. Fire-Protection Cabinets: Provide manufacturer's standard box (tub) with trim, frame, door, and hardware to suit cabinet type, trim style, and door style indicated.
  1. Weld joints and grind smooth.
  2. Provide factory-drilled mounting holes.
  3. Prepare doors and frames to receive locks.
  4. Install door locks at factory.
- B. Cabinet Doors: Fabricate doors according to manufacturer's standards, from materials indicated and coordinated with cabinet types and trim styles.
  1. Fabricate door frames with tubular stiles and rails and hollow-metal design, minimum 1/2 inch thick.
  2. Fabricate door frames of one-piece construction with edges flanged.
  3. Miter and weld perimeter door frames.
- C. Cabinet Trim: Fabricate cabinet trim in one piece with corners mitered, welded, and ground smooth.

## 2.4 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's AMP 500, "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products," for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces of fire-protection cabinets from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Finish fire-protection cabinets after assembly.
- D. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine walls and partitions for suitable framing depth and blocking where recessed and semirecessed cabinets will be installed.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare recesses for recessed and semirecessed fire-protection cabinets as required by type and size of cabinet and trim style.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install fire-protection cabinets in locations and at mounting heights indicated or, if not indicated, at heights acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Fire-Protection Cabinets: Fasten cabinets to structure, square and plumb.
  - 1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide recessed fire-protection cabinets. If wall thickness is inadequate for recessed cabinets, provide semirecessed fire-protection cabinets.
  - 2. Provide inside latch and lock for break-glass panels.
  - 3. Fasten mounting brackets to inside surface of fire-protection cabinets, square and plumb.
- C. Identification: Apply decals at locations indicated.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as fire-protection cabinets are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. Adjust fire-protection cabinet doors to operate easily without binding. Verify that integral locking devices operate properly.
- C. On completion of fire-protection cabinet installation, clean interior and exterior surfaces as recommended by manufacturer.

- D. Replace fire-protection cabinets that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 10 44 13



## SECTION 10 44 16 - FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes portable, hand-carried fire extinguishers.

## 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rating and classification, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for fire extinguisher.
- B. Product Schedule: For fire extinguishers. Coordinate final fire extinguisher schedule with fire protection cabinet schedule to ensure proper fit and function. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
- C. Remaining paragraphs are defined in Division 01 Section "Submittal Procedures" as "Informational Submittals." Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire extinguishers to include in maintenance manuals.
- D. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

## 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. NFPA Compliance: Fabricate and label fire extinguishers to comply with NFPA 10, "Portable Fire Extinguishers."
- B. Fire Extinguishers: Listed and labeled for type, rating, and classification by an independent testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Provide fire extinguishers approved, listed, and labeled by FMG.

## 1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate type and capacity of fire extinguishers with fire protection cabinets to ensure fit and function.

## 1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace fire extinguishers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Failure of hydrostatic test according to NFPA 10.
    - b. Faulty operation of valves or release levers.
  2. Warranty Period: Six years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 PORTABLE, HAND-CARRIED FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

- A. Fire Extinguishers: Type, size, and capacity for each fire protection cabinet indicated.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Amerex Corporation.
    - b. J. L. Industries, Inc.; a division of Activar Construction Products Group.
    - c. Larsen's Manufacturing Company.
    - d. Pem All Fire Extinguisher Corp.; a division of PEM Systems, Inc.
    - e. Potter Roemer LLC.
  2. Valves: Manufacturer's standard.
  3. Handles and Levers: Manufacturer's standard.
  4. Instruction Labels: Include pictorial marking system complying with NFPA 10, Appendix B and bar coding for documenting fire extinguisher location, inspections, maintenance, and recharging.
- B. Multipurpose Dry-Chemical Type in Steel Container: UL-rated 4-A:60-B:C, 10-lb nominal capacity, with monoammonium phosphate-based dry chemical in enameled-steel container.
1. Provide a minimum of 3 fire extinguishers per level for parking deck. Verify locations with Architect and comply with requirement of local authorities having jurisdiction.
  2. Provide a minimum of 3 fire extinguishers per floor for office building. Verify locations with Architect and comply with requirements of local authorities having jurisdiction.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine fire extinguishers for proper charging and tagging.
1. Remove and replace damaged, defective, or undercharged fire extinguishers.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install fire extinguishers in locations indicated and in compliance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Mounting Brackets: 54 inches above finished floor to top of fire extinguisher.
- B. Mounting Brackets: Fasten mounting brackets to surfaces, square and plumb, at locations indicated.

END OF SECTION 10 44 16





## SECTION 10 73 16 - METAL CANOPIES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Prefabricated cantilevered canopies.
  - 2. Flashings at connection of canopies to building.

## 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Provide metal canopy systems capable of withstanding applicable loads and thermal and structural movements indicated without failure. Failure includes the following:
  - 1. Deflection exceeding specified limits.
  - 2. Framing members transferring stresses, including those caused by thermal and structural movement.
  - 3. Noise or vibration created by thermal and structural movement and wind.
  - 4. Loosening or weakening of fasteners, attachments, and other components.
- B. Deflection Limits: As follows:
  - 1. Deflection of the entire length of framing members in any direction is limited to 1/180 of clear span or 3/4 inch, whichever is smaller, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Structural Loads: Provide awning and canopy systems, including anchorage, capable of withstanding the effects of the following design loads when supporting full dead loads:
  - 1. Wind Loads: As indicated.
  - 2. Snow Loads: As indicated.
  - 3. Seismic Loads: As indicated.
- D. Structural Performance: Provide metal canopy systems, including anchorage, capable of withstanding test pressure indicated without material and deflection failures and permanent deformation of structural members exceeding 0.2 percent of span when tested according to ASTM E 330.
  - 1. Test Pressure: 150 percent of positive and negative wind-load design pressures.
  - 2. Test Duration: As required by design wind velocity; fastest 1 mile of wind for relevant exposure category.

- E. Thermal Movement: Provide metal canopy systems that allow for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures by preventing buckling and other detrimental effects.

- 1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F material surfaces.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of metal canopies and accessories indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show layouts of metal canopy, including plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachment to other work.
  - 1. Accessories: Include details of the following items:
    - a. Flashing and trim.
    - b. Gutters.
    - c. Downspouts.
    - d. Scuppers.
  - 2. Include structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
- C. Samples For Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on samples of size indicated below:
  - 1. Metal Canopy Panels: 12 inches long by actual panel width. Include fasteners, closures, and other metal canopy accessories.
  - 2. Metal Canopy Glazing: 12 inches by 12 inches. Include fasteners, closures, and other metal canopy accessories.
  - 3. Flashing and Trim: Nominal 12 inches long. Include fasteners and other exposed accessories.
- D. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- E. Maintenance Data: For metal canopy to include in maintenance manual.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer.
  - 1. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings and comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer.
- B. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of awnings and canopies that are similar to those indicated for this Project in material, design, and extent.
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of canopy system, including framing, hardware, and accessories from one source and by a single manufacturer.

- D. Product Options: Information on Drawings and in Specifications establishes requirements for aesthetic effects and performance characteristics of canopy systems. Aesthetic effects are indicated by dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies as they relate to sightlines, one another, and adjoining construction. Performance characteristics are indicated by criteria subject to verification by one or more methods including preconstruction testing, field testing, or in-service performance.
  - 1. Do not modify intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If modifications are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.
- E. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to review methods and procedures related to canopy systems, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Inspect and discuss condition of substrate and other preparatory work performed by other trades.
  - 2. Review structural load limitations.
  - 3. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
  - 4. Review required testing procedures.
  - 5. Review weather and forecasted weather conditions and procedures for unfavorable conditions.

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver components, sheets, metal canopy panels, and other manufactured items so as not to be damaged or deformed. Package metal canopy panels for protection during transportation and handling.
- B. Unload, store, and erect metal canopy panels in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.
- C. Stack canopy roof panels on platforms or pallets, covered with suitable weathertight and ventilated covering. Store metal canopy panels to ensure dryness. Do not store metal canopy panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.
- D. Protect strippable protective covering on metal canopy panels from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to extent necessary for period of metal roof panel installation.

#### 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit assembly of metal canopy to be performed according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.
- B. Field Measurements: Where canopy systems are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.

#### 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. General Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Article shall not deprive Owner of other rights Owner may have under other provisions of the Contract Documents and shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties made by Contractor under requirements of the Contract Documents.
- B. Special Warranty: Written warranty, executed by manufacturer agreeing to repair or replace components of canopy systems that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Structural failures.
  - 2. Failure of systems to meet performance requirements.
  - 3. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
  - 4. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Canopies:
  - 1. Basis of Design: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide basis of design products as manufactured by Mapes Industries, Inc. or a comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Basis of design: MASA Architectural Canopies, Inc.
      - 1) Cantilevered Canopy: Extrudeck.
    - b. Dittmer.
    - c. Peachtree Canopies.
    - d. AVAdek, Inc.
    - e. Mapes Industries, Inc.
  - 2. Canopy Size: As indicated on drawings.

### 2.2 COMPONENTS

- A. Framing:
  - 1. Type: Extruded aluminum.
  - 2. Size: As indicated.
- B. Canopy Supports: Hanger rods.
- C. Decking: Interlocking Extruded aluminum decking and flat soffit decking.
- D. Attachment; As required to meet final conditions
- E. Custom Fascia Profiles: As indicated.
- F. Other Components: other components as indicated or as required for system attachment and performance.

## 2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Brackets and Reinforcements: Provide manufacturer's standard high-strength brackets and reinforcements. Provide nonstaining, nonferrous shims to install and align metal canopies.
- B. Flashing and Trim: Zinc-coated (galvanized) or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.022-inch nominal uncoated steel thickness, prepainted with coil coating; finished to match adjacent metal panels.
  - 1. Provide flashing and trim as required to seal against weather and to provide finished appearance. Locations include, but are not limited to, eaves, rakes, corners, bases, framed openings, ridges, fasciae, and fillers.
- C. Fasteners and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding fasteners and accessories; compatible with adjacent materials.
  - 1. Movement Joints: Provide slip-joint linings, spacers, and sleeves of material and type recommended by manufacturer.
  - 2. Connections to Supporting Structure: ASTM A 307, zinc-coated steel fasteners.
  - 3. Anchor Bolts: ASTM A 307, Grade A, zinc-coated steel anchor bolts.
  - 4. Concrete or Masonry Inserts: Zinc-coated cast-iron, malleable-iron, or steel inserts; hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 123.
- D. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt mastic paint complying with SSPC-Paint 12, except containing no asbestos, and formulated for 30-mil thickness per coat.

## 2.4 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate and finish metal canopy panels and accessories at the factory to greatest extent possible, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes, as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.
  - 1. Fabricate components that, when assembled, will have accurately fitted joints with ends coped or mitered to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion.
  - 2. Fabricate components to drain water passing joints and to drain condensation and moisture occurring or migrating within system to the exterior.
  - 3. Fabricate components to accommodate expansion, contraction, and field adjustment, and to provide for minimum clearance and shimming at perimeters.
  - 4. Form shapes with sharp profiles, straight and free of defects or deformations, before finishing.
  - 5. Fit and assemble components to greatest extent practicable before finishing.
  - 6. Fit and secure joints with screw and spline, internal reinforcement, or welding.
  - 7. Reinforce members as required to retain fastener threads.
  - 8. Where fasteners are exposed to view, countersink bolt or screw heads and finish to match framing.
  - 9. Weld components before finishing and in concealed locations to greatest extent practicable to minimize distortion.
  - 10. Before shipping, assemble, mark, and disassemble components that cannot be permanently shop assembled.
  - 11. Prepare framing to receive anchor and connection devices and fasteners.
- B. Support columns and gutter beams shall be designed such that the columns will be notched to create a "saddle" that will receive and secure the gutter beams.

- C. Decking shall be designed with interlocking extruded aluminum members with mechanical fasteners field applied to provide structural integrity for the completed assembly.
- D. Concealed drainage. Water shall drain from covered surfaces into integral gutter beam, downspouts and be connected to boot at underground discharge.
- E. Apply a clean acrylic enamel to each column end terminating in concrete to insulate from electrolyte reaction.

## 2.5 FINISHES

- A. General: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. High-Performance Organic Finish: Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Fluoropolymer Two-Coat System: Manufacturer's standard two-coat, thermocured system consisting of specially formulated inhibitive primer and fluoropolymer color topcoat containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride resin by weight; complying with physical properties and coating performance requirements of AAMA 2605, except as modified below:
    - a. Humidity Resistance: 2000 hours.
    - b. Water Resistance: 2000 hours.
  - 1) Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting metal canopy system performance.
  - 1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Metal Protection: As follows:
  - 1. Where aluminum will contact dissimilar metals, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with primer or by applying sealant or tape recommended by manufacturer for this purpose.
  - 2. Where aluminum will contact concrete or masonry, protect against corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous paint.
  - 3. Where aluminum will contact pressure-treated wood, separate dissimilar materials by methods recommended by manufacturer.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for protecting, handling, and installing metal canopy components.
  - 1. Fit frame joints to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion.
  - 2. Rigidly secure nonmovement joints.
  - 3. Accommodate thermal movements.
  - 4. Install metal canopy to allow drainage of water with out ponding.
  
- B. Erection Tolerances: Install metal canopy components true in plane, accurately aligned, and without warp or rack. Adjust framing to comply with the following tolerances:
  - 1. Variation from Plane: Limit variation from plane or location shown to 1/8 inch in 10 feet; 1/4 inch over total length.
  - 2. Alignment: Where surfaces abut in line and at corners and where surfaces are separated by less than 3 inches, limit offset from true alignment to less than 1/32 inch; otherwise, limit offset from true alignment to 1/8 inch.

### 3.4 CLEANING

- A. Clean metal canopies immediately after installation according to manufacturer's written recommendations.
  - 1. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable coatings from prefinished metal surfaces. Remove labels and markings from all components.

### 3.5 PROTECTION

- A. General: Institute protective procedures and install protective materials as required to ensure metal canopy systems will be without damage at substantial completion.

END OF SECTION 10 73 16

September 15, 2023

Novant ASC Leland  
Construction Documents

1721843900





## SECTION 12 21 13 - HORIZONTAL LOUVER BLINDS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Horizontal louver blinds with faux wood slats.

## 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For horizontal louver blinds, include fabrication and installation details.
  - 1. Motorized Operators: Include details of installation in headrails and include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type and color of horizontal louver blind indicated.
  - 1. Slat: Not less than 12 inches long.
  - 2. Tapes: Full width, not less than 6 inches long.
  - 3. Horizontal Louver Blind: Full-size unit, not less than 16 inches wide by 24 inches long.
  - 4. Valance: Full-size unit, not less than 12 inches wide.
- D. Product Schedule: For horizontal louver blinds. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Test Reports: For horizontal louver blinds with polymer slats that have been tested for compliance with NFPA 701, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.

## 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For horizontal louver blinds to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Horizontal Louver Blinds: Full-size units equal to 5 percent of quantity installed for each size, color, texture, pattern, and gloss indicated, but no fewer than two units.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver horizontal louver blinds in factory packages, marked with manufacturer, product name, and location of installation using same designations indicated on Drawings.

#### 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install horizontal louver blinds until construction and wet-work and finish work in spaces, including painting, is complete and dry and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.
- B. Field Measurements: Where horizontal louver blinds are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Allow clearances for operating hardware of operable glazed units through entire operating range. Notify Architect of installation conditions that vary from Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain horizontal louver blinds from single source from single manufacturer.

#### 2.2 HORIZONTAL FAUX WOOD BLINDS

- A. Basis-of-Design: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Basis-of-Design product or a comparable product by one of the following:
  1. Basis-of-Design: SWF Contract "2" Faux Wood Blinds."
  2. Levolor.
  3. Hunter Douglas Contract.
- B. Slats: Rigid, UV-stabilized, flat PVC nominally 2" wide x 1/8" thick with straight-cut edges.
  1. Width: 2 inches.
  2. Thickness: Manufacturer's standard.
  3. Spacing: Manufacturer's standard.
- C. Headrail: 15/8" high x 2¼" wide x .022" thick U-shaped, extruded steel with 1/8" lightblocking lip. Headrails fully enclose operating mechanisms on three sides.
  1. Capacity: One blind(s) per headrail unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Ends: Manufacturer's standard.
  3. Manual Lift Mechanism:

- a. Lift-Cord Lock: Variable; stops lift cord at user-selected position within blind full operating range.
  - b. Operator: Extension of lift cord(s) through lift-cord lock mechanism to form cord pull.
4. Manual Tilt Mechanism: Enclosed worm-gear mechanism and linkage rod that adjusts ladders.
    - a. Tilt: Full.
    - b. Operator: Electro-zinc coated solid steel.
    - c. Over-Rotation Protection: Manufacturer's detachable operator or slip clutch to prevent over rotation of gear.
  5. Manual Lift-Operator and Tilt-Operator Lengths: Manufacturer's standard.
  6. Manual Lift-Operator and Tilt-Operator Locations: Manufacturer's standard unless otherwise indicated.
  7. Integrated Headrail/Valance: Manufacturer's standard.
- D. Bottom Rail: Extruded foam PVC 9/16" high x 2" wide in a rectangular shape.
1. Type: Manufacturer's standard.
- E. Lift Cords: Manufacturer's standard braided cord.
- F. Ladders: Evenly spaced across headrail at spacing that prevents long-term slat sag.
1. Type: Braided cord.
- G. Valance: Manufacturer's standard.
- H. Mounting Brackets: With spacers and shims required for blind placement and alignment indicated.
1. Type: As indicated.
  2. Intermediate Support: Provide intermediate support brackets to produce support spacing recommended by blind manufacturer for weight and size of blind.
- I. Hold-Down Brackets and Hooks or Pins: Manufacturer's standard.
- J. Colors, Textures, Patterns, and Gloss:
1. Slats: As indicated, or if not indicated, as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  2. Components: Provide rails, cords, ladders, and materials exposed to view matching or coordinating with slat color unless otherwise indicated.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, operational clearances, locations of connections to building electrical system, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install horizontal louver blinds level and plumb, aligned and centered on openings, and aligned with adjacent units according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Locate so exterior slat edges are not closer than 1 inch from interior faces of glass and not closer than 1/2 inch from interior faces of glazing frames through full operating ranges of blinds.
  - 2. Install mounting and intermediate brackets to prevent deflection of headrails.
  - 3. Install with clearances that prevent interference with adjacent blinds, adjacent construction, and operating hardware of glazed openings, other window treatments, and similar building components and furnishings.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust horizontal louver blinds to operate free of binding or malfunction through full operating ranges.

### 3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean horizontal louver blind surfaces after installation according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer that ensures that horizontal louver blinds are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- C. Replace damaged horizontal louver blinds that cannot be repaired in a manner approved by Architect before time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 12 21 13

## SECTION 12 36 23.13 - PLASTIC-LAMINATE-CLAD COUNTERTOPS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes plastic-laminate-clad countertops.

## 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical-treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements.
- B. Shop Drawings: For plastic-laminate-clad countertops.
  - 1. Include plans, sections, details, and attachments to other work. Detail fabrication and installation, including field joints.
  - 2. Show locations and sizes of cutouts and holes for items installed in plastic-laminate-clad countertops.
- C. Samples for Verification: As follows:
  - 1. Plastic Laminates: For each type, color, pattern, and surface finish required, 8 by 10 inches in size.

## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For the following:
  - 1. Composite wood products.
  - 2. High-pressure decorative laminate.
  - 3. Adhesives.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that employs skilled workers who custom fabricate products similar to those required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of products.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver countertops only after casework and supports on which they will be installed have been completed in installation areas.
- B. Store countertops in areas where environmental conditions comply with requirements specified in "Field Conditions" Article.
- C. Keep surfaces of countertops covered with protective covering during handling and installation.

## 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install countertops until building is enclosed, wet-work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and relative humidity at levels planned for building occupants during the remainder of the construction period.
- B. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install countertops until building is enclosed, wet-work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature between 60 and 90 deg F and relative humidity between 25 and 55 percent during the remainder of the construction period.
- C. Field Measurements: Where countertops are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
- D. Established Dimensions: Where countertops are indicated to fit to other construction, establish dimensions for areas where countertops are to fit. Provide allowance for trimming at site, and coordinate construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 PLASTIC-LAMINATE-CLAD COUNTERTOPS

- A. Quality Standard: Unless otherwise indicated, comply with the "Architectural Woodwork Standards" for grades of plastic-laminate-clad countertops indicated for construction, finishes, installation, and other requirements.
  - 1. The Contract Documents contain requirements that are more stringent than the referenced quality standard. Comply with requirements of Contract Documents in addition to those of the referenced quality standard.
- B. Grade: Premium.
- C. High-Pressure Decorative Laminate: NEMA LD 3, Grade HGS.
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Basis-of-Design product as indicated on the finish schedule, or comparable products by one of the following:
    - a. Nevamar.
    - b. Wilsonart LLC.

## c. Formica.

- D. Colors, Patterns, and Finishes: Provide materials and products that result in colors and textures of exposed laminate surfaces complying with the following requirements:
  - 1. As indicated by manufacturer's designations.
- E. Edge Treatment: Same as laminate cladding on horizontal surfaces.
- F. Core Material: MDF made with exterior glue.
- G. Core Material at Sinks: MDF made with exterior glue.
- H. Core Thickness: 3/4 inch.
- I. Backer Sheet: Provide plastic-laminate backer sheet, NEMA LD 3, Grade BKL, on underside of countertop substrate.

## 2.2 WOOD MATERIALS

- A. Wood Products: Provide materials that comply with requirements of referenced quality standard unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Wood Moisture Content: 5 to 10 percent.
- B. Composite Wood Products: Provide materials that comply with requirements of referenced quality standard for each type of countertop and quality grade specified unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. MDF: Medium-density fiberboard, ANSI A208.2, Grade 130.

## 2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Wire-Management Grommets: Circular, molded-plastic grommets and matching plastic caps with slot for wire passage.
  - 1. Outside Diameter: 2 inches.
  - 2. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Adhesives: Use adhesives that meet the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- B. Adhesive for Bonding Plastic Laminate: Contact cement.
  - 1. Adhesive for Bonding Edges: Hot-melt adhesive or adhesive specified above for faces.

## 2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate countertops to dimensions, profiles, and details indicated. Provide front and end overhang of 1 inch over base cabinets. Ease edges to radius indicated for the following:
- B. Complete fabrication, including assembly, to maximum extent possible before shipment to Project site. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation. Where necessary for fitting at site, provide ample allowance for scribing, trimming, and fitting.
- C. Shop cut openings to maximum extent possible to receive appliances, plumbing fixtures, electrical work, and similar items. Locate openings accurately, and use templates or roughing-in diagrams to produce accurately sized and shaped openings. Sand edges of cutouts to remove splinters and burrs.
  - 1. Seal edges of cutouts by saturating with varnish.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Before installation, condition countertops to average prevailing humidity conditions in installation areas.
- B. Before installing countertops, examine shop-fabricated work for completion and complete work as required, including removal of packing.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Grade: Install countertops to comply with same grade as item to be installed.
- B. Assemble countertops and complete fabrication at Project site to the extent that it was not completed in the shop.
  - 1. Provide cutouts for appliances, plumbing fixtures, electrical work, and similar items. Locate openings accurately, and use templates or roughing-in diagrams to produce accurately sized and shaped openings. Sand edges of cutouts to remove splinters and burrs.
  - 2. Seal edges of cutouts by saturating with varnish.
- C. Field Jointing: Where possible, make in the same manner as shop jointing, using dowels, splines, adhesives, and fasteners recommended by manufacturer. Prepare edges to be joined in shop so Project-site processing of top and edge surfaces is not required. Locate field joints where shown on Shop Drawings.
  - 1. Secure field joints in countertops with concealed clamping devices located within 6 inches of front and back edges and at intervals not exceeding 24 inches. Tighten according to manufacturer's written instructions to exert a constant, heavy-clamping pressure at joints.
- D. Scribe and cut countertops to fit adjoining work, refinish cut surfaces, and repair damaged finish at cuts.



- E. Countertop Installation: Anchor securely by screwing through corner blocks of base cabinets or other supports into underside of countertop.
  - 1. Install countertops level and true in line. Use concealed shims as required to maintain not more than a 1/8-inch-in-96-inches variation from a straight, level plane.
  - 2. Secure backsplashes to walls with adhesive.
  - 3. Seal joints between countertop and backsplash, if any, and joints where countertop and backsplash abut walls with mildew-resistant silicone sealant or another permanently elastic sealing compound recommended by countertop material manufacturer.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Repair damaged and defective countertops, where possible, to eliminate functional and visual defects. Where not possible to repair, replace countertops. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.
- B. Clean countertops on exposed and semiexposed surfaces.
- C. Protection: Provide Kraft paper or other suitable covering over countertop surfaces, taped to underside of countertop at a minimum of 48 inches o.c. Remove protection at Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 12 36 23.13

September 15, 2023

Novant ASC Leland  
Construction Documents

1721843900



## SECTION 12 36 61.16 - SOLID SURFACING COUNTERTOPS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Solid surface material countertops.
  - 2. Solid surface material backsplashes.
  - 3. Solid surfacing fabrications including, but not limited to, the following:
    - a. Locker room benches.

## 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For countertop materials.
- B. Shop Drawings: For countertops. Show materials, finishes, edge and backsplash profiles, methods of joining, and cutouts for plumbing fixtures.
  - 1. Show locations and details of joints.
  - 2. Show direction of directional pattern, if any.
- C. Samples for Verification: For the following products:
  - 1. Countertop material, 6 inches square.

## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For fabricator.

## 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For solid surface material countertops to include in maintenance manuals. Include Product Data for care products used or recommended by Installer and names, addresses, and telephone numbers of local sources for products.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that employs skilled workers who custom-fabricate countertops similar to that required for this Project, and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of countertops.
- C. Mockups: Build mockups to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for fabrication and execution.
  - 1. Build mockup of typical countertop as shown on Drawings.
  - 2. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

## 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify dimensions of countertops by field measurements before countertop fabrication is complete.

## 1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate locations of utilities that will penetrate countertops or backsplashes.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SOLID SURFACE COUNTERTOP MATERIALS

- A. Solid Surface Material: Homogeneous-filled plastic resin complying with ICPA.
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Basis-of-Design products as indicated on the finish schedule or comparable by one of the following:
    - a. Wilsonart.
    - b. Corian.
  - 2. Type: Provide Standard type unless Special Purpose type is indicated.
  - 3. Colors and Patterns: As indicated by manufacturer's designations.
- B. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2.
- C. Plywood: Exterior softwood plywood complying with DOC PS 1, Grade C-C Plugged, touch sanded.

### 2.2 COUNTERTOP FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate countertops according to solid surface material manufacturer's written instructions and to the AWI/AWMAC/WI's "Architectural Woodwork Standards."

1. Grade: Custom.
- B. Configuration:
1. Front: Straight, slightly eased at top.
  2. Backsplash: Straight, slightly eased at corner.
  3. End Splash: Matching backsplash.
- C. Countertops: 3/4-inch- thick, solid surface material with front edge built up with same material.
- D. Backsplashes: 1/2-inch- thick, solid surface material.
- E. Fabricate tops with shop-applied edges unless otherwise indicated. Comply with solid surface material manufacturer's written instructions for adhesives, sealers, fabrication, and finishing.
1. Fabricate with loose backsplashes for field assembly.
- F. Joints: Fabricate countertops without joints to greatest extent possible.
- G. Joints: Fabricate countertops in sections for joining in field.
1. Joint Locations: Not within 18 inches of a sink or cooktop and not where a countertop section less than 36 inches long would result, unless unavoidable.
  2. Splined Joints: Accurately cut kerfs in edges at joints for insertion of metal splines to maintain alignment of surfaces at joints. Make width of cuts slightly more than thickness of splines to provide snug fit. Provide at least three splines in each joint.
- H. Cutouts and Holes:
1. Undercounter Plumbing Fixtures: Make cutouts for fixtures in shop using template or pattern furnished by fixture manufacturer. Form cutouts to smooth, even curves.
    - a. Provide vertical edges, slightly eased at juncture of cutout edges with top and bottom surfaces of countertop and projecting 3/16 inch into fixture opening.
    - b. Provide vertical edges, rounded to 3/8-inch radius at juncture of cutout edges with top surface of countertop, slightly eased at bottom, and projecting 3/16 inch into fixture opening.
    - c. Provide 3/4-inch full bullnose edges projecting 3/8 inch into fixture opening.
  2. Counter-Mounted Plumbing Fixtures: Prepare countertops in shop for field cutting openings for counter-mounted fixtures. Mark tops for cutouts and drill holes at corners of cutout locations. Make corner holes of largest radius practical.
  3. Fittings: Drill countertops in shop for plumbing fittings, undercounter soap dispensers, and similar items.

## 2.3 SOLID SURFACING FABRICATIONS

- A. Fabricate solid surfacing fabrications according to solid surface material manufacturer's written instructions and to the AWI/AWMAC/WI's "Architectural Woodwork Standards."
1. Grade: Custom.
- B. Fabricate solid surfacing fabrications in accordance with details shown and approved shop drawings.

1. Fabricate in thicknesses shown but not less than 1/2 inch thickness.
2. Fabricate without joints to greatest extent possible.

#### 2.4 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Adhesive: Product recommended by solid surface material manufacturer.
  1. Adhesives shall have a VOC content of 70 g/L or less.
- B. Sealant for Countertops: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants."

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates to receive solid surface material countertops and conditions under which countertops will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of countertops.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install countertops level to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 8 feet, 1/4 inch maximum. Do not exceed 1/64-inch difference between planes of adjacent units.
- B. Fasten countertops by screwing through corner blocks of base units into underside of countertop. Predrill holes for screws as recommended by manufacturer. Align adjacent surfaces and, using adhesive in color to match countertop, form seams to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Carefully dress joints smooth, remove surface scratches, and clean entire surface.
- C. Fasten subtops to cabinets by screwing through subtops into cornerblocks of base cabinets. Shim as needed to align subtops in a level plane.
- D. Secure countertops to subtops with adhesive according to solid surface material manufacturer's written instructions. Align adjacent surfaces and, using adhesive in color to match countertop, form seams to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Carefully dress joints smooth, remove surface scratches, and clean entire surface.
- E. Bond joints with adhesive and draw tight as countertops are set. Mask areas of countertops adjacent to joints to prevent adhesive smears.
  1. Install metal splines in kerfs in countertop edges at joints. Fill kerfs with adhesive before inserting splines and remove excess immediately after adjoining units are drawn into position.
  2. Clamp units to temporary bracing, supports, or each other to ensure that countertops are properly aligned and joints are of specified width.
- F. Install backsplashes and end splashes by adhering to wall and countertops with adhesive. Mask areas of countertops and splashes adjacent to joints to prevent adhesive smears.

- G. Install aprons to backing and countertops with adhesive. Mask areas of countertops and splashes adjacent to joints to prevent adhesive smears. Fasten by screwing through backing. Pre-drill holes for screws as recommended by manufacturer.
- H. Complete cutouts not finished in shop. Mask areas of countertops adjacent to cutouts to prevent damage while cutting. Make cutouts to accurately fit items to be installed, and at right angles to finished surfaces unless beveling is required for clearance. Ease edges slightly to prevent snipping.
  - 1. Seal edges of cutouts in particleboard subtops by saturating with varnish.
- I. Apply sealant to gaps at walls; comply with Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants."
- J. Install solid surfacing fabrications in accordance with specified grade, details, and approved shop drawings.

END OF SECTION 12 36 61.16

